



RELATIONS,
OF THE MOST FA-
MOVS KINGDOMS AND
COMMONWEALES THO-
ROUGH THE
WORLD.

*Discoursing of their Scituations, Manners,
Customes, Strengths, Greatnesse,
and Policies.*

Enlarged, according to moderne
Obseruation.



LONDON,

Printed for I O H N I A G G A R D, dwelling in Fleet-street, at the
Hand and Star, betweene the two Temple-gates.

1 6 1 6.



953121



To the Right Honourable EDWARD
Earle of Worcester, Lord of Chepstol, Rag-
land, and Gower, Knight of the most Noble
Order of the Garter, Lord Priuie Seale, and one of
the Kings most Honourable Priuie
Counsell.

178/17

RIGHT HONOURABLE,



*Having with an unskilfull hand, taught this
Booke to speake English, I thought that I
should be like an euill Plaier marring the last
Act of the Tragedie, or a carelesse Pilot, drow-
ning the ship in the Hauen, if I ventured it to
the diuers censures of men, before it were en-
trusted to the patronage of some such Autho-
ritie, as might restraine, and binde the ouer-
flowings of other mens more hard opinion. For although the wor-
thinesse of the subiect might worke in me an ouerweening hope of his
kinde entertainment, yet I cannot satisfie my selfe, vnlesse it passe
vnder the tutele and protection of some one, whose fauour may (like
the verticall Sunne) abate all shadowes, either of Enuie or disgrace,
which are in this stilk worse and worse age of the world, readie to dis-
countenance the fruits of anie mans labour. Wherefore, considering
with my selfe, where to bestow it, I was emboldned by the inducement
of diuers reasons, to presume on your Lordship, ascertaining my selfe,
that the Greatnesse of your Stem descended from the Princely familie
of Beaufords, sometimes Dukes of Somerset, and Honourable ver-
tues, which haue wound you into the liking of all men, haue settled so
good an impression, as is forceable enough to make that seeme com-
mendable which is graced by your Honours name onely. And for
this respect, among infinite others here for speciall reasons silenced,
in hope of fauourable acceptance, I most humbly present it to your
Honour, challenging to my selfe nothing but the imperfections in the
harsh*

Dedicatorie.

harsh composure and conveiance of the stile, retaining yet (as I trust) the former strength and substance. If your Lordship vouchsafe to receive it it may be that (although in the perusal it cannot informe your Honour anie thing which you were ignorant of) yet it may confirme that, which otherwise your Honour doubted, or make it clearer by delivering the circumstances in more particular termes. Onely thus much (under leaue of a better iudgement) I dare say, that there is no Booke extant touching the same argumēt, which can equalize it, either for soundnesse in iudicially censuring; Truth, in sincerely translating, or cōpendiousnesse, in bringing such varietie of matter to so small a volume. And here although I could according to the vsuall forme of Epistles, indevour a draught of your most Honourable praises, yet knowing that it is but tediousnesse, where vertue is loved for the onely inward contentment, I put a Period unto these lines, and most humbly craving pardon, take leaue.

Your Honours deuoted

in all humble seruiceablenesse,

ROB. IONSON.

In the sixth line page 1. with the word *Neither*, read, *will I wholly refer you to Histories.*

THE



THE FIRST BOOKE.

Of Observation.

BEing to relate of the *Customes, Manners, and Potencies* of Nations and great Princes; my Scope shall neyther be, to trouble your Readings with such obsolete Authors, as are to be accounted verie ancient (for of these Themes they were ignorant, by reason of indiscoverie:) Neyther, because their Caueats being infinite; some are growne out of vse, some are temporarie, some opposite, and others mutable; cyther of themselves, or by the pleasure of Princes; whereof no profitable vse can be expected. Neyther certainly will I be of their opinions; who building all vpon influences and constellations, will haue the faculties of soule and bodies, to be gouerned by Starres and Climats. But my meaning is, to lay downe some few obseruations, arising from the immutable prouidence of Nature; which remaineth immutable, immortall, and is neuer changed, vnlesse by accident, violence, or tyrant-Time; and yet in the reuolution of an age, or two, returneth againe to its prime-operation. From thence I will discend, to discourse of the reasons, which giue occasions to one Prince to excell another: And lastly, I will lay you downe some instructions for trauaile. The residue shall speake for it selfe, and be left to construction.

Of the diuision of Temperature.

First therefore, according to best *Authoritie*, let vs firmly beleue, That the Creator of all things, hath not bestowed vpon any particular Region, like, and semblable blessings; but that (as experience may warrant) to some one Countrey he hath giuen this good fauour; to another, that: partly, in regard of
B scitu-

scituation : partly, by operation of his ministers : as, starres, winds, heat, cold, water, aire, dyet &c. *Athenis tenue cœlum, Thebis crassum.* And therefore without offence, by the testimony of good Authors, we may be bold to coniecture, that the people and Nations inhabiting diuers portions of this vaste vniuerse, are indowed with diuers, strange, and opposite dispositions : As the Inhabitants bounding vpon the *North*, to be biggest boned, strongest set and apt for labour : the Nations of the *South*, to be weake, yet more subtrill. *Acutiores Attici, valentes Thebani.*

Now, how farre the these Influences of *North* and *South* stretch in operation, where the *East* and *West* put periods to their potencies ; or what, in generall truth, is to bee affirmed of their diuers manners and qualities, is hard to say : and the harder, for that no man hitherto hath presumed to vnderake the taske amidst so many obscurities. For if all credit should bee giuen to *Hippocrates*, whose authority was euer held *Delphion*, he will tell you, *That the people of the North are slender, dwarfish, leane and swarfie : And Auerrois*, will bee bold to affirme ; *That, the mountaine people are most pious and wittie : whereas vniuersall experience doth condemne them of rudenesse and barbarisme. The Ignorance of the Ancients (saith Bodin) was once so grosse, that not a few of them, deemed the Ocean a riuer ; All Iberia, but a Citie.*

But we, to giue some better satisfaction vnto the curious of this age (vnder correction) will presume to diuide the celestiaall Orb into foure quarters ; the *South*, by the line of the *Æquator* ; the *North*, by the Elevation of the Pole ; the *East*, by the Islands of the *Molucca* ; and the *West* by the *Hesperides*.

And, because all the *Auncients* in like error, except *Possidonius* and *Anicene*, limmited the possibility of habitation, to consist wholly betweene the Tropiques and the polar Circles, affirming, that beyond, there was no health, no place peopled, &c. Let this erroneous imagination for euermore bee silenced, by the authority of all modern Navigators, who haue found the wholsomest and best peopled Countries, to lie vnder the *Æquator* : and the rigions scituated vnder the Tropiques, to be tormented with more rigorous heate. Which assertion agreeth also with reason, for that, as euery man knoweth, the Sunne is caried heighest in the *Æquator*, and therefore by reason of the remote circumference of his circle, passeth with a swifter motion, thē it doth in the Tropiques.

Aluares repoteth, that the *Abessine* Embassador, arriuing at *Lisbon*, was that day almost choked with heat. And *Purquer* the German reported, that hee hath felt the weather more hot about *Danizik* and the *Baltique* sea, then at *Tholouze*, in a seruent Sommer. And this no paradox :

dox: The cause with good iudgement being to be ascribed to the grosse and thicke of the aire; considering that *Europe* and the *North* are full of waters; which bursting out from hidden and vnknown concauities, do produce infinit bogs, fens, lakes, & marshes, in the Sommer seasons causing thick vapours to ascend. Which (without doubt) being incorporated with heat, scorch more feruently, then the purer aire of *Affrique*, being stored with no such superabundance of watery elements: Euen so fire, being inuested in the body of liquours, or mettals, scaldeth more furiously, then in wood; and in wood, more feruently then in flame. And if the keepers of stoves, and hot-houses, do not sprinkle the ground with water, that the vapour being contracted, and the aire thickened, they may thereby the longer and better maintaine heat, and spare fuel; you (must for me) wander into the schools of more profound Philosophers for further satisfaction.

And therefore, to explaine, or rather to reconcile, the oversights of the *Ancients*, we will sub-diuide the portions lying from the *Æquator* to the Pole, consisting of 90. degrees, into three equall parts, allotting 30. to heate; 30. to cold; and thirty to temperature. Wherein any man may lead a most happy and plentiful life, except in some particular places, such, as are rocky, drowned with waters, couered with sand, or vnhealthfull through contagion of aire.

These thirty portions or sub-degrees (to helpe imagination) we will also reduce into two; allowing fifteene on this side the *Æquator*, to be temperate, and fifteene beyond the Tropique, to be some what more inclined to heate. In the Temperate dimension, wee shall finde the first fifteene (by the scite and influence of heauen) to be very moderate and tolerable; and the other fifteene, beginning at the fortieth five degree, or the sixtith, to be somewhat colder: yea, of the thirty parts of the coldest dimension, 15. to be habitable; but beyond, no Townes, no housing, no good meanes afforded to defend life.

Of the Scituation of Nations.



Ow to the South-wards, we will limit the hithermost *Spaniards*, the *Siculi*, the *Peloponesians*, the *Cretensians*, the *Syrians*, the *Arabians*, the *Persians*, the *Susians*, the *Gedrosy*, the *Indians*, the *Egyptians*, the *Cirenians*, the *Africans*, the *Numidians*, the *Libians*, the *Moores* and the people of *Florida* in *America*, to bee scituated: but with this caueat, that those wholly to the West-wards in the same latitude, liue in a more colder temperature.

The people of the North, I meane to be those, which liue vnder the fortieth degree to the sixtieth : and those of more temperature, who extend to the seuentieth. Vnder the first are scituated, *Brittanie, Ireland, Denmarke*, part of *Gotland, Netherland*, and those Countries, which from the Riuer of *Mase*, stretch to the outmost borders of *Scythia* and *Tartaria*, contayning a good portion of *Europe*, and the greater *Asia*.

The inhabitants of the *Middle Region*, as being subiect neither to extreame heat, nor to extreame cold, I place betweene both *Extreames*, and yet able to endure both, with indifferent content. I also tearme that the *Middle Region*, which lyeth betweene the Tropique and the Pole; and not that, which lyeth betweene the Tropique and the Line: because the extremitie of heat is not so forceably felt vnder the Line (as aforesaid) as vnder the Tropiques. So that, that cannot be accounted the temperate climate, which extendeth from the thirtieth degree to the fortieth; but that, which beginneth at the fortieth, and endeth at the fiftieth : and the nearer East, the more temperate. Vnder which tract, lye the further *Spaine, France, Italie*, the higher *Germanie*, (as farre as the *Mase*) both *Hungaries, Illyria*, both *Mysiaes, Dacia, Moldavia, Macedon, Thrace*, and the better part of *Asia* the lesse, *Armenia, Parthia, Sogdiana*, and a great part of *Asia* the great. And the nearer the East, the more temperate, although they somewhat incline to the South-ward, as *Lidia, Cilicia, Asia, Media*, &c.

*Of the Constitutions, Complexions, and Natures,
of the Northerne man.*



Generally, both in the North, in the South, as also in the Middle, you shall obserue great difference, both of fashion and qualitie, occasioned (no question) through the intermingled resort from both *Extreames*. But in the *Extreames* you shall see no such apparant diuersitie. For the assured token of a *Scythians* countenance is, his reddish eye, like those of the Owle, which also doe dazle at the sight of the light. Such eyes (sayth *Plutarch*) haue the *Cimbrians*, and such at this day, the *Danes*. The *Germanes* and the *Brittish* haue them not so fierie, but rather grey, intermixed with a bright blackenesse, most resembling the colour of vvater. And this bright-shining colour (sayth *Aristotle*) argueth heate : but blacke (the colour of the Southerne people) betokeneth want thereof.

The

The Grey eye (and such is theirs who inhabite betweene both) is sharpest of sight, seldome troubled with dimnesse; and according to *Aristotle*, denoteth good qualities: the Red, crueltie and austeritie, as *Plinie* and *Plutarch* obserued of *Silla*, *Cato*, and *Augustus*.

The bloud also of the *Scythian* is full of small strings, such as are discernable in the gore of Bulls and Boares, and betokeneth strength and courage. The people of the South haue their bloud thinne and fluent, like to that of the Hare and Hart, and denoteth feare. Whereupon it may be coniectured, that those Nations which are spread from the fortieth degree to the seuentie fiue Northward, are hot within: but the people of the South, what they borrow from the Sunne, that they want in themselves; the inward heat being dispersed and drawne into the outward parts by the vehemencie of the outward heat: A reason, why in frostie weather our mindes and ioyns are couragious and strong; in heat, idle and lazie; and so our appetites and digestion more vehement in Winter than in Summer (especially if the Northerne windes be stirring.) The Southerne windes effect the contrarie in all liuing creatures (sayth *Aristotle*) as may dayly be obserued amongst the *English*, the *Germans*, and the *French*, traouelling into *Italie* and *Spaine*: where, if they liue not sparingly, they fall into surfets; witnesse *Philip*, Duke of *Austria*, liuing in *Spaine* after his *German* gourmandizing fashion.

Againe, the *Spaniards*, who in their owne Countries liue most niggardly, in our parts of the World, proue better trencher-men than the Natiues. And this experiment falleth not out true in men onely, but also in beasts, which (as *Heards-men* affirme) being driuen towards the South, fall away and loose flesh: but if they feede towards the North, they prosper and wax fat. Which I the rather belecue, for that *Leo Afer* writeth, That throughout all *Africke* you shall almost see no Herds of Cattell, nor Horse, few flockes of Sheepe, and scarce any milke at all. On the other side, the goodly droues of the *English*, the *Germans*, and the *Scythians*, are celebrated of all Writers: not because their Pastures are better, or sweeter, then those of the South, (by the censure of *Plinie*) but for the nature and temperature of the Heauens, and the Ayre.

And as the Northerne-man by nature is hot and moist, (the Elements of fecunditie) so there is no question, but that of all people they are, and haue bin, the most populous. For from the *Goths*, the *Scythians*, the *Germans*, and the *Scandians*, not onely vast deserts, and goodly Cities haue beene founded, and inhabited, but from their loynes also, haue

Colonies beene deriued throughout all *Europe*. Well therefore might *Methodius* and *P. Diaconus* resemble their Armies to swarmes of Bees. And most true it is, that *Iornandes* and *Olaus* tearme the North, the Store-house of Mankind; because from thence, the *Goths*, the *Gepida*, the *Hunnes*, the *Cimbrians*, the *Lombards*, the *Alani*, the *Burgundians*, the *Normans*, the *Picts*, the *Heruli*, the *Sweuians*, the *Slani*, the *Swizzers*, and the *Russians*, haue not denied to fetch their pedigrees.

Which maketh me to muse, vpon what reasons *Hippocrates* could build, to say, That the Northerne Nations were vnapt for generation, *causa frigiditatis*; whereas the coniectures of heat and moisture, argued in their hot and feruent breathings, proceeding from the stomach, and more apparant in Winter than in Summer, are not so effectually verified in any people, as in the inhabitants of the North. The true motiues, I say, of promptnesse to generation, and not of sensuall concupiscence, as *Aristotle* also would haue vs to imagine: A vice, more proper to the Southerne-man; performance to the Northerne-man.

Which indifferent limitation, was (without doubt) allotted to either climate by the handy-worke of God; that those who were of sufficiencie for generation, should not greatly be addicted to pleasures; and the residue, which wanted of that measure of heat and moisture, should delight in wantonnesse, to rayse their appetites; without the which, they would neither propagate their issue, nor by inter-marriages maintaine humane societie.

And that this inward heat also maketh the people of the North, more courageous, taller, and stronger, then the Nations of the South; is apparantly discernable, not in our parts onely (by the operation of nature) but also in the people dwelling beyond the Tropique of *Capricorne*: where, the more they decline from the *Aequator*, the more they spread in stature and tallnesse. For the land of the *Pentagones* (of some tearmed Giants) is scituated vnder the same latitude that *Germanie* is.

Which assertions holding true, it is no wonder, that this strong and courageous people, the *Scythians*, haue from the beginning cruelly inuaded the South, erecting therein many goodly Trophies: vvhenceas from the South hath scarce euer beene attempted a iourney, vworth speaking of, to the indammagement of the North.

The *Assyrians*, vanquished the *Chaldeans*: the *Medes*, the *Assyrians*: the *Greekes*, the *Persians*: the *Parthians*, the *Greekes*: the *Romans*, the *Carthaginians*: the *Goths*, the *Romans*: the *Turks*, the *Arabians*: the *Tartars*, the *Turks*: and beyond *Danubius*, the *Romans* were euer vn-
willing

willing to attempt. Indeede *Traian* erected an admirable bridge of Stone ouer that Riuer: for it had twentie arches, the ruines whereof (by report) are to be seene at this day. But, after that the same *Traian* perceived, that those Nations were neither easily beaten, nor being beaten, would, or could away with subiection, he commanded the bridge to be broken. Semblably, the *English* haue giuen the *French*, and *Spanish*, manie famous ouerthrowes; especially to the *French* in *France* it selfe, euen to the hazard of their State: and yet neuer could, either of both the Nations, at any time, (though often attempted) set sure footing in *England*.

These inrodes of the aforesaid barbarous Nations, I would not reiterate, but that in them (to mine vnderstanding) the grieuous threats of *Ezechiel*, *Ieremie*, *Esay*, and the rest of the Prophets, *That from the North should arise warres, footmen, horsemen, and the ruine of Kingdomes*; haue beene, in, and by them, accomplished: and most properly ought to be referred to that fore-diuided partition, which stretcheth from the fiue and fortieth degree, to the fiftieth and fiue, where *Biarmia* is situated. For those which dwell beyond (being either none, or very few) are dried vp (to vse *Hippocrates* his tearme) with as vehement cold, as the people living vnder the Tropiques are with heat: Not by reason of their inward heat, (as *Aristotle* in his *Meteors* dreamed) but by the rigour of the cold, piercing their bodies, and wasting their humours; vnto which humours, the Northerne people are generally subiect. A manifest signe whereof, is their immoderate drinking, which in the *Saxons*, and the inhabitants of the *Baltique* Sea, could neuer yet be moderated by time, nor statutes. And, that these humors cause the bodie to spread, let the Monsters of the Sea resoluue our doubts, who grow to that immensie vastnesse, aboue all other liuing creatures, *propter humiditatis copiam*.

But, (as I take it) this ouer-much moysture in the Northerne people, turneth them often into manie grieuous inconueniences. For if you obserue any of those Nations to trauell towards the South, or to make warres in hot Countries, you shal find them, to faint and perish through immoderate sweating: as *Plutarch*, in the life of *Marius*, obserued in the Rheumaticke bodies of the *Cimbrians*: And as experience manifesteth in the Horse, who being by nature hot and moist, liueth barely in *Ethiopia*, and liketh well in *Scythia*: whereas on the contrarie, the Asse, being cold and drie, is lustie, and of good seruice, in *Africke*; in *Europe*, poore and base; in *Scythia*, not to be found.

Of the people of the South.

THe people of the South, as concerning the constitutions of their bodies, are said to be cold, drie, thicke-skind, thinne and short-hayrd, weake, browne, small-timbred, blacke-eyed, and shrill-voiced: the Northerne-men contrarie, and the middle people indifferently participating of both. The *Spanish* women tearme the *Germans*, *Molles pisces*, that is, spongie fishes, for their continuall drinking; and in *Italie* and *Prouence*, the inhabitants doe much wonder at the *English*, the *French*, and the *Flemmings*, for their nightly complaints of the bitings of the Gnats and Cimeces (a kind of wormes breeding in their beds and bedsteads) whereas they themselues doe little regard them.

But as the bodies of the Northerne people are endued with strength and courage; so the weake constitutions of the Southerne Nations are supplied by the extraordinarie gifts of the mind: tearme them what you please, either wit, or subletie.

Of crueltie also they haue euer beene taxed: Read *Leo Afer* his Historie of *Africke*, and the *Carthaginian* dissentions: or if Antiquitie please you not, then turne your eyes to the late butcheries of *Muleasses* and his children, and diligently weigh, if euer your eares heard of more hellish furies then those which these Princes haue put in execution, eyther vpon their vassales, or against their owne linage. Which if you vndertake, then shall you see miserable *Muleasses* deprived of his kingdom, with his eyes burnt out, his face disfigured, and in lamentable distresse (by the crueltie of his brother) prostrating his complaints at the feet of *Charles* the Emperour.

For to speake vprightly, from these Nations (more then from any other) haue tortures of more exquisite deuise taken their originals: as exoculations, tearing of members, flayings, gashings with swords, slow fires, and impalements on stakes: all which, the *Italians*, the *French*, the *Spanish*, the *Greekes*, and the people of *Asia*, haue euer abhorred, and neuer admitted, but vpon occasions of horrible treasons, and that vnwillingly too, as borrowed from their neighbours.

And, that no man should coniecture, as doth *Polybius*, that euill education should produce this disposition of crueltie, I would aduise him to looke into the nature of the Southerne *Americans*, who also bath their children in the gore of their slaughtred enemies, then drinke their bloud, and lastly, banquet with the quartered carkasses of their enemies.

But

But if peradventure any man will obiekt the like crueltie in the Northerne-man, I would wish him to put this difference : that the man of the North is transported into furie by the heat of courage, and pursueth his reuenge in open field ; where being prouoked, and passion assuaged, he is easily pacified: whereas the Southerne-man is not easily prouoked: nor once in passion, is easily to be reconciled : and in actions of warre, he wholly setteth his hopes on policies, and stratagems, tormenting with great indignitie and crueltie his slaine or vanquished enemies, and that in cold blood. A disposition, base and brutish, arising partly (I denie not) from that instinct of furie, which euill education, and their inueterate desire of reuenge, doe ingender in nature, but more properly increased by the vnequall distribution of humours, and these humours by the inequality of the elements. By the influence of celestially prouidence, these elements are proportioned, and by these elements, humane bodies are transported, and blood infused in the bodie, life in the blood, the soule in life, and vnderstanding in the soule : which, although it be free from passion, yet by proximitie it cannot but participate of neighbour-imperfection : the reason, wherefore the people dwelling on either side our *Middest*, are more prone to vice and foule behauiour.

For as melancholie can no more be wanting to blood, then lees to wine : no otherwise can these passions, which arise from melancholie, be extracted from the bodie.

Now, the Southerne people hauing the greatest portion of their other humours drawne out by the heat of the Sunne, the melancholicke (wherewith they most abound) remaine, and as dregges, settle at the base of all their actions, being the more exasperated by their froward and peruerse dispositions. That men of these constitutions are vtterly implacable, *Ajax* and *M. Coriolanus* may serue for presidents; the former of whome, for that hee could not haue his will on his enemy, in a madding moode fell vpon droues of Cattell : the other, would in no wise be reconciled to his Countrey, before he saw the Cities thereof on a flaming fire, in danger of irrecoverable destruction.

But that the Northerne people haue also their faults, and are subiect to choler, I must not gaine-say, but aduise you to consider, that when this passion happeneth to ouer-rule reason, it burneth the blood, and incenseth the mind to quarrelling and reuenge, but in a farre fairer measure (as I said before) than melancholy doth in the nature of a Southerne-man. According to *Cicero*: *Passion may over-bear a wise man; madnesse cannot.*

Now,

Now, that the people of the South haue beene giuen to the studies of contemplation (a profession befitting their melancholike humours) let their excellent Writers, and Inuentors of many noble Sciences; as, the *Historie of Nature*, the *Mathematiques*, *Religion*, and the operation of the *Planets*, plead their properties.

The Northerne people, being lesse giuen to contemplation, by reason of their plentie of bloud and humours, distempering their minds, and hindering its faculties, haue, without teaching, found out such Arts, as fall within the compasse of vnderstanding, and apprehension: as, Mechanicall workemanships, Ordnance, casting of Mettals, Printing, and Minerals.

Being also the darlings of *Mars*, they haue alwaies, and that with incredible eagernesse of courage, embraced the Art Militarie, loued Armes, leuelled Mountaines, and turned Streames; giuing themselves wholly to Hunting, to Tillage, to Grasing, and to those Arts which are managed by labour: insomuch, that a man may well affirme, That their wits consist in their hands. The reason why the Astrologers (if you please to belecue them) affirme, *That those who haue Mars, Lord in their Natiuities, become either Souldiors or Trades-men.*

Of the people of the Middle Region:

OF this diuision are those, who at this day, vnderstanding the reciprocall bounds of Government and Subiection, and inured to ciuile and sociable conditions, are sufficiently enabled to frustrate the policies of the South, and to oppose against the furies of the North. Out of this mould, would *Vitruuius* haue a Commander to be chosen; and how iudiciously, let others say: we will onely maintaine by Historicall experience, that the *Gothes*, *Hunnes*, *Heruli*, and *Vandals*, wasted *Asia*, *Africke*, and *Enrope*; and yet for want of good counsell, could neuer maintaine their Conquests: whereas farre weaker forces, assisted by wisdome and politicke gouernment, haue not onely brought barbarous Nations to ciuilitie, but likewise perpetuated most flourishing Empires.

In approbation whereof, the Poets fained *Pallas* to be armed, and *Achilles* to be by her protected. It is recorded also of *Cato Censorius*, that he was a valiant Captaine, a sage Senator, an vpright Iudge, and a great Scholler: of *Cesar*, that he was a Politician, an Historian, an Orator, and a Warrior: of *Agamemnon*, that he was a good Gouvernour, and a
tall

tall Souldior. And therefore no wonder, if the *Scythians*, hating Learning, and the Southerne Nations, abhorring Armes, could neuer make good their conquered acquisitions. The *Romans* imbraced both, to their great good fortunes, and according to *Platoes* rule, intermingled Muelicke (as the saying is) with martiall exercises. From the *Grecians*, they deemed it no discredit to borrow Lawes and Letters: from the *Carthaginians* and *Sicilians*, the Art Marine: the Militarie they had in perfection by continuance and assiduitie. Before these times, *Scythian*-like, they stricke downe-right blowes: afterwards, they learned of the *Spaniards* (sayth *Polybius*) to thrust with the point.

Thus much, by way of Reading and Obseruation, for Inclination and Industrie: for mine owne part, I cannot but attribute these qualities of Strength in the *Scythian*, Wit in the *Southerne-man*, and Indifferencie in the *Middle-man*, to the Diuine prouidence; vwho in his praeſcience adiudged it best, vpon cruell and barbarous men, as vpon Bulls and brute beasts, not to bestow these good gifts of the Mind: neyther vpon subtile and vafrous people, Courage, and Strength of bodie; least both should abuse both, to the destruction of each other. For as *Aristotle* sayth, *There is nothing more dangerous then armed furie.*

Wherefore, sithence all Nations haue their faults, as well as their vertues, let vs neither reproach the laudable sobrietie of the Southerne-man, nor taxe the free drinking of the Northerne-man; faculties (without controuersie) peculiar to either people: but rather, according to reason, let vs weigh with our selues, that the Southerne-man, for want of naturall digestion, if he should gourmandize, would fall into Surfets, Apoplexies, &c. And the Northerne man, if he would, cannot conſtraine abstinence, by reason of thirst, proceeding of inward heat. And this should haue beene the consideration of all Authors, before they had proceeded to rash condemnation.

So againe, if the *Greeke*, the *Egyptian*, the *Arabian*, or the *Chaldean*, be to be taxed of Superſtition, Sorcerie, Cowardize, Treacherie, or Lasciuiousnesse; yet let them not be so reiected, but that we vouchsafe in them, to imitate what hath beene commendable, what excellent: For from these Nations, in truth, haue Letters, Arts, Learning, Discipline, Philosophie, Religion, and the rules of humane Societie, been deriued, ouer the face of the habitable earth.

Neither, let vs detract from the industries of the Northerne Nations; neither take exceptions against the frailties of those, whom God hath allotted to possesse the middle Regions. For albeit (as I said at first) that

that no ouer-weening credit be to be giuen to Starres and Planets, yet so farre let vs leane to the learned, as experience may seeme to verifie what they haue obserued.

The aphorismes of the Signes in the Zodiacke (sayth *Bodin*) are intricate, and not vnderstood by vs, considering, that by the Astronomers owne obseruations to these times, all the points of the Zodiacke, and the Signes, haue wholly changed their stations.

To the Southerne people, they place *Saturne* as Lord and Gouvernor: To the Middle, *Iupiter*: To the Northerne, *Mars*. And these in generall. But because of particulars, they put *Venus* in coniunction with *Saturne*, *Mercurie* with *Iupiter*, and *Luna* with *Mars*. The Sunne as Moderator, they haue confined as indifferent.

The *Chaldeans* say, That the influence of *Saturne* operateth in apprehension: the influence of *Iupiter*, in action: and the influence of *Mars* in execution. The *Hebrewes* tearme *Saturne*, quiet, peaceable, contemplatiue; *Iupiter*, iust, wise, &c. And *Mars*, strong, and full of courage. *Saturne* (they say) is cold, *Mars* hote, and *Iupiter* moderate.

But the people of the *Middle Region* are neither borne so apt to the studying of Arcane Sciences, as are the Southerne men; nor so eagerly giuen to Mechanicall labours, as are the Northerne men: but in management of ciuile affaires they proue most eminent. Let any man conferre Time and Historie, and he shall find, that by this people the rudiments of Ciuile behauiour, of Lawes, good Customes, Statization, Merchandizing, Oratorie, and Dialect, haue beene bettered, if not inuented. And no maruaile: for *Iupiter* and *Mercurie* are said to be the Schoole-maisters of Sciences, and they that are borne vnder either, are exceeding apt thereto of their proper inclinations. Witnesse *Asia*, *Gracia*, *Assyria*, *Italie*, *France*, and the higher *Germanie* (which lyeth betweene the Pole and the Equator, from the 40. degree to the 50.) From hence the greatest Empires, the best Iudges, the wisest Lawyers, the eloquentest Orators, the skilfullest Merchants, and finally, the most exquisite Historians, and Actors of Comedies, that euer were, haue proceeded. In *Africa* haue none such beene found: In *Scythia*, fewer, no, not one, *Anacharsis* excepted.

Thus hath God and Nature decreed, That the *Scythian* (or Northerne-man) should carrie the reputation of *Strength*; the Southerne-man, the prayse of *Contemplation*; and the people inhabiting betweene both, the *Attributes of Wisedome*. And yet in all places (according to their Scituations) shall you find, some more strong, some
more

more contemplatiue, and some more wise. *Sed à particulari non est silogizare.*

Of East, and West, what more can be spoken? To places paralell, the Sunne neither riseth, nor falleth. When it approacheth the South with vs, (being about noone-tide) then is it said to fall, by the Easterne people; and contrariwise, then to rise, by the Southerne. And therefore, as well to reconcile the doubts of the *Auncients*, as to satisfie the *Curious*, in these vnreuealed workes of God, and his seruant Nature; the Moderne Cosmographers haue beene bold to suppose, the finite limitation of the East, to determine in the Islands of the *Molucca*; and of the West, in the *Hesperides*. For herein (say they) standeth the centre of the Globe, the Meridian of both Islands being 180. degrees distant one from another. On the other halfe of the Globe lyeth *America*, diuided from either angle by so immensible a tract of Sea, that it deserueth by it selfe, peculiar Bounds of East and West.

As for that great Globe (commonly tearmed *Australis*) I had rather say with *Bodin*, That as yet, it is better set forth for shew, then for certaintie.

And therefore, in excuse of ouer-sight to be objected to the *Auncients*, in attributing peculiar influences to diuersities of Climates, as the North-east, North-west, South-east, or South-west; let all be referred to the operation of the cardinall points of neereſt ſcituation, and all (without doubt) may passe for tollerable construction.

Of the World, and the greatest Princes therein.

IT now remaineth, that I vndertake the second branch of Obseruation; which is, to relate vnto our Traueller, of the greatest Princes and Potentates, which at this day sway the world.

First therefore, let him vnderstand, that one Prince obtaineth reputation ouer another, eyther by largenesse of *Territorie*, and *Casuall advantage*; or from *multitudes of Men*, and their *Valour*; and that consisting in the qualitie of their weapons, and their vse; from *Riches*; the *Opportunitie of Scituation*; or from *Occasions*.

The enlarging of *Dominion*, is the vniting and establishing of diuers Territories vnder one Soueraigne government: whereunto is necessarily required such numbers of men, and those not mercinarie, if it may be auoided,

auoided, as may exceed the fatall dangers and doubtfull chances, incident to casualties. For small numbers are soone consumed by diseases, or oppressed by a more mighty enemy; ouerthrowne in one battell, or extenuated by a long war: to which inconueniences great numbers and populous Nations are not so subiect. By these aduantages, the *Barbarians*, the *Egyptians*, the *Assyrians*, and the *Persians*, haue for the most part brought their attempts to happy ends. The *Romaines* (if in respect of their Honor) they did not ordinarily vse huge Armies, yet they alwaies preuailed, by reason of their populous territories, or their indefatigable continuance; being thereby able the second and third time to re-inforce their Legions, and finally with fresh supplies to overcome their enemies, being weakned with ouercomming. And to multiply and maintaine these numbers, (as they sometimes receiued into their territories their very enemies,) so at other times, they sent forth Colonies of their owne people. By meanes whereof, and other such like policies, they grew to such multitudes, that in the eight yeare of reigne of the Emperour *Claudius*, the people were numbered to bee sixe millions; a number at this present, not to bee found within the bounds of all *Italy*: whereby they became conquerors of the parts of the world then discovered. Conquest (say I) vndertaken by them, as much in regard of *their numbers*, as of *their valour*.

True *Valour*, consisteth, partlie in iudicious apprehension, (whereby both conuenient opportunities are discerned and entertained, and all difficulties discovered and preuented:) and partly, in the forward resolution of the minde: by coniunction of which two Vertues, great enterprizes are vndertaken with good successe; dangers almost ineuitable made light, and weighty attempts, brought to happy conclusions. Of these two I doe not know which to preferre as most necessarie, and of greatest importance; but most certaine it is, that the one without the other, little auaieth, to the atchieuing of any matter worthy enterprize. For wisdom without courage, may rather be termed subtilty, then iudicious carriage: and courage without discretion, is rather furious rashnesse, then true valour; neither let any man suppose, that from wiliness without force, nor force without iudgement, can proceed any proiect of worthy consideration. For all disleignes which haue in them greatnesse, haue also in them difficulty and hardnesse, and to master vneasie actions, it is necessary both to vse iudgement in fore-seeing of dangers, and courage to overcome them, once vnder-taken. These two ioyned in one man, or in one Nation, are apt meanes to raise their fortunes

fortunes about their neighbours. As we see amongst birds, the Eagle; among beasts, the Lyon; among Fishes, the Dolphin; (in whom doe appeare some shadowes of wit and courage) are esteemed, as it were, Princes about their Fellow-creatures.

But if any man affirme, that true Iudgement cannot be seuered from true valour, yet giue me leaue to affirme, that ordinarily the one doth appeare more discernable about the other in diuers subiects. For we may note in *Phillip* King of the *Macedons*, and in *Amilcar* the *Carthaginian*, great foresight and wisdom, and in *Alexander* and *Haniball* (their sonnes) more courage and valour; In *Fabritius*, iudicious warinesse; in *Marcellus*, couragious forwardnesse: both which were a like fearefull and disastrous to the valiant *Haniball*.

Yet I say not, but some actions are better dealt in, by the one, then by the other. For generally, to conquer and win, courage is more auailable then wit; but to establish and keepe that which is gotten, discretion is more to be desired, then it; as may well be discerned in *Spaniards*, who haue surer settled themselves in that which they haue gained by their warinesse and iudgement, then did the French by their furie and hazard.

But, if any man should vrge mee to speake my opinion, whether courage or wisdom bee more necessarily to bee required; I would giue my consent with courage. My reason is, that wisdom is giuen but to few, and that must be gotten by trauell, by long time and study, whereas courage naturally is by diuers meanes, and vpon sodaine casualties imparted and dispersed in the mindes of many: which many hauing to deale with few, will casually finde oportunitie to vanquish and overcome. As we read of the *Gothes*, the *Vandals*, the *Tartarians*, and the *Turkes*, who with courage onely haue atchieued great conquests, and haue brought passe such enterprises, as a man would haue thought vnpossible: The reason whereof is, that their sodaine and speedie mouings, and their vnexpected boldnesse, hath confounded the Counsels, and amazed the iudgements of the wisest Commanders. Besides, in sodaine hurly-burles of warre it is commonly seene, that courage openeth more gaps, and affoordeth more reliefe, then policy; for that in such cases, reason is iealous, suspicious and fearefull, & men stand as it were amazed at the greatnesse of the present danger: whereas courage doth oft-times gather strength in extreame dilpaire. *Una salus victis nullam sperare salutem.*

Yea, it is commonly seene, that those people who are more commended Wisdom. for their wit and policy, then for their courage and valour, haue giuen place

place to those who haue beene more esteemed for their resolution, then for their skilfulnesse: as the *Greekes* and the *Macedons* doe at this day to the *Turks*: the *Gauls* of old, to the *French*: the *Egyptians*, to the *Persians*: the *Sarazens*, to the *Chaldeans*: and other Nations, to the *Persians* and *Parthians*. Yea, it is the received opinion, That the *French* did range *Italie* at their pleasure vnder *Charles* the eight, and gaue them the Law, because in those times the *Italian* Princes did wholly giue themselves to the studie of good Letters.

Valour.

Whereupon I dare boldly affirme, That those States which doe consist of a people, whereof one part is inclined to wit and policie, and another part to fiercenesse, doe, for the most part, liue in little quiet: of which qualitie are those Countries, whereof one part is plaine and fruitfull, and the other mountainous and barren; because the inhabitants of the plaine Countrey, by reason of the commodities thereof, and the easinesse of Commerce and Traffique, and by the experience thereof ensuing, are vsually circumspect and wittie: whereas on the contrarie, the inhabitants of Mountaines, by reason of the sharpenesse of the place, which doth harden them, and by the bluntnesse of their manners, which doth accompanie them, they become iealous, of greater courage, and stubborn resolutions. Such is *Spaine*: where, the *Biskaines*, the *Arragons*, and other people, inhabiting the Mountaines, and remote places of the Kingdome, are of such condition, that, by reason of their manie Priviledges, they liue vnder a King, but as if they were at libertie, and in a free State: whereas the *Castilians* and *Andoluzians*, whose Countrey is more plaine and fruitfull, apply themselves willingly to the pleasure and command of the same Kings and Soueraigne. Neither can there be alledged a truer reason of the troubles of the Kingdome of *Naples*, then the different qualities of the Country: as some, Mountainous; some, Plaine; some, Fruitfull; some, Rockie; of which it doth altogether consist, and whereupon doth proceed the difference of minds and manners in the inhabitants; as, some rude, some sauage, some courteous, and some ciuile: whereby they continually disagreeing among themselves, haue oftentimes falne together by the eares; one, betaking himselfe to the protection of one Prince; and the other, to the tuition of another. By contrarie reason, *Lumbardie* (because it doth consist of pleasant champion) hath beene more quiet, and at peace, then *Thuscane*, which is diuided into Mountaines and Valleys. Also, in a Citie where the Citizens are of equall courage and ranke, peace and quiet is hardly maintained: which doth appeare by *Florence* and *Genna*, Cities replenished with men, excellent for their gifts and greatnesse of mind, and therefore

therefore little concord to be found amongst them. On the contrary, the countries which are plain and of an vniforme scite, are, by reason of the conformitie of their maners, easily reduced and kept vnder one gouernment, without any difficultie: as *Polonia, Lituania, Hungarie, Egypt, France* and *Bohemia*.

Moreouer, there is a certaine fiercenesse, or rather fury, which cometh neere to valor: for that excesse of boldnesse, wherewith the *Gauls*, and afterward the *Frenchmen*, haue atchieued notable exploits, is in some sorte commendable. But withall it is worthie of obseruation, that such like acquisitions are commonly of small continuance. Whereupon it was well said; *Moderation to be the Mother of continuance, to States and Kingdomes*. The *Swissers* shewed themselues notable heerein, especially in the wars of *Nauar*; insomuch as *James Trinuiz* reporteth, that their battell seemed rather to consist of Giants, than of ordinary Soldiours. Neither hath any Nation euer dealt more at aduenture, or hath vsed more boldnesse and blind fury, than the *Portugals*, whose Voyages beyond the Cape of *Good Hope*, and the Straights of *Sinca-Pura*; their conquests of *Ormuz*, of *Goa*, of *Malacca*, and the *Moluccos*; the defence of *Cochin*, of *Diu*, of *Chaul*, and of *Goa*, are more true and commendable, than in reason likely to haue prospered.

The qualities of weapons, and the order of discipline, are important instruments of this valor. The *Macedons* atchieued great conquests by reason of their pikes, and by martialling their squadrons. The *Romans*, by the means of their piles or darts. The *Parthians* in old times; and now the *Turkes*, with their steele-bowes, the *English*, with their long-bowes, and the *Spaniards*, in the new world, with Horse and Harcubuze.

Treasure is an aduantage of great importance: forasmuch as there is nothing more necessary in warres, or of more vse in peace. By meanes hereof, the *Florentines* became Lords of a great part of *Tuscany*: they bought many Cities; they freed themselues from the incursions of diuers enemies; they maintained the wars many yeares against the *Pisans*, and against the prowesse of those peoples, and the power of those Princes, which did aid them; and at the last, brought that war to good end. By meanes hereof, the *Venetians* made themselues Lords of a good part of *Lumbardy*, and endured the forces of the King of *Hungary*, the Archduke of *Austria*, and of diuers other Princes. Whereby it appeareth, that money worketh two notable effects, to the augmentation and continuance of the greatnesse of kingdomes & estates: The one, to provide and gather forces, and those being gotten, to vphold and maintain, with supplies of Soldiours, victuals, munition and armes. The other, that it

doth offer vs opportunity, (if not to weaken and vanquish the enemy, hauing gotten the aduantage) yet at least, it doth enable vs to endure & withstand him; that by drawing out the war in length, wee may make him weary of continuance, & giues vs benefit of time. By this temporizing, the *Venetians* being ouerthrowne in all places by the league of *Cambray*, in the end became Conquerors. So that, as to him that hath a populous army, and finds himselfe mighty and strong, it is most conuenient to hasten the encounter, and to fight without prolonging of time; for delay (the ouerthrow of many actions) can afford him no other, but losse, sickenesse, infection, scarcity, famine, mutinies, and dissolution of forces: So for him, that is better furnished with money, then with men, it is most aduantageous, to prolong the warre, and to stand vpon the defensue; for in the end, his money may gaine him victory.

Situation.

The aduantage of seite, is of much importance, for the defending or enlarging of dominion, and doth chiefly consist in this: that it be conuenient for the making of an assault, and vneasie to be againe assaulted. For a Countrey being as it were naturally fortified, hath easie means to make conquests and get victory, to the enlargement of their owne dominions, and to the ouerthrow of anothers. Of this qualitie are the situations of *Spaine* and *Araby*, for both these are (as it were) *peny-Insulæ*, hauing their greatest parts incompassed with the sea, whereby they may assaile the Countries neere adioyning, and cannot without great difficulty be assaulted againe. The one hath dangerous shores without harbors, and is inuironed with mountaines (hauing few and secret passages) the other, is inclosed with sands and deserts; Of like quality is *Italy*: And among the Islands, *England*. But this aduantage of situation I hold not sufficiēt (of itself) to effect any notable exploit: for besides, there is required plenty of victuals, store of munition, armes, horses, and diuers other necessities, without which, there is no hope to accomplish any famous expedition. Moreouer, such a disposition and qualitie of the countrey is necessarily to be required, that the foresaid habiliments may easily bee brought together, and remoued to places, whether occasion shall command. And although those which possesse the mountaines and higher places, may with aduantage come down vpon the plaine and low countries, and by reason of the craggednesse and hard passages of their country, can hardly be assaulted againe; yet haue not such people done any thing which may worthily commend them.

For the mountaines be ordinarily long and narrow, or at the least, much broken and diuided amongst themselves (which must needs hinder the speedy drawing together and vnitng of their forces and necessities)

saries) againe, are they vnprovided of victuals, and of all other things requisite for the warres, and therefore, altogether vnable to continue in action. So that they war rather after the manner of robbers and theeves, then of true souldiery: It may also bee added, that the mountain-men cannot liue any long time, without entercourse and trafficke with the men of the plaine Countrey. And therefore if vpon any attempt, they doe not preuaile at the first brunt; their best course will be, to capitulate with their enemies, and to returne home againe, although with losse; as did the *Heluetij* at the ouerthrow of *Mount S. Claud.*

So we may see, that the *Englishmen* which inhabita plaine and plentifull soile, haue alwaies preuailed against the *Scots* and *Welshmen*, who vpon presumptions of their naturall scituations, haue diuers times molested them. For the plaine Countrey by reason of the fruitfulnessse, doth minister all things requisite for war, and to defray charges; conueniency to ioine forces, and being gotten together, able long time to maine-taine them: Whereas on the contrary, the Mountaines (by reason of their barrennessse) affoord no prouision for a long journey, nor are any way able to beare the charge of any notable enterprise.

Whereupon it doth proceed, that small Islands hauing the foresaid qualities of Scituation, haue neuer attained any great Soueraignty; because the aduantages of the Land are farre greater than those of the Sea. Moreouer, their commaund cannot be great, vnlesse it be enlarged by meanes of the firme Land; for Islands hold the same proportion with the Continent, that the part doth with the whole. Besides, they be for the most part long & narrow, as *Candy*, *Ciprus*, *Spagniola*, *Cuba*, *S. Lawrence*, and *Sumatra*, and therefore cannot readily bring their forces together. Neither will I sticke to say, that Islands (if not strong in shipping, as *England* and the *Netherlands*) although they may with aduantage come forth and assaile others, are notwithstanding, as it were Cities without walles, laid open to the spoile of all Invadors. As it happened to *Sicil* being assailed by the *Athenians* and the *Lacedemonians*, and afterwards by the *Carthaginians*, and the *Romans*. But the Prouinces of the firme Land, being for the most part of a proportion more round, & square, haue their forces continually near together, and to be speedily vnited; and therefore more ready and apt for opposition.

Yet to small purpose are all these foresaid aduantages, if opportunity giue not aide thereunto. This opportunity, is a meeting and concurring of diuers cadences, which at one instant doe make a matter very easie, and at another time, being ouerslipped, it will bee impossible, or at least very hard, to bring to like facilitie. Wherefore amongst many

and diuers, I will here note the most principall. The first groweth by the basenesse and negligence of the Neighbour-Princes, arising either by reason of a naturall iealousie defect and dulnesse, or of too long a peace. So *Cesar* possesse himselfe of *Italy* and of the Common-wealth, being ready, and in Armes, the State being disarmed, not looking for any such innouation. So the *Barbarians* subdued the Empire of *Rome*: The *Arabians* the Empire of the East, of *Egypt*, and of *Spaine*: *Charles* the eight King of *France* gained *Italy*: The *Portugals*, *India*; The *Castilians*, the new world; and *Soliman*, the Kingdome of *Hungary*.

Petty Seigniorics.

The diuision of the neighbouring States, either into Common-wealths, or into petty Seigniories, and those of small power, gaue courage to the *Romanes* to make themselves Lords of *Italy*, and made an easie passage for the *Venetians*, into *Lumbardy*. This also made the attempt of *Thuscā* light vnto the *Florentines*, and no lesse that of *Barbary* to the *Castilians*; which they would haue found very hard, if either the one, or the other, had expected them with armed forces.

The variance and iarring of the adioyning Princes did open the way to the *Turkes* to enter so farre into *Christendome*, and with little trouble to inuest himselfe of many kingdomes therein. So *Amurath* the third, presuming vpon the ciuill discordes of the Princes of the bloud Royall of *Persia*, made that attempt with great aduantage. So againe the *Persian*, vpon the differents of the *Scrivano*, and the *Bashawes* of *Siria*, hath resumed the aduantage, and accordingly prospered. Neither doth the whole mischiefe arise out of these intestine iarres onely, but in all factions one part will bee sure to intreat the aide of some forraigne Prince against the other: than which, no man can haue a better occasion, because then he cometh armed into the owners house at his owne request. So the *Romanes*, set foot in *Sicil*, being cald in by the *Mamertines*: In *Greece* by the *Athenians*: In *Numidia* by the *Sonnes* of *Micipsa*: In *Prouince* by the *Marfilians*: In *France* by the *Hedui*, & so from time to time, by diuers others. So *Amurath* the first King of *Turks* got hold in *Europe*, being requested in aide by the Emperour of the East, being then in warre with the Princes of *Greece*. So *Soliman*, in *Hungarie*, being intreated by *Queene Isabell*, and afterwards by King *Iohn*. So the *Aragons*, in the kingdome of *Naples*, being drawne thither by *Queene Ione* the second: and so *Henry* the second King of *France*, made himselfe Lord of three great Cities of the Empire

of

Of Trauel.



Asfly, sithence *Plato*, one of the Day-starres of that knowledge, which then but dawning, hath since, shone out in cleerer brightnesse; thought nothing fitter, for the bettering of our vnderstanding, then Trauell: aswell by hauing a conference with the wiser sort in all kinds of learning, as by the Eiesight of those things, which otherwise a man cannot attaine vnto, but by Tradition. (A sandy foundation, either in matter of Science, or Conscience.) Let me also in this place bee bold to informe you, that all purpose to Trauell, if it be not, *ad voluptatem solum, sed ad utilitatem*, argueth an industrious and generous minde. Base and vulgar spirits houer still about home: Those are more Noble and Diuine, that imitate the Heauens, and ioy in motion.

He therefore that intends to Trauel out of his owne Countrey, must likewise resolute to Trauell out of his Countrey fashion, and indeed out of himselfe: that is, out of his former intemperate feeding, disordinate drinking, thrift-lesse gaming, fruit-lesse time-spending, violent exercising, and irregular misgouerning whatsoever. He must determine, that the end of his Trauell, is his ripening in knowledge; and the end of his knowledge, is the seruice of his Country, which of right, challengeth the better part of vs.

This is done, by preservation of himself from Hazards of Trauell, & Obseruatiō of what he heares and sees in his Trauelling. The Hazards, are two: of the Minde, and of the Body: that, by the infection of Errors, this by the corruption of Manners. For who so drinketh of the poysonous cup of the one, or tasteth the sower liquor of the other, looſeth the true rellish of Religion and Vertue, bringeth home a leproous Soule, and a tainted body, retayning nothing but the shame of either, or repentance of both: whereof in my Trauell I haue seene some examples, and by them made vse, to preuent both mischiefes, which I will briefly shew: And first of the better part.

Concerning the Trauellers Religion, I teach not what it should bee, (being out of my Element) nor enquire what it is, (being out of my Commission;) only my hopes are, he be of the Religion here established: and my aduise is, he be therein well settled; and that howsoever his imagination shall be carried in the voluble Sphere of diuers mens discourses; yet his inmost thoughts (like lines in a Circle shall alwaies

concenter in this immooueable point : *Not to alter his first Faith* : For I know, that, as all innouation is dangerous in a State; so is this change in the little Common-wealth of a Man. And it is to be feared, that hee which is of one Religion in his youth, and of another in his man-hood, will in his age be of neither.

Wherefore, if my Traueller will keepe this Bird safe in his bosome, he must neither be inquisiue after other mens Religions, nor prompt to discouer his owne. For I hold him vnwise, who in a strange country, will either shew his minde, or his monie. A true friend is as hard to finde as a Phœnix, of which the whole world affoord but one, and therefore let not this my Traueller, bee so blind as to thinke to find him euery where, in his owne imagination. *Damon* and *Pithias*, *Pilades* and *Orestes* are all dead, or else it is but a dead Storie. And therefore let him remember that Nature alters, like humours and complexions, euery minute of an hower.

Of Religion.

And as I would not haue him to change, so would I wish him, to beware how he heare any thing repugnant thereto : for as I haue tied his tongue, so must I stop his eares, least they be open to the smooth incantations of an insinuating Seducer, or the subtle arguments of a sophistical aduersary. To this effect, I must precisely forbid him the fellowship or company of one sort of people in generall; those are the Iesuites, vnderminers and inueiglers of greene wits, seducers of men in matter of Faith, and subuersers of men in matter of State; making of both a bad Christian, and a woorse Subiect. These men I would haue my Traueller neuer heare, except in the Pulpit; for being eloquent, they speake excellent language; and being wise, (therefore best knowing how to speake to best purpose) they seldome, or neuer handle matter of controuersie.

As for other orders of Religion, Friars or Monkes, or whatsoever, let him vse them for his bettering, either in matter of language, or other knowledge. They are good companions, they are not so dangerous; they talke more of their cheere, then of their Church; of their feasts, then their Faith; of good wine, then good workes; of Courtisans, then Christianitie. The reason is, because few of them are learned, manie carelesse in their profession, almost all, dissolute in their conuersation.

Of Persons & Places.

I haue excepted against the Persons : I will now protest against the places. These are, *Rome*, *Rhemes*, and *Domay*, but these two last, being out of all ordinary road of Trauell; I say, hee that goes that way, goes double out of his way, and shall neither haue this discourse for his direction, nor me for his Companion. Let me onelie say of *Rome*, because it

it is the Seminarie and Nursery of English Fugitiues, and yet a place, most worthy to bee seene, (*vel antiquitatis causa, vel nouitatis*) that it is suspected of all, knowne to manie, and proued by some, to be dangerous that way.

Thus much of the persons and places haue I noted, he that shall meet with others of like condition and danger, let him see and shun. It remaineth I speake of bettering the minde, by the knowledge and vnderstanding of tongues: for, as for learning the liberall Sciences, hee hath much better meanes at home; their manner of teaching, and orders of Vniuersities, being far inferior to ours.

For the attayning therefore of Language, it is conuenient, that hee Of Language. make choice of the best places: These are, *Orleans* for the French; *Florence* for the Italian; and *Lipsicke* for the Dutch tongues: for in these places is the best Language spoken. And as we obserue a difference of speech in our Country; of the North, from the South; and the West, frō both; or as we haue learned of the Greeks, that they had fīue seuerall kinds of *Dialects*: so differ they infinitely in *Germany*, but that of *Misnia* is the best, where *Lipsicke* stands. More in *France*, where the *Piccard* speakes one, the *Norman* another, the *Brittan* his, the *Gascoigne* his, the *Prouenciall* and *Sauoyard* theirs, the *Inlanders* theirs: but of all these, the *Orleanois* is the best. As also in *Italy*, the *Romaine* hath one kinde of phrase and pronounciation; the *Neapolitan*, another; the *Venetian* a third; the *Bergamasco*, a woorse; but the best of all, is the *Tuscan*, where *Florence* stands: yet I prescribe not these places so precisely, as that he may not liue in others, and learne the Language as well: for in *Tuscany*, *Siena*, and *Prato*, are some places, where the speech is as good, as that of *Florence*, and more retired, and of lesse charge: therefore fitter for some, whose proportion for expence is but small. So haue ye in *Germany*, *Hydleburge* as good as *Lipsicke*. And in *France*, *Blois* as good as *Orleans*.

Hauiug made choice of the place, his next care must bee to make Of Reading. choice of a good Reader, whereof he shall find in Trauel great scarcifity. Let good acquaintance, or good Fortune, bring him to the best.

For were it, that there were good Readers, it were here needlesse to set downe a course of learning: for he might haue a better direction from them. But for the cause alleadged, I will presume to aduise him, that the most cōpedious way of attayning the tongue (whether *French*, or *Italian*) is by Booke; I meane for the knowledge. For, as for the speaking, hee shall neuer attaine it, but by continuall practise and conuersation. He shal therefore first learne his Nounes & Verbs by heart, & specially

specially the Articles, and their vses, with the two words, *Sum* and *Habeo*: for in these, consist the greatest obseruation of that part of speech. Let not your Reader, read any Booke of Poetry at the first, but some other kinde of Stile; and I thinke meetest, some modern Comedy.

Let his Lecture consist, more in questions and answers, either of the one or the other, then in the Readers continued speech; for this is for the most part idle and fruitlesse: by the other, many errors and mistakings, either in pronounciation, or sence, are reformed.

After three moneths, he shall quit his Lectures, and vse his Maister, onely to walke with, and discourse, first the one, and then the other: for thus shall he obserue the right vse of the phrase in his Reader, heare his owne faults reprooued, and grow ready and prompt in his owne deliuey: which with the right straine of the accent, are the two hardest things in language.

Pruiately he may for his pleasure read Poetry, especially, if at his returne, he meane to Court it: but for his profit, if he be a man of meanes, and likely hereafter to beare charge in his Country: or if a man of indevours, and willing to prefer himselfe by seruice, I wish him, to Historie: If one that would make a fortune by the wars, I commend him (beside Historie) to the Mathematiques, discourses of warre, and Bookes of fortification.

To this Reading he must adde a continual talking, and exercising of his speech with all sorts of people, with boldnesse, and much assurance in himselfe: for I haue often obserued in others, that nothing hath more preiudiced their profiting, then their owne diffidence and distrust. To this I would haue him adde an often writing, either of matter of translation, or of his owne inuention, where againe is requisite to the Readers eye, to censure and correct: for who so cannot write the language hee speakes, I count he hath but halfe the language.

These then, are the two only meanes of obtaining a language, of speaking and writing: but the first is the chiefeest, and therefore I must aduertise the Traueller of the one thing, which in other Countries, is a greater hinderer thereof: namely, the often haunting, and frequenting of our owne Country-men, whereof, he must haue a speciall care, neither to distaste them by a too much retirednesse, nor to hinder himselfe by too much familiarity.

It is thought also, that one language is a hinderance to the pronounciation (if not learning) of another: which if it be in any, is in the pronouncing, not the learning: and in the *Italian* to the *French*, not contrarie. To this effect therefore, I would wish the Traueller, first to spend

spend his time in *France*, which language will much helpe to the vnderstanding, and nothing hinder the speaking of the *Italian*, especially in vs; who of all other Nations pronounce this language best, next themselves, by their owne confession.

There is also another reason, why I would haue him see *Italy* last, because we best remember the last impressions; and I would rather hee should come home *Italinate*, then *Frenchified*: I speake of both in the better sence: for the *French* is stirring, bold, respectlesse, inconstant, suddaine: The *Italian*, stayed, demure, respectiue, graue, aduised. I would wish the Traueller therefore (because I speake now of bettering his minde by conuersation) obserue with iudgement, what he seeth in these Nations of *Italy*, *France* and *Germany*, (for further I guide him not) and out of their better parts, leauing the woorse to themselves, gather so much to his vse, as may make him a complete Gentleman. For example, he shal obserue, that the *French* hath valour: but he hath withall, *Vanitatem & Lewitatem*. The *Italian* hath a discreet fashion of carriage; but, with this he hath *Proteruiam & libidinem*: The *Dutch* hath an honest and reall manner of dealing, but *non sine commessatione & ebrietate*. Let him now of these three, learne their three vertues, so shall he come home a Valiant, Wise and Honest man. This is a better purchase then the *Italian* huffe of the shoulder, or the *Dutch* puffe with the pot, or the *French* Apishnesse, which many Trauellers bring home.

Touching conference, obserue these rules: For the time, let it be, when you giue leaue to your mind to recreate your spirits, that you may the better conceiue what you heare, and best digest things subiect to your vnderstanding. Let therefore the houres be in the morning, and in the Evening, when the senses are fresh, and the wits quiet. But if you finde your senses dull with melancholy passions, quicken them shortly with some good society. Touching the persons, let them be of some good yeares for the most part, though sometime to heare a young man, will proue no preiudice. Obserue opportunity, sometime discoursing with the learned, concerning Historic, the better to benefit memorie by application of examples. At other times, frequent the companie of the expert, that by noting their obseruations, and suting them to particuler iudgement, you may discern the difference betweene Art and Nature, experience and learning. Sometime discourse with the souldier, that in hearing of a Drumme, you bee not daunted in a skirmish. Conferre much with Trauellers, that by their discourse of foren natures, you may the better discern of domesticall disposition: Forget not the Diuines for the comfort

Of Conference,

of

of your soules, nor neglect the reading of Scripture for the better direction of your life and conscience. Talke not with women vpon idle occasions, lest you trouble their wittes, or displease their humors. To conferre with fooles is friuolous; with the wicked dangerous, but with the honest, auailable; for they are vertuous; and with the wise, profitable; for they are gracious.

Of the Body.

It now followeth, that I speake of the Body, which is preserued in good state, by diet and exercise: For his diet, I neither prescribe what, nor how much to cate, I presume him able before he set out, to keepe his nose from his fleue, feed himselfe, and be his owne caruer: Onely, I must aduise him to beware of their Wines, which agree not with some natures, and are hurtfull to all, in those hotter Countries, except sparinglietaken, or well qualified with water. As for his viandes, I feare not his sursetting; his prouision is neuer so great, but yee may let him loose to his allowance. For I would not haue him liue at his owne prouision, (especiallie in *France*) it will hinder his profiting, and onely further him, with some few kitchen and market phrases. Let him bee still in pension with others, so they be such, whose language he learneth. His care shal be the lesse, his profit the greater, and his expence nothing the more. I shal not need to tell him before, what his diet shall be, his appetite wil make it better then it is: for he shall be stil kept sharpe: onelie of the differēce of diets, he shal obserue thus much; that, that of *Germany* is full, or rather, fulsome; that of *France*, allowable; that of *Italy*, tollerable; With the *Dutch*, he shall much meat, ill dressed; with the *French*, lesse, but well handled; with the *Italian*, neither the one, nor the other.

Of Exercises.

As for his Exercises, there is danger but of one in *France*, & this is Tennis play: this is dāgerous (if vsed with too much violence) for the body: & (if followed with too much diligence) for the purse, a maine point of the Trauellers care. There is another exercise to be learned in *France*, because there are better Teachers: and the French fashion is in most request with vs, and that is Dancing. This I meane to my Traueller that is yong, and meanes to follow the Court; otherwise, I hold it needlesse, and in some, ridiculous.

These former therefore are two exercises, which I permit, but with their limitation. There remains two other, to which I perswade: those tollerable, these commendable; those of grace and complement, these of vse and necessity, to him that will retorne ablie quallified for his Countries seruice in warre, and his owne defence in priuate quarrell. These are Riding, and Fencing. His best place for the first (excepting *Naples*) is in *Florence*: and for the second (excepting *Rome*) is in *Padua*.

I must

I must now aduise him, of such things as are without himselfe, Of outward but within the compasse of his owne care: Those are Money, Bookes, necessities, Apparell.

Money, the sinewes of war, and soule of Trauell, as at home, so abroad, is the man. They say he should haue two bagges, the one of Crownes, the other of Patience: but howsoeuer this last be empty, I could wish that other were still full: whereout he must proportion his yearely expence not exceeding the limits of his propounded allowance. If hee Trauell without a Seruant, fourescore pounds sterling is a competent proportion, except he learne to ride: if he maintaine both these charges, he can be allowed no lesse then one hundred and fiftie pounds: and to allow aboue two hundred, were superfluous, and to his hurt. And thus ratably, according to the number he keepeth.

The ordinary rate of his expence, is this: ten gold Crownes a moneth Of Money, his owne dyet, eight for his man (at the most) two crownes a moneth his Fencing, as much for Dauncing, and no lesse for his Reading, and fiteene crownes monthly for his Riding: but this exercise he shall discontinue all the heat of the yeare. The remainder of his 150. pound, I allow him for Apparell, Bookes, Trauelling, Charges, Tennis-play, and other extraordinary expences.

Let him haue foure billes of exchange with him, for the whole yeare, with Letters of aduise, to be paid him quarterly, by equall portions: so shall he not want his money at the day, nor be driuen to those shifts, which I haue seene diuers put to, by long expecting letters out of *England*, which either their friends forgetfulnesse, or the Carriers negligence, or the miscarrying of their letters, by intercepting or other accident, hath caused.

If he carry ouer money with him (as by our Law he cannot carry much) let it be in double Pistolets, or French crownes of waight: by these he is sure to sustaine losse in no place: and in *Italy* to gaine aboue twelue pence in the pound.

Concerning his bookes, let them be few or none, to carry from place Of Bookes. to place: or if any, that they be not such as are prohibited by the Inquisition: least, when his Male is searched (as it is at euery Cities gate in *Italy*) they bring him to trouble: whatsoeuer they be, they will put him to charge, for he payeth Tole for them at euery such Towne. I would onely haue him to carry the papers of his owne obseruation; especially a Iornale, wherein from day to day, he shall set downe, the diuers Provinces he passeth, with their commodities; the Towns, with their manner of buildings; the names, and benefit of the Riuers; the distance of places;

places; the condition of the soyle, manners of the people, and what else his eye meeteth by the way remarqueable.

When he commeth to the place of his residence, let him furnish himselfe, with the best Bookes of that profession, to which he addieth his study, or other he shal find, not to be got heere in *England*; and at his departure, send them home by his Merchants meanes.

Of Apparrell.

I must aduise aswell for his Apparrell, as for his Bookes: that vpon his iourney, he be not ouer charged with ouermuch luggage; euen a light burthen farre carried, is heauy: beside, somewhat is likewise to be paid for these, at the entry of euery Citty gate. Let him also take heed, that the apparell he weares, be in fashion in the place where he resideth: for it is no lesse ridiculous to weare clothes of our fashion among them, then at our returne to vse still their fashion among vs. A notorious affectation of many Trauellers.

Manners of Nations.

And lastly, because it is not amisse, to be acquainted as well with the diuers natures of Nations, soyles and people, as with theorique of instructions: first, I counsell my Traueller, not to make any long abode in any Region, which he findeth not agreeable to his naturall constitution; neither let him be ignorant of such comforts, as may proue best preseruatiues for his health: for although I hold it not best discretion to vse the body to much physicke, yet in causes of extremity, to know the helpe of Nature, I hold it no vanity.

Nature of Soiles.

For the Soile (wherein Townes and Cities are seated) if it be sandy or grauelly ground, and neere vnto some fresh brookes, springs, or riuer, it may probably promise health, both to the inhabitant and stranger: but if the earth be moorish, and stand much vpon springs, and low towards the Sea, it may prooue healthfull to the inhabitant, yet hurtfull to the stranger, comming from a more healthfull Soile.

Of people.

For the people, let him choose chiefly, and longest to stay amongst those kinde of Nations, who stand most affected to the Nature of his native countrie, & let him be neuer perswaded that his neere neighbours are his greatest friends; for you shall often finde no greater an enemy, than within the wals of thine owne house.

Of the Spaniard.

I will first speak of the *Spaniard*: Him you shal finde in nature proud, yet cunning. He wil ordinarily vse a kind of curtesie, and seeme wise touching the world, and politique in plotting his will: valiant where he may either purchase riches, or reputation: ielous of his mistris, enuious of worthinesse, malicious vpon suspicion, and bloody in execution.

Of the Italian.

The *Italian* is more curteous, but no lesse cunning, affable where he sees to affect, but deadly dangerous, where he growes ielous: thrifue

thristie in his purse, valiant in his kind, and onely bountifull to his masters. Sharpely conceiued; of fresh memory, and for the most part excellently spoken. Many of them are good Schollers, some very good horsemen, and for such Courts as their Dukedomes afford, you shal find many fine gentlemen. Their Ladies and chiefe women for the most part are painted, but wittie in speech, modest in carriage, and where they affect, very bountifull. The chiefe men (as the Lords, gouernors, and great magistrates, are commonly ambitious, couetous, and vitious. And if you haue the good-hap to come into their houses, you shall seeme to see the nature of a Diuell solacing in Paradise: For you shall obserue a stately house, richly furnished; a Lady fairely painted and gorgeously attired; you shall see a Garden full of sweet flowers and daintie fruits, a cage of singing birds, and perhaps a consort of sweet musique; a banquet of excessiue charge, and amidst all those, you shall see an olde sheep-biter with a nose too tedious for his face, his beard like the bristles of a Hog, with a slaueing lip, a bleare-eye, and of a swelling speech, courting of a comely Lady, and couching of a cold piece of comfort; being no lesse youthfull in desire, than aged in performance. But take heed that in too much eying of his Ladie, he grow not ieaious of your affection, and suspicious of her fauour, to the assured shortning of your daies, by a poysonsome trick of an *Italian sico*, when he pretendes most kinnesse.

For the yonger sort, rather follow their good exercises, than conferre with their capacities: and aboue all companie, auoid the haunting of brothell-houses, which are there most infinite in number, and common in vse. They will impaire your health, impeach your purse, abase your credite, and increase the ruine of your content and fortunes.

For *France*, you shall finde the people proud and phantasticall, The French-kinde but variable, ieaious in being a friend, and lost vpon a light man. humor, cunning in policy, and bloody in reuenge. The Noblesse commonly learned, the Soldior more desperate then valiant: much giuen to venery and irreligion; and making no conscience of abuse for the purchase of a comodity. The gouernors wise, the Marchant rich, and the pezant a poore slaue. The Ladies witty, but apish, and in their fancies, as humerous as amerous: few of them beautifull, and commonly all painted and deceitfull, except some few of rare worth; which may be the woonder of the countrie: And therefore as you find them, so let them haue their due honor. For *Germany*, you shall find The German. the

the Nobles and chiefe Gentlemen, either great Schollers, or valiant Soldiours; rather resolute to gaine honor, then proud of Authoritie: their Cities strong, and their Marchants very rich, and their countries well peopled. For their Ladies and Gentlewomen, by the grosse-nesse of their dyet, and too much delight in drinking and banqueting: they are for the most part a corpulent kinde of people; yet many of them strong & of big bone (as we commonly say) good bearers & good breeders. The yonger sort, as well men as women, very industrious, and the elder sort rather politique then Religious: there Lawes very seuer, and therefore the people in better order and obedience.

Of the Pole
laque.

For *Poland*, the Cities are strong, and the people rather wise than wealthy: the Gentlemen for the most part giuen to armes, and the peasant in much subiection to the Gentry. The Marchant rather couetous then honorable, and the Schollers rather beloued than aduanced: the women indifferent faire, and better witted than spoken: the old men studious, and the yonger sort seldome idle; little giuen to drinke, and as little accounting of honor, except it be in the field.

Of the Ne-
therlander
and Dane.

For the *Low-countries* and *Denmarke*, you shall find them much to agree in nature, but that *Denmarke* will admit a King, which I finde not willing in the *Low-countries*. Their Magistrates are rather wise by experience than by study; and the Soldior fitter for the Sea than the field. *Denmarke* is gouerned by the Kings law set downe: but the *Low-countries* haue diuers formes of Gouvernment, in a manner according to the disposition of the States and Gouvernors: much giuen to drinke, and yet seruing their times: politique in their gouernment: their olde men wise and couetous; their yong men thrifitie and industrious; and their Marchant very ambitious. For their religious, thinke of them as you finde them; I haue seene them much reuerenced, and well maintained. And as for their Ladies, they are wittie and of a good complexion; for the most part many of them are very faire, and much giuen to honor virtue; rather neate than proude in their attire; very kinde where they take affection.

The Mosco-
uite.

The *Moscouite* is proud, stately, malicious: and those which be slaues, are slaues indeede, especially when their Emperour, or Lord controlleth: Superstitious tending almost to idolatry; iealous, as hauing many wifes; and bad performers of promise; nor must you challenge him of the same; for the good which floweth from him, commeth commonly from the fountaine of free will. Their women are very priuate, fearefull to offend; but once lasciuious, intolerably wanton, beastly, idle, and ill attended.

The

The *Greekes* are merry, lyers, blasphemors, promise-breakers, bug-
gers, strong membred and black haired. Their women are stately,
comely of person, proud without doores; no louers of dalliance, yet de-
sirous of the company of men; cleanly in washing and shauing them-
selues: whom the *Italians* imitate, as also doe the East hot Countries, by
reason the company of many men, may grow otherwise to great incon-
ueniences; mercenary, fantastick in apparell, and louing those, who
speake their language. The Grecian.

The *Turke* is a warlike proud man; a scorner of other Nations and
languages; no idle talker, or doer of any thing superfluous: a iudiciall
sound fellow, hot and venerious; comely of person; maiestick in gate;
a slaue to his Emperor, and a louer of *Mahomets* race and Religion.
Their women small of stature; for the most part of good complexions,
and not to be seene or spoken to abroad: ialous, reuengefull (when
they haue opportunity) lasciuious within doores, or in their baths; very
pleasing in matters of incontinenzie, and cleanly. The Turke.

The *Persian* is lordly in his complement; rather fantastick, than cu-
rious in his apparel, yet sumptuous; and in his expences magnificent:
maintainers of Nobilitie; louers of learning, and good qualities: feare-
full of troubles, desirous of peace, and superstitious in his Religion.
Their women gorgeous in attire, with high *Tiaras* and vales, like the
Sultaneses amongst the *Turkes*: long sitters at feastes, delightfull in
sequestration of pleasure; as beginning with a modest shamefulesse,
but ere you haue concluded, delicately wanton; cleanly in much wash-
ing, but withall vsing perfumes and odors; louing truely, and desirous
to be preferred in the first place of her husbands affection: For hauing
many wiues, they are desirous to please. The Persian.

The *Armenians* are very merry, sluttish, carelesse of greatnesse, de-
siring peace, and ease, though it tend to slavery and bondage: hauing
great bodies, comely, and willing to be soothed in any thing. Their wo-
men tall, and not faire, soone olde, poore, louing their children, and
incontinent. The Arme-
nian.

The *Tartars*, are swartish, illfaoured, with a great thick lip, flattish
nose, carelesse of outward ornaments, swift on foote, vigilant, laborious,
warlike, yet louing presents, and desirous to be much made of: their
women suteable, only wanting or scorning money, they will bedeck
themselues, like the people of *Virginia*, with gewgaies of copper, and
latton about their armes and necks. The Tartar.

The *Moore* is comely of body, stately of gate, of sufficient constitu-
tion to endure any worke or trauaile, implacable in hatred, treacherous,
tumultuous, The Moore,

rumultuous, and superstitious. Their women haue delicate soft skins, somptuous in iewels, odors and perfumes, incontinent, good bed-fellows in the darke, beautifull in blacknesse, and reuengefull; yet being bought a slaue, extraordinarie louing to their masters, so they be well pleased and vsed accordingly, but being once got with childe, they expect manumission according to the custome of the *Mahometan Law*.

The Savoyen. The *Savoyen* is penurious, foolish, and ill nurtured; yet do the better sort imitate the *Spanish* pride, and by reason of his neighbour-hood to *France* and *Millane*, are reasonable good Soldiours, and the better enabled by the hardnesse of the mountaines. The women are strangely apparelled, ill fauoured, scolding, must be discommended, and for the most part wenny, that is, hauing great bunches vnder their chinnes, with drinking snow water, like the *Heluetians* and 13 *Cantons*.

The Switzer. The *Switzer* is strange in his attire, yet not transgressing the limits of his inheritance; haue great bodies, and are mercenary, as performing what he is commanded, and one that approueth his countrie and habite: euen preferring his snowy hills and coldnesse, before the fertilest places of *Lumbardy*. Their women are honest, somewhat better fauoured than the *Sauoyen*, ill brought vp, plaine dealers, and so loueth her husband, or friend, that she will goe with him to the campe, and dresse his meate.

As for the Kingdomes of *Saca*, *Bactria*, *Sogdiana*, and many like nations, inuironing the East and South of the *Caspian*, I meane not to relate of, because I finde the best Authors, vnacquainted with their properties and discoueries. The *Armenians* report them to be tyrannous, their chiefe exercise to be rapine, and murthering of passengers; without forme of gouernment, or controule of superiours. Which done, they flie to the mountaines, and in despite of any forces, continue vnsubiected; howsoeuer, unpunished.

And therefore, since I haue deciphered the persons, let me in a word aduise thee of their properties: that is, to take heed of the pride of *Spain*, the poyson of *Italy*, the Treason of *France*, and the drinke of *Flanders*. Beware of companie, and let not rash trust in friendship produce matter of fruitlesse repentance: Remember that *Damon* and *Pithias*, *Pilades* and *Orestes* are all dead, or else it is but a dead storie. Nature alters like humors and complexions, every minute of an houre. And should I not speake too much to the worlds shame, I would aduise thee to thinke, that there is no one man faithfull to another in the world. And therefore in this dangerous age, since euery man is neere, and only neere vn-

to

to himselfe, and he is held the onely wise man, who hath the world at most commaund, let no man so presume of his owne sufficiencie, as to neglect the benefit of counsell. Take a yong man for thy companion, rather then for thy friend. The world affoordeth but one Phoenix, and let not anie man be so conceited, as to thinke to find him in his owne imagination. Serue God with deuotion, and then care not for the deuils illusion.

When thou returnest from these foraine men, and foraine places, resolve then also to leaue their foraine manners. First, come home to thy selfe; and then fashion thy carriage, thy apparell, thy studies, thy conscience, and thy conversation, to the best paterne of the place, from whence at first with good intent thou beganst thy pilgrimage. So shall the remembrance of thy trauell be pleasant, the profit infinit, and thy returne an ornament to King and Countrie.

The second Booke.

Of Europe.



T now remaineth, that I leaue you (as I said before) to your owne constructions; And therefore I will begin to tell you, how according to our best and latest Cosmographers, this great Globe, (for parts and parcels whereof, so great and vniuersal quarrels haue from the beginning beene entertained amongst Princes, Peoples, and Nations) hath bin diuided into seauen parts: The first three whereof, viz: Europe, Africa, and Asia, were knowne to the anti-ents. The fourth, is America Septentrionalis, contayning the Prouinces of Estotilant, Terra Labratoris, Terra de Baccaleos, Noua Francia, Norimbega, Florida, Noua Hispania, and others. The fifth is, America Meridionalis, which is a peni-Insula, and disioyned from the former by a small Isthmus of Land, contayning the the Regions of Brasil, Tisnada, Caribana, Paguana, and Pertuiua.

The sixth, is termed Terra Australis, wherein lieth Psitacoru regio, Terra del feugo, Beach, Lucach, and Meletur, scituate betweene Iaua maior, and Iaua minor. The last, being vnder the Notherne Pole, is the least of the residue, all almost vnkowne, and deuided into foure Islands, lying in a manner vnder the verie Pole.

Of all these seauen parts, because Europe is farre lesse than anie of the rest, and yet exceedeth them all in Noblenesse, Magnificence, multitude of people, in might, puissance and renowne; we will first beginne with the description thereof. It is bounded on the North, with the North Ocean Sea; on the South, with the Mediterranean, on the East with the floud Tanais, and on the West, with the West Ocean. It containeth more then foure and twentie Christian Kingdomes at this daie, as farre excelling the residue of the Prouinces in Religion, Arts, Valour, and Ciuilitie, as in elder age it did surpasse them in Prowesse and Reputation.

The principall Prouinces, are Spaine, France, Belgia, Germanie, Italie, Slauonia, Greece, Hungarie, Poland, Lituania, Moscouia, and that toward the North, called Scandia; wherein are Denmarke, Norway, Swethland, Iutland, &c. The Islands are Brittain, (contayning the kingdomes of England and Scotland) Ireland, Island, and Engroneland, in the North Ocean. In the Mediterranean, are Sicill, Candie, Corsica, Sardinia, Maiorca, Minorca, Nigropont, Malta, Corfu, Stalamine, Mitilin, Sciro, with manie other in the Archipelago. The aire hereof is passing good, wholesome, temperate, and soile exceeding fertile. Therein are manie goodly Cities, famous Mart-Townes, and learned Vniuersities. The people thereof haue in all ages excelled all other Regions, in Courage, Arts, sharpnesse of wit, and all other gifts of Nature. In times past, it commanded Asia and Africke, by the Armes of the Greekes and Romanes; and at this daie, it is of great force by the power of the Turkes and Muscouites, & of no lesse reputation by the Nauigations of the Spaniards and Portugals: so as it seemeth, that Nature hath giuen vnto this people a precedency to rule and gouerne foraine Prouinces, as men farre surpassing all other Nations, in wisdom, courage, industrie, and invention.

Ireland.

Ireland.

THis kindome, by the *English*, *Spanish*, and *French*, is termed *Irland*, or *Ireland*: by the *Brittish*, *Tuerdhon*, by the *Inhabitants Eryn*. According to the *Cælestiall Globe*, it is scituated betweene the *Articke Circle*, and the *Tropique of Cancer*, but neerer the *Articke*, contayning in *Latitude*, foure degrees and an halfe, and according to the computation of our late *Writers*, betweene the *twentie* and the *25. Paralels*. In the *South parts*, their longest daie is of *sixteene houres*, with *three fourths*: In the *Northerne*, of almost *eightene*. According to the *Terrestriall*, it stands betweene the greater *Brittanie*, and *Spaine*: on the *East*, disioyned from *England* with a tempestuous sea, termed *Hibrnicum*, not aboue one daies sailing: vpon the *West* beateth the vast *Ocean*: vpon the *North* (where the *Deucalidon Ocean* disgorgeth) it hath *Island*, disioyned no further then a ship in one daie may saile vnto. Vpon the *South*, it beholdeth *Spaine* (distant three daies sailing) and the *Verginian sea*: From *South* to *North* it representeth an *Oual forme*, and by halfe is lesse then *Brittanie*. Amongst manie *writers*, *Camden* whom a man may best relie vpon, reporteth that it containeth *400. miles* in length, and in breadth, *200.*

The *Aire* hereof is most wholesome, the scituation milde, the weather temperate, but not altogether good to ripen fruit. For neither in *Sommer season*, the heate is so parching that it driueth the *Inhabitant* to seeke the shade, neither the cold in *Winter* so rigorous, but that he may well liue from the fire side: By the influence of the aire, all parts of the year are tollerably warme. It bringeth foorth no venomous creature, neither nourisheth anie brought from other places. The qualitie of the soile and constellation of the *Heauens* is moist with the moist; whereupon it commeth to passe, that both *inhabitats & strangers*, are troubled with the *flix & Rheumes*, & holpen or preuented with drinking *Aqua-vitæ*. The *Land* is of diuers *Natures*, in some place rough and mountainous, in others, boggie & waterish; shaddowed with huge woods, and exposed to the winds, with intermixture of manie great *Lakes*. Yea in the ridge of their highest hils (mountaines indeed I cannot terme them) you shall finde *pooles* and *marishes*. It hath goodly *Hauens*, and delectable *plaines*, but neither comparable to the woods for largenesse,

nor greenesse. It is generallie fertill, except *Ulster*, (which in some parts is fertill, in other some barren,) And *Conaught*, which (in times past) through idlenesse, hath beene lesse manured then anie other countrie, is fuller of hils and bogges, and for the greatest portion, woodie. The hilles swarme with cattle and sheepe, from whence they reape plentie of butter, cheese, and milke. The wheate thereof is small and short, and those vines which they cherish, serue rather for shade than profit. For in those countries, the Sunne entring into *Virgo*, causeth cold gales to blow, and in Autumne, the after-noones heate is so faint and short, that it cannot ripen the clusters of the vine. It bringeth forth a race of excellent Horle, fit for iourneies, in regard of their ambling paces, but not commendable for indurance. It breedeth the iniurious Woolfe, and the Foxe, as also all other creatures tame and gentle, necessarie for life, but of lesser growth, except the Grey-hound. Almost all the woods are replenished with Deere, (and those so fatte, that they can scant runne for fatnesse) with Bores, Hares, in great abundance, Goates, Fallow-Deare; Hedge-Hogges, and Moales, are seldome seene, but Mice infinite. It aboundeth also with Falcons, Merlins, Eagles, Cranes, and in the Northerly parts with Swannes. Storks are verie rarely heard of thorough the whole Island, but such as are there found, are blacke. Pies and Nightingales, are altogether wanting. By reason of the Sea, their famous Riuer, and spacious Lakes; it is serued with most excellent Fish, and that peculiar to this Island onely. For to let passe manie other, In *Ulster*, the *Ban*, being a most faire and cleare water, and arising out of the Lake of *Eaugh*, is the most plentifullest Riuer for Salmon, that is to be found throughout all Europe. For plentie and variety, the like is to be reported of *Sineus*, and *Erno*, a Lake by *Camdens* report, thirtie miles long, and fiftene broad: Report saith, that this was once a delicate plot of ground, and well inhabited, but for the bestiall abuse of the people, it was sodainely swallowed in the waters. And to proue this true, men say that in faire seasons, the Turrets and tops of houses, are in the bottom to be discerned.

The Island became subiect to the Crowne of *England*, about the yeare of our Lord 1175. *Henrie* the second then raigning. At what time *Roderic*, King of *Conaught*, intituling himselfe King of *Ireland*, inforced the residue of those pettie Roytelets, to craue assistance of the King of *England*, vnder whose protection, they voluntarily yeelded their obedience.

It hath fiftie Bishoprickes, whereof *Armach* is a Primacie, and *Metropolitan* of the whole Island. *Cassils* is another Archbishopricke,
authorized

authorized by Pope *Eugenius*, & hath vnder it, nine suffragan Bishops: *Dublin* is another, and *Toam* another.

It is diuided into 4. Prouinces, (viz:) *Leynster*, which East-ward respecteth *England*. *Mounster*, which lieth towards *France* Southward. *Conaught*, exposed to the West. And *Ulster*, situated in the Northerlie part of the Island. Some adde a fifth, placed in the midst; and terme it *Meath*.

Euerie one now is subdivided into Counties, and each County into Baronies, and hundreds; and euerie Barony into parishes, consisting of Manors, Townes, and Villages, after the maner of *England*. That parcell of territorie which antientlie was termed the *Pale*, is about the quantity of *Yorke*shire in *England*, and is a Countrie at this day inhabited by Noblemen and Gentlemen, descended of English race, being ciuil men, & haue continued their obedience to the Crowne of *England*, and retained their English language since the first conquest. This people doe commonlie marry within themselves, & not with the meere Irish, who could neuer in their sundrie rebellions, draw the said inhabitants, to ioyn with them by flatterie, or expell them by force. The first Colonies planted therein, were composed of worthie and noble Englishmen, & especially seated in *Dublin* and other cities, and borough-townes throughout the realme: whose progenie hauing the management of the affaires of the kingdom, subdued by degrees the greatest part of the Irish, and brought them vnder subiection to the crowne of *England*. And so long as they & their posterity were imploied, as principal Officers in time of warre and peace (being men throughlie informed of all passages within the kingdom, & acquainted with the dispositions of the people) the realme was worthily gouerned, & duly increased in civilitie, & yeelded some profit to the crowne, without charge. Other English Colonies at sundrie times haue there bin since planted, and especiallie by our late, and modern Soueraignes, in the Prouinces of *Mounster* & *Ulster*, by the name of Vndertakers: whereupon it groweth, that the realme is now inhabited with English, and Irish descended of English race, & with the mere and ancient Irish-men, vnto whose Nobility & Gentrie the sir-names of *Mac*, or *O* are commonlie added. Vpon the Conquest, *Henry* the 2. Gouernment. established the lawes of *England*, the being diuided into kinds, viz. the *Common law* (as that the elder should inherit his fathers lands) and *Custom law*, that (by the particular custome of Manors & Townes,) lands should be diuided by the custome of *Gauelkind*, amongst al his sons; or that, the yongest son onelie, should inherit the same, by the custome of *Borough-english*: wherunto is to be added a third, viz. the *statute law*.

He and his successors held the possession thereof, with all soueraigne royaltie and kinglie prerogatiues, by the name of Lords of *Ireland*; vntill the day of king *Henry* the eight, who by Act of Parliament, was acknowledged, intituled and entred king of the said kingdome, and so continueth it vnto this day, being gouerned as a distinct kingdome by a *Lieutenant*, for Authority (Traine, Furniture, prouision, &c. farre surpassing any *Deputation* throughout Christendome) wherein Courts of parliament are and haue there beene held, consisting of the three Estates of the kingdom, in the same forme, as is vsed in *England*, by commission from the king vnder the great Seale of *England*, authorizing the Viceroy, or Deputie, to summon a parliament there, and to giue the Royall assent vnto such acts, as are agreed vpon in that parliament: wherein the King and his Councell of Estate of *England*, are to bee informed by certificate vnder the great seale of *Ireland*, (by force of a Statute made in *Ireland*, in the tenth yeere of *Henry* the 7. And after the kings allowance, the bills to be enacted and propounded in the parliament there; So the Viceroy by force of the said Commission, giues the kings royall assent, to such acts as are agreed vpon in the said parliament there.

So (as I said before) *Ireland* is not onely gouerned by the *Common Lawes* of *England*, by certaine antient customes of that realme and this; and by diuers statutes here and there also, vpon occasion enacted; but also the like Courts and formes of Iustice are there (according to the said lawes) vsed & administred: And also the Iudiciall records are made in latin, and the Iudges and Lawyers doe plead in English, as is accustomed in *England*.

For the studying of which lawes, the Irish gentlemen doe send their sonnes to the Innes of Court in *England*, being alwaies such as are descended of English race, and not of meere Irish: who are allowed to practise in *England*, after they are called to the Barre, as Englishmen are also allowed to practise in *Ireland*.

Neither the Nobility, nor Commons of *Ireland* haue any suffrage in the election of the Viceroy, or blasing of Soueraigne Magistrates; but all is done by the king, and such as are especially authorized. And the inhabitants of Cities and Borough-townes in *Ireland*, by their charters (which they haue from the kings of *England*) doe elect their Magistrates and Officers, as the cities and townes of *England* doe.

In *England*, the antientest Earles of *Ireland* doe giue precedency to the Earles of *England*, for that they haue no voice in the parliament of *England*: neither hath the Nobility of *England* any voice, or prerogative

live in the parliaments of *Ireland*. So Irishmen borne, are denizens by birth in *England*, and may beare Office and inherit lands in *England*, (as experience teacheth) without charters of denization, as Englishmen are, and do in *Ireland*. And so Irishmen pay onely such customes as duties, in *England*, as Englishmen doe, and ought.

The Wards of the Nobility are disposed of by the king; and of inferior persons, by the Viceroy and certaine of the councill there, according to their Commission. Even so, titles of honors, lands and offices are vsually granted by the kings of *England*, vnder the great seale of *Englād*, or *Ireland*, according to pleasure.

The inciuitie (wherewith this so goodlie a kingdome hath beene much branded) hath chiefly arisen from want of education, and learning: And secondlie, for that the countrie aboundeth with idle men, hauing no trade whereupon to liue: which onelie abuse, hath encouraged rebellion, the ringleaders not doubting to bee followed by these swarms of dissolute persons, readie to take armes vpon any occasion for desire of spoile.

But verily, sithence that now of late the King of Peace and Piety, hath wiped away all distrust of former neglects, by his continuall industry to plant Religion and Arts, to re-people the wasted Prouinces, and to extirpate the innated idlenesse of the woorst-bred *Irish*; there is no question (vnder God) to be made, but that this beautifull Island, being so neere a neighbor, so fruitfull in soyle, so rich in pasture (more then credible) be-set with so manie woods, enriched with so manie Minerals, watered with so many Riuers, inuironed with so manie Hauens, lying fit and commodious for Nauigation into most wealthie Countries; will in time proue profitable to the Church, aduantagious to the Prince, pleasing to the Inhabitants, and comparable to any the best and ciuilest kingdomes of the Christian Common-weale.

Great Brittain.



He whole Island of *Brittaine* once diuided (now re- vnited) vnder the name of the kingdome of *Great Brit- taine*: is an Island scituated in the maine Ocean, ouer a- gainst *France*, and diuided into foure great Prouinces. The first whereof, the *English-men* doe inhabite; the second, the *Scots*; the third, the *Welsh-men*, and the last, the *Cornish-men*. Euery one of these do differ frō other, either in language, in manners, or in customes.

The Scituati-
on of England.

England, so termed of the *Englishmen* (the Inhabitants thereof) is by much the greater and goodlier portion, and diuided into nine and twentie Prouinces; which they terme Shires. Of the which, ten, doe make the prime-part of the Kingdome, and inclining towards the South, haue their existence betweene the Thames, and the sea. Next, as far as the Trent, which runneth through the middest of *England*; are fixteene other shires proportioned; whereof the first sixe, lie towards the East; and the other tenne, lie more to the Inland, other fixe, border vpon *Wales*, and are bounded towards the West. About the heart of the Kingdome, lie *Darbishire*, *Yorkeeshire*, *Lancashire*, and *Cumberland*; And vpon the left hand, inclining towards the West, *Westmerland*. Vpon the contrarie side, lie *Durham*, and *Northumberland*; Prouinces opposed to the North, and sometime appertayning to the Crowne of *Scotland*.

Bishoprikes;

These Shires, are deuided into seauenteene Bishoprikes (by the *Gracians* termed *Dioceses*) and take their denominations, from the Cities, wherein the Bishops haue their Seas; the chiefe whereof is *London*, and was once the Seat of an Arch-bishop; now translated vnto *Canterburie*.

This prime part, vpon the East and the South, is bounded with the Ocean: vpon the West, with *Wales*, and *Cornemall*; vpon the North with *Tweed*: the bounder also of *England* and *Scotland*.

At this Riuer of *Tweed* endeth the length thereof: which being accounted to beginne at the Shore which lieth most Southerlie, is from thence reckoned to containe about three hundred and twentie miles.

On this side the *Humber*, it is accounted the fertilest for corne: beyond, mountainous but excellent for herbage. For albeit, to one that beholdeth it a far off, it seemeth all champian, notwithstanding, it hath manie Hilles, and those for the most part destitute of wood, as also most pleasant vallies, wherein especiallie the Gentlemen haue their mansions: who according to their old customes dwell not in Townes, but approach the Vallies and Riuers, and Inhabite the Villages, as I thinke, the better to auoide the furie of tempestuous windes, whereunto the Island is sometime subiect. Whereby it commeth to passe, that the Yeomen, conuersing with the Gentry, doe in euerie place fauour of some good fashion, and the Vpland Cities are the lesse famoused.

The Land generally is exceeding fertill, and plentiful in Bestiall: wherby it commeth to passe, that the *English* people are more addicted vnto

vnto Grazing, than vnto Tyllage: so that almost the third part of the soyle is reserued rather for Cattell, Deere, Conies and Goates: (for of this sort, also there is great store in *Wales*.) And in euerie Shire, you shall see, Parkes impaled, and Forests replenished with these beasts; in the hunting whereof, the nobilitie, and gentrie, doe much delight.

For prouision of the Inhabitans, neither is it lesse stored with corne, wild-foule, and fish, so that for plentie, goodnesse, and sweetnesse, it needeth neither the help of *France*, no, nor of anie neighbor-bodering-Coun-trie. Among other things, the flesh especiallie of their Swine, Oxen, and Veales, haue the best rellish of anie part of Christendome; and of Fish, their Pike, and Oysters. It bringeth not forth Mules nor Asses, but of Horse, for pace the best in the world, and of those infinite proportions, for seruice, running and coursing.

The wealth hereof, consisteth in the neuer decaying Mines of Tinne & Lead, of Copper, Iron & Coales; On the Downes, groweth a smal & tender kinde of grasse, neither duned, nor watered with spring or riuer; but in Winter, nourished with the moisture of the aire, and in Sommer with the dew of Heauen; which is so gratefull and pleasing to the Sheepe, that it causeth them to beare fleeces of singular goodnesse, and exceeding finenesse. The Island breedeth no Woolues, nor anie other rauening Beast; and therefore these their flockes wander night and daie, by Hilles, Dales, and Fields, as well inclosed, as common, without feare or danger. Most delicate Clothes are wouen of this Wooll, which from thence are transported in great abundance into *Germanie*, *Poland*, *Denmarke*, *Sweeland*, *Italie*, *Turkie*, and the *Indies*, where they are in high request. There groweth all sorts of pulle, great store of Saffron; yea infinite quantities of Beere are transported from thence into *Belgia*; as also Pelts, Hydes, Tallowe, and Sea-coale. The Island is so commodiouslie seated for the Sea, that it is neuer without resort of *Portugall*, *Spanish*, *French*, *Flemmish*, & Easterling Merchants. The traffique betweene the *English* and the *Flemmish*, ariseth to an inestimable value: for *Gnecciardin* writeth, that before the tumults of the Low-countries, they bartered for twelue millions of crownes yearelie.

The aire is somewhat thick, & therefore more subiect to the gathering of clouds, raine and windes; but withall, lesse distempered with heate or cold, for the same reasons of crassitude. The nights are lightsome, and in the Northermost parts of the Land, they are so short, that the falling and rising of the Sunne, is discerned but by a small intermission;
for

for that the Island is scituated almost full North, and the Sunne in the Summer time mouing slowlie, and staying long in the Northerne Climats, doth almost compasse it round aboue. In the Winter, it is as farre remooued, when approaching neerer the South, it runneth towards the East. I my selfe haue obserued, that in the Citie of London (being seated in the Southerly part of the Island) about the Summer Solstice, the night hath not beene aboue five houres long. At all seasons of the yeare the countrie is most temperate, being subiect to no extraordinary euil influence of the Heauens; so that diseases are not there verie common; and therefore lesse vse of Phisicke than in other places, yea manie times, some people there are, who attaine vnto one hundred and ten yeares of age; yea some, to one hundred and twenty.

Earth-quakes are here sildome heard off: and lightnings, almost, to speake off, as sildome. The soyle is verie fruitfull and plentifull, and of all necessities, it yeeldeth abundance, except of those things which are peculiar to hotter, or colder Regions. Vines are fostered rather for the pleasure of their shaddowes, than for the increase of their profits: yet prosper they in all places, and bring forth Grapes; which notwithstanding hardlie wax ripe, vnlesse an vnusuall hot Summer, or an artificiall reflexion do helpe them. Wheat, Rye, Barley, and Oates are sowed in their seasons: other graines they commonlie vse not; and of Pulse, onlie Beanes and Peaze. The fruits suddenlie knot, but ripen slowlie: the cause of either is, the ouer-much moisture, both of the soile and the aire. Wine (as aforesaid) the Land affoordeth not: in stead whereof, beere is in request; without controuersie by vse, a pleasant and wholsome Beuerage. Wines are transported from *France*, *Spaine* and *Candie*. The Wods are full of fruit Trees, and most plentifull of Mast. The Riuers faire, and runne through manie Prouinces. The Downes are manie, yet neither cumbred with Wood, nor ouer-laid with Water, which by reason thereof bringeth forth a tender and short grasse, gratefull and sufficient for the pasturage of infinite flockes of Sheepe; And whether it bee by the influence of the Heauens, or the goodnesse of the land, they yeeld the finest and softest fleeces through the whole world.

And first I must put you in minde of a Miracle; how this Beast, besides the dew of Heauen, ordinarily tasteth of no other Water, so that the Shepheards of purpose, doe drive them from all waterie places, vpon true obseruation; *That to let them drinke, is to let them bane.* Without doubt, this is the true golden Fleece, wherein the maine wealth of the whole Island consisteth. And for to buy this commoditie,
immen-

immensie Treasure is yearly conueyed into the Land by Marchants; from whence it is neuer reconueyed, because it is provided by the Laws of the Kingdome; *That no person transport Gold or Siluer, Plate, Jewels, &c.* Whereby it commeth to passe, that no Countrey vnder the Cope of Heauen is richer than England. For, besides those masses of Coyne, which passe this way and that way, through the hands of Tradesmen, Merchants, and Gentlemen; there is almost no person of meane condition, but for the vse of his dayly Table, he hath eyther a Salt, Cups or Spooones of Siluer, and according to his estate, more or lesse, for diuers seruices.

It is no lesse stored with all kind of bestiall, except Asses, Mules, Camels, and Elephants. It bringeth forth no materiall venomous Creature, or beast of prey, saue the Foxe, woorthy talking of. For the race of the Wolues is quite extinguished, and therefore, all sorts of Cattell stray as they list, and are in safety without any great care-taking for an Herds-man: so that you shall see Herdes of Rother Beasts and Horses, and flockes of Sheepe, in all places wandring by day and by night, vpon Hills and in Vallies, in Commons, and inclosed grounds (by ancient Customes layde open after Haruest) wherein euery Neighbour claimeth community to feede his Cattell.

For in truth, the Oxe and the Weather, are Creatures especially ordained for the Table, than whose flesh there is not in any place a more fauory or delicious seruice. Of the two, the Steere is the best, especially, if it be seasonably powdered: of which there is no maruaile, for that this choyce is altogether exempted from labour, and fed vp for food, and withall the dyet of the English Nation consisting most vpon flesh.

The people are tall of stature, faire of complexion, for the greater part gray-eyed; and as in pronounciation they approach the *Italian*, so in constitution of body and fashion, they doe well-neere imitate them. They are ciuilly qualified, and take counsaile by leysure; knowing that profitable proceedings haue none a more dangerous aduersary, then rashnesse. Of their owne dispositions, they are curteous, and in all good offices forwards, especially the Gentry, euen towards strangers. Their acquaintance they inuite to their houses, and there entertaine them kindly, and feast them both at noone and at night merrily, neatly, heartily, and bountifully: and this they terme curtesie, or neighbour-hood. In battaile they are fearelesse, excellent Archers, and in seruice vnindurable of temporizing, and therefore the sword being once drawne, they forthwith set at all vpon the hazard of a battell, knowing that all good successe attendeth the fortune of the Victor. Fortresses they build none,

but

Qualities of
the English.

but rather suffer those which heretofore haue been buile, and are now by age growne ruinous, vtterly to perish; but being once in forraine parts, they retain all millitarie discipline to the vtmost. For Bookemen, their maintenance is bountifull, their proficiency commendable, & their number numberlesse. Their attire differeth not much from the *French*; their women are amiable and beautifull, and attyred in most comely fashion. Their Cities are honourable, their Townes famous, Hamlets frequent, and Villages euery where magnificent.

So that if any curteous Traueller, would desire of me to behold an Idea of happinesse *in abstracto*, fitting for the generall necessitie of life, and vpright conuersation, *viz.* the vse of diet, clothing, sociable feasting, solemne feastiualls and banquets, with approbation of magnificence: Or, demand to see the place, where Law, indifferent to all sorts, permitteth the priuate man to thriue, to purchase estates, to deuise charters and inheritances to his children and kinsfolkes; to reward seruants; or to countenance followers; with libertie of ciuil conuersation, of comely burials and mourning for the dead; of reioycings at mariages, of honest and friendly visitations, and harmelesse recreation; where euery man eateth vnder his owne vine, and doth what seemeth good in his owne eyes, so it tend not to scandall: Then let me be bold, to shew him the noble Kingdome of *England*: which to approue, I intend by way of comparison, (wherein most of our Gentrie are well acquainted) to make good what, I thinke, without offence, may be truly auouched.

England compared with
Russia and
Æthiopia.

And first we will begin with those Countries, of which we haue only knowledge by way of traffique, and so trauell into *Russia* and *Æthiopia*. But there (alasse to say nothing of the gouernment, the sole load-starre of goodnesse and happinesse) the two extremities of heat and cold, debarre both plenty and aboundance, from vnloading their laps, amongst the inhabitants, comparable to our happinesse and satisfaction. As for their gouernment, and vniformity of a Common-wealth (the name of Emperors only excepted) their is nothing worthy obseruation, more than the tyrannous controlling of Lawes, and the immediate prostitution of all sorts to the imperious will of the preuailer; nor intruth haue they temple, palace, wisdom, peace or tranquility, such as Royalte or good gouernment intendeth, but both Empires, (especially *Russia*) hath suffered many conuulsions from ambitious vsurpers and vnworthy Princes; who haue traiterously supplanted one another, and by indirect courses brought the subiect into the house of slaughter; which vndoubtedly is the maine reason, why they cannot come neere magnificence, provision in house-keeping, navie, multitude of Princes, Nobles or subiects,

jects, with the equalitie of obedience to aduance a true Septer, or to manifest the glory of a king, by the flourishing condition of all estates. In a word, their Cities and Townes are subiect to such bestiality and confusion, that they seeme rather rowted troopes of deformitie, than men orderly disposed to the management of affairs, either of commerce, or of Noble trade: And so, in all other particulars, there is a meere disparitie betweene them and our proposition.

Shall we come neerer home, and with prying eyes (like the Sensors of Rome) looke into the Empire of *Germanie*? there the Princes are so absolute, and the Emperor so timorous to raigne (as *Asueroth* did) from *India* to *Atheopia*, ouer 127. Prouinces, that neither the Queene of *Saba* will come to heere his wisdom, nor to view the order of his Palace; neither will the king of *Arabia* send him presents, nor the confederates admire his magnificence: The Marchant will not bring him horse, and fine linnen from remote places, nor supply his wants according to the prerogatiue of kings: Nor are the Cities ordered by the appointment of his Ministers, nor can he send his chariots to this place, nor his horsemen to that; nor his army whither he lists, nor fill the streetes of *Ierusalem*, when he would solemnise a passeouer? for the people liue diuided, and the burger boasteth of his policie, in manumitting themselues, and giuing their Townes the vsurpation of chiefe commanderie; as for the hauiug of many commodities, tending either to necessitie or pleasure, alas, the commutation consisteth in the enriching one another: wherein all the corruptions of auerice are put in practise, smally (God wot) to the augmentation of the Empires Maiestie. So that their Marts and Faires, are as so many booths of drunkards, wherewith in stead of Ships at Sea, they fill the fields with wagons ful of strange creatures, who make their bellies, as great deuourers, as the Sea. Nor can he goe with the wise King, to view his navie at the red Sea shores, nore in person visit the Cities which want fortification, or repairing; nor in truth, do any thing to come neere the sixe steps of gold on *Solomons* throne, but cate and carouse, yet farre from the meane of mirth.

With Germanie.

Shall we venture ouer the *Alpes*, and the gulfe of *Venice*, into *Italy*; and there search the *Apenine* Hills, the fields of *Campania*, the garden of the World, *Lombardy*; the Territories of *Rome*, or attractive *Naples*, for an instance of this our Greatnesse and Happinesse? No surely, For throughout this goodly territory, in one corner ruleth the *Spaniard*, at another end, the *Savoyen*: then is intermingled a confused gouernment of pettie Princes. Next lyeth the *Venetian* state, who meere out of parcemonie (like their adioyning neighbours the *Florentines*) haue obtained the reputation

With Italie.

putation of wealth and greatnesse. As for the Duke, he is but a voice vn-significant ; for the Senat carrieth the sword. And lastly, the *Church*, with the mercenary contraries of blessing and cursing, keepeth Saint *Peters patrimony* as safe, as if the indubitate heire of some noble family, should maintaine the priuiledges of his deceased Ancestors.

But should I knit all these models together, and set vp the wals of *Rome* incompassed with her seuen hills in such an order, that the fabrick might boast of 20. miles circuit, and the gouernment lift vp a head of *Daniels vision* againe: Or that in a yeare of *Iubile*, I could settle you vnder the wings of an Angell on the top of the Popes palace, as the Diuell carried our Sauior to the pinnacle of the Temple ; And there shew you the consistory of Cardinals, triumphs of a Popes Inauguration; his state-ly cariage (adorned with his triple crown) on mens sholders, withal the appurtenant shewes & ceremonies; Yet would all come short to our example. For the very prouision of our kings palace, would exhaust the Countrie, consume the commodities, & like barren ground, drinking vp the raine, deuoure the plentie of the Land, and pull in pieces, their best compacted husbandry. As for their drinking in vessels of gold, well may it serue to diuulge the glory of some ambitions triumph, but nothing verifie the bountie of an ouerflowing cup ; considering the wines are not only small, but the vintage so barren and penurious, that to conceale the scarcity therof, by parsimonious custom of the Countrie, women & children are forbidden to drink therof. As for the villano, he is glad of water to quench his thirst, fetcht from muddy channels, falling from the mountains of snow, & clenfed with much adoe by the swift course of *Eridanus*.

Many other defects do bespot the face of this goodly creature, & debar it from the boast of our essentiall happinesse. For though the inkeepers daughter go in a fatten gowne, and that the brauery of *Italie* be discovered in the attire of the people, as if euery bur had golden kernels, & euery corner were full of silkwormes; yet is there neither method of gouernment, nor can the inhabitants reioyce vnder vnitie, or any priuiledges of a strong compacted Administration, tending to the assurance of loue, true alliance, or obedience: so that in a manner all the defects, deforming the beautie of Kingdomes (more than some priuate blessings and those scattered as it were by the hands of diuine goodnesse) may be heere lookt vpon with pitifull eies, and much lamented with iudiciall hearts. And how euer the ostentous heapes of stone, transport the sleight credulity of the ignorant ; that, *it surpasseth for Cities, buildings and outward magnificence* ; yet when you come to examine particulars, you shall finde it like a rotten post gilded on the out-side. For what saith

Tacitus

Tacitus ; Cities are compacted of men, and obedience of people, subiect to a good forme of government, and not of houses & palaces made of lime and stone, vnfurnished of dwellers, voide of hospitality, and iealous of each others best inclinations. So that besides all naturall imperfection in *Italie*, there is neither roome in the house for seruants, nor litter for thy Camels; neither canst thou fetch the wel-fed Veale from thy droves, nor dresse fine Venison, nor kill the fat Calfe, as in other countries: which makes me to remember a pleasant iest of one of the same countrie, spokē to a stranger, demanding the reason why the Muttons and cattaille were so small and leane: *Because* (quoth he) *we* (*Italians*) *eate up the grasse in sallets, and by robbing the pastures, deceive the Cattell.* In another place, a Curtizan being questioned of the conditions of men in her facultie, concerning businesse of Incontinency, onely answered, *Seignior Il Italiano pisciarum molto.* Neither to flatter them (according to the ridiculous soothing of Princes) can I exemplifie anie of their glorious actions abroad, or famous attempts at home, more than the ruining one of another, & making of forts & fortifications, which sometimes haue proved as fatall, as *Perillus* his Bull to the Inventor; imboldening disobedience to relye on a wrong securitie, and at all times augmenting distrust and foule suspicions amongst their best cities and governments. How is *Millan* and *Naples* curbed, and the brave libertie of the Gentry strangely settred, by the terror of late built citadell? Of which notwithstanding even the *Spaniard* himselfe is transported to imagine; *That souldiours may be corrupted, and no place to be so impregnable, but the ende- vours of men can frustrate and overcome.*

And were it not to overlooke them with a malevolent aspect, I could informe you, that notwithstanding their dispersion of their wares and merchandizes, thorowout all the Ports of *Europe* and *Turkie*, yet is it bounded with such wants and ouersights, and that within the compasse of their Mid-land Seas (except in pursuing of some small piracies) as that, I neuer read nor heard, that euer they made true vse of nauigation or admitted the iust conditions of Saylor & Soldiours. Insomuch, that on my knowledge, euen the potentest state there, boasting of the brauery of 200. gallies, and eight or ten galleasses, neither hath sufficient men to man twenty, nor can without time and great expences (amongst themselves) fill vp the inuentory of that scarcity,

Shal we then come to *Spain*, where the *Grands* of the kings Court haue golden keies to his chamber, and are priuiledged by patent, to stand couered before his magisty? where the exchequer is ful of gold from *India*, & the treasurers bring in accounts of 100000. Soldiours in garison with
other

With Spain:

orher employments yearely paid, and orderly supplied: Where the Noble man insulteth for his *Gotish-blood*, and will prooue a true *Castilian*, more ancient in Gentry, than the race of *Othoman*, and euery man weareth his sword point-blanke, looking as high, though not so big as a *German*, who hath eate and drunke more at a meale, than a *Don* doth in a weeke: where so many kingdomes are vnited, making a more perspicuous show ouer the vniuerse, than the seuen starres doe in the Firmament, ouer the single plannets in their separated spheares: where they can without boasting, I will not say vaine-glorie, tell you diuers Histories of their voyages at Sea, discoueries and plantations of Countries, conquests of both the *Indies*, and armies in the field: shall we (I say) heere cast Anchor, and looke out a match for our example: mee thinkes, I am answered by euery man that weares a great ruffe, and a full paire of hose; If *Spain* doe not equall it, who can doe it? I will not tell you that as yet, but presuming to shut *Spain* out of doores, for entring into the priue chamber of our example; let me assure you vpon subsequent prooffe, that (would *Apollo* pardon the comparison, I can compare his *Indian* wealth, to nothing so like, as to *Midas* wish, who (notwithstanding his golden fortunes) wanted, as all men know, the vse of natures benefits, and could neither eate, nor drinke without choaking. But to particulers.

What hath *Spain* worthy commendation, much lesse what prerogative of happinesse? *Canaan* flowed with milke & hony, blessings of food and increase, that the king had not only his prouision without repining, but *Israel* (as the sand of the Sea) eat, drank, and made merry; which *Spain* cannot do. The burnt Hills, and desert places will pregnantly proue the assertion. The Country man hideth his garlike and onions, as ashamed of his dyet. The Citizen powders fish, and buyeth cheese of the *Dutchman*. The gentry is limited what he shall eat, & how much meat he shall carry home. The Court hath much adoe to be supplied, and many concussions are put in practise from the kings prerogative, to furnish the offices with reasonable allowance: & in truth, the prouision is far short from the expences of other places. For in general, they are sometimes afraid to want bread, imploying certaine Agents for transportation both of corn and vitall, euen from remote Countries; tempting vs with gold and payment of ready money: For which purpose only is there a Prouiso in their Acts of Parliament, concerning the exportation of coyne. Of which, at a word, though they haue great cause to boast, yet by the way let me demand, how came the discontents in *Flanders*, *Brabant*, &c. who incited the garisons of *Antwerp*, *Brussels*, and other Townes to mutinie?

who

who distasted sundry times whole Armies vpon their marches and imployments? who counsell'd the Treasoror to be so slack in payment of *Liberances*, and Soldiors pentions? who doth euery yeare thrust the garisons into penurie and scarcity, insomuch that not only in the *Low-countries*, but euen in the gouernments of *Millan*, *Naples* and *Sicil*, the Soldior wanteth, and many times is compelled to remit the one halfe, to purse vp the other? Is it not for lack of Treasure, the pride whereof hath made his heart fondly to swell or by disorderly distributions? Or more truly, to procure humane necessities, the megazin whereof continually lyeth, in the English and Dutchmans hands. Let not man therefore be afraid of this *Monster opinion*, nor seduced with the vanitie of reports. For put them to skirmish of vnderstanding, and the wealth of *Spain* will proue but false fier; according to the late and neere experimented Proverb: *The King of Spains pay is the greater, but the Dutch, the better.*

As for their hungry boasting of fruits and hearbs, it is in a manner an offence to Nature; For God made the beasts of the earth to haue sustenance from the same, but man to command all: So that *Adams* wisdome gaue them titles, and his superiority prescribed subiection; but how? to mans vse, for mans sustenance, for mans necessitie; and lastly, for mans delight. Thus doth oile make a cheerefull countenance, and wine a glad some heart. Thus did the Kings table furnish it selfe, in this sense the songs of *Dauid*, praise God for his many blessings. Thus were incense and odors prouided, and the loue of brethren compared to the dew of *Hermion*, and the costly ointment on *Arons* vestures: which blessed allowances, makes me to remember a speech of Sir *Roger Williams* to an idle *Spaniard*, boasting of his country citrons, oranges, oliues, and such like: why saith he, in *England* we haue good surloines of biese, and dainty capons to eate with your sauce, withall (meat worthy the name of sustenance) but you haue sauce and no sustenance, and so *much God dish* you, with your sustenancelesse sauce.

Canaan had neighborly meetings, feasts of triumphes, and times of priuate reioycings: *Spain* dares not, nor can bid you welcome. Idle ielousies, priuate hate, or hatefull pride, feare of expences, and vainglorious speeches, will quickly debarre you from the pleasure of inuitation, from the freedom of conuersing one with another, which cannot saour the noble entercourses of mutuall amity: *Canaan* had the Temple furnished, as God commanded, the Priest obedient to the King, the Prophets in estimation, and the Feasts orderly celebrated. *Spain* is polluted with worse seuerity, than Paganisme hath inuented, viz. the cruell Office of Inquisition. Wherewith the Kings themselues

E. haue

haue beene so ouer awed by the insolence of the Clergie, that some of them haue not spared to commit repentant error, to please the Pope. *Canaan* was a receptacle of strangers and Princely solemnities; *Spaine* hateth all men, commits them to fire and sword, and can not order one solemne festiuall, vnlesse at a Kings Coronation, a Princes mariage, or a Cardinals iolitic; where yet an *Italian inuention* shall fill a table with painted trenchers and dishes of China, but a hungrie belly may call for more meat, and be nere the neerer.

Canaan had cities of refuge, cities of store, cities of strength, cities for horses, and all for the Kings magnificence; to all which the waies lay ordred, and men passed too and fro without danger and want: In *Spaine*, you must haue a guide, yea sometime a guard, and are so farre from expecting reliefe after your daies trauels, that if you haue not a Borachio before your saddle, and made your prouision on the backe of an Asse, you may happen to be tired for want of sustenance, and faint with *Ismael* for lack of water.

Canaan had beautifull women, and the Scripture sets it downe, as a blessing of God: But *Spaine* must moorne for strang disparitie, and either lament that her women are painted (like the images of the groues) or sit in the heighway, as *Thamar* did, to deceiue *Iuda*. For in truth they are for the most part vnpleasing, and swartish, or else by coming to be Curtezans, dangerous and impudent. Thus as yet *Solomon* must sit without compare, and his Kingdome vnmatcheable triumph with a noble prerogatiue.

With France.

But what must we thinke of *France* (saies one) Is not your breath now almost spent? and will you not bee satisfied with the goodliest kingdome of the world. The answer shall not be peremptorie, nor derogate from the merit of its least worth, or vertue: yet are they traduced for manie defects, and I belieue will fall short to our expectation, at least, I am sure dare not abide the touch of triall.

In *Solomons* Court; the Queene of *Saba* commended the obedience of the Princes, the sitting of the kings seruants, the ordering of the palace, and the multitude of the prouisions daily brought in: In *France* the Princes contest with the king, and the Clergie affront the Princes, and beare downe the States; the Pages mocke the gentlemen; and the gentlemen are proud of nothing but flouennesse, vnbecoming familiaritie, and disorder. So that with much adoe, the mechanicall man stands bare to the King, and the Princes sit at meat like Carriers in an Hostrie, without reuerence, silence or obseruation, and a vile custome hauing got the vpper hand, hath depressed the Maiestie of such a place,

place, which indeed reduced to vniformitie, would much augment the glorie of *Europe*.

A wise State, and potent kings, haue built Nauies, and trauelled themselves in person to view them, raising customes from their Merchants, louing and maintaining good Mariners and Pilots, contracting leagues with remote Princes, and making the confirmation of them honourable and aduantagious: But *France* wanteth shipping, is carelesse of Nauigation, can raise no good Sailers, seldome attempteth voyages or discoueries; and consequently, hath its Cities and Merchants conuersing without forme or noble condition. For in *Paris* they dare talke of the kings mistresses, intermeddle withall tractats of Parliaments and State; call anie Prince *Hugonet*, who dares onely say; That *Noſtre-Dame* is but a darke melancholike Church; and finally iustifie verie monstrous and abusive actions. So that to tell you of their inconstant and refractorie dispositions at all times, would sooner discover their loathsome effusions of Christian blood, then preuent the custome and mischieuous practises of this people.

As for the Court, by reason of inueterat disorders, it is a meere mappe of confusion, and exposeth manie actions more ridiculous, than worthe of imitation.

The Husbandman, he is termed a *Pezant*, desparaged in his drudgerie and seruile toilsomnesse, liueth poore and beastly, is afraid of his owne shadow, and cannot free the Vineyards from theues and destroyers. Yea, all the countrie swarmeth with Roagues and Vagabonds, whose desperat wants driue, them to perpetrat manie heynous murders, although for the most part the Prouosts of euerie gouernment are verie diligent. The cause, as I coniecture, for that the passages are toilsome and disordered, yea manie times dangerous, to which may be added, the much conniuecie at notorious crimes, with manie particulars choaking the breath of happinesse, from giuing life to a glorious kingdom indeed, if the reciprocall duties betweene Prince and Subiect, were but moderatly extended.

But now to produce *England*, shal we say, that it is matchlesse, or faultlesse? Surelie no: we haue (no doubt) our imperfections aswell as other Nations. But certainly by that time, the Reader in the ballance of Iudgement hath peysed the differences of plentie and scarcitie, of necessities and abilities for Peace and Warre, the one for life, the other *M. Paris* fol. for defence: I make no question, but for the first, when he hath read ^{683.} the censure of the Pope, how that *England*, was *verè hortus deliciarum*; *verè Putens inexhaustus*; his Holinesse, if he might haue it, for catching, had

had no reason but to conclude: *Ergò, ubi multa abundant, de multis multa possunt extorqueri.*

For the second; how euer *France* and *Spaine* haue beene alwaies accounted the Ballances of *Europe*, yet hath *England*, stood as the Beame to turne the Scale: which perticularlie to prooue, I will neuer goe about, by recitall of our Auncestors vndertakings, or our Merchants aduentures ouer the face of the vniuers, of French or Spanish Victories, relieuement of neighbours, or expatiating of honourable reputation amongst the *Moscowites* in the North, or the *Mogores* in the East; But vnpartiallie bid you looke vpon the face of the kingdome as now it stands.

The King,

The Court,

If the glorie of a king consist in the multitude of subiects, how honorable is the State of *England* at this daie, which most harmoniously & absolutely comandeth ouer the *English*, *Scotch*, *Irish*, *Welsh*, & the *French* of *Gernsey* and *Iersey*? If you desire to behold palaces and goodlie buildings; where are so manie, and so good belonging to anie kingdome in the world? If a Court; I verily belieue for State, good order, expences, entertainment and continuall attendancie, other places will bee found to come farre short. If shipping, and a Royall Nauie; I hope you may depart with satisfaction, especiallie if you were instructed in the secrets of their seruice and strength. But let late triall performed in the face of the world make due report of those vertues. If you will muster vs at land; who can shew such companies of foot, such sufficient troopes of seruiceable horse, and so manie worthie seruitors, and so well appointed? what subiect liuing in a ciuill Commonwealth, can shew me, (as I can do manie in *England*) a gentleman of his owne tenants, able to bring such faire companies of men into the field.

The Nobilitie,

If martiall spectacles bee distastfull; then looke vpon the Nobilitie, and graue Councillors; but withall prepare a reuerend respect, and settle your esteeme so resolutelie towards them, for their orderlie life, their sweetnesse of manners, integritie in deciding of controuersies, and affabilitie in admitting of Sutors; that although you come from the *Grands* of *Spaine*, the *Princes* of *France*, and the ostentous pompe of Cardinals, yet be not too preiudicat, nor transported with selfe conceited wilfulnesse, and you shall see as great brauerie, retinue and obseruation amongst vs, as anie subiect in the world dare challeng.

After them, looke vpon inferiors, you shall see them generallie so manie, and so well attended and appointed, that I protest them far exceeding other places, both for gracefull shew, and sufficiencie of execution.

Will

Will you be raviſhed indeed, and transported with the loue of the World, come, and behold the beautie of our Ladies, and their diſpoſing at a night of ſolemnitie: to which if you adde the generall contentment, which our Engliſh women afford without ſophiſticat and adulterat fauours, there is no man can hold his peace, but proclaime our pre-eminence.

If you would ſee Juſtice proud of her intertainment, and how ſhee preſents both *premium* and *pœnam*, to the ſeueral attendants at the barre; looke into our Courts, and view the ſame in moſt perſpicuous eminence, without ſo much as the leaſt clowdie reſpect of perſons. Courts of Juſtice,

If you will enter our gentlemens houſes, I hope there are no ſuch cup-bords of plate, beds of veluet or imbroderie, hangings of tapiftrie, varietie of roomes, dutie of ſeruants, order of houſekeeping, ſtore of paſtime, and all in groſſe (that man can deſire) in any Countre in the World.

If you will ſearch our Cities and Townes, what they want in outward deceit of formalitie, it is ſupplied in ſweetneſſe and delicacie within doores, ſurpaſſing the beſt of them in wealth and furniture. As for expences, I am ſure ſome Citizens of London are at more annuall charge of diet, than the Dukes of *Venice*, *Florence* or *Genoa*. If you will examine our Marchants, how euer ſome great *Forker* or *agent* for a whole Kingdome, for *Genoa*, *Antwarp*, *Brusſels*, or other Cities, may ſurpaſſe vs for vſurie, and ſuppoſition of wealth, there died not two ſuch in one yeare, and out of one Towne in the World, as *Sir Iohn Spencer*, and *Maſter Sutton*. Generally, all the reſt ſurpaſſe for curious fare, ſtatelineſſe, education, and orderly contributions. Beſides, they liue at home in eaſe, purchaſe Land with ſecuritie, bring vp their children daintily and decently, maintaine their families in obedience, and cannot be matched by any forraine oppoſition. The Gentry,

Finally, if you would be acquainted with the trades-man, arteſan, and other of manuall occupations? looke how he liues, looke how he fares, looke where he dwels, looke what he weares, looke where he goes to buy his meat; to ſuch markets and ſhambles, that the very ſight aſtoniſheth all ſtrangers, being once made acquainted with their raritie & goodnes. The Citizens,

But indeed, if you would haue cauſe of wonder, then looke vpon the husband-man, and compare him to men of like ranke in other places, and I belieue vpon mature conſideration, our aduerſaries will repine, at their felicities, and our friends embrace our noble freedoms with deſire of imitation. The Husband man or Yeoman compared.

Compared
with the Turk.

In *Turkie*, with the rest, hee is a poore and vnfortunate slaue ; and whether *Muscelman*, or Christian, hee dare not manure his ground to the best profit, and therefore liueth poorely and sluttishly.

With the
Hungarian.

In *Hungarie*, and those parts, they resemble carrion : for liuing vnder the *Turke*, nothing is his owne, and in the Christian gouernment, all is taken from him, either to furnish the warres, or to maintaine the souldior.

With the Itali-
an.

In *Italie*, they are a little better, as long as they bee able to pay their rents, and husband their grounds. Yet doe they seldome liue of their owne, or lead a life becomming the freedome of conuersation. Besides in manie places, they are so terrified with the wretched troupes of the Banditie, who make prey of their labours, that they know the robbers, yet dare they neither detect them, nor denie to entertaine them. After the fashion of *Italie*, they will be a little gawdie (especially the women) in apparell; and are verie industrious, as hauing in one selfe same field (if the soile will yeeld it) though it consist but of an acre, both Corne, Vines, and Fruit-trees; Honie, Rootes, Sallers, Bees and Silke-wormes. Hee is now called a *Villano*, and serueth to no other vse, then to enrich his Lord, feeding himselfe vpon Garlike and Onions; and is acquainted with no good thing, but superstition, a few gawdie clothes, and the incontinent life of Curtezans.

With the
Spaniard,

In *Spaine* it is farre worse; the *Contradini* are numbred amongst the reproches of their gouernment, and esteemed almost as the Asses, that bring their Cabages, Melons, and such like trash to the Markets. For he dare not attempt to cheapen anie thing appropriat to the vse of the gentleman; As flesh, fish, wheat, or excellent fruits. Nor must hee, if he haue of his owne, but furnish the market with the best, feeding himselfe on the worst and viledest stuffe. Besides (as the error of *Italie*) if the mother haue a comely daughter (or worse) shee is contented for monie to yeeld to prostitution, &c.

With the
Frenchmen,

In *France*, the *Pezant* is not onely beastly within doores, but churlish, sauoring nothing but his labour, with base and seruile behauiour, with poore and miserable expences, with obscean and filthy lodging, with iealous and malicious entertainment, with illiberall and ill-becommung freedome of speech against both Court and Commonwealth.

With the Ger-
man.

In *Germanie* the Boore is somewhat better, for he eateth flesh sometimes, though vilely dressed: will be drunke and merrie: must be alwaies employed, and alwaies an hungred, or desirous of drinke; And can apparel himself handfomly to go to Church on Sundaies, or Holydaies.

daies. But they are dangerous in their tumults and rages, and not to be trusted vpon reconciliation, after a wrong.

In *Ireland* he is termed a Churle, in *England* a Clowne: but looke on him truly, as he liveth indeed, and you shall find him a carefull maintainer of his familie, in continued discents, and in times past, hee would not haue altered his addition of ritch yeoman, for the vaine-glorious title of poore gentlemen: You shall see them dwell in neat houses, manours, lordships and parks, to the annual value of a thousand pounds sometimes: their sonnes knighted, their daughters well bestowed; their other Children so dispersed, that Lawyers, Citizens, Merchants, are raised throughout the kingdome, from the sonnes and kindred of these countrimen. Yea, you shall see them invited to the Court by seruice, or promotion, and knowing that the breath of Kings aduanceth, or deiecteth, can attend the good howre, and such graces, as a Princes fauour may distribute to a well-deserving subject.

With the Irish
man.

Thus liueth our Countriman, and is able, though but a Farmer, to lodge you sweetly and handsomly, to set a piece of plate on the Cupboord, fise or six dishes of good fare on the Table, with fresh and fine linnen, & a cheerefull wel-come. He is so nurtured besides, that he can tel his Lawyer a formall tale, and complaine to the Iustice, if a farre better man wrong him. And finally, in a carowse of good liquor of his owne bruing, can chaunt it with the Poet; *Anglia Libera gens, cui Libera mens, &c.*

Concerning traficke and imployment at sea. What kingdome hath more commodities within it selfe, wanteth lesse, or is better furnished from forraine parts? So that whether for gaine sake, they make sale of the best things, or that there is a ssecret in importation, or that our Merchants are curious in selecting the choifest, I know not, but am sure, that our *England* is the verie shop of the World, and Magazine of Natures dainties. If it bee a blessing for euerie man to eate vnder his owne rooffe, to sit with the pleasure of conuersation in his Orchard or Garden, to enioy the fruits of the earth with plentie, to liue in neighbourly gratulities, hauing in a manner our doores open all night, to haue manie children, seruants, and store of cattell, to purchase great estates, marrie our daughters beyond expectation, and strenghten one another in worthe families, and sutable kindred: Then looke vpon *England*, and tell mee where is the like? If it bee a blessing not to bee suppressed with superiors, not to haue the Commonwealth rent

Concerning
traficke.

in pieces by tiranie; not to see others inioy the fruits of our labours; not to be tormented with intrusion, vsurpation, or malicious lookes of couetous Landlords! Looke amongst vs, and demandaund who can complaine? Or at least, who is so wronged, but hee may haue satisfaction or redresse? If it be a blessing, to enioy the preaching of the Gospell, to bee freed from corrupt, and absurd cerimonies, to reioyce in the libertie of an vpright conscience, to continue, in a true, perfect and established Religion, to abound with reuerent learned men, to haue liberrall exercise and dispute of our faith, to bee resolved of our doubts, with moderate perswasion, and dissuasion, and to haue all controuersies tried vpon the touchstone of Gods truth! Come and heare vs, and tell me wherein you are not satisfied? If it bee a blessing to haue sociable conuersation and yet with conuenable respect, to continue the freedome of neighbourlie meetings, exempted from the intollerable yoake of iealosie, to loue one another with those comfortable conditions of charitie, to feast without scandall, to entertaine without repining, and to bee merie without incontinencie, examine the conditions of vs all generallie, and setting mens imperfections aside, which follow life, as the shadow doth the Sunne, and tell mee where is offence? If it be a blessing to make be best vse of natures blessings, to be rather helpfull, than stand in need of others, to take & leaue warre withall Kingdomes of the World, to haue confining Princes congratulate vs by Embassage, and to welcome all commers with a noble, and correspondent inuitation; take vp our example, put vs to the triall, and see whether I speake vaine gloriously. To conclude with the best of all blessings, if it bee a blessing to liue vnder a Royall Monarch: to reioyce in the Kindred, Alliance, and strong confederacie of Kings; to haue adioyning Countries studie our obseruation, and to see our Countrie and people flourish in all good things; Looke vpon vs, penceil out our defects (if you can) and let not emulation, which attendeth on vertuous desires, be turned into enuie, or so corrupted with malice, that you will not yet confesse our blessed prerogatiues.

But you will say for all this; wee neither fetch gold from *Ophir*, nor are our Cities of sufficiencie to march in the first ranke of magnificencie. To the first I answere directlie, wee may if wee list, either fetch treasure where it is, or be the cause, that it shall be brought vs, euen to our owne doores, in peace. For I am sure wee haue not onely Ships and Men, but such hands and spirits, as with *Dauids*

worthies can pull the speare out of the hands of the *Philistines*, and sweetnesse from the strong: and who shall hinder vs? I hope neither *Spaine*, if there were occasions, nor the Gallies of *Messina* or *Malta*, nor the confederate Princes of *Italie*, nor the naue of *Turkie*, nor the fortifications of *China*, nor anie one worldly Prince, vnlesse our sinnes and profanation cause the Angell of the Lord to keepe vs backe, or strike vs with terror: But happie bee the conditions of true worthinesse; true valor, euen for conscience and honours sake, will doe no wrong.

As for our buildings, and citties, I answered, *Ars non habet inimicum, nisi ignorantem*, and men are too pereiuicate, that either say or thinke so. For of my owne knowledge, there are not so manie beautiful Churches, and statelie houses, within the circular dimention of so much ground in the world: so that if our gentlemen admitting the custome of liuing in cities, as they doe in most parts of *Europe*, could range all the edifices of eminence in a Shire, within a wall; or that we were scited in a Continent like the thorough-fare of *France*, *Germanie*, or *Italie*; we should questionlesse haue more glorious, great and populous cities, then anie Kingdome: which, with *Ahasuerus* can hold vp a scepter of potencie, to keepe Maiestie from violence, though a decree of defiance were published neuer so terribly: yea I will avow, that our Townes and Villages, (esteeme of them as you please,) considering the vse and necessitie of Trauell, doe farre surmount the Hosteries and entertainment of all other nations: And am sure, if you will let loose the queene of cities, as they tearme *Paris*, to looke bigge or angerlie vpon vs, our *London* can affront her with a matching countenance, and ouermatch her in manie seuerall excellencies.

And surelie, if any man should materially obiekt against these my assertions, I should deeme him either some young humorist, some petulant factor, discontented trauellor, or headstrong Papist: Of which profession, I misdoubt not, but to finde manie amongst men, who being either distressed at home, or vnsetled abroad, to their priuat ends will not blush with the King of *Assiria*, to laugh at the weakenesse of *Iuda*, for being confident in the promises of God, will raile on religion, condemne gouernmēt, extol pettie Princes, & with *Naaman* the Syrian prefer the waters of *Babilō* before the hollesome riuer of *Iordan*. But come to particulars: they stick in the clay; & like an vnbrokē colt, flinging vp & down, & sweating with rage; & neither able to go forward in a hād some course, nor remain patient, in expecting the will of the Rider: Or, open thē but one windoe, to let in but the light of our glory, by discoursing of
our

The dispositi-
on of Male-
contents
abroad.

our Nauie, the generall musters of the Countrey, the arming of euery Gentlemans house, a Noblemans attendance, a Ladies iewels; the maiestie of our Vniuersities, the happinesse of our husbandman, the wealth of our great Cities, and order in the administration of the same: Then stand they with *Niobe* transhaped into stone, and remaine confounded by reason of their former peruerse and ignorant wilfulnesse. But I will not be vnciuile in exprobatation, only let me tell them, that because, in beastly *Galata* and *Constantinople*, the Marchant may goe into diuers *Bashawes* and *Greekish* houses, and there by intertainment transported with outward deceit of colours (as painting, gilding, in-laid workes, and such like) he maketh a wonder at the cost and pompeous expences: Not remembring how their best masters in *England*, are scarce admitted vp staires into many worthy houses of our Noblemen & Gentlemen, which being admitted would affoord other manner of discoueries, both magnificent and wealthie, euen to true admiration. Because in *Venice*, they haue ouerlooked the *Bucentaure*, *S. Marks* palace, and *Piazza* (a daintie front of buildings on the grand *Canale*) the Colledge of *Iesuits*, a mercer or two that selleth *Copes* and rich clothes of gold for high Altars, the *fundamento nouo*, the *Arfinall*, &c. Therefore *England* hath but poore furniture, wanteth the essentiall means of Princelinesse and Maiestie, is only gawdie in colours, a little imbroderie, and gold lace, which they allow to *Plaiers*, and *Mountebanks*, both in *Venice*, *Florence*, *Verona*, and the rest of her Cities.

Because in *Genoa*, *Naples*, *Rome*, and some other places, they may see an euen street of Houses, with a pillar or two of iet, iasper, and hard marble; a Cardinalls pallace, and six moils in a Carosse, to attend him but to the conclaue: a stately *Mosque* in *Turkie*, the *Dome* in *Florence*, new *Saint Peters* at *Rome*, and some other ostentious buildings, they say our beautie is eclipsed, and we must submit the controuersie to the apparant brauery of forraine magnificence: whereas in truth they hold no more comparison for maiestie (though disperfedly) either with our Courts, late Country buildings, demesnes adiacent, and commodious houses about the Citie for receit, capacitie, and entertainment, than bird-cages doe to delightfome Arbours.

But who are they that so entertaine Tables with this returne of discourse? surely none but our fashion-follow-*Trauellors*; who with many long lookes, expecting in an Almanack for a yeare of Iubile, flie ouer *Sea* by flocks towards *Rome*. Where by the way, in *Ausburg*, *Noremberg*, and some other Cities of *Germany*, meeting with a flaggon of wine, where with the Burgers according to custome, with such entertainment,

v/c

use to welcome strangers; they presently write ouer, with what state they were feasted, and how graciously admitted into Cities resembling new *Ierusalem*, in respect of our disproportion of building, and vnequall fashion of our streetes.

Because in *France* they may drinke wine of *Orleance*, or *Lyons*, and for their money satisfie incontinencie (wherein yet they confesse *Italy* to surpasse) Oh! say they, *England* is a barren Countrie, and farre from becirkling her forehead with the garland of *Bacchus*, or wreath of *Abundance*, but sitteth desolate like a widow, hauing the curse of baldnesse inflicted vpon her.

Because in *Padoa*, they are told of *Antenors* Tombe in the streetes, seene the Amphitheatres in *Verona* or *Rome* (monuments truly resembling the wrinkles of an old face) or behold the Walls of *Constantinople*, the ruinous *Collosses* of the City, with the *Aquaduct* in the Countrie; Oh! these be Kingdomes, that make aged time yong again, and surpasse our new Nation for wonders and workes of Maiestie.

Because they haue beheld, though peraduenture with little vnderstanding, the forts of *Mount-melian*, and *Saint Katherine*; the citadels of *Millan* and *Antuerp*; the Castles of *Naples* and *Saint Angelo*; and haue beene acquainted with the examination of passengers at *Lyons*, *Millan*, and the frontier Townes of the Princes of *Italie*; They presently exclaime against our weaknesse, and ill-aduised Discipline, which leaueth our Country (as it were naked) to all inconueniences of wind and weather.

In the next ranke, come vp our malecontents, and they are such as being meerey gulled with pride, selfe-conceit, and fantastike vain-glory, haue runne a prodigall hunting-iourney with *Esam*, vntill being weary and hungry, they haue beene inforced to sell their birth-rights for a messe of pottage. Then with *Yorke* and *Stanly*, and thousands more, they enter into violent courses, curse *Dauid*, raile on their Countrie, and accuse Authoritie of iniustice and partialitie: With the Dukes of *Guise* and *Biron*, they set vp the praises of the Spanish King, and the tender hartednesse of the Pope for the decay of Religion, supposing themselves sufficiently magnified for contesting with Kings, and sleighting the Princes of the blood.

In the reare, slily stealeth vp the obstinat Papist: To him vrge honestie, reason, yea the Scriptures, and he will discharge no other shor, but the *Ordinance of the Church*. Put him from that flanker, and you shall see him like an Adder lurking in the grasse, to sting the heele of the passenger. And that is with telling you, that in *France* the Church at

Amiens

Amiens hath delicate Pictures, the *noſtre Dame* at *Roan* and *Paris* maintaine braue proceſſions; Our Lady at *Sichem* worke only miracles: yea more than myracles; for they will tell you of a Virgin got with childe in a Nunnrie by one of her ſiſters. For (ſay they) ſhe proteſted before our Lady, that ſhe neuer knew, what the company of man meant.

But leauing theſe men to themſelues, and the ſting of their owne conſciences, we will proceed to ſhew you with what affections other Nations doe at this day Court vs.

What other
Nations con-
ceiue of vs.

France is ſo ſtrengthened and beautified at home, by the multitude of Princes and Noble Gentlemen: that now (at this day inioying the kingdome intirely to themſelues) they are confident to defend it, not ſeeking ambitiouſly to offend others, though happily enuying, to ſee the contraction of both Nations vnto vnity and obedience; fearing thereby, leaſt we ſhould the rather be imboldened and encouraged to reuiue our old claimes, or elſe to erect our remembrances to ſearch the records of our former fortunes.

Spain.

Spain, both knowes vs, and hath of late had ſome feeling of vs, retaining the opinion of our wealth and forces. By reaſon whereof, for that his dominions lye more open, by diſperſion into many numbers, he ſtandeth in doubt, that we may not only put him to the double charge of a Nauie; (The one abroad, for conuoy of his Treafure, and the other at home, for ſafetie of his harbers.) But alſo, that we may attempt the vncharitable viſitation of his chiefeſt Townes, and richeſt ports. Therefore he will continue correſpondency amongſt vs, and corroborat his frienſhip whatſoener it coſt. Of which minde is alſo the *Arch-duke*, though couertly repining a little more againſt vs; As knowing that our affections to the *Hollanders*, hath ſome-what croſſed his firſt reſolutions, and indeed abated his abſolute hopes, of binding the ſeuenteen Prouinces together in one ſheafe.

The Emperor.

The *Emperor* and *Germans* (or if you pleaſe) the *Imperials*, haue a reaſonable good opinion of vs, as worthy Sea-men and reſolute Soldiers, eſpecially vpon hope of glory or purchaſe. Yet thinke they vs factious, vnconſtant, the Apes of the World, and wonder at our patience, eſpecially to ſee vs endure the impoſturing deceits of the Catholique pretences.

The Pole and
Mofcouite.

The *Pole* and *Mofcouite* are ſo farre off, that they can giue vs ſmall occaſion of offence, and therefore are both of our intruſion amongſt them, or againſt them, as ſomewhat fearefull of our desperate wanderers. And being well acquainted with our ſtate at home, cannot indure we ſhould be ſharers abroad.

The

The *Grand-Seignior* neuer nameth vs with dignifying titles, as being The Turke. proud in himselfe, and we too remote from him. He supposeth vs only fit for marchandize, and that our Island is a barren place, as sequestred from the pleasures and opulent commodities of the South and East Countries. Neither doth he stammer in his comparison of twenty Bashawes within his conquests, whose severall commands and iurisdiccions, lift vp such Crownes of principalities, as surmount vs in number of people, and expence of Treasure.

The states of *Italy*, (birds of a feather) most vpon enuy of Trade, and generally all, in despite of Religion, are thus induced. The Duke of *Sauoy*, and *Gran-Prior* of *Malta* (the first in midst of troublesome mountaines, the other of a turbulent Sea) are as carelesse of vs, as we of them, yea many times wreake their hatred where they may, viz. vpon our Marchants; whom they spare not, if they can ouermaister, either freighted with Turkish goods, or supplying their wants with prohibited wares. To whom in such busineses the *Florentine* is not only presidiarie, but picketh other quarrels vpon collaterall employments. *Italie.*

In the Dutchy of *Millan*, the Gouvernour is very politique and seuer, in searching after bookes and vncustomed wares, though it tend but to a paire of stockings: from whence arise so many inconueniences, that the office of *Dacij* is growne odious, and subiect to the abusive conditions of very base companions. As for falling into the snare of the inquisition, it is a danger irrecoverable, as those our Country-men can witnesse, who of late yeeres were in sodaine danger, both heere, at *Rome* and at *Florence*, for hauing Frier *Pauls* bookes about them, (though printed at *Venice*) against the Popes temporall iurisdiction. The trust of some friends, and the help of a dark night were their best securities. *Millan.*

Besides, he entertained *Tyrane*, and all his attendants; though not with such sufficiency, as the expectation of such a guest deserved, yet with malice inough against vs; notwithstanding, he is a dogged examiner of the English, not trusting our fugitiues, though allowing their vn-naturall defections: rayling vpon them (euen the Kings pensioners) as the Prince of *Parma* long since taught him, in the tumultuarie businesse of the Low-Countries.

The Duke of *Mantua* and *Medena* (as lesse interested in affaires of *Mantua*. Sea, or passages by Land) and now allied with *Sauoy*, thinke not of vs, either as friends, or enemies; but questionlesse willing to assist their own allies, as occasions may offer themselues.

The *Venetians* seeme to hold good correspondencie, if not outward: *Venice*. for in termes, they haue not spared to exprobate vs with the nich-name of

of *Cursore Englese*, since *Ward* and other English Pirats haue so much indamaged them. In diuers ship-wracks about *Candie*, they haue sometimes dealt very vnkindly with our Marchants.

And, in the late businesse at *Constantinople* (about precedency between *England* and *France*) the Baylife was my L. Embassadors absolute enemy: yea, & in their last peace with the Pope, although they would pretend to stand on our help, and to entertaine our Captaines, yet proues it a matter of difficulty and dispute amongst them.

The Florentine.

The *Florentine*, or great Duke, is a meere hater of vs, except it be to serue his owne turne, and hath euer been forward to entertaine factious persons amongst vs.

In the latter end of her Maiesties raighe, you shall find him a meere neglecter of vs, nothing respecting how the Queene was distasted, or the state disturbed. Afterward he succored diuers rebels, and discontented English. When the Marchant Royall was sunck in the harbour of *Ligorn*, he was so transported with passion, that he would haue layed an imposition vpon the English, for the waying of her vp. And presently he employed Sir *R. D.* about the new-building of a man of war, a ship of 600. Tunnes: but disapointed him in the command, making him an apparent subiect of disgrace and discontent: yea, although at first he had welcomed him with the offensive title of Earle of *Warwick*. And many times, by pretext of confederacie with the Gallies of *Malta*, the *Papes*, and his owne imperious prerogative, he affronteth our Marchants, and impeacheth their trades, as farre forth as he may.

The Pope.

The Pope is our irreconcilable enemy both waies: I meane in animating turbulent and traiterous Papists within our owne bosomes, reaching them, with the Viper to deuoure their own mother: And in exciting of forrain Princes (as much as in him lyeth) to violent courses of open hostilitie, against vs, as against all others professing the same Religion. As for entertaining of fugitiues, inticing ouer of yong wits and vnstayed students, gracing of Iesuits, aduancing of Traitots, searching and imprisoning of Trauellers, railing at our King, and traducing *Henry the eight*, and *Queene Elizabeth*: these absurdities are not only frequent and familiar in al places amongst his partisans, but euery day blundered out of Pulpits by the Fryers and Iesuites.

Naples,
Sicill.

Naples and *Sicil*, though vnder the King of *Spains* protection and Vice-royes, yet are all conspiring against vs, and runne one race with their neighbours. Witnesse the taking of our ships, and the ill vsage of our Marchants when Master *Wall* was Consull: with the reuiling of our Religion, and their vsuall imprecations: One day to see a smoake of

of thonging discontentments, turne to a flame of furious disconsolation amongst vs.

Neither is this the full scope of their continued enuies: Religion is the pretence, but malice, and private respects, procure these bad effects: *Sevit post funera virus.* At Venice, the English haue no buriall allowed them, but the Sea: neither at Zante are they better vsed, but faine to be carried vp into *Morea* amongst the Turkes. At *Lygorne*, and other places of *Italie*, an Englishman dying without confession, is throwne into some ditch, to be deuoured of beasts and birds: And in *Spain*, he is interred in the strond, the field or a garden. How farre more charitable was *Alexander* to *Darius*, *Hannibal* to *Marcellus*, *Cesar* to *Pompey*, *Turkes* to *Christians*; and Man to Man, if not a Romanist?

But now (leauing these premonitions to your better considerations) as I haue made you acquainted with those blessings, which in truth doe make a Kingdome really happie; So againe for the strength of scituation, I hope to make you as perfect beholders of the two properties which *Aristotle* wished (aboue all proiects what euer) to be regarded in the building of a Citie. The one is, that it be difficult to besiege: the other, that it be easie for conueying in, and transporting out, of things necessarie. These two commodities hath *England* by the Sea, which to the Inhabitants is a deepe trench against all hostile inuasions; and an easie passage to take in, and send out all commodities whatsoever, being scituated in the bosome of the maine Ocean; which euen by naturall courses fortifieth the Iland, more than any Sea doth any other kingdom. For, on the West lyeth the *Irish* Ocean, a Sea so turbulent, and so full of rockes and flates, that it is very dangerous for great Ships; and on the East, South, and North, the flowing and ebbing of the *Brittish* Ocean, is so accidentall, the removing of the sands and shelues so vncertaine, and the rising and falling of the water, betweene twelue and fiftene fathom (a thing wonderfull to be spoken off) so ordinarie euery twelue houres, that without an *English* Pilot, no stranger shall be able to bring in a vessell in safetie: And he likewise must bring his Tyde iustly with him, or otherwise it is impossible to land without perill. The Sea coast on euery side, is clifffe and inaccessible, except in some certaine places which are strongly fortified, as *Barwick*, *Douer*, *Dartmouth*, *Plim-mouth*, *Portsmouth*, &c. so that the whole Iland may well be reputed for one impregnable fortresse.

The scituation
of England.

To this strength of scituation, sithence of late a worthy gentleman, Forces,
(and that truly) hath not doubted to auerre, that ten such Marchants
ships well provided of munition and men, as in these daies trade into the
East.

East-Indies, would not much feare the Nauie royall of some kings in Christendome; why should we feare to reioyce, in the flourishing estate of that Kingdome, in whose Hauens (besides the Nauie Royal) two thousand vessels are reported to traficke yearelie.

And be it as it may, to prooue what wee speake, and to passe over the much famous passages of *Edward the 3.* to *Caleis*, and *Henrie the 8.* to *Bulloine*; we will flie no further for examples, than the fourth yeare of *Queene Elizabeth*, when in her iorny to *Newhauen*, the Nauie latelie neglected was now againe so well furnished, as both the *Spaniard* and *French-man* enuied her Abilities.

But 88. was the yeare, which gaue both terror and admiration vnto all our neighbours. A yeare by the *Germans* foretold, to be to the world, climatericall, and by *Regiomontanus*, Admirable. And so indeed it prooued; Full of rumours, anxieties, and menaces. The King of *Spaine* hauing of late daies added vnto his Signiories of *Spaine*, the kingdome of *Portugal*, and boyling in reuenge against this kingdome, suggesting vnto his imaginations, that if his destinies would vouchsafe as facile a victorie against *England*, as elsewhere, vpon like suppositions, they had bestowed vpon him at the *Terceras* and *Portugal*; then even then at once, had the life of the *Low-Countries* lien a bleeding, his navigation to the Indies warranted, and his hopes finished. To the accomplishment whereof he presseth, forceth, hireth and boroweth from sundrie Nations, their strongest vessels, and therein imployeth his utmost meanes to haue tamed the *English*, and confounded the *Netherlands*.

But, that euer memorable Ladie, warie and prouident, summoneth her subiects, relieth on their loues, and to the Westward opposeth a nauie consisting of 100. saile there to wait the Approch of this *Inuincible Armada*: And, because from *Flanders* the Duke of *Parma*, threatened no lesse danger; vpon that coast also, she laied twentie other good ships to attend his attempts, besides those of the *Low-countries*.

From the West the enemy was discerned, and fight with present courage entertained, but precisely ordered that none of the *English* ships, should voluntarily (if otherwise it might be auoided) lay anie *Spaniard* aboard, but alwaies fight at best aduantage: induoring by all meanes to keepe into the weather; whereby at all times soundlie to haue interrupted them, if they had offered to land; So, to leaue and take, as occasions presented; they comming to inuade, and the *English* ends being onelie to keepe them from landing. The which directions were so punctuallie obserued, as that this inuincible fleet for all their force and

and apperance, without either gaining, or sinking one of our vessels, was faine to flie away by the back doore; I mean by the North seas; wherein they found a miserable and tedious flight, lost 100. and od of their best ships, and in recompence, neuer got so much as one dishfull of fresh water, nor euer landed one man (prisoners except) vpon the English coast.

Whereat, neither let the Papist mutter, nor the ignorant detract by saying; *That it was the only stormie winds and tempestuous seas, that afflicted our enemies, and draue them from our coast.* These excuses argue bad spirits: for it could not be auoided, but that the English ships should also be ingaged to like violent accidents of wind & waues, as were the Spaniards. The English had no determination to leaue them, no not to looke into anie of their owne ports, or those of their friends for succour. And surely, foule weather, and heigh growen seas did more hinder vs, then them. For then could not we carrie out our lower ports, being our best tyres; which the Spaniards might doe, their ordinance lying nothing so neere the water, as the English did. Notwithstanding we alwaies affronted them, and galled them with our great ordnance, as our best opportunities serued; our ships being more proper for these seas, then their huge Lee-ward Carts, Alwaies in spight of their hearts, wee kept into the weather of them, to our great aduantage; which in truth was no small meanes of victorie, and of their disgrace, that made so great preparations to so small purpose.

If they longed to be fought withall, & were not; why did they neuer offer to dispatch the busines, where about they made the world belecue, they came so resolutely determined? why did they not make a triall for landing, or aduenture the surprisal of some famous port, for want wherof informer Ages *Xerxes* suffered that terrible defeature at *Thirmipola*? Before this was don, vwhy ran they avay? of vwhat vvere they so fearefull, vwho came like souldiours and resolute men, vnder the title of *Assurance*, to conquer such a Nation? Did the terror of a storme only driue them from hence in such hast? vvere they not resolved to indure such vweather (as should happen) in so great an enterprife? Did they thinke to vvin England vwith big looks, or, to haue tamed the people by tricks and dalliance, as they had done the surly Portugues and fine Italians their neighbours? Surely, it seemed, the Sothern vvinds had only inflated their minds, as it is reported, it doth their mares, in the *Asturies*.

Where, let vs leaue them, and vvish that some of those Worthies, vvho yet liue, and vvere eye-vvitnesles of those great and fortunat expeditions, vndertaken and effected, vvithin the 44. yeares space of Her Royall gouernment, vvould take the paines to commit the Relation

thereof to euerlasting record. Which done I make no doubt, but that it would appeare beyond all obiection, That although the English nation had long breathed vnder the mild aspect of so gracious a Ladie, yet was it no lesse exercised in military discipline abroad, than in peaceable pleasures at home. Yea, that the politike Regiment and heroicall actions of a maiden Queene, haue hardly since the conquest, bin exceeded by any her Maiesties most famous progenitors. For be it, either in the wise reformation, or wonderfull re-establishment of Christian religion (wherein she shewed no lesse constancie than true sinceritie:) or otherwise, in continuall comfort, or liberal assistance, of her distressed neighbours and Allies, (wherof she had a royal and Christian-like regard) or else in resolute repelling, and fortunat inuading her most mighty enemies, wherein she was alwaies blest frō aboue with happy & victorious successe, her enterprises euermore were crowned with happines; And in regard therof (throughout all nations) her Councillers were reputed graue & prudent, the realm flourishing & powerfull, & her selfe magnanimous & renoumed: the fruits wherof, I doubt not, but we inioy at this day. The force at land is nothing inferior to that at sea; for the kingdom is deuided into 52. shires, in one only whereof (commonly called *Yorkeeshire*) it is thought seauenty thousand foot-men may be leuied. Euerie shire hath a Lieutenant, who seeth to the election and trayning of souldiours, when necessitie requireth. In chosing of souldiours, they take the names of all Inhabitants of the Countrie, from aboue 16. yeares of age, to sixty; and out of these they choose the likeliest and ablest for seruice. The taller and stronger are chosen for footmen, and these diuided into foure kinds. The first are Archers, by whose dexterity they conquered the greatest part of *France*, tooke King *Iohn* captiue, and held *Paris* sixteene yeares in subiection. The Arrowes of the *Parthians*, were neuer more dreadfull to the *Romaines*, then the Bowes of the *English* to *Frenchmen*. The second sort, vsed light staues, well headed with Iron, with which they would strike a man from his horse. The other two, vse and experience of latter times hath taught them: the one is the Harquebuze, the other the Pike, a fit weapon for their constitution, by reason of their tall, strong, and man like stature. For their seruice on Horsebacke, they chose men of small stature, but wel set, actiue, and nimble. These Horsemen are of two sorts; some heauy armed, and those for the most part are gentlemen; other lighter armed, and some riding after the manner of the *Albanesses*; some after the fashion of *Italie*, vling a Scull, a Iack, a Sword, and long light speares. And although they are able to bring to the field 2000. men at Armes, and infinite troupes of light

At land,

light Horsemen; yet their Horsemen neuer caried like reputation to their Footmen: For *Edward* the third, and *Henry* the fifth (which made so manie iourneies into France) and obtained so many famous victories, to shew what confidence they reposed in their Infanterie, euer left their Horse, and put themselues into the battaile of their footmen: whereas the French kings not daring to inure the Commons to warfare (least leauing their Manuell occupations and Trades, they should grow insolent in the wars, to which humour they are greatly addicted) alwaies put themselues and their hopes vpon the fortune of their Cauallrie, being all almost gentlemen. But forasmuch, as the French maintaine no good races of Horse, and to purchase them from other places, is a matter of great charge, and good cannot alwaies be gotten for money; for these reasons, and for that Horsemen are nothing so seruiceable in the field as footmen, I thinke the French haue so often beene defeated by the English.

To shew what force the Kings of *England* are able to bring into the field, let these examples stand for manie. *Henrie* the eight passed to *Bullen*, with an Armie diuied into three Battalions: In the Vantgard passed twelue thousand footmen, and five hundred light Horsemen, cloathed in blew Iackets with red guards. The middle ward (wherein the King was, and passed last ouer) consisted of twentie thousand footmen, and two thousand horse, cloathed with red Iackets and yellow guards. In the rereward was the Duke of *Norfolke*, and with him an armie like in number and apparrell to the first, sauing that therein serued one thousand *Irishmen*, all naked saue their mantels and their thicke gathered shirts: Their Armes were three Darts, a Sword, and a Skeane. They drew after them one hundred great peeces, besides small: an Armie by the censure of *Guicciardin*, not more notable by the multitudes of souldiours, and consideration of their valour, than most glorious by the presence and Maiestie of their King, in whose person appeared at that instant, being in an age disposed and actiue, all those tokens of honour and magnanimity, which rysing after to their full ripenesse and perfection, by degrees of time, studie, and experience, made him the most renowned and mightie Prince, that liued in his age, in al this part or circuite of the earth, which we call Christendome. Their carrriages were so many, that therewith they intrenched their Campe like a wall. And for the conueiance of their Ordnance, their baggage, and their prouision, they transported into the Continent, aboue five and twenty thousand horse, beside all other kinde of cartell.

In the aforesaid yere of 88. after that *Queene Elizabeth* had prouided

fully and sufficiently to prevent her enemies at sea, then ceased she not to be as carefull at Land, ouer her owne and her peoples safeties. And therefore to be readie against anie sinister accident, which it might haue pleased the Almighty to haue giuen her at sea: at land she appointed 25. thousand souldiours to attend the enemy al along the Southerne coast. At Tilbury, lay the Earle of Leycester with one thousand horse and 22. thousand foot, there to haue entertained the enemy, if he had kept his resolution; which was by the Thames mouth to haue assailed London vpon the sodaine. For the guard of Her person (vnder the command of the Lord *Hunsdon*) she leuied out of the Inland shires, foure and thirtie thousand footmen, and two thousand horse, besides those goodly troupes, which the Nobility and Gentry presented vnto her Maiesties view, of their meere loue and zeale, to Prince and Countrie.

Neighbour-
hood,
France.

For neighbourhood in *France*, it may be supposed that the Princes of the reformed Religion, will be alwaies glad to find good correspondie from those, who are interessed in like disadvantages, as themselves. What may be done by the perswasions of the pestiferous Iesuits, God only knoweth. But this is certaine, that between nations ingaged in ancient quarells, and both aspiring to one and the same greatnesse, Alliances may easily be made; friendship neuer. At worst, the Frenchman is a tolerable friend, though a doubtfull neighbor. *Francum amicum habes, sed non vicinum*. The like saith He, for vs.

The Spanish.

As for the *Spaniard*, it is a prouerb of his owne, *That the Lyon is not so fierce, as is painted*. His forces in all parts of the world (except those in the Low-countries) are farre vnder fame. And if the late Queene would haue beleued her men of warre, as she did Some others addicted to peacefull courses, she might peraduenture haue broken that great Empire in pieces, and made their kings, as in old times, kings onely of home-bred commodities. Well was it for them, that her Maiestie (alwaies inclinable to peace) did al by halfe, and petty inuasions which indeed was her only error; for future, to teach the *Spaniard* how to defend himself, and to see his owne weaknesse: which, til her attempts had taught him, was hardly known to himselfe: 4000. men would haue made a shrewd aduenture to haue taken his Indies from him; I meane al the ports by which his treasure passeth: vwherein he is more hated by the natives, then the English are by the Irish. And then, what shall his Low-countrie armies do, if the Indies pay them not? nothing but mutine, and spoile their owne territories, as they haue often done, and that of late yeares, almost to the ruine of the Archduke.

So

So againe, in 88. if that Queene would haue harkened to hazard, yet not without reason, wee had burnt all his ships and preparations in his owne ports, as wee did afterwards, vpon the same grounds and intelligence in *Cadiz*. He that knowes him not, feares him, but excepting his *Low-Country* armie (as aforesaid) which hath continued in discipline since *Charls* the 5. his time, he is no where strōg, they are but follies that are spoken of him elsewhere: He knoweth, that we are too strong for him at sea, and haue the *Hollanders* to helpe who are now by their industries in way to be strongest of all. They are a wise people, and tooke it somewhat in ill part, that we made peace without thē; which in truth forced thē to cōclude their long truce: They were the last that put down arms, and though they compounded vpon the greatest disadvantage, *France* and *England*, hauing first capitulated) yet they made a far more noble peace, then their associats did. Since that time (we find) the people to be more prouident, and by degrees lesse respectiue of their neighbors. All Histories will tell you, it is a point worth the looking vnto. For vnto whom they fasten themselves, he that enioyeth them, wil be the greatest, & giue law to the rest. If anie man doubt it, he knowes not much, all nations haue their imperfections, & so haue we; faults haue at all times troubled the eye of vnderstanding. For whereas in her Maiesties time, it is well knowne, that one of her shippes haue commaunded fortie of theirs, to strike saile, they wil now vndertake vs one to one, and, but for the iealousies of time, scant vouchsafe vs a good word. But Kings are not like priuat men; they forsake not one another in aduersitie: though not alwaies for their sakes, who are oppressed, but for their owne securities, because they watch (and reason good) the surmounting power of confining neighbourhood.

The Neither-lands,

These are the Greatest States to be looked after: As for the Arch-dukes, these vnited Prouinces for their particular interests, will well enough attend him. The Arch-duke.

Let vs no more therefore be frightened with the *Spaniards* greatnesse, the *Venetian* wealth and Arsenal; the confederacy of *Florence*, *Malta*, *Genoa*, the *Pope*, *Naples*, and *Sicil*; yea, worst of all, with report of the *Mahumetā* inuincible fleet. Let none saue fooles admire wonders without knowledge. Why, *Ward* & therest of the pirats, who at their first cōming into the seas, might easily haue bin choked, from becomming a terror to all the *Leuant*, let wise men iudge: for my part, I can giue no other guesse, but the president of that admirable fight, which captaine *John King* (when he was Maister of the Merchant Royall) made against 3. great ships and 15. gallies, laied purposely in wait in the mouth of the

Streits to intercept all English passengers. And surelie some sea-men haue beene of opinion, with twentie good men of warre, in contempt of the proudest Armada, or frie of Gallies (as they haue termed them) that those seas can affoord, to performe actions beyond credit.

Neither let fugitiues flatter themselues with conceits of forreine greatnesse. No people were more beholding to *Tyrone* and *Terconnel* than the *Spanish*, in their miserable ship-wrack vpon the *Irish* coast. No, men receiued larger promises: *The great King should remeber his humanitie and noble respect: The Pope himselfe shall gratifie him with a Phoenix plume*, as hee did King *Iohn* with a crowne of *Peacocks* feathers, yea, they can complement with him, that hee is more worthie of a *Diadem*, than a *subiects* prostitution. But is *Tiron* in distresse, and after shipwracke of his loyaltie, driuen to make triall of his *Spanish* and *Romish* requitall? At *Millan* hee is like to like without doores, if his stomach cannot brooke the entertainment of a common *Inne*; and at *Rome* bewelcomed with the allowance of a *subiect* of charitie.

As for defamations breathed from the poyson of malice, I make no question, but by the generous disposition of noble gouernors, they will returne to the disgrace of the brochers. As it fell out to Captaine *R. Yorke*, by the worthinesse of an honourable enemy Count *Mannsfeld*: who hearing this traitorous captaine to transgresse the bounds of patience, in vndecent rayling vpon the gouernment of England, and the life of the late Queene: *Sir Rowland* (quoth he) *in plaine termes I assure you, that the custom of my table, will allow of no such irregular behaniour.*

Thus haue I shewed you the loue of some, & the malice of others, abroad, with our owne happinesse at home, if we can be thankfull for it. Amongst the which, as last, but not least, I account the continued tranquillitie of *England*, especially to consist in the moderat, yet honourable respect of our nobilitie, wherein though they posses few Castles or strong places (inuiroed with rampiers and ditches: Neither that, the Titles of Dukes, Marquisses, or Earles are more than titular, as bestowed (vpon desert) at the pleasure of the Prince, yet haue they the gouernment of Prouinces with subordinate authoritie ouer the people, to the great quiet of the State and the prosperitie of the kingdome: where on the contrarie, the Nobility in *France*, possessing some absolute, & some mixt iurisdiction, with Hereditarie titles &c. Being Lords not onelie of Townes, but of great and goodlie cities, also, and receiuing homage and fealtie of their tenants, doe (as we haue often seene) but badlie & at pleasure acknowledge the soueraigntie of the King, and the Arrest of the Parliaments.

Scotland, another portion of *Brittaine*, in times past, began at the *Scotland*. Mountaine *Grampius*, and from thence to its vtmost border was extended Northward : But in future times, by the extinguishment of the *Picts*, it reached also vnto *Tweed*, & sometimes also to *Twine* : the chance of war so moderating, in these counterchanges, as in al other worldly occurrences. Wherupon its longitude from *Tweede*, vnto the vtmost limit, is thought to be foure hundred and fourescore miles. But, as this Prouince is longer than *England*, so is it narrow, for that it endeth like vnto a wedge. For the vnshapeable and rough Mountaine *Grampius* (whereof euen *Tacitus* in the life of *Agricola* made mention) runneth through the verie heart therof, euen from the *German* shore, that is frō the mouth of the riuer *Dee* vnto the *Irish* coast, & vnto that Lake, which the Inhabitants cal *Lomund*, which lieth between that country & the said moūtain.

The Kingdome hath euerie where safe harbours, creeks, lakes, marishes, riuers and fountains replenished with fish : As also mountaines, and in tops thereof large plaines, yeelding abundance of grasing to cattle, and woods wonderfullie abounding with venerie. By the aduantages of which place, the people being sustained, could neuer be sullie conquered ; for euerie Prouince, Woods and Marishes, were readie refuges to their safeties, and wilde beasts, and plentie of cattle, remedies against famine for their bodies.

Those who inhabit the Southerne part ; as by much, the best, so are they the better qualified, the ciuilest, and speake the English language. And sithence that nature hath denied them plentie of fewell, their fiering is of a blacke stone, which, they digge out of the earth. The people who dwell in the Northerne and Mountainous parts, are a verie Pit-coale, or
sea-coale. sauage and vnciuill kinde of men, and tearmed *Siluestres*, viz. *Highland-men*. These after the *Irish* fashion were accustomed to be cloathed with a mantle, and a shirt, coloured with Saffron, and to go bare legged as high as their knees. Their weapons are Bow & Arrowes, with a verie broad Sword and Dagger, sharpe but on one edge. They al speake *Irish*, & feed vpon fish, milk, cheese & flesh ; & haue great store of cattaille.

They differ from the English, both in Lawes and Customes ; For the one retaineth the Ciuill Law, as almost doe all other Nations ; But the English haue their peculiar or Municipall Lawes. In other things they differ not much. Their Language (as aforesaid) is one and the same, the same constitution of bodie ; equall courage in battaile, and semblable addiition vnto hunting, euen from their Child-hoods.

Their houses in the Villages are verie small, and couered with straw or reed : wherein as well their cattle as themselves, in manner of stables,

doe reside. Their townes, except that of *S. Johns*, are inuironed with no wals; so that it should seeme, that their corragious mindes do repose the safetie of their liues, in the onely vertue of their bodies. They are also ingenious; which their learning manifesteth: so that vnto what Art soeuer they doe addict their capacities, they easily profit therein. And, those also who meditate nothing but sloth, ease, and lazinesse, (though by refusall to take anie paines, they liue most basely and beggerly) yet will they not let, to boast of their gentrie, and that so presumptuouslie, as if it were more commendable for a man well discended, to begge, then to betake himselfe to anie ingenious profession, for the sustentation of his carkase. But withall they are accounted naturally to be verie zealous in Religion.

About *Scotland*, in the *Irish Ocean*, are more than 40. Islands, by *Plinie* tearmed *Britania*, but by others, *Merania*, and *Hebrides*. The biggest of these in length, exceed not thirtie miles; in breadth, not aboue twelue. Amongst them is *Iona*, famous for the ancient Sepulture of the *Scottish Kings*. All the Inhabitants speake the *Irish* tongue: a pregnant Argument, that they are discended from the *Irishry*.

Beyond *Scotland* North-wards, lie the *Orchades*; in number (saith *Ptolomy*) thirtie, being partly seated in the *Deucalidon Ocean*, and partly in the *German*. The chiefe whereof, is called *Pamonia*, and therein is an Episcopall See: being subiect vnto the King of *Great Brittain*. The Islanders speake the *Gotish* tongue; a record, that they are descended from the *Germans*. Of stature they are tall, of a sound constitution: whereby it commeth to passe, that for the greater part they are long-liued, although most commonly they liue vpon fish: the soile is in a manner alwaies couered with snow. In manie places it will scarce beare graine, but of trees, almost none.

Beyond the *Orchades* lieth *Thule*, from whence but one daies saile (saith *Pliny*) is the Frozen sea; and therein *Island*: whereunto at this day, our Merchants doe make an annuall trading, to fish themselues, or to buy fish, of others. Which for that it is neere vnto the Pole, some do iudge to be *Thule*. And this is all that I haue to say concerning the scituation of *Scotland*; now will I turne my pen to the nature and fashions of the Inhabitants.

Wales;

Wales, is accounted the third portion of the Island; In regard of the heart of England, it lieth vpon the left hand, and in manner of a *Peninsula* stretcheth into the Ocean, on all sides incircled with the sea, saue towards the East, where it is bounded with the *Seuern*, the separatresse of *Wales* and *England*; although manie late Writers, (as abovesaid)

said) make the Cittie of *Hereford* the boūder therof: & wil haue *Wales* to begin at *Chepstow*, where the Riuer *Wye*, being vnited with *Lugg*, and passing by *Hereford*, falleth into the sea. This riuer (as *Senern*) ariseth frō an In-land part of *Wales*, from one and the selfe-same Mountaine, But whether from one & the selfe-same Fountain, I am not able to shew; & it, *Cornelius Tacitus* (as aforesaid) termeth *Antona*. For euen thither reacheth a huge arme of the sea, which cutting in betweene the Land by the West, watereth *Cornwall* on the right hand, and *Wales* on the left. This Topography we follow, as the Moderne, and therefore say, that *Wales* from *Chepstow* (where it taketh beginning) is extended Northward a little aboue *Shrewsburie*, as farre as *Chester*. Hether it was (as *Memory* recordeth) that the Reliques of those *Brittons*, who ouer-liued the generall slaughter after the losse of their Countrey, in their vmost extremities retired themselues; and there, partlie by the strength of the Mountaines, and partlie by the fastnesse of the Woods and Bogges (wherewith that Prouince was for the most part replenished,) they purchased vnto themselues places of safetie; which vnto this day they haue made good, and retaine. Thenceforth the English stiled the Countrey *Wales*, and the Inhabitants *Welshmen* which denomination in the *Germane* language, signifieth a *Stranger*, an *Alien*, a *Guest*, or a *New-come person*, that is to say; one that speaketh a different language from that of the *German*: for in their vnderstanding, *Wal* signifieth a *Forrainer* or *Stranger*, whether it be *Italian* or *Frenchman*, if he differ in language from the *German*; and *Man*, is as *Homo*, in *Latine*. The *Angles* therefore being a people of *Germanie*, becoming Lords of *Brittaine*, after their Countrey-manner, termed those *Brittons* who escaped the ruine of their Countrey, *Wyallos*, or *Welsh-men*, for that they spake a language contrarie to that of their owne; and also the Soile, whether they fled to inhabite, *Wvallia*; which Name, the Nation as well as the people, retaine vnto this day. And so the *Brittons* lost their name together with their Empire.

The soile of the Countrey, especially of that, which adioyneth vnto the sea, or consisteth of *Champion*, is most fertile; which both to Man and Beast supplieth great store of prouision: but contrariwise, for the Maior part, it is barren, and lesse fruitfull, and (peradventure) for that good husbandrie is wanting, which is the cause that the Husband-men Hue hardlie, eate Oaten-bread, and drinke Milke, sometime mingled with Water. In it are manie fine Townes, with fortified Castles, and foure Bishopricks; if *Hereford* be accounted in England (as aforesaid) according to the Moderne description.

The

The people haue also a different language from the *English*, which they (who boast to deriue their pedegree from the *Troian* Line) doe affirme, to participate partly of the *Troian* Antiquitie, and partly of the *Gracian*. Verily, howeuer the case standeth, their pronuntiation is not so sweet and fluent, as is the pronuntiation of the *English*; for that the *Welsh* in my opinion, do speake more neere the throat: whereas on the contrary, the *English* truely imitating the *Latines*, doe pronounce their words a little betweene their lippes, which to the Auditor yeeldeth a pleasing sound. Thus much of *Wales*, the third portion of *Brittanie*.

The fourth and last part followeth; and that is *Cornewall*. This Pro- uinee taketh its beginning vpon that part of the Iland which looketh towards *Spain*, and the setting of the Sunne. To the East-ward it stretcheth ninetie miles, euen a little beyond *Saint Germans*, a fine Village, and seated towards the right hand vpon the Sea-shore; where its greatest breadth is but twentie miles ouer. For this portion of ground vpon the right side is incircled with the Ocean; vpon the left, with that inlet of Sea, which (as before we told you) pierceth into the Land as farre as *Chepstoe*: where taking the similitude of a horn, it runneth a long, first narrow, and afterwards broader, a little beyond the Towne of *Saint Germans*. East-ward it bordereth vpon England; vpon the West, the South, and the North, the main Ocean incompasseth it. The Soyle is very barren, and yeeldeth profit rather by the toyle of the Husbandman, than its owne good nature. But for Tinne, it is admirable bountifull, in the Mines whereof consisteth the better part of the Inhabitants happinesse.

Howeuer, the Language is greatly different from the *English*, but with the *Welsh* it participateth with no small affinitie: for either language hath the denomination of many things in common. The onely difference is, that a *Welshman* hearing a *Cornishman* speaking, rather vnderstandeth some words, than his whole speach: A thing worthy admiration, that in one and the same Iland, there should be so different a confusion of Languages.

Cornewall, pertaineth vnto *Exeter* Diocesse, and in times past, was thought worthy to be accounted for a fourth part of the Iland; partly for the dissimilitude of the language, and partly for that it receiued the first Inhabitants (as aforesaid.) But afterwards the *Normans*, who constituted a new forme of a Common-wealth, admitted *Cornewall* amongst the number of the Counties.

THe first are the *Serlings*, and lye against the cape of *Cornewall*. They are now termed *Silly*, and are few lesse than 145. couered with grasse,

Ilands belong-
ing to the
Crowne of
Great Brit-
taine.

grasse, and enclosed with huge and massie rocks. They are fruitfull enough for Corne, but are vled altogether to the feeding of Conies, Cranes, Swannes, and Sea Fowle. Some of them yeeld Tinne, and the fayrest thereof is called *Saint Maries*, being fortified with a Castle and Garrison. The residue of lesse fame, for breuie wee will willingly omit.

In the *Senerne* Sea, lye *Caldey*, and *Londay*: *Londay* is two myles long, and as many broad; full of good pasture, and abounding with Conies, and Doues, and those Fowles which *Alexander Necham* termeth *Ganimed* his Birdes. And though it be wholly incircled with the Sea, yet it yeeldeth fresh water from the Mountaines, and openeth but only passage, where through two men can hardly passe afront, the residue is inclosed with high and horrible ouersluts of Rocks.

M*ona* is a famous Iland seperated from *Wales* by a small fret, the ancient dwelling place of the *Druides*. It is two and twentie miles long, and threescore broad. Although that in ancient times, this Iland seemed barren and vnpleasant, yet in these daies, it hath beene so well husbanded, and become so fertill, that it is stiled the *Mother of Wales*. It is sufficiently stored with Cattell, it yeeldeth the Grind-stone, and the Minerall earth, whereof Allom and Vitriall are confected. It once contained 363. Villages, and is at this day reasonable populous. The Islanders are wealthy and valiant, and altogether speake the *Welsh* tongue.

Camden and
Gyraldus.

M*anlyeth* iust between the Northern parts of *Ireland* and *Brittain*: In length it containeth little lesse than thirtie Italian miles, in breadth where it is broadest, not aboue fifteen, and in some places hardly eight. In *Bedeas* time (saith *Camden*) it contained three hundred families, but now it can shew not aboue seuentene parish Churches. It yeeldeth plentiful store of Flaxe and Hemp, Tillage and Pasture, Wheat and Barley, but especially of Oates, whereof for the most part the inhabitants feed. There is also droues of Rother Beasts to be scene, and flockes of Sheep without number, but generally all sorts of Cattell are lesse of growth than in *England*. In stead of Wood, they vse a bituminous Coale, in digging whereof, sometimes they light vpon Trees buried in the earth. The Inhabitants aboue all things hate theft and begging, being but weake by nature. Those which inhabite the Southerne parts, speake the *Irish* tong, those which dwell towards the North speake the *Scottish*.

The *Hebrides* are foure and forty in number, and lye vpon the South of *Scotland*; the *Orchades* are thirtie, & extend towards the North.
The

The Inhabitants of the former speake *Irish* : the people of the latter, *Gottish*.

Wight is seated in the *Brittish Ocean* : the Inhabitants (saith *Camden*) are warlike, the Soyle gratefull to the Plough-man, and well replenished with pastures. It hath in it sixe and thirtie Villages, Hamlets, and Castles; In *Bedas* time 1200. families.

Iarsey, lying ouer against *Constans*, an ancient Citie of *Normandy*, containeth about thirtie miles in circuit, and is inuironed with Rocks and dangerous shallowes. It is very fruitfull in fruit and cattell, in plentie of Fish, and by reason of their many Orchards, abounding with that kind of Wine, which the English call *Sider*. In stead of Wood, which the Iland wanteth, they make their Fewell of Sea-weed dryed in the Sunne, and growing so thick vpon the Rocks, that a farre off, a Sea-man would iudge them to be whole Acres of Copize. With the Ashes hereof they manure their grounds. It containeth twelue Parishes.

Garnsey is twenty miles distant from *Iarsey*, somewhat lesse, and nothing so fruitfull. It nourisheth no venomous Creature, as doth the former; It is better fortified by nature, and from the tops of the broken Rocks (wherewith it is incircled) do the Lapidaries and Glasiers fetch that most hard stone, wherewith they cut their Iewels and Glasse. The *Hauen* likewise is mote secure and safe for shipping and Marchants, especially at the harbour of *S. Peter*, whereby ancient priuiledges of the Kings of *England* (saith *Camden*) is continuall truce, be the warre neuer so open and furious betweene the French and the English. For in these times may the Marchants of either Nation resort without wrong or danger. They want Wood likewise, and therefore either vse the foresaid weed for Fewell, or Sea-coales brought out of *England*.

France.

France is seated vnder a very temperate and wholesome Clymate: There is no Countrie in the World better scituate, than that of France: for it participateth of the Clymate, both hot and cold. It is in length, from *Bologna* to *Marseilles*, two hundred leagues (after the rate of three English miles a league) and in breadth, from *Mount S. Bernard*, to *S. Iohn de Luze*, as much: for it is holden by some Authors to be of figure quadrate; which notwithstanding *Bodin* denyeth, auowing it to be in forme of a Lozenge, with whom

whom *La Noue* consenteth, measuring it thus; From *Calais* to *Narbonne*, North and South, it is two hundred leagues: from *Rochell* to *Lions*, West and East, it is one hundred and twenty leagues: from *Mets* to *Bayon*, North-East and South-west, it is two hundred leagues; and from *Morley* in *Bretagney* to *Antibe* in *Prouince*, North-West and South-East, it is as much. True it is, that many places within this compasse are not holden of the King, as *Auignon*, and what else the Pope hath. *Toul*, *Verdun*, and *Mets*, are holden of the Empire; and *Cambray*, of the House of *Austrich*: in like case of Protection, as *Constance* in *Swisserland*, *Virich* in the Low-Countries, and *Vienna* in *Austria*; and as *Lucca* and *Genoia* in *Italy*, are protected by the King of *Spain*, so doe *Lorraine* also and *Sauoy* hold of the Empire. As contrarily, there be places out of this circuit, which notwithstanding hold of this Crowne in right, and owe him fealtie and homage; as the *Spaniard* for the Counties of *Flanders* and *Artois*, which he hath euer since the time of *Francis* the first, denyed to render.

The diuers Prouinces of the Countrey, are very many: the chiefe are Prouinces. these; *Picardy*, *Normandy*, *Ile of France*, *Beauisse*, *Bretagne*, *Aniow*, *Maine*, *Poitew*, *Lymosin*, *Zantonge*, *Champaigne*, *Berry*, *Salogne*, *Auuergne*, *Niurnois*, *Lyonnois*, *Charrolois*, *Bourbonois*, *Dolpheine*, *Prouence*, *Languedocke*, *Tourraine*, and *Burgundy*.

The thing of best note in each of these, is their singular Commodities Commodities. and fruits, wherewith they are blessed for the sustenance of the Inhabiter. Insomuch, that as they say of *Lombardy*, that it is the Garden of *Italy*: so may we truely say of *France*, that it is the Garden of *Europe*. *Picardy*, *Normandy*, and *Languedocke*, are goodly Countries of Corne, as any in *Christendome*; All the Inland Countries, are full of Wine, Fruits, and Grain: In some, great store of Wood; In others, of Flaxe; In others, of Mines of Salt; In others, of Iron: Insomuch, as one saith; *All things necessarie for Mans life ouerflow there, in such abundance, that, in counterchange only of the Corne, Wine, Salt, & wood, transported into forraine Countries, there is yearly brought into France, twelue hundred thousand pounds sterling.* And another no lesse, approued, and as well practised in the State of *France*, saith; *The Springs of Salt, Vine, and Corne, are not to be drawne drie.* In which place, he complaineth, that the Kings of *France* were wont in times past, to help their need with Sales of Wood, which are now of late yeares so spoyled, as *France* shall shortly be forced to haue their Lard from other Countries, as also Wood to build and burne: a complaint which I haue often heard in *England*. Other Prouinces haue also their especiall commodities, wherein they excell their Neigh-

Neighbours : as in *Lymosin*, the best Beecies ; about *Orleans*, the best Wines ; in *Anuergne*, the best Swine ; in *Berry*, the best Muttons, where there is such store, as thereof they haue a Prouerb, when they would taxe a fellow for his notable lying, that tels of a greater number than the truth, they say : *Fye, there be not so many Sheepe in Berrie*. They pertake also in Sea-Commodities : as vpon the Coast of *Picardie*, where the shore is sandie, they haue store of flat Fish : vpon the Coast of *Normandie* and *Guyen*, where it is Rockie, Fish of the Rock (as the French call them) and vpon the Coast of *Bretaigne*, where it is muddie, store of round Fish, as Lamprey, Conger, Haddock ; so likewise in diuers seasons, diuers other sorts, as Mackerels in the end of the Spring, and Herrings in the beginning of Autumn, as we haue in *England*, &c.

And this Countrie must needs be well stored with Fish ; for besides the benefit of the Sea, the Lakes and Ponds belonging only to the Clergie, which at the most haue but one third of France, are reported to be 13 c. thousand.

Riuers.

The Riuers also of France are so many, as *Boterus* reporteth of the Queene Mother, she should say, heere were more than in all Christendome ; but we hold her for no good Cosmographer. True it is, that the Riuers heere are many, and very faire, and so fitly seruing one the other, and all the whole, as it seemeth, nature in the framing of our bodies, did not shew more wonderfull prouidence, in disposing Veines and Arteries thoroughout the body, for their apt conueyance of the bloud and Spirit from the Liuer and Heart, to each part thereof, than she hath shewed in the placing of these waters, for the transporting of al her commodities to all her seuerall Prouinces. Of all those, these are the principall ; the *Seine*, vpon which standeth the Citie of *Paris*, *Rouen*, and many other. It hath his head a little about *Chatillon* in the North-west of *Lingonois*, and receiueth nine Riuers of name ; whereof the *Yonne*, the *Marn*, and the *Oyse* are Nauigable ; that is, do carry Boates with sayle.

The *Soane*, wherupon standeth the Citie of *Amyens*, *Abbeuile*, & many other. It hath his head about *S. Quintin*, deuideth *Picardie* from *Artois*, and receiueth eight lesser Riuers. The *Loire* hath standing vpon it, the Cities of *Orleans*, *Nantes*, and many other : his head is in *Anuergne*, it parteth the middle of France, his course is almost two hundred leagues, it receiueth seuentie two riuers, wherof the chiefe are *Allier*, *Cher*, *Maine*, *Creuse*, *Vienne*, all Nauigable. The *Garond*, vpon which standeth *Bordeaux*, *Thoulouse*, and other Cities : it hath his head in the *Pyrenay* Mountains, it diuideth *Languedocke* from *Gascoine*, it receiueth sixteene Riuers, whereof *Iarne*, *Lot*, *Bayze*, *Derdonne*, and *Lisle* are chiefest.

And

And lastly, the *Rhofne*, vpon which standeth the Citie of *Lions*, *Auignon*, and diuers others: It hath his head in the Mountaines: the *Alpes*, deuiding *Dolpheny* from *Lyonnois*, and *Prouince* from *Languedocke*, it receiue thirteene Riuer, whereof the *Soane*, the *Done*, *Ledra*, and *Durance*, are the chiefest.

All the other Riuer carry their streames into the Ocean: Some at *S. Vallery*, *Sein* at *New-hauen*, *Loyre* beneath *Nantes*, & *Garond* at *Blay*: only the Riuer of *Rhofne* payeth his tribute to the *Mediterranean*, at *Arles*.

The *Seine*, is counted the richest, the *Rhofne* the swiftest, the *Garond* the greatest, the *Loyre* the sweetest; for, the difference which *Boterus* makes of them, where he omits the *Garond*, and makes the *Soane* a principall Riuer, is generally reiected.

The Ports and Passages into France, where Custome is paid to the King, were in times past more than they be now: the names of them at this present, are these: In *Picardie*; *Calais*, *Bologne*, *Saint Vallerie*. In *Normandie*; *Diepe*, *Le Haure de Grace*, *Honnefleux*, *Caen*, *Cherbrouge*. In *Bretaigne*; *S. Malo*, *S. Brieu*, *Brest*, *Quimpercorentine*, *Vannes*, *Nants*. In *Poictou*; *Luffon*, *les sables d' Olonne*. In *Rochellois*; *Rochell*. In *Xantogne*; *Zoubisse*. In *Guyenne*; *Bordeaux*, *Blay*, *Bayonne*. In *Languedocke*; *Narbonne*, *Agde*, *Beucaire*, *Manguail*. In *Prouence*; *Arles*, *Mar-seilles*, *Franss*. In *Lionnois*; *Lions*. In *Burgogne*; *Ausonne*, *Langers*. In *Champagne*; *Chaumont*, *Chalons*, *Trois*. In the *Territorie Metzain*; *Metz*, *Toul*, *Verdun*. In all thirtie seuen: Of all these, *Lions* is reputed to be the most aduantageous to the Kings Finances, as being the key for all Silkes, cloaths of Gold and Siluer, and other Merchandize whatsoeuer, which come or goe from *Italse*, *Swisserland*, and all those South-east Countries into *France*, which are brought to this Towne, by the two faire Riuer of *Rhofne* and *Soan*: the one comming from *Sanoy*, the other from *Burgundie*, and heere meeting.

For profit, next to *Lions*; are *Bordeaux*, *Rochell*, *Mar-seilles*, *Nantes* and *Newhauen*: But for capabilitie of shipping, I haue heard that *Brest* excelleth; and for strength, *Calais*, especially as it is now lately fortified by the Spaniard, which was not let long since to be called, *The goodliest gouernment in the world*, at least, in *Christendome*.

There are requisite in all Ports, to make them perfect, these foure things: 1. *Roome to receiue many and great Ships*. 2. *Safe Riding*: 3. *Facilitie of repelling forraine force*: 4. *Concourse of Merchants*. The most of the French Ports haue all foure properties, except only the last, which in the time of these ciuill broyles, haue discontinued: and except that we will also grant, that *Calais* failes in the first,

The

The Cities in *France* (if you will count none Cities, but where is a Bishops See) are only one hundred and foure. There be so many Archbishops and Bishops in all, as shall in more fit place be shewed: But after the *French* reckoning, calling euery *Ville*, a Citie, which is not eyther a *Burgade*, or a Village, we shall find that their number is infinite, and indeed vncertaine, as is also the number of the Townes in generall. Some say, there be one Millon and seauen hundred thousand: but they are of all wise men reprooued. Others say, fixe hundred thousand; but this is also too great to be true. The *Cabinet* rateth them at one hundred thirtie two thousand of Parishes Churches, Hamlets, and Villages of all sorts: *Bodin* saith, there be twentie seuen thousand and foure hundred, counting only euery Citie for a Parish: which will very neere agree with that of the *Cabinet*; and therefore I embrace it as the truest.

By the reckoning before set downe, of two hundred leagues square (which *France* almost yeeldeth) we must compute, that heere is in all fortie thousand leagues in square, and in euery league, five thousand Arpens of ground, which in all amounteth to two hundred millions of Arpens: which summe being deuided by the numbers of the Parishes, sheweth, that one with another, each Village hath one thousand five hundred, and fiftene Arpens, which measure is bigger then our Acre.

Wee may, if we will, abstract a third, because *Bodin* will not admit *France* to be square, but as a Lozenge: For in matter of such generalitie as this, men doe alwaies set downe suppositions, not certainties.

If a man will looke throughout all *France*, I thinke that (some Castels excepted) he shall not finde any Towne halfe perfectly fortified, according to the rules of Enginers.

Paris.

The Citie of *Paris*, seated in a very fruitfull and pleasant part of the Ile of *France*, vpon the Riuer of *Sein*, is by the same deuided into three parts: that on the North, towards Saint *Denis*, is called the *Burge*: that on the South towards the *Fauxbourges* of *S. Germaines*, is called the *Vniuersitie*, and that in the little Ile, which the Riuer there makes, by deuiding it selfe, is cailed the *Ville*.

This part no doubt, is the most ancient; for saith my Author: *Lutetia* is a Citie of the *Parisians*, seated in an Ile of the *Seine*: We may distinguish it thus: into *Transequana*, *Cisequana*, and *Interamnis*: The part beyond the *Seine*: that on this side the *Seine*, and that in the Ile encompassed with the Riuer. It is reputed not only the Capitall Citie of *France*, but also the greatest in all *Europe*. It is about the Walles, some ten *English* miles: these are not very thicke, the want whereof, is recompenced with the depth

depth of the ditch, and goodnesse of the Rampart, which is thicke and defensible, saue on the South side, which no doubt, is the weakest part of the Towne, on which side it is reported, that the Lord *Willoughby* offered the King in foure daies to enter, at such time as hee beliedged it. Whereunto the King condescended, not by the counsaile of the old Marshall *Biron*, who told him; it was no policie to take the Bird naked, when he may haue her feathers and all. On the other side, especially towards the East, it is verie well fortified with Bulwarke and Ditch, faire and moderne. The ramparts of the gates *S. Anthonie*, *S. Michell*, and *S. James*, and elsewhere, were made 1544.

This Bastile of *Saint Anthonie*, was built (some say) by the *English*, and indeed it is somewhat like those peeces which they haue built elsewhere in *France*; as namely, that at *Rouen*: howbeit, I read in *Vigner* his Chronicle, that it was builded by a Prouest of *Paris*, in the time of *Edward* the third of *England*; at what time our Kings began their first claime, and had as yet nothing to doe in this citie.

So in this towne, the Chastelet was built by *Iulian* the Apostata: the *Uniuersitie* was founded by *Charlemaigne*, Anno 800. who also erected those of *Bologna* and *Padoa*.

The Church of *Noſtre Dame*, was founded, Anno Dom. 1257. If you would know the greatnesse of the great Church of our *Ladie*, the rooffe thereof is 17. fathom high, it is 24. fathom broad, 65. fathom long: the two Steeples are, 34. fathom high aboue the Church, and all founded vpon piles.

The Towne-House was finished by *Francis* the 1. Anno 1533. with this inscription ouer the Gate, *S. P. E. P.* that is: For his wel-deseruing; Senate, People and Burghers of *Paris*, *Francis* the 1. most puissant King of *France*, commanded this house to be built from the foundation, and finished it, and dedicated it to the calling of the Common counsell, and gouerning the citie, in the yeare aforesaid.

This is as you would say, the Guild-Hall of the Towne. The *Hofſtel Dieu* in *Paris*, was augmented and finished in 1535. by *Antoine de Prat*, Chauncelor in this citie, his pourtraict with *Francis* the 1. is vpon the doore as ye enter. This is (as we call it at *London*) the Hospitall. The palace de *Paris* was built by *Philip le Bel*, 1283. purposing it should haue beene his mansion house; but since, it hath beene disposed into diuers courts, for the execution of Iustice, iust like *Westminster Hall*, which likewise at first, was purposed for the Kings Palace.

Here you haue such a shew of Wares in fashion, but not in woorth, as yee haue at the *Exchange*. Here is a Chappell of the *S. Espirit*, buile

by S. Lewis, 1242. Here are all the seauen Chambers of the court of Parliament (which was first instituted by *Charles Martel*, father to King *Pepin*, anno 720.) but of them all, the great chamber of Paris, is most magnificently beautified and adorned by *Lewis* the twelfth. At the entrie, is a Lyon couchant, with his taile betweene his legges, to signifie, that all persons how high soeuer, are subiect to that court.

The chamber also of Compts, built by this *Lewis*, is a verie faire roome; at the entrie whereof, are five portreicts with their Mots. The first is *Temperance*, with a Dial and Spectacle: Her word, *Mihi spreta voluptas*: I despise pleasure. Secondly, *Prudence*, with a looking Glasse, and a Siue: her word, *Consilijs rerum speculor*: I prie into the counsell of things. *Iustice*, with a ballance and a sword: her Mot, *sua cuique ministro*: I giue to euerie man his owne. *Fortitude*, with a Tower in one arme, and a Serpent in the other: her word, *Me dolor atque metus fugiunt*: Both paine and feare auoide me. And lastly, *Lewis* the King, with a Scepter in one hand, and holding *Iustice* by the other, and this written for his word.

*My happie scepter in calme peace doth flourish,
While I these Heauen-bred sisters soure do nourish.*

The buildings of this citie are of stone, verie faire, high, and vni-forme, throughout the Towne; onelie vpon the port *N. Dame*, our *Ladies Bridge*, which is, as it were, their *Cheapside*: Their buildings is of Brick-bat, al alike, notwithstanding, the fairest Fabricke in the Towne (and worthily) is, the Kings castle or palace of the *Louure* at the West: It is in forme quadrangulare, the South and West quarters are new and Princelike, the other two verie antique and prison-like. They were puld downe by *Francis* the 1. and begun to be rebuilt, but finished by *Henrie* the second, with this inscription. *The most Christian King Henry the 2. began to repaire this time-ruined Edifice.*

Vniuersities.

The *Vniuersities*, in times past were wont to bee (by report) about thirtie thousand of all sorts, but manie of these, children, such as our petty schooles in the countries are furnished withall. The streets both in the citie, vniuersitie, and suburbs, are verie faire, straight, and long verie manie of them; the shops thicke, but nothing so full of wares, nor so rich, as they of *London*; in comparison whereof, these seeme rather Pedlers then otherwise: But for number, I suppose, there be three for two of those.

The *Faulxbourges* are round about the citie, ruined and vtterly desolate, except those of *Saint Germaines*, which was verie fairely builded,

builded, and was verie neere as great as the faire Towne of Cambridge.

The benefit of this Towne is verie great, which it hath by the River; as by which all the commodities of the countrie are conueied: Whereupon Monsieur de Argenton reports of it:

Of all the Townes that euer I saw, it is enuironed with the best and fertilest Countrie.

And he there reports, that for twentie moneths that he was prisoner, he saw such an infinite companie of boates passe and repasse, but that he was an eye-witnesse, he would haue thought it incredible: which he also after proues, by the maintenance of the three Armies, of the three Dukes of Burgundie, Guienne, and Bretaine, which consisted of an hundred thousand men, against the citie of Paris, wherein they had besieged Lewis the eleuenth, and yet neither the campe nor towne had anie want of victuals.

Some say, this Towne was builded in the times of Amasias, King of Iuda, by some Reliques of the Troian war, and that it was called Lutece (à Luto) because the soile in this place is verie fat, which is of such nature, as yee cannot well get it out, it doth so staine: whereof they haue a By-word; *It stayneth like the durt of Paris.* Other say, it was called Paris of (Parresia) a Greeke word, which signifieth (saith this Authour) hardnesse or ferocity, alleadging this verse:

*Et se Parrisios dixerunt nomine Franci,
Quod sonat audaces, &c.*

And the Frankes called themselues Parrisians, which signifieth, Valiant. And by this Etymologie would inferre, that the French is a warlike Nation. But hee is much mistaken in the word; for it signifieth onely a boldnesse or libertie of speech: which vvhether they better deserue, or to be accounted valiant, you shall see, vvhhen I come to speake of the French mans humour, and nature in generall. As for the nature of people of this Towne, their Historie taxeth it of infinite mutinies and seditions, matchable to the two most rebellious Townes of Europe, Liege, and Gant; and yet this last is praised in one thing: That they neuer harme their Princes person: Whereof the Baricades, as also the late assassinations of Henri the third, and Henrie the fourth, make Paris most vnnvorthie. And du Haillan saith of them, vvhhen they stood fast to Lewis the eleuenth, against the three Dukes abouenamed: That the Parrisians neuer held good side, nor neuer shewed anie honestie but then onely. But I can read no such matter in Commynes; for I vvell remember, that euen then diuers of the chiefe of the Towne had practised secretlie vvith the enemy, and vvere ypon teames of

concluding, when by the Kings wisdom they were prevented.

The Armes in this citie were giuen them, Anno 1190. by *Philip le Bel*, who creating them a *Preuost* and *Escheuins* (like Office as our Maior and Aldermen:) Gave them for Armes, Gules, a Shippe Argent, and a Cheefe seeded with Flower de Lys Or. Ye shall heare the French bragge, that their citie hath beene besieged a hundred times by the enemye, and yet was neuer taken since *Cæsars* time. The reason whereof, one of their best Writers giues; because (saith he) it is verie weake, and therefore alwaies compoundeth.

I compare *Paris* with *London*, thus: Theirs is the greater, the vniformer built, and stronglier scituate: ours is the richer, the more populous, the more ancient: For I hold Antiquitie to be a great honour, as well to great cities, as to great Families.

London compared with Paris,

Yea, if to some comparizons would not seeme distastfull, I dare maintaine, that if *London* and the places neere adioyning, were circummunited in such an orbiculer maner (as *Paris* is) it would surely exceed it, notwithstanding all its attributes of a *Winding riuer*, and the fine *Bridges*, sorting forsooth to vniformitie of streets, as indeed we now behold it. And more then that, I am nothing doubtfull in opinion; that the *Crosse* of *London* is euerie way longer, than anie you make in *Paris*, or in anie other citie of *Europe*. By this word *Crosse*, I meane, from *Saint Georges* in *Southwark*, to *Shoreditch*, South and North; and from *Westminster* to *White chappell* West and East, meeting at *Leaden-hall*: Al the way she inuironed with broader streets, comlier monuments, and handsomer buildings, than anie you can make in *Paris*; Or euer saw, either in *Millan*, at this hower being the greatest citie in *Italie*: In *Noremburg*, or *Ausburg* for *Germanie*: In *Madril*, or *Lisbone* for *Spaine*, or finally, in *Constantinople* it selfe.

For populousness.

Concerning populousnesse, if you please to take *London* meerely, as a place composed of Merchants, Citizens and Tradesmen (& so vnite the Suburbs adioyning,) it far exceedeth *Paris*. Or, if you will behold it in a Terme-time (according to our custome of speciall resort) I doubt not but you may be encountred with equall numbers of callings and professions. As for *Paris*, the better halfe are Gentlemen, Schollers, Lawyers, or Clergie-men; The Merchant liueth obscurely, the Tradesman penuriously, and the Craftsmen in drudgery: yet all insolent, and tumultuously affected vpon the least vnaccustomed imposition, or supposell of alteration of their ridiculous ceremonies.

For neat and clean streets,

Instead of a beastly towne and durrie streets, you haue in *London*, those that be faire, beautifull, and clenly kept.

In

Instead of cloudes, ill aire, and a moyrie scituation; London (for the greatest part of the yeare) affoordeth a Sun-shyning & serene element, a holosome dwelling, a statelie Ascention, and a deli-car prospect. For Aire

Instead of a shallow Riuer, bringing onely barks and botes, with wood, cole, turfe and such countrie prouision; you haue in London a Riuer flowing twentie foot heigh, adorned with statelie ships, that flie to vs with Merchandize, from all the parts of the world. And to descend to inferior obseruations, I say, That the Riuer only Westward matcheth that of *Paris* euerie way, supplying the citie withall the forementioned commodities, at easier rates. For Riuer.

Instead of ill-fauored wooden bridges, many times indangered by tempests, and frosts, wee haue at *London* such a bridge, that without exception, it may worthily be accounted the admirablest Monument and firmest erected Collosseum (in that kinde) of all the Vniuerse; whether you respect the foundation, with the continuall and substantiall reparation of the Arches; Or, behold the imposed buildings, being so manie, and so beautifull. For Bridges.

Instead of an old Bastile and ill-appearing Arcenall (thrust, as it were, into an out cast corner of the citie) we haue in *London* a Fabrike of greatest antiquitie, for forme maiesticall, and seruing to most vses of anie Citadell, or Megazine, that euer you saw. It containeth a Kings Palace, a Kings Prison, a Kings Armorie, a Kings Mint, and a Kings Wardrope, besides manie other worthie Offices; so that the residants within the Walles haue a Church, and are a sufficient Parish of themselves. For a Castle;

Instead of an obscure Louvre, latelie graced with an extraordinarie and immatchable gallerie, the onely Palace of the king; In *London* his Maiestie hath manie houses, parkes, and places of repose: and in the shires confining, such a number, for state, receipt and commodiousnesse, that I protest amazement, knowing the defects of other places. For places of
Requite,

Nor doe I here stretch my discours on the tenter-hookes of partiality, but plainly denotate, what manie my countrimen can auer; That to the crowne of *England* are annexed more castles, honors, forests, parks, palaces, houses of state and conueniencie to resort vnto, from the encombrances of the citie, than anie Emperor, or King in *Europe*, can at this day challenge propriouire.

Instead of an old ruinous palace (as they tearme their House of Parliament, Hall of Iustice, concourse of Lawyers, and meeting of certaine Tradesmen, or Milleners, like an exchange) *London* hath such a Cirque for Merchants, with an vpper quadrant of shops, as may make For seats of
Iustice, and
concourse of
Merchants.

For Colledges
for students of
the Lawes.

vs enuied for delicacie of building, and statelinesse in contruying. For a state-house, we haue in London the Guild-hall, and for Courts of Iustice Westminster-hall, two such fabriks, that without further dispute, they make strangers aske vnanswerable questions: when being brought to the light of vnderstanding by particulars; They lift vp their hands, and say: *Oh happie England! Oh happie people!* Besides these publique Receptacles, wee haue priuat and goodlie Colledges for Lawyers fitted for their priuate and publique vses, resceit of their Clients, conueniently appropriated to their Offices. All workes rather of ostentation amongst our selues, than of imitation in Others.

For Churches.

In steed of obscure Churches, we haue first the goodliest heape of stones, namely *Paules*, next the most curious, viz: *Westminster-Abbey*, in the world: and generally, all our Churches exceed for beautie and handsomnesse.

For decent
riding.

Insteed of gentlemen riding on durtie foot-cloathes, and woman footing it in the mierie streetes, the one with an idle Lackey, the other with no companie at all: we haue fashionable attendance, handsome comelie passage either in Carosse, Coach, or on Horse backe; and our Ladies and Gentlewomen are neuer seene abroad, without an honorable retinue.

For vnconfused
intermix-
tures,

Insteed of confused intermixtures of all sorts; as Citizens, Lawyers, Schollers, Gentlemen, Tradesmen, and religious persons, (so that you can scarcely know the one from the other, nor the maister from the man) in London, the Citizen liues in the best order, with verie few houses of gentlemen interposed; But in our suburbs the nobility and gentry haue so manie and such stately buildings, that one side of the Riuer may compare with the great Canale at *Venice*: but if you examine their resceit and capacitie, *Venice* and all the cities of *Europe*, must submit to truth: for in *London* and the places adioyning, 500. seuerall houses may beare the attribute of palaces, wherein 500. persons may conueniently be lodged.

For a Maior:

Insteed of a poore Prouost, and a disorderly companie of Merchants and Tradesmen, we haue a Podesta, or Maior, that keepeth a prince-like house, accompanied and attended with graue and respectiue Senators and comely citizens, hauing seuerall halls; where euery craft and misterie, is gouerned by ancient persons of the same society and profession: At time of yeare producing such solemne and rich triumphs, that strangers haue admired the braue spirits of mechanickall men.

To conclude, if you looke on, and in our *London* truelie, as it is composed of men following trades and occupations; There is not such a citie,

citie, such a government, such a method of conuersation, such an vnitie of societie and good neighbourhood, such a glasse to see louelineffe and beautie in, such a chamber of wealth, and such a storehouse of terrestiall blessings, vnder the sonne againe.

Or, if you please to view it without at all times, and yet consider the keeping of our country-houses, you may boldly say; There are not so manie Gentlemen to bee seene in anie place, nor to so good purpose generally: for speaking somewhat liberally, like an Orator of Contentation, I aske, if the pleasures of *Paris* can bring you into walkes of such varietie with so little charge and expence, as *London* can: Surely no. And with vs, our riding of horses, musick, learning of all Arts and Sciences, dancing, fencing, seeing of comedies or enterluds, banquets, maskes, mummeries, lotteries, feasts, ordinarie meetings, and all the singularities of mans inuentions to satisfie delight, are easie expenses: and a little iudgement with experience, will manage a verie meane estate, to wade through the currant of pleasure, yea although it should run vnto voluptuousnesse.

But, shal I dare to speake of our Court, the map of Maiestie, in respect wherof *Biron* compared *all Others* to confusion? It I doe; for stately attendance, durifull seruice, plentifull fare, orderlie tables, resort of nobles, beautie of Ladies, brauerie of gentrie, concourse of ciuil people princely pastimes, and all things befitting the Maiestie of King, or glorie of a Nation, I may say for *England*, as the king of *France* once answered the Emperors tedious Title; *France, France, France*, and nothing but *France*: So *England, England, England* and nothing but *England*, to their proudest comparisons. Affirming, that if euer countrie, kingdome, or Prince came nere *Solomons* royaltie, plentie, peace, and beatitude; *England*, and in *England London*, hath the preheminance.

Besides the cities and ports of *France* well fortified, there be also in- Castles: finite number of castles and cittudels (which the people call, *the Nests of Tirants*, & the Prince, *Chastivillains*.) Of the castles, the number is therefore most great, and as vncertain, by reason that euerie noble mans house of anie age, is built in defensible manner. An example of one, for many hundreds, you may take that of *Roch-fort*, belonging to the *Seigneur de la Tremouille*, which in the ciuill wars endured a siedge, and 5000. Cannon shot, and yet was not taken. It is iudged by the wisest, that in great Kingdomes, such as *France*, no places should be fortified but the frontiers: after the example of Nature, who armeth the heads and heeles of beasts, but neuer the Bowels nor middle part: as in *England*, where except frontier places, none but his Maiesty haue fortified places.

Charges.

You must vnderstand, that here in *France*, all Inhabitants of cities, are liable to the common charges of the fortification of their cities, reparations of Bridges, Fountaines, Highwaies, and such like. And because the richer sort should not leuie the money, and then keepe it to themselves, or employ it as they list; they must giue information to the Chauncelor, of the necessitie of the Leuy, and procure Letters Patents for the same, by authoritie whereof they gather the money, and vse it, yeelding after to the Kings Procuror their account.

And for their Watch and Ward, it goes by course, as in the citie of *Embsen*, and diuers other in those Low-Countries. As for castles, the *Seigneur* or capitaine, may not force Vassal, (*faire le guet*, to watch and ward) except in frontier places, vpon forfeiting of their Estates.

Gouernments.

After this generall Suruey of the countrie it selfe, we must obserue something of the gouernment, wherein I will not trouble you, with fetching their first Pedegree from beyond the Moone, as many of their Histories labour, nor by disputing the matter, whether it be true or no, that they came from *Troy*, into the Marishes of *Maotis*; whence, after some small abode, they were chased by the *Romaine* Emperour, into *Banaria*, and after into *Frankeland* in *Germanie*.

It shall suffice, that from hence, this people came into *France*, wherein all Writers agree. For after the declination of the *Romaine* Empire, when the *Ostrogotes* conquered *Italie*, the *Visigothes* *Spaine*; and the *Vandals* *Affricke*: then did the *Burgondiens*, and *Franconiens* deuide this countrie betweene them, conquering it vpon the old *Inquelines* (the *Gaules*) who from *Casars* time till then, had not tasted the force of a fo-
raine power.

The gouernment was vnder Dukes, till the yeare, 420. when as *Pharamond* caused himselfe to be entituled King. In this race it remained till 751. when *Pepin* suppressed his M. *Chilpericke*, and vsurped. His line lasted till 988. when *Hugh Capet* gaue the checke to the succession of *Charlemagnes* line (who was *Pepins* son) and inuested himselfe with the Diadem. From him it hath lineally descended by heires males to the house of *Valois*, and for want of issue-male in them, is now come to the house of *Burbon*. In this space of time, you must obserue, the three ages of *France*: her child-hood, till *Pepin*: her man-hood, til *Capet*: her old age, til now. For in the first age, the Kings were like children, content to be taught by others in matters of religiō, (as then ye may note, that *Clovis* receiued the Faith & was Baptized) as also in matter of policie, they were content that others should beare the whole sway, & rule them also, such were the *Maiours de Palais*, wherof *Pepin* was one that vsurped.

In

In their man-hood they did like men, conquer Kingdomes, relieue distressed Christians, overcome *Saracens* and *Infidels*, defend the Church against all assailes, as ye may perceiue by the History of *Charls* the great, and his successors.

And lastlie now, in her old age, she grew wise, erected Courts for Iustice, made Lawes and Ordinances to gouerne her Inhabitants, wherein no cuntry in *Europe* hath excelled her: for so saith my Author; There is no cuntry in the world, where Iustice is better established, then in ours: which is true (but with this addition of a later Writer:) If the Officers thereof were not too too manie, and if their places were rightlie executed.

To force this Relation, with manie notes of things here hapning in former ages, were both impertinent, and tedious; only I would wish you note, that in 482. the Christian Faith was here receiued, and in the yeare 800. the *Romaine* Empire hither translated.

Concerning the cuntry of *France*, the State is a Monarchie, and the gouernment mixt: for the authoritie of *Maieurs*, *Escheuins*, *Consuls*, *Iureurs*, &c. is Democraticall: the *Payres*, the *Counseils*, the *Parliaments*, the *Chambers* of *Counts*, the *Generalities*, &c. are Aristocraticall. The calling of assemblies, giuing of Offices, sending Embassages, concluding of Treaties, pardoning of offences, ennobling of families, legitimization of bastards, coining of monies, and diuers other, to the number of 24. are merelie Regal, called of the *French*, *Droicts Royaux*.

And sure it is, that no Prince in *Europe* is a more perfect Monarch than he: for besides all these priuiledges named, as we say of the Parliament of *Paris*, that it hath the prerogatiue to be appealed vnto, from all other Courts, which they call (*the last appeale*) so is it likewise true, that the King himselfe hath the meere and absolute authoritie ouer this. For though no Edict or Proclamation, no Warre or Peace which he makes, be good, without the consent and *Arrest* as (they call it) of this court: Yet true it is, that when he, sending to them for their confirmation and ratifying thereof, if at first they refuse, and send Deputies to his Maiestie to enforme him of their reasons, with humble sute to reuoke the same, he returnes them vpon paine of his displeasure and deprivation of their Offices, to confirme it. *Sic volo, sic iubeo.*

As touching the Lawes, we must know, that most of them are grounded on the Ciuill Law of the Emperor: but so, as this State euer protesteth against them, so far as they be good & equal: insomuch as in former times it was ordained, that he which alledged anie law of *Iustinian*, should loose his head. Of the Lawes in force, some are fundamentall, Lawes,

mentall, as they call them, and immortall: Such as, nor King, nor assembly can abrogate: others are Temporall.

Of the first sort, I will onely remember you of two examples: the law *Salique*, and that of *Appennages*. As for the first, they would needs make the world beleue, that it is of great antiquity, wherewith they verie wrongfully tromped the heires of *Edward* the third, from the enioying of this crowne, which to them is rightly descended by the Mother; & whose claime is still good, were the *English* sword well whetted to cut the Labels of this Law. Of which *Hailan* himselfe confesseth, that before the time of *Philip le Long*, 1321. That the law *Salique* was neuer heard tell of, before this Kings time, who caused it be ratified by all the Nobles of his Kingdome, some by faire promises, and others by force and threats. Whereupon, they haue since this prouerbe, *The Kingdome of France cannot fall from the Lance to the Destaffe*.

Touching the *Appennages*, it is also a law of great consequent for the crowne: for by this, the *Domaine* cannot be aliened; and by the other, the crowne cannot fall into the hands of strangers. You must note, that this Law imports, that the younger sonnes of the King, cannot haue Partage with the Elder; which till the time of *Charlemaigne* (when this was made) they might; they must onely haue *Appennage sans propriete*. By which Charter of *Appennage* is giuen all profits arising of the said *Appannes*; as *Domaine*, the Hundreth, Rents, rights of *Seigneurie*, parties *Casuelles*, Lottes, Sales, Homages, rights of *Vassalage*, Forests, Ponds, Riuers, Iurisdiccions, Patronages of Churches, Prouisions, and Nomination of Chappels, Goods of *Mayn-mort*, Fifts of Lands sold, and all other profits and commodities whatsoeuer, to returne to the crowne, for want of heires male: But the leuying of Taxes and aides, the minting of money, and all other things of *Regalitie* are reserued.

Concerning the other sort of lawes in this Realme, they are infinit which argueth (*à consequente*) that they be ill kept: for, *gens humana ruit per vetitum nefas*: and (*ab Antecedente*) that the people of this cuntry haue beene ill enclined: for *euill manners cause good lawes*.

These French lawes are too full of preambles, Procelles, Interims, and Prouisoies, as by all their Ordinances and Edicts appeareth: There is nothing (me thinkes) colder, then a Law with a Prologue: Let a Law command, and not perswade. Of all these Lawes I will onely name you this one: That the minoritie of the King, shall be assisted with a Councell, chosen by the States of France, wherein the Princes of the blood ought to hold the first place, and strangers to bee excluded: Which was enacted at
Toures,

Toures, by *Charles*. 8. an. 1484. I tell you of this, as of the true source and spring of all the late ciuill warres, because the Cadets of *Lorraine* by insinuation with the yong Kings, *Francis* the second, and *Charles* the ninth, vnder the fauour of the Q. Mother, tooke vpon them to manage all publike matters at their own pleasure, and thrust out the first Princes of the bloud of the house of *Burbon*. Whereupon *Nauarre* and *Condé*, the Princes of this Familie, assisted by many of the *French* Nobles, embarked themselves in the action of reforming such an abuse, and displacing the *Guyfard* out of this authoritie, tooke it vpon themselves, to whom it rightly belonged.

Howbeit, out of that which I there saw, which I haue heard of others, Officers of and reade in Authors; I will aduenture to relate, concerning the officers Court. of this Court; for as for other great Offices, as of *Constable*, *Admiral*, *Marshall*, *Grand M.* of the *Eauës* and *Forrests*, *Grand M.* of the *Artillerie*, and others, I shall speake of them, when I come to relate of the Kings Forces in generall, to which place these Offices especially appertaine.

The first Office then of Court, is that of the great Master, which in Great Master, elder times was called Earle of the Pallace, and after changed into the name of *Grand Seneschall*, and now lastly into *Grand Maistre*. It is his office, to iudge of matters of difference, between other officers of Court. He had also the charge to giue the word to the Guard, to keep the keyes of the Kings priuate lodging, and to determine in disputes among Princes that followed the Court, for their lodgings. In assemblies, he sitteth right before the King, a staire lower, as you reade in the *Dern. Trobl.* Great Butler or Taster, was in former times, a great Office in the Kings house, they had place in the Courts of Iustice, as Peeres. This Office was long in the *Countes* of *Senlis*: It is now vanished, and only there remains that of the *Grand Panetier*. This Office is ancient: he hath besides the Kings house super-intendence ouer all Bakers in the Citie and Suburbs of *Paris*. They which were wont to be called Pantlers, Tasters and Caruers, are now called: Gentlemen Wayters of the Court.

The Office of great Chamberlaine, was long in the house of *Tankeruile*: he lay at the Kings feet, when the Queene was not there. His Priuiledges are now nothing so many as in times past. Those which were then called Chamberlaines, are now gentlemen of the chamber. The Office of great Esquire, is not very ancient, though now it be very honourable, and is the same that Master of the Horse is in the Court of *England*: for it is taken out of the *Constables* Office, to whom it properly appertained. It was first instituted in the time of *Charles* the seventh. In the

Gentlemen of
the Kings
Chamber.

Great Esquire
or Master of
the Horse.

Master or
Steward of
the Kings
House.

the Kings entrance into the Citie, he carries the Sword sheathed before him; The Cloath of Estate carried ouer the King, by the Mayor and Sherifes, belongs to his Fee. No man may be the Kings Spur-maker, *Mareschall*, and such like Officer, but he must haue it of him, as also o-ther inferiour Offices belonging to the Stables. He had in times past, the command ouer Stages of Post-horses: but now the controller gene-rall of the said Posts, hath it. The office of *Master or Steward of the Kings house*, hath charge ouer the expence of the Kings house: For a marke of his authoritie, he carries a trucheon tip at both ends with sil-uer and guilt, and marcheth before the Sewer, when the Kings dinner comes to the Table.

Great Prouost
of France.

No Sergeant can arrest any of the Kings house without their leaue. They serue quarterly: they were wont to be but foure, but now I haue heard it credibly said, they be eightie in name, but all of these doe not execute the Office. The *Great Prouost of France*, and of the Kings house, was so called, since *Charles the ninth*: for before, he was called *Roy des ribauds*, King of the Rascals. His Office is to stickle a-mongst the Seruants; Pages, Lacquies, and *Filles de ioye* (Punkes or pleasant sinners) which follow the Court, and to punish all offences in these people.

Great Faulco-
ner, and great
Hunt.

I should haue named before these last, as a place more honourable, the Office of *Great Faulconer*, and *great Hunt*, who haue authoritie ouer all Officers of chase. They of the Kings chamber, are eyther gentlemen of the chamber, of whom I spake before, or *Groomes of the chamber*, which are but base *Groomes* and *Yeomen*.

Gentlemen of
the Kings
Guard.

The hundred gentlemen of his guard (though there be two hundred of them) they hold and vse a weapon, called *Le bec de corbin*: They march two and two before him: they are part *French*, and part *Scots*. The *Scot* carries a white Caslocke, powdered with siluer plates, and the Kings deuise vpon it: The *French* weare the Kings colours. There is also a garde of *Swisse*, attired in partie-coloured-Cloth, drawne out with silke, after their countrie fashion: these follow the Court alwaies on foot, the other on horse.

His Forces.

There belongs to the Court also, the *Marshalls of Lodgings*, and *Har-ningers*: they haue like Offices as the Haruingers in the English Court: there be also diuers others which are heere needlesse to be spoken of.

It followeth I speake of his Forces, as well horse as foot, of which this Countrie is very well furnished, and indeed vanteth (and I thinke wor-thily) to be the best and greatest *Genfdarmerie* of any Realme in Chri-stendome: but on the other side, their foot haue no reputation; Info-much,

much, as at the sledge of *Amyens*, we should heare the Spaniard within the Towne, speak ouer the wals to our English Souldier, in their Trenches, after we had saued the Kings Canon, from which the French were shamefully beaten by them within, sallying out vpon them :

You are tall Souldiers (say they, and we honour you much, not thin-
king any foot to come neere vs in reputation, but you; and therefore,
when you of the English come downe to the Trenches, we double our
Guard, & looke for blowes: but as for these base and vnworthie *French*,
when they come, we make account we haue nothing to doe that day, but
play at Cardes, or sleepe vpon our Rampart. Of both these Forces of
horse and foot of France, you are to note this which followeth.

It is reported of the great Turke, that when he conquereth any Province or Countrey, he deuidenth the Lands vpon his horsemen, and to each his portion, with an exemption of paying, either Rent, Taxe, or Tallage whatsoeuer: only they are bound to serue the *Grand Signore*, with a proportion of horse at their owne charge, and in their owne person in his warres, except either age or sicknesse hinder, which are the two only excuses admitted. These are called his *Timars*: of like Nature were the *Calafyres* or *Mamalucks* of *Egypt*.

So did the Kings of *France* in former times, bestow vpon gentlemen, diuers Lands and Possessions, freeing them likewise from taxes & aydes, vpon condition to haue their personall seruice in time of neede. These Lands were called (*Feifs*, instituted before *Charlemaigne* his time, but till then, they were giuen only for life (as at this day are those of the *Turkes*;) but since, they be hereditarie. The word *Feif*, hath his Etymologie of (*Foy*) Faith: signifying Lands giuen by the King to his Nobilitie or men of desert, with *Haulte et basse iustice*, with an acknowledgment of fealtie and homage, and seruice of the King in his wars at their owne charge. Some *Feif* was bound to finde a man at Armes: some an Archer, some the third, and some the fourth of a man at Armes, according to the quantitie of Land he held. He that had Land from the value of fve to fixe hundred *Liures* rent (that is from fiftie to sixtie pound sterling) was bound to finde a man on Horseback, furnished for a man at Armes: and from three to foure hundred, a good light Horse-man. Who, if it please the Prince, and vpon occasion of seruice, shall quit his Horse and serue on foote, provided that he haue with him a vallet Harquebutier. But they that had lesse than three or foure hundred, had a lesse proportion of charge. There be foure exceptions where a man is not bound to serue in person: If he be sicke, if aged, if hee beare some Office, if hee keepe some Frontier place or
other

other Castle of the Kings ; for in this case he may send another.

They are bound, vpon forfeiture of their *Feif*, to serue three months within the Land, and fortie daies without, not counting the daies of marching. You must obserue, that as the *Seigneurs* hold their *Feif* of the King in *Haute iustice*, so other gentlemen hold of them in *Basse iustice*, vpon charge to follow these *Seigneurs* at all times to the warres. For the *Feif* is the thing, by the acceptation whereof, they that hold it, are bound in oath and fidelity to their Lords : And therefore are called their Vassalls, of *Wessos* the olde *Gaule* word, which signifieth Valiant : for to such were the *Feifes* giuen. As for *Serfes*, slaues or Villaines, they are domesticke, and serue vpon baser condition, for wages and victualls. There is also the subiect ; that is, the poore pay-
Monsieur le gentleman speake of *ses terres ses hommes*, and *ses sub-*
iects: His Lands, his men, and his subiects : and yet, himselfe is Vassall to the *Seigneur*, that holds in *haute iustice*. But ye may note that no word of seruice whatsoever in this discourse, doth preiudice the lyber-
 tie naturall of the Vassall. Neither the Subiect, nor the *Serf* are bound to goe to the warres, but only the vassall. The Mustering and gather-
 ing together of these Forces, is called the *Ban*, and *Arrier-Ban*, of the *Almaine* words, *Here exercitus*, an Army ; and *Ban conuocasio* ; a calling together. This *Ban* and *Arrier-ban*, consisted anciently of twelue, and
 sometimes fiftene thousand *Gensdarmes* : But after the corruption ther-
 of, when the *Fiefs* came to be in the hands of vnable and vnworthy men, the Kings of *France* were forced of later times, to erect the *Gens-*
darmes des Ordonnances ; the men at Armes of his Ordinances, in *Charles*
 the seuenth his time. For ye must consider, that there haue beene foure
 principall causes of the ouerthrow of this *Ban* and *Arrier-ban*. The
 first were the gifts to the Clergie, who as is reported, haue the sixt part
 of these *Feifs* in their hands, and contribute nothing to the warres : for
 as one saith, They will loose nothing, pay nothing, contribute nothing
 toward their guarding, and yet notwithstanding they will be guarded.
 The next, was the voyages to the *Holy-land* : for when one had made a
 vow to goe thither, to serue against the *Saracens*, and *Infidels* he sold his
Fiefe, to furnish him to that purpose. The third, was the warres with the
Engliss, wherein by force they lost them. The last cause is, the sales of them
 to all sortes of people, without exception ; as the Lawyer, the Yeoman,
 or any other vnable person whatsoever that will buy them ; which till
Charles the seuenth they might not do. Ye see then how necessarie it was
 (this old institution being corrupted and quite decaied) to erect a new ;
 which

which they called *Les gensdarmes des ordonnances* : because at their first erection, there were diuers Lawes and ordinances made for them to observe, which who so brake, was seuerely punished. They were at first only 1500. But after, they were increased to a hundred companies, and giuen to diuers Princes of the bloud and Nobles of France, to conduct and command, with an honourable pension. In these companies should be 6000. for in some there is an hundred, in others but fittie. Howbeit, it is thought, in each companie there wants some, for the benefit of the Officers, and that in truth, there be not aboue foure thousand in all. For the maintenance of this *Gensdarmerie*, there is a taxe yearly leuied vpon the people throughout all France, called the *Taille*.

Concerning both the number of the *Gensdarmes*, and their proportion of allowance, by the *Taille*, it is thus, as *La Nouë* iudgeth : The horsemen in the time of *Henry* the second, exceeded the number of 6000. lances ; but they are now but 4000. and in mine opinion, it were fit to entertaine in time of peace, foure Regiments of Infanterie, of sixe hundred men apeece.

As touching the Infanterie, *Francis* the first was the first that instituted the Legionaries, which were in all, eight, and euerie Legion to containe sixe thousand, according to the rate of the ancient *Romans*. The first Legion was of *Normandie*, The next of *Bretagne*. One in *Picardie*. One in *Burgundie*. In *Champaigne* and *Niurnois* one. In *Dolphenie* and *Prouence* one; In *Lyonnois* & *Auuergne* one. And one in *Languedock*. These companies were shortly after called : and againe, within eightene yeares erected ; and are now againe of late yeares dissolved, and in their place, the Regiments now intertained, are fise in number : The Regiment of the *Guard*, The Regiment of *Picardie*, The Regiment of *Champaigne*, the Regiment of *Piemont*. And lastly, the Regiment of *Gascoyne*, commonly called the Regiment of *Nauarre*. In each of these is twelue hundred.

These are al now in time of peace bestowed in garison-towns & frontier places, except those of his guard. *Bodins* opinion is, that 4. Legions of 5000. apeece, would suffice to be maintained in this land: for (saith he) the *Romain* Empire, which was twentie times as great, had neuer but 11. Legions in pay: but this is to be vnderstood of them which were in pay ordinary in *Italie*, besides those Legions which they had in other their countries, as *England*, *Spain*, *Low-countries*, &c. For otherwise, we reade of those Emperors, that had thirtie one Legions; and *Bodin* himselfe confesseth, that *Augustus* had at one time entertained in pay fortie Legions, at eleauen millions charge the yeare. But this Writer though he be
 approued,

approved, as he well deserues; yet I thinke if he fayled in any of his discourse, it was in matter of warre, the profession whereof did il agree with his long robe; ye shall therefore take the iudgement of a discreeter Soldior of France for your direction, what force the French can make, or intertaine of others, which is this. If our King perceiued that any neighbour of his meant to inuade his Frontiers, I thinke he might easily compose an Armie of sixtie companies of men at Armes, twentie Corners of light horse, and fiue companies of Harquebusiers on horse-backe, amounting all to 10000. horse. To which he might adde three or foure thousand Reysters, and one hundred Ensignes of French foot, and fortie Ensignes of his good confederates, the *Swissers*, and yet maintaine his other Frontiers sufficiently manned.

So that ye may conclude, that foure thousand men at Armes, well complete, and with a proportion of light horse and foot answerable, sheweth the whole flower, beautie, and force of France. Howloeuver the Author of the Cabinet confidently auoweth, that there may easily be mustred and maintained foure score and odde thousand horse of one sort or other; that is, lance and light-horse. But I feare me, we may say of them, as *Plutarch* saith of the Nobles of *Athens*, hauing vsurped vpon the Democratic of that Citie: *They were indeed but foure hundred, and yet caused themselves to be stiled, the five thousand.* So I feare me, he reckoneth after the *Athenian* rate, ten for one.

The Cabinets reason is this: There be in France fifteene thousand gentlemen that are able to beare Armes: for (saith he) rate this proportion at a gentleman in each league, by the measure of France (which are fortie thousand in square) and it wanteth but a fift. Howbeit, saith he, in some Countries, ye shall haue thirtie or fortie, within the compasse of one league, besides their children. Out of these, if the King would, he might compose a *Gensdarmierie* of 8000. men at Armes, and 16000. Archers: which body of 24000. gentlemen, would represent in the field 60000. horse. He might also haue a *cauallerie Legiere*, of foure or fiue thousand gentlemen. He might also furnish the *Ban* and *Arierban*, according to the old fashion, with twelue or fifteen thousand gentlemen. And yet might he haue besides all this, foure or fiue thousand for the state of his Court, and gouernment of his Prouinces. This is his computation: But you shall see it proued, when we come to speake of the Nobilitie of France, that it is exceedingly thortned in number, and decayed in estate, and therefore nothing able to come neere this number. As good a consequent it were to say, that because ye haue two or three millions of men in England, able to fight, that therefore our State can bring

bring so manie into the field, without considering the prouision of Armes, and all other things necessarie. But this Cabinet was made by one of the Religion, that was transported out of himselfe, by the heate of his zeale, and hate to the temporall liuings of the Church: Whose proiects and drifts are much like those of the *Supplication of Beggars* (a Booke made in King *Henrie* the eight daies) where hee frameth in his fancie an *Utopia* and felicitie, not to be hoped in France, building Castles in the Ayre; and concluding, that if it would please the King to aliene the Church temporall liuings, and vnite them to the *Domaine*, *nihil est dictu facilius*: (a thing easilie said, but not easilie done) that ouer and besides the forces of fourescore thousand Horse aboue-said, he might also maintaine an Infanterie of the French Gentlemen of twelue thousand: Item, another of the popular, of fortie eight thousand. And lastly, yet an other Infanterie legionarie of fortie eight thousand.

The *Supplication* was answered by Sir *Thomas Moore* his Booke, called, *The Pittifull complaint of the puling soules in Purgatorie*: How well I know not, but of this I am sure, that if such a number of horse and foot should either be maintained vpon the Church-liuing, or vpon the poore people (vpon whom all these charges of the *Gend'armes* lieth) heere would be manie more puling soules, and pittifull complaints in France than are in Sir *Thomas Moores* Purgatorie.

It then remaines, that wee hold our selues to the iudgement of *La Noue*, afore set downe, who also confesseth, that in *Charles* the sixt his time, there vvere in the field twentie two thousand Lances; but since the *Gendarmerie* was instituted, vvere neuer, but once at *Valenciennes*, aboue tenne thousand. For as for that great number, whereof yee read in *M. d'Argenton*, that besieged *Lewis* the eleauenth in *Paris*, they were the forces of three great Princes, and the better part *Burgognions*.

I must now remember you of the Officers for the vvarre in France: and because warre is made both by sea and by land, I must also reckon the sea Officers: but as for the French kings forces at sea, I haue not yet learned that he hath anie, and therefore can say little thereof.

The first and principall, and which commandeth all in the Kings absence, euen the Peeres and Princes of the bloud vwhatsoever, is the *Constable*: Who, as hath before beene remembred, hath his name of *Comes stabuli*. For in former times the Kings chiefe Officers were called Counts, with an addition of their Office, as *Comes Palatii*, *Comes Præsidij*, *Comes rerum priuatarum*, *Comes sacrarum largitionum*, *Comes*
H *castrorum*,
Constable!

Officers of
warre.

Comes castrorum, *Comes narium*, Count of the Palace, Count of the Guard, &c. And though he hath not now the command of the Kings Horse, yet keepeth he still the name: This Office was erected in *Lewis le Gros* his time. It was bestowed vpon the house of *Memorencie*, in *Francis* the first his time, and remaineth still in the same.

The ancient deuice of the house of *Memorencie*, is this, *God aide the Prime Christian, and ancientest Baron of France*. He hath the keeping of the Sword Royall. And as the great Esquire hath the Sword in the Scabberd, *Azure seedeth with Flowers de Lyce*, Or, added to his Armes, so beareth the Constable for an Honour, the naked Sword. The *Marshals* beare the Battel-axe; and the *Admirals*, the Anchor. The *Constable* and *Marshals* giue the Oath to the King: He sitteth chiefe Iudge at the Table of Marble, vpon all persons, sutes, actions, and complaints whatsoeuer touching the warres. When the King entereth a citie, in his greatest pompe, or vpon a deliuerie, hee goeth before with the Sword naked: and when the King sitteth in Assembly of the three States, hee is placed at his right hand. Hee that killeth the *Constable*, is guiltie of high Treason. The *Marshals* are named, as some say, of *Marc*. The *Marshall*, *Cheual*, a Horse, and *Schal*. Maister, or Commander of the Horse. Others of *Marcha*, that is; *March* or *Frontier*; *Quasi Prefectus limitū*, as it were, *Gouernor of the Marches*. Till *Francis* the first, there were but two in all France; afterward foure; and now ten: for as is said before, when anie that held either some strong towne or place of importance, came into the King, he did alwaies capitulate, to haue some one of these Offices, besides summes of money and *Gouernments* also: such was the necessities of the times, saith *Haillan*. These, vnder the Constable haue the command ouer all Dukes, Earles, Barons, Captaines, and *Gensdarmes*: but may neither giue battaile, make Proclamation, or Muster-men, without his Commandement. They haue vnder them Lieutenants, whom they call *Preuosts-Marsbals*, who haue the punishing of mutinous souldiours, such as quit their colours, Rogues, and such like. There is the office of Admirall: Looke what the Marshals are in a Land-Armie, the same is the Admirall in a Sea-Armie: and these two offices are seuerall, because the subiect of their employment is differing and vnlike.

Admirall

This office is the most ancient of all France: for *Cesar* speaketh thereof: *The Admirals of Prouence, Bretaine, and Narbon* are much commended for their practise and skill in sea-service.

I maruaile therefore, why *du Haillan* reporteth, that they were first made in *Charlemaignes* daies, and that one Maister *Ritland*, was the first that

that was made. There are now foure Admiralties, *France*, *Bretaigne*, *Guyenne*, and *Prouence*. This last is alwaies annexed to the gouernourship of that countrie: So, that of *Guyenne* likewise, till the King that now is, came to the crowne, who before was Gouvernor and Admirall of *Guyenne*: but since he hath diuided the commands. Yee may obserue in Histories, that all the while the French voyages were vpon the Leuant seas, either to the *Holy-Land*, *Sicily*, or *Naples*, or whithersoouer, the French alwaies had their Vessels and Commanders, out of *Italie*. France borrowed their Admirals from *Genoa*, *Pisa*, *Venice*, and *Luca*. These haue the tenth of all wracke, prize, or prisoners, that are taken at Sea.

Before the inuention of shot, there was an Officer in France called, *Great Maister of the Crosse-bowes and Ingines*: which office is now called, the *Great Maister of the Artillerie*, who at first also, immediatly after the inuention of shot, was called *Captaine Generall of the Artillerie*.

You haue also *Treasurers for the warres*, which are either ordinarie, or extraordinarie: Those pay the *Gensdarmes*; and these, the Regiments of the Infanterie. Treasurers ordinarie are so manie, as there be places where they Muster: Of extraordinarie, there be alwaies foure:

The *Heraults* of France are fixe, *Normandie*, *Guyenne*, *Valois*, *Bretaigne*, *Burgogne*, so called of the countries (as with vs in England) and *Mont-joy*, who is the chiefe of the rest. Their ancient office was, to be present at all Iusts and Tournements, to denounce warre or peace, to summon places, to defie enemy-Princes, to giue Armes to men new ennobled. But now they bee onely vsed at feasts, coronations, solemnities, funerals, and such like; for they are no more vsed in the Treatie and negotiation with foraine Princes. I thinke the reason is, because the office hath of late yeares beene bestowed vpon vnworthie and insufficient persons. It shall here be needlesse to name all other his Officers of the Warres, which are all one with those of other countries, as Collonel, Captaine, Sergeant, Lieutenant, Ensigne, Corporall, &c. I will onely remember in a word the French maner of Mustering, March, Charge, and seruice in generall, and then proceed to the next branch of this relation. We must obserue, that (excepting the *Gens d'armes*, and the Regiments aboue named) when anie souldiours are taken vp for the wars, they are not pressed, as with vs, but the captaine hauing his commission, gathereth them vp by sound of Drumme, entertaining onely such as will (which may bee some cause of the badnesse and basenesse of the French foot) for being commonly the Rascall sort, and such as haue no other meanes, there cannot settle in their abiect mindes,

that true and honourable resolution requisite in a souldiour. This Commission must first bee shewed to the Gouvernour, Lieutenant-generall, Baillif, or Seneschall of the Prouince, vpon paine of death. Neither is it good, except it be signed by the King, and one of the Secretaries of Estate, and sealed with the great Seale. The souldiours leuied, are at the charge of the Prouince, where they bee taken vp, vntill they depart the same. Their March it should seeme, is somewhat more sharpethan ours. For I remember I haue heard say, that vpon a time the old Marshall *Biron* should bid Sir *Roger Williams* bring vp his companies faster, taxing the slow March of the English. Sir (saith he) *with this March our fore-fathers conquered your countrie of France, and I meane not to alter it.* A memorable answere of an honourable souldiour. For the French charge, yee shall heare the *Spaniards* opinion out of *La Noue*. The French Infanterie skirmisheth brauely a farre off, and the Caualery giues a furious on-set at the first charge: but after the first heate, they will take Egges for their money. And indeed, this is that which all Writers giue them, and which best agrees with their Nature: for wee may say of them, as is said of *Themistocles*; *Hee was so hot at the on-set, that he lost his wind in the midst of the carriere.* Or say of them, as *Fabius* of *Hanniball*: his valour is like a fire of straw, and a flame kindled in matter of small continuance.

Discipline.

Concerning the French discipline, *Cesar* himselfe saith, They had it first from vs. It is said, the discipline of the *Gaules* was first inuented in *Brittanie*, and from thence translated into *Gallia*; and now such as desire to attaine the perfection thereof, commonly trauell thither to learne it. But they haue long since degenerated from their old discipline of warre, and they themselves confesse, that since the beginning of the ciuill warres, where souldiours in all disordered and dissolute manner haue beene giuen to pillage and thecuerie, that it is verie much abastardized; whereof *La Noue* complaineth in his discourses. As for the Militarie discipline, we must confesse, that she keepes her bed, sicke of a verie deadly disease. The Noblesse fight alwaies on horse-backe, and thinke it a dishonour to serue on foot. But *Commynes* saith of the Nobilitie of *Burgundie*, in the wars with *Lewis* the 11. that they all quit their horses: for they were then most honoured that lighted on foot, to the end the people might be the more encouraged, and fight more valiantly: and this they learned of the *English*. And it is no question, but if some of the *French* Nobilitie would do so, it would much confirme their foote, by the example of their valour and abiding, and recouer that reputation which now their foot haue lost in the world. Neither doe
I thinke

I thinke this the least reason, why our Ancestors haue wonne so manie battailes vpon them; namely, for that euer wee haue had men of Noble houses, to lead and serue on foot with our forces. A notable cause to confirme and assure the vnsteadie headinesse of a multitude.

And for the opinion that the World hath of our foot, yee shall obserue what the same Writer elsewhere saith. They bee good foot, and better than their neighbours, as we may say now a daies, of the *English* and *Swissers*.

And in another place, where he opineth of the manner of seruice, he saith: My opinion is, that in battels, Archers are the waight that turnes the balance; And of Archers, the *English* are the flower: where he likewise discourseth, how dangerous a thing it is to abide a battell, except your foot be much the better: which in my opinion was no little cause why the French King fought not with the Cardinall in the yeare 97, before *Amiens*, because the enemies foote were holden in number eightene thousand (though I hardly thinke they were so manie.) A number full as great as the French, and the souldiour farre better, they being all French, except some three thousand *English* and *Swissers*; and theirs, the choice men of all his Garrisons, and experienced souldiours in those Low-Countries. For true it is, that the Kings *Gensdarmes* were two for one, and holden also much the better men, as well because there was in a manner all the Nobility and flower of France, as also that they had the aduantage in the manner of weapon; for that the French serueth with the Pistoll, and the *Spaniard* still holds him to his Launce. But I make no question, that the consideration of the ods on foote vvas not the chiefe cause why there was no battaile that day: for we had a goodlie faire field, and plaine as might be possible, as also large: a singular aduantage for him which is strongest in Horse: So had we the winde and sunne in our backes, which are holden no small helps.

But this was the reason: the King thought it no policie to play all his Rest at once, where he might haue lost more at one Game, than he had got in eight yeares; hee had no reason, but to make the Card that was now going, a Bridge of Gold, (as the Prouerbe is) considering, that by this meanes he should gaine the Towne of *Amiens*, re-assure other cities that then stood wauering, and recouer his reputation in the world, which by the losse of that Towne was much disputed.

It now remaineth I speake of his Expence, which chiefly consisteth His Expence, in these two things betore spoken of, namely, his Court and his Forces: wherein it is verie hard to relate an exact proportion, considering not only the variety & difference of Writers, but also the vncertainty of the

number of Pensionaries, or prouisioned : And lastly, the change and alteration of their allowance, not continuing alwaies the same. Howbeit, that which is most commonly reported, and seemeth nearest the truth, is this : The maintenance of five Regiments of foote, at sixe crownes the month, commeth to foure hundred sixtie eight thousand crownes the yeare, besides the pension of 5. Collonels, at two thousand crownes a peece ; thirtie captaines at one thousand pension a man, as manie Lieutenants at five hundred, and Ensignes at three hundred the peece ; which is in all, seauentie foure thousand : which added to the first summe, makes the whole charge of these Regiments, yearely to amount to the summe of five hundred fortie two thousand crownes. This proportion differeth not much from that of *Bodin*, where he saith: The King might maintaine in ordinary, twentie thousand foot, at the rate of three million, and five hundred thousand *Liures*, which if you reduce to crownes, and to one number of sixe thousand foote, commeth to a lesse rate than that other, namely, to foure hundred eight thousand, three hundred thirtie three crownes : but I thinke, that former is nearer the truth. For the allowance of his *Gensd'armes*, which are reckoning at sixe thousand, as is before said (though in truth there be but foure) for he paieth thus many, I follow the proportion of them that say, that 51750. crownes, is the ordinarie allowance for one companie of a hundred yearely : for where are sixe thousand men at Armes in the field, are eightene thousand Horse in all. After this rate then of the hundred before set downe, the whole *Gensd'armery* amounteth to 3105000. crownes.

For the expence of his court, you shall heare it to be thus rated : The Table of the King, and those of the Gentlemen of the Chamber, at 112000. crownes : for his pettie pleasures, a thousand crownes a day : in all 165000. (But this was a proportion for the last King, who was a great giuer.) For the great and little Stable, 190000. For the Constable 24000. For the *Gran Maistre*, great Master, 20000. For the Marshals of France, 18000. apeece, when they were but foure ; for now it is a Title onely, without either pension or commaund, saue onely in the foure chiefe. For the Admirall, 15000. for the *Grand Veneur*, great Hunt, 16000. For the Gouvernours of his Prouinces in all, 188000. For the gentlemen of his chamber, their pension 1200. crownes a peece ; in all, sixe hundred thousand. For the captaines of his Guards on Horse, two thousand a peece. For their Lieutenants, eight hundred. For two thousand Swisses of his Guard, tenne crownes a moneth, 24840. For all other domestical Officers, one hundred thousand. For
Heraulcs,

Heraults, fixe thousand. For Marshals of lodgings and Fourriers, 4600. For Preuost Marshalls of Prouinces, a thousand a peece, in all twentie foure thousand. For twentie foure hundred Archers, to attend these Preuosts in the execution of their Office, seauen hundred and twentie thousand crownes. For his Ambassadours in diuers countries, two hundred and fiftie thousand. For his Officers of Finances, Treasurers, Receiuers, Controlers, and such other like Offices through France, an infinit and incredible summe: As also for such numbers of horse and foot, as the Cabinet setteth downe, besides these *Gensdarmes* and Regiments, which ye heare provided for, and in the Kings pay.

But yee must obserue, that of all these court-charges and others here before mentioned (except those of his forces) yee are not to make anie ground as of a truth: they being onely the supposed charges, set downe by the said Authour, who for his errors in other matters, hath also lost his credit in this.

To speake either particularly of the court-expences, or generallie what they be certaine, I cannot, not hauing heard anie thing thereof, but onely that it is supposed, the charge of the Kings house, is five hundred crownes a day.

It now remaineth to speake of his Entrade, or Reuenue: for a Prince cannot haue peace without vvarre, nor vvarre without men, nor men without money, nor money without meanes: nor are there any meanes but these: *Domaine, Conquests, Gifts of his friends, Pension of his Confederates, Trafficke, Impositions upon Merchandize*, brought in, or carried out; *Impositions upon Subiects*. And yet one other, which the Kings of France haue lately inuented, to helpe when all other failed; which is *Sales of Offices*, more dangerous and preiudiciall to the State, than anie other.

Of these eight meanes, I will giue you particular obseruations, and then conclude, what is generally holden to be the whole Reuenue of the crowne of France, by all these meanes.

First, the *Domaine*, is as it were the Dowre which the State brings to the King her husband, for her tuition, defence, and maintenance: And therefore one saith: It belongs not to the King, but to the Crowne.

There are two sorts of *Domaines*; first, the Rent which the King holds in his hands, of the *Fiefes* ginen for seruice: Secondly, that which is vnited and incorporate to the Crowne. The rights of the *Domaine* are these: *Rents, Fifts, Payments at alienations, Tributs, Peages, Toll* of whatsoeuer enters or comes out of Cities, Woods, Forests and diuers other.

That is *Domaine*, which belongeth to the crowne: First, either by *Possession* time out of mind: Or secondly, by *Re-union*, for want of heires males, as the *Apennages* when they returne: or by *Confusion*, for want of such as can make iust claime, much like our concealed Lands in *England*: Or lastly, by *Confiscation* of offenders inheritances.

Of this last sort wee read, that in the time of Saint *Lewis*, there were confisked to the *Domaine*, the countries of *Dreux*, *Bray*, *Fortyonne*, and *Monstreuil*, *Langue-docke*, *Guyenne*, *Aniow*, *Maine*, *Turaine*, *Auvergne*: And after in the time of *Philip*, the *Duchy* of *Alencon*, the countries of *Perche*, *Perigort*, *Pontieu*, *La Marche*, *Angoulesme*, and the *Marquisat* of *Saluzzes*. But *Bodin* saith, most of this came to the crowne by force: *La siur de la Serre* saith, it came by way of Exchange or purchase. But the Authour of the *Comentaries*, of the estate of the Religion, and pollicie of *France*, is of the first opinion. Thus great was the *Domaine* in former times, that of it selfe, without oppressing the people with impositions, it was sufficient to maintaine the State and greatnesse of the Kings of *France*, but it is now vtterly wasted. It is well knowne, that the *Domaine*, which alone maintained heretofore the beautie and lustre of the Royall Estate, is not now such as it was in the raignes of King *Lewis* the 11, *Charles* the 8, and *Lewis* the 12. The continuance of our wars, hath caused it to bee engaged in manie hands, in such sort, that there is need of more than fiftene or sixteene thousand pound sterling, to redeeme that which is worth aboue fivie millions of pounds. And *Bodin* saith, that almost all the Countries, Baronies and Seigneuries of the *Domaine*, are aliened for the ninth or tenth part of that they be woorth. Ye must obserue, that the Lands of the *Domaine* are not alienable, but in two cases. 1. For the *Apennage* of the Kings brother. 2. For the *warres*. And these must be confirmed by the Arrest of the Parliament. For in all other cases, all Lawyers and Historians of *France* agree, That it is inalienable, and manie Arrests haue beene made of late yeares to confirme it. I haue read, that the *Charta Magna* of *England* saith, the Kings when they are crowned, take an oath, not to aliene it: so doe they here in *France*. And there is no prescription of time, to make such sales or alienations good, but that they may be recouered and repurchased, whensoever the crowne is able.

To this purpose *Plutarch* saith well, *Men cannot prescribe against God, nor particulars against the Republique.*

Conquest.

2 Concerning the second meanes of raysing Money by conquests, the present State of *France* can yeeld no example, it hath beene long but on the sauing hand.

3 For

3 For the third meanes, it is now out of season; it was vsed in that good old world, when men wiped their nose on their sleeue, (as the French man saies:) for now Princes are so farre from giuing, as they hardly pay that they owe.

4 The fourth meanes also of Pension, which Princes haue vpon Pension. some consideratiō of their Allies, helpeth the French Kings coffers nothing at all, for they rather giue than take: As for example, to diuers Cantons of the *Swisses*, to whom at first they paied not aboue one hundred and twentie thousand *Liures* yearly: but for these sixtie yeares, they neuer pay lesse the yeare, then two Millions. For saith *Commines*, *Lewis* the eleuenth entered league with the *Swisses*, and they into his Pension: to whom he yearly gaue sortie thousand Florins, vwhereof twentie vvent to the cities, and twentie to particular men, vpon condition to haue a certaine proportion of their forces, to serue in his Warres vpon all occasions. An aduantagious alliance for the *Swisse* in my opinion, who by this meanes enrich themselues, cleare their countrie of manie idle and bad members, and lastly, breed good souldiours, to serue themselues vpon need at another mans cost. The *Turke* hath also a Pension of the Emperor of *Germanie*, for certaine Lands he holdeth in *Hungarie*: vvhich he notwithstanding vanteth to be a Tribute. Manie examples might be alleaged of this kind, as of *Philip* of *Macedone*, that by pensions got all *Greece* partiall on his side: and the Kings of *Persia*, by Pension, got euer the forces of *Asia* diuerted.

5 The fift, vvhich is of Trafficke, auaileth nothing the French Trafficke. Kings: for they hold it here a base and sordid kind of profession, for a gentleman, much more for a King, to trade by Merchandize. And by the Lawes of *England*, *France*, and *Germanie*, he looeth the quality of a Nobleman, that doth Trafficke.

Notwithstanding, these Lawes, and the disparagement that it brings to Nobilitie, yet so sweete is the sauour of gaine, that manie haue vsed this, as no small meanes to encrease their Finances. The great Duke of *Tuscane* present, gaines infinitely this way, and the more by his most vnlawfull and tirannous Monopolies: for he commonlie buieth vp all the graine of his owne countrie, at his owne price: yea, and that vvhich commeth from other places also, and then sendeth out a *Bando* or Proclamation, that no man shall sell anie corne throughout his State, till his owne bee sold, forcing also all Bakers and other people to buy thereof. This manner of ingrossing *Alphonfus* of *Arragon* also vsed, by the testimonie of *Bodin*. The kings of *Portugall* also, and the Seignorie of *Venice*, haue beene great Traders by Merchandize, but it hath beene

beene in an honest fashion, at sea, and not to the grinding of their poore subiects. The nobility also of *Italie*, in all cities (except *Naples*) hold it no dishonor to Trafficke in grosse.

6 The sixth meanes of raising money vpon all wares and merchandize, that come in and goe out of the countrey, is the most auncient and best agreeing with reason, and vsed by all Princes in the World. The particulars comprised vnder this branch, are these: *Customes inward, and outward*. By these the Prince is to haue Impost, *fine in the hundred*: so much iust had the *Romaines*, as *Cicero* witnesseth in his *Prætorship of Sicilia*. The *Turke* takes *Tenne in the hundred of the stranger, and fine of the subiect*: the *French* quite contrarie. You must obserue, that that which heere I call the *Domaine foraine*, is generally called, the *Aides*; first, granted by the Estates to *Charles Duke of Normandie*, when *Iohn* his father was prisoner in *England*: which was the payment of twelue *Deniers*, vpon all Merchandizes and Wares which should bee sold in this Kingdome, except vpon Wine, Corne, Salt, and all manner of drinke: but since, it hath beene made perpetuall, and augmented by the imposition vpon Wine sold euerie where, and in *Normandie* by retaile.

This is like the slavish Gabell vpon all manner of food, which the Princes take of their Subiects through *Italie*, or the Assize vpon Bread and Beare, which the States haue in the Low-Countries: a grieuance, whereof wee smart not in *England*, as also wee are free from manie other burthens, which the people of this countrey are forced to beare.

Touching the Gabell of Salt (which is also comprised vnder this head.) Some say it was first erected by *Philip le Long*: Others by *Philip de Valois*, 1328. True it is, that the Ordinance of *Francis* the first, 1541. sets downe an Impost of 24. *Liures* vpon euerie *Muy*: And in the yeare 1543. an ordinance was made, for Gabell to bee taken vpon all sea-fish salted. And in 1544. it was ordained, that all Salt should be sold and distributed into the *Magazines*, or Store-houses of euerie seuerall generalitie. The benefit of this one commoditie, hath beene verie commodious to the crowne, till the yeare eightie one, when the King was forced for want of money, to let it out to others: whereby he lost, as is in my Authour prooued, eight hundred thirtie fixe thousand crownes yearly. Here is also a kind of Tax, called the *Equivalent*, that is: an imposition laid vpon some persons and places (but not generally) to haue libertie to buy and sell salt, and to be exempt from the *Magazines*.

The

The Impost of Wine is laide vpon all, without exception or exemption whatsoeuer, it is the twentieth part to the King : besides all other rights, as of Billots entring into Cities, passages by Land, Riuer, and such like : Besides, a latter imposition of five *Sols* vpon euery *Muy*, leuied by *Charles* the ninth 1561.

Concerning the (*Traite foraine*) it is of like nature with the *Aides*, saue that it is leuyable vpon more particular sorts of merchandize : Besides, the *Aides* is an Impost vpon things spent in the Land ; and the *traite foraine*, is of such commodities as are transported out: as of wheat, rye, barley, oates, wine, vineger, veriuice, cider, beeuies, muttuns, veales, lambes, swine, horses, lard, bacon, tallow, oyle, cheese, fish of all sorts, silkes and cloaths of all sorts, leather of all sorts; and finally, all other marchandize, as fruits, parchment, paper, glasse, wood, ropes, &c.

7 The seauenth ground or foundation of Finances, is the *Imposition* vpon the Subiect : that is, not vpon the wares or commodities, but vpon the persons themselues, according to their abilitie ; & it is much like the leuying of the taxe & subsidie in England, where euery one payeth rateably to the lands & goods he possesseth. And therefore *Haillan* iudgeth well, to say, they be neither personall, nor reall, but mixt : Assessed in the place of their dwelling, according to all the goods of the partie assessed, in what part soeuer they lye or abide.

These *Tailles* were first raised by *Saint Lewis* (but by way of extraordinary Subsidie. *Charles* the seuenth made them ordinarie for the maintenance of his *Gendarmerie*. And whereas at first they were neuer leuied but by consent of the three States, and to endure but while the warre lasted, he made them perpetuall. Therefore saith one, That which was at first yeelded of fauour, is since exacted as patrimoniall and hereditarie to our Kings. Yet is it to be obserued, that these *Tailles* are only lyable vpon the *Flat pais*, All Cities are exempt ; As also all Officers of the Kings house ; All Counsellours, Lawyers, and Officers of Courts of Parliament ; All the Nobilitie, the *Gensdarmes*, the Officers of war, the Graduates of Vniuersities, &c.

The *Tailon* is another Imposition, raised by *Henry* the second, Anno 1549. which was to amend the Wages of the *Gensdarmes*, who by reason of the smalnesse of their pay, lay vpon the poore Villages, and eat them vp ; for the ease whereof, this Imposition was deuised, which also lyeth vpon the poore Countrey-man : whereby at first he was somewhat eased, but now all is peruerterd ; the poore is still oppressed, and yet he paieth still both *Taille* and *Tailon*.

Lastly, there is the *Sold*, or pay of 50000. foot, which were created by

by *Lewis* the eleauenth, into eight Legions; sixe thousand to a Legion, which with their Officers, come to about this number. To maintaine these Legions, there was a taxe leuyed vpon all sorts of persons priuiledged in the *taille*, but only the Nobles.

There are also the *Decymes* (Tents) leuied vpon the Church. For the leuying of the *taille*, *tailion*, and wages of 50000 foot, you must note, that the King sends his Letters Patents by Commissioners, to the Treasurers of each generalitie. These according to the summe, rate each election (this is, as yee would say, euery Hundred in a Shire, or Bailly-wike) and then send to these elections, to haue the said summe gathered in their seuerall Townes, and Hamlets, according as they be rated.

So doe they to the *Maieures*, *Consuls*, *Escheuins*, and cheefe Officers of euery Citie, that are lyable to any of these payments; who rating euery man according to his abilitie, giue these Rols to certaine Collectors to gather it vp: these are bound to bring it quarterly to the Receiuers. These carrie it to the Receiuers generall, in the same *species* that they receiued it: and from them to haue an acquittance, after the accounts haue beene perused by the Controuer generall.

And these are all the meanes, by which Princes raise their Finances, whereof yee see some, nothing to pertaine to the French King, but to others; and some to him only, not to others.

Sale of Offices

There yet remaineth one other meanes (though extraordinarie) to a Prince, to get Money, which the necessities of the times, and the want of other meanes, haue forced the French Kings of late yeares to vse. This is the vent or sales of Offices, a very dangerous & hurtfull merchandize, both for the Prince and Subiect. This Lesson (saith *Bodin*) the French Kings first learned of the Popes, with whom it is still as familiar, as old, to sell Bishopricks, liuings, and Ecclesiasticall promotions. A course, saith one, of great and dangerous consequence, but cloaked with necessitie. It is indeed thrice dangerous, because sales of Offices, cause sales of Iustice: for what these Purchasers pay in grosse, they must needes get in retaile, forgetting what was said to *Sophocles*, the gouernour of *Athens*: *A Gouernour must not only haue his hands cleane, but his eyes also.* They cannot say as *Pericles* did on his death-bed, *He had neuer made any Athenian weare mourning Robe.* For these, by selling Iustice, and robbing the poore of their right, giue the Fatherlesse and oppressed Widdow, iust cause to complaine, and of wearing that mourning Robe, whereof *Plutarch* speaketh.

It is a strange thing to consider, and incredible to beleue, what infinite masses of money haue beene made heere in France by these sales, where

where there is not that Collector, Controller, Treasurer, Sergeant, or Subalterne Officer whatsoever, but he hath bought it of the Prince, and at no small rate: for I have heard it credibly reported, and ye shall read also in late Writers, that these Offices are brought in France at a dearer rate than our Lands in England of twenty yeares purchase. Yee must obserue, they haue them for tearme of life, and after to returne to the King who is againe to sell them. A man in his sicknesse, or in danger of death, or vpon any neede whatsoever, may sell this his Office, or resigne it to his sonne or friend whatsoever: which sale is good, if the partie liue fortie dayes after the sale or resignation is confirmed, otherwise not.

Now we are to consider, what Entrade or Reuennue, the French King yearly maketh by any, or all of the meanes aboue-said.

The Estate of the Finances, Domaine, and all in *Charles* the sixt time, Anno 1449, was but 1400000. *Liures*. *Henry* the second, Raised vpon Riches. his people by way of ordinarie Reuennue, fiftene hundred thousand pound sterling a yeare: whereof some part hath since beene aliened for the debts of the Crowne, which notwithstanding, the King raiseth as much now.

But we may obserue, that this summe is of late yeares growne much greater (by two thirds) as is generally beleued: For whereas in those dayes, some three or fourescore yeares since, the ordinarie summe was fiftene Millions of *Francs* or *Liures*, it is now so many of Crownes. And *Monsieur Rinault*, Treasurer to the Duke of *Mayen*, shamed not (some twentie yeares since) to say, that his Maister had improued the Realme of France, to a better rent than any Prince had done before-times: For, saith he, *Whereas it was worth but two Millions of pounds, it is now worth five Millions sterling.*

And another saith, that only by the sales of Offices, in twentie yeares space, *The King* hath raised one hundred thirtie and nine Millions, which is after the rate of seuen Millions the yeare. So that it is probably to be inferred, that the Reuennues are at least fiftene Millions of Crownes; wherein all late Writers agree. Neither must we thinke that men are mistaken, by counting Crownes for *Liures* (considering that *Bodin* and *La Nouë*, and most elder Writers speak only of *Liures*, not of Crowns.) For the manner of accompt in France, is, by especiall ordinance commanded to be made by Crownes, and that of *Liures* to cease: So that, whensoever yee reade in the Stories of France, of any summe, of thousands, Millions, or such like, without naming either *Francs* or Crowns, you are to respect the times when it was written: for if it was aboue
thirtie

thirtie yeares past, they meane *Liures* or *Frances*: If of later yeares then 30. it is alwaies to be vnderstood they speake of crownes: this rule will not faile you.

Officers of his
Finances.

Having sufficiently spoken of these, it remaineth I keepe the same course I haue done hitherto: that is, after the *Relation of the Court*, to reckon vp the Officers of Court, and after the discours of *his forces*, to speak of his *Officers of Warre*. So here likewise, after mention made of his *Finances* and *Reuenues*, to remember his *Financers and Officers*, vsed for the collection, keeping and disposing of the same. Of which officers, we may say as the Philosopher saith of Wiues, that they be *Necessarie evils*. And as hee saith of them; *The lesse of evils is the best*: so say we of these, *The fewer, the better*. But when wee read, that the old Romans had of these but one in a Prouince, you shall obserue here in some Prouince, not so few, as one thousand.

The Treasurer.

The chiefe of these, is *Treasurer of the Exchequer*, instituted in *Francis* the first his time, in place of the Receiuer generall. There is also another *Treasurer of Casualties*. The third sort, are the *Treasurers generaux des Finances*, whom also call *Treasurers of France*. For, as for the *Treasurers* ordinarie and extraordinarie of the Wars, we haue already spokē of them in the *Relation of his Forces*, and of the *Treasurer of his pettie pleasures*, when we spoke of his *Court*.) The number of these *Treasurers* generall, as also of all other Officers of *Finances*, ye may partly conceiue by the number of *Generalities* which are in France, and the seuerall offices of each one of these.

Generalities.

Of these *Generalities*, are twentie & one in all France, *Paris*, *Rouen*, *Caen*, *Nants*, *Toures*, *Burges*, *Poictiers*, *Agen*, *Tholouse*, *Montpellier*, *Aix*, *Grenoble*, *Lion*, *Ryon*, *Dyon*, *Chalons*, *Amiens*, *Orleans*, *Soissons*, *Lymoges*, *Maulin*.

Elections.

In each of these *Generalities*, are diuers *Elections*; that is, diuers places for the Receipt of the *Finances*: As in that of *Orleans*, are cleauen *Elections*; in the rest, some more, and some lesse, to the number of 170. in all.

Receiuers.

In euerie *Generalitie* are ten *Treasurers*; three *Receiuers* generall of the *Finances*; three *Receiuers* generall of the *Taillon*; one *Receiuer* generall of the *Dismes*; two *Receiuers* generall of the *Woods*: And for euerie *Receiuer*, so manie *Controlers* generall: two *Treasurers* generall extraordinarie, of the *Warre*, for the payment of *Garrisons* and *souldiours* in time of *Warre*.

Controlers.

Besides all these generall officers, there are also in each particular *Election*, three *Receiuers* of the *Taille*, three of the *Aides*, two of the *Taillon*,

on, and as manie Controlers, besides all other inferiour Officers. If then there be thus manie in one Election onely, yee may iudge the infinite number in all France, vpon which they lie, as thicke as the Grashoppers in Ægypt.

I must heere also remember the chamber of Accounts, the chiefe court of the Finances: wherein are foure Presidents, 12. Maisters, eightene Auditors, foure Correctors, one Procuror generall, one Advocate, one Greffier, six Huissiers or Segeants, and other inferiour Officers, to the number (as *Bodin* saith) of two hundred, besides Seruants; and it is likely, the number is not lessened since his time.

In conclusion, the Officers here, and of other places, are so exceeding manie, as a President of this court shewed the Estates of France, in the assembly at *Blois*, that of the *Escu* (six shillings) which was paid by the Subiect, there came but a *Teston* (one shilling sixe pence) to the Kings coffers.

The court of *Aides* also is as full of Offices, as that other. These Finances (saith one) haue beene so shuffled, altered, changed, and reduced into so obscure an Art, that verie few either doe, or can understand it, except they haue beene brought up in their *Cabale* that haue obscured it. No maruell therefore, though there be much difference among men about the certaintie thereof, either for the truth of the summe, or number of the officers.

The Coines of France, are either gold, siluer, or brasse. In those of Gold I must bee better instructed my selfe, for I know none but the Crowne (which is of three or foure sorts, whereof that of the sunne is the best) and the halfe Crown. Those of Siluer are, the *Liures* or *Franc*, which is two shillings sterling: The *quart d'escu*, which is one shilling sixe pence. The *Teston*, which is halfe a *sous* lesse: The piece of ten *sous*, which is one shilling sterling: the halfe *quar d'escu*, the halfe *Teston*, and the piece of five *sous*, that is sixe pence sterling. Those of Brasse, is the price of sixe Blankes, which is three pence: that of three blanks, three halfe pence. The *sous* of twelue *deniers*: the *liard* of 4. *deniers*, the *double*, of two: and lastly, the *denier* it self, wherof ten make one pennie sterling. This baser & smaller kind of money, hath not beene vsed in France, but since the beginning of the ciuile wars. The *Teston* is the best siluer.

It remaineth I speake of the Administration and Execution of Iustice, and of those places and persons where and by whom it is done: I will therefore begin with their Assemblies, as the highest and greatest court of all, which well resembleth the *Parliament* of England, the *Dyet* of the Empire, or the *Counsell* of the *Amphythrions* in Greece.

There

There are three especiall causes of calling these Assemblies. The first, when the succession of the crowne was doubtfull and in controverſie, or when it was to take order for the Regencie, during the Kings Captiuitie or Minoritie, or when they had not the right vse of their wits. Hereof yee haue examples. Anno 1327. Saint *Lewis* an Infant: and *Charles* the sixth, An. Dom. 1380. a Lunaticke: and 1484. *John* a prisoner. For all which occasions, Assemblies were called, to determine who should haue the Regencie of the Realme in the meane while.

The second cause is, when there is question of reforming the Kingdome, correcting the abuses of Officers and Magistrates, or appeasing troubles and seditions.

The third cause is, The want and necessitie of the King or Kingdome, in which case the Estates are exhorted to giue subsidies, subuentions, aides, and gratuities. For in former times, the Kings contenting themselves with their Domaine, and impost of such wares as came in, or went out of the Land, (the two most ancient, and most iust grounds of Finances) were not accustomed to leuie and impose vpon their Subjects anie tax whatsoeuer, without the consent of the three States thus assembled.

The next Soueraigne Court (for so the French call it) is the Court of Parliament; *The true Temple of French Iustice: Seat of the King and his Peeres: And as Haillan calles it, the Buttresse of Equitie.* This Court verie much resembleth the Star-Chamber of England, the *Areopage* of Athens, the Senate of Rome, the *Consiglio de' dieci* of Venice.

There are no lawes (saith *Haillan*) by which this Court is directed: it iudgeth, according to equitie and conscience, and mitigateth the rigour of the Law.

Of these Courts of Parliament, ye haue eight in France. That of *Paris*, the most ancient and highest in præ-eminence, which at first was ambulatorie (as they call it) and euer followed the Kings Court whersoever it went: but since *Philip le Bel*, it hath beene sedentarie in this citie. That of *Grenoble* was erected, Anno 1453. That of *Toulouſe*, Anno 1302. That of *Bordeaux*, Anno 1443. That of *Dyon*, in the yeare 1476. That of *Rouen*, in the yeare 1501. That of *Aix*, the same yeare. And lastlie, that of *Bretaigne*, in the yeare 1553. Anciently, all Arch-Bishops and Bishops, might sit and giue voices in this Parliament of *Paris*: but in Anno 1463. it was decreed, that none but the Bishop of *Paris*, and Abbot of Saint *Denis*, might sit there, except he be of the Bloud: for all these are priuiledged.

The Presidents and Councillors of the Court of Parliament of
Paris,

Paris, may not depart the Towne, without leaue of the court, by the ordinance of *Lewis* the twelfth, in the yeare 1499. *The Senators* ought alwaies to be present, because things are carried with more Maiestie, when the Court is full.

To this Parliament, they appeale from all other sub-alterne Courts throughout the Realme, as they doe in *Venice* to the *Consiglio grande*. Neither can the King conclude anie warre, or peace, without the aduice and consent hereof: or at least (as *Haillan* saith) he demaundeth it for fashion sake, sometimes when the matters are already concluded.

The Parliament of *Paris* consisteth of seauen Chambers: the *Grande chambre*, and five others of Enquests; and the *Tournelles*, which is the Chamber for the criminall causes, as the other fixe be for the ciuile. It is called the *Tournelles*, because the Iudges of the other Chambers sit there by turnes, euerie three moneths: the reason whereof *Bodin* giueth, that it might not alter the naturall inclination of the Iudges, and make them more cruell, by being alwaies exercised in matter of condemnations, and executions. There bee of this court, of Presidents, Councillors, Cheualliers of honour, Procureurs, Aduocates, Clerkes, Sergeants, and other Officers of all sorts, not so few as two hundred.

Besides this court, there are also other courts for the administration of Iustice, in this citie, as the *Chatellet* of *Paris*, with a Lieutenant ciuile, and another criminall; and the *Hofel de Paris*, with a Preuost, and other inferiour Officers, which is, as yee would say, the Guilde-Hall of the citie. So haue ye throughout the Realme certaine places, (as all cities in generall) where there be *Chatellets* (like our places of Assize) and in them a Lieutenant, ciuile and criminall, to iudge and determine all causes, reall, and personall; and here manie Lawyers and Procurers (as our Councillors at Law, and Attornies) who plead before these Lieutenants, and Preuosts, and certaine Councillors, which are the Iudges in these Courts, whereof the number is incredible in France. Infomuch as yee may well say of them, as is said of *Sienna*, *There be more Readers, then Auditors: so here be more Pleaders, than Clyents*. This *Chiquanerie* (Petti-fogging) and multiplicite of Pleaders, came first from the Popes Court, when his Seate was at *Anignon* (as my Authour saith) who in the same place, calles these Aduocates, *The Mice of the Palace*.

The processes and sutes in these Courts throughout France, are innumerable, wherein wee come nothing neere them; and yet there is no want of these in England: For I haue heard of 340. *Nisi prius* be-

tweene parties tried at one Assize in Norffolke. As manie I thinke, as in halfe England besides. But these are onely twice in the yeare, that causes are tried at Assizes in our countrie, whereas here they are tried euerie day in the yeare, that is not festiuall. So that it is not much vnlikely, that here are as manie Processees in seauen yeares, as haue bin in England since the conquest.

There are besides these courts of *Chatellets* in cities, the Courts also of Bailiwikes and Sherifalties, who, as *Haillan* saith, keepe courts in each Prouince, and iudge in all matters ciuill and criminall.

Here is also the Priue Councell, or Councell of affaires: of the Counsellors (among which are his foure Secretaries) he calleth certaine euerie morning at his rising, to whom he communicates apart his principall and most importing affaires; where are read all Letters which come from other Princes, and such like publique businesse: and after a conclusion what is to be done, the dispatch thereof is committed to the Secretaries.

The other, is the Great Councell, or Councell of Estate: which at first was, as it were, a member of the Parliament, and consisted of the Princes of the Bloud and Nobilitie, hauing onely to deale in the matters of the policie generall of France, or of warres; or of the enacting and publishing of Edicts. But the faction of *Orleans* and *Burgundie*, caused it to be changed to a choice number of counsellors, prouisioned of 1000. crownes pension apeece yearely. Of this Councell, the Chancellor is chiefe, for neither the King himselfe, nor anie Prince of the Blood comes there. This is the court, of which the French man saith, euerie time it is holden, it costs the King a thousand crownes a day. And now, (saith *Haillan*) he cannot keepe them so cheape, so infinite is the number of them growne. Where he also complaines, that this *Conseil d'Estat*, which was wont onely to determine publike affaires, as the establishment of Iustice, the Reglement of Finances, and redressing of common grieuances, is now so charged with priuate contentions, as the glorie thereof is much diminished.

The Chancellor, anciently serued as a Secretarie, and so were called in the old Chartres of France, where he is likewise called the *Grand Referendaire*. The Secretarie doth signe, and the Chancellor doth seale.

The Secretarie is next in office, who at first were cald Clerks. They are either of the Finances (which haue their place among the Officers of the Finances, before remembred) or of *Affaires*, which we here speake of. Of these are foure, which are called principall.

Gouernours and Lieutenants generall of Cities and Prouinces, are as
it

it were, Vice-royes and Regents of those places committed to them: and indeed the persons sustaining these charges, are much more Noble then those of the Secretaries, as being for the most part conferred vpon the Princes of the Blood and Peeres of France.

The Gouvernors of cities, were in old time called *Dukes*, and they of Prouinces, *Counts*. They were at first onely in frontier Prouinces, but now since the troubles of France, they haue had the commaund ouer cities and countries, even in the midst and bowels of the Land: So that now, saith *Haillan*, France is become a Frontier to it selfe on euerie side.

There are but few cities, whereof anciently there were Gouvernours, as *Rochell*, *Calais*, *Paronne*, *Bologne*, *Mondidier*, *Narbonne*, *Bayonne*, and two or three others: Others, that had keeping of some small castle or fort, was onely called the Keeper, or Captaine at most. But now, saith *Haillan*, lib. 4. euerie paltrie fellow that hath the keeping of a *Pigeon-house*, must forsooth be called *My Lord the Gouvernor*; and my Mistris his Wife, *My Ladie the Gouvernesse*.

The Gouvernour of *Daulphenie* hath greatest priuiledges: for he giueth all Offices in his Prouince; in other places they can giue none, except they haue it by expresse words in their Patent. The Gouvernour may not be absent aboue sixe months in a yeare; but the Lieutenant must neuer be absent, without leaue of the Prince, except the Gouvernour be present.

There is yet an Office, whereof I must remember you, which is one of the chiefeft in France, either for honour or profit, called *grand Maistre des Eaux & Forrests*. All matters concerning the Kings Chases, Forests, Woods and Waters whatsoeuer, are determined by him, by the *grand M. Enquesteur*, and by the *Reformateur*, at the Table of Marble: vnder him are infinite sorts of Officers, and diuers others: As the particular Maister of each forest, their Lieutenants, Overseers of the sale of woods, and the other Officers here specified.

But I will not load this short Relation, with reckoning vp all the diuers and infinite sorts of Officers, wherewith France her selfe seemeth to be ouerloaden, as partly ye haue heard alreadie: and ye shall read in *Bodin*, how he complaines, not onely of the multiplicite of offices in generall; but also, that euen the counsell of Estate is surcharged with number: where you may likewise obserue, how he approues the Priuie counsell of England erected some foure hundered and odde yeares since, where are neuer, saith he, aboue twentie, by whose sage direction, the Land hath long flourished in *Armes and Lawes*. And for

the execution of Lawes, and administration of Iustice, ye may remember what hath beene said before, that the Lawes are good and iust, but not iustly executed. Where *Haillan* comparing the time, saith: *Then great ones were punished, but since, onely pettie fellows; and great ones goe Scot-free.*

*Th' ensnaring Lawes let Crows goe free,
While simple Doves entangled bee.*

HAuing thus related of the *Topography* and *Pollicie* of France, it remaineth I speake somewhat of the *Oeconomy*; that is, of the people of France, comprised vnder the three Estates, of the *Clergie*, the *Nobility*, and *Comminaltie*: of the seuerall humour, profession, and fashion of each of them, which is the third and last branch of this Relation.

The Clergie.

The Church *Gallicane*, is holden the best priuiledge of all those of Christendome, that haue not yet quit their subiection to the *Pope*. It hath alwaies protested against the Inquisition; It is more free from payments to the *Pope*, then the Church of *Spaine*, as also to the King: For here in *France* they onely pay the *Disme*: but in *Spaine*, the King hath his *Tertius*, *Subsidio*, *Pila*, and *Escusado*: in all, a moiety of the Church liuing. Indeed it is reported of this Catholike King, that he hath founded manie Abbies and Religious houses: but what saith his Subiect? *He steales the sheepe, and giues the Trotters for Gods sake.*

In this Church of France are twelue Archbishopricks, one hundred and foure Bishopricks, five hundred and fortie Archpries, one thousand foure hundred and fiftie Abbies, twelue thousand three hundred and twentie Pries, five hundred sixty seauen Nunneries, one hundred and thirtie thousand Parish Pries, seauen hundred conuents of Friars, and two hundred fiftie nine Commendams of the order of the Knights of *Malta*. There are, saith the *Cabinet du Roy*, three millions of people, that liue vpon the Church of France: where he particularly setteth down in each Diocesse, the number of all sorts of Religious people, as also the number of their Whoores, Bawds, Bastards and Seruants of all sorts: And why not? (saith he) as well as the *Magicians* vnder take in their Inuentorie of the Diabolique Monarchie, to set downe the names and surnames of 76. Princes, and seauen millions, foure hundred and five thousand, nine hundred, twentie and sixe Diuels.

The temporall
liuings of the
Church.

The Church hath, for all this rabble to liue vpon, these two things: First, her Temporall Reuennues, and secondly, her Spiritual, which they call the *Baise-mani*. Of her Temporall Reuennues, diuers men iudge diuersly.

The

. The *Cabinet*, who in all his computations makes of a Mouse, an Elephant; saith, that they are fourescore millions of crownes the yeare, besides the *baise-mani*, which is as much more, and besides an infinite provision, which they reserue, and is paid them over and except their Rents, by their Farmers and Tenants; as of Wheate, foure millions, five hundred thousand quarters: of Rye, two millions, three hundred thousand quarters: of Oates, nine hundred thousand: of Barley, eight hundred thousand: of Pease and Beanes, eight hundred sixtie thousand: Capons, one hundred sixty thousand: Hens, five hundred sixtie thousand: Partridge, 50000. Beeues, 12000. Muttons, one million two hundred thousand: Wine, one million two hundred thousand *Cunes*: Egges, seauen millions: Butter, 230000. *Quintaux*: Cheele, five hundred thousand: Hogges, one hundred thirtie six thousand: Pigges, three hundred fortie thousand: Tallow, sixtie thousand *Quintaux*: Hey, six hundred thousand loades: Straw, eight hundred thousand: Wood, two millions: with an infinite proportion of other necessaries, imaginarie onely, and incredible. And yet he there auoweth all things, with as great confidence, as if himselfe had had the true abstract from all the Bookes of Accounts in each Monasterie and Benefice in this Land. For how is it possible, the Church should haue two hundred millions of crownes yeerely rent, when as by the computation, here are but iust so manie Arpens of Land in all *France*: which to rate one with another, at a crowne an Arpen, comes to this account, which he allowes the Clergie, and then is there nothing left for the other two States, of the Nobility and people.

But in as much as, the better halfe of their Reuenue is by the *Baise-mani*, there remaineth the better halfe of the Land to the other two States: which notwithstanding is a proportion small enough.

Neere vnto this reckoning, commeth that which we read in *Bodin*, of *Alemant*, a president of accounts in *Paris*, whose iudgement must carrie good authoritie in this case, as a thing belonging to his profession, and wherein he was best experienced: The Church Reuenues in Land, are reckoned orderly, at twelue millions & three hundred thousand *liures*: but I dare iustifie (saith he) that of twelue parts of the Reuenues of France, the Church possesse seauen.

This opinion *Bodin* seemes to allow: But it is rather thought to be true, that the *Comment de l'estat* saith, who of the two hundred millions of Arpens, allowes the Church forty seauen millions, which by particulars of their Vineyards, Meddowes, Arrable-Pastures, and Hearths, with their Woods, is there set downe: which here to follow in particular,

cular, were too tedious. Besides this Tēporall, they haue their *Baisemani* (as is said) that consisteth in Churchings, Christnings, Marriages, Burials, Holy-bread, Indulgences, Vowes, Pilgrimages, Feasts, Processions, Praiers for cattle, for seasonable weather, for Chirdren, against all maner of diseases, and infinite such purposes; for which the superstitious people will haue a Masse said, which they pay the Priest for, particularly: ouer and besides all this, there is scarce that Arpen in all France, vpon which there is not some *Dirige*, or *de profundis*; some *libera me Domine*, or some reckoning or other, liable.

Concerning them of the reformed Religion, whom here in contempt they call *Hugonets*; ye may note, that the number is not small, considering, that after the conference of *Poisse*, aboue fortie yeares since, here were found 2150. Churches of them, whereof not one hath escaped without some murders or massacres: and we may imagine, that since that time, this number is much encreased.

But as for Religion, it hath onely beene the cloake and shadow of their ambitious pretences, without the which, they could neuer haue insinuated themselues so farre into the hearts of the people, who are alwaies the *gros de la bataille*; The maine Battell: and without whom, the Nobilitie may well quairell, but they cannot fight.

And therefore ye shall read in some of the same Religion reformed, *That there were Hugonets, as well of Estate, as of Religion.*

These haue now free permission to professe, and places allotted for exercise, with all libertie of conscience possible, saue that in the chiefe cities of France they haue no Churches allowed, neither can be buried in Christian buriall (as they call it) if anie of them die among the Catholics, with whom notwithstanding they now liue peaceably, throughout the countrie. But methinkes, they haue here small reason to let them liue together in a house, and not suffer them to lie together in a Church-yard.

And as for warring anie longer for Religion, the Frenchman vtterly disclaimes it; he is at last growne wise, marrie, he hath bought it somewhat deare; *The Italian is wise before hand: the Almaine, in the doing; and the French, after the thing is done*, saith of their owne Writers. *Iesus piscator sapit.*

His Noblesse.

Concerning the Nobility of France (saith *La Noue*:) They are exceeding valorous and courteous; and there is no State in Christendome, where they are in so great number.

It hath beene argued before in this Relation, that there be at least fiftie thousand, able to beare Armes, but that is thought with the most.

Men-

Monsieur du Fay, thinkes them about thirtie thousand: in which number, ye must conclude all degrees of Gentlemen, from the highest to the lowest that beare Armes: for so the French call their *Noblesse*, whereas we in England make two distinct orders of the Nobilitie and Gentic (as they call it:) *Those are Noble, which can prooue a long tract of time, wherein a Fee and Knights service thereto belonging, hath recided in their family.* And another Writer saith, *In France, men are esteemed Noble by blood and profession of Armes.*

And sure, if there bee difference in Nobilitie, as there must needs bee, because the causes bee different: for some are ennobled by their valour and Martiall knowledge, and others by their Offices and prudence in the manage of matters of Estate: I see no reason, but that these last should bee holden the more Noble Nobilitie, if I may so say: alwaies giuing the first place to them that are of Noble Houses by Race.

For of all these three sorts the French Writers speake, when they say: *There is a difference of Nobles: The first, by Race: The second, by Ennobling: and of Ennobling there are two sorts: One, by Patent, duely prooued in the Court of Parliament: The other, by meanes of Offices to which they are aduanced.*

And howsoeuer *Turquet* hereof inferreth, that it is *la vertu que fait la Noblesse, car il y a de nobles vilains, & de vilains nobles: Vertue that maketh Nobilitie, for, there are Noble Peasants, and peasantly Nobles.* Yet sure it is, that the degenerating of one from the Vertue of his Ancestors, cannot preiudice the Nobilitie, nor Eclipse the glorie of his Successor, who, as Histories shew, manie times excell all the former of their house.

The highest degree of Honour in France, is the *Pairrie*, in which order haue beene, sometimes seauen, sometimes eleauen, neuer aboute seauenteene, and most commonly twelue. Whereupon they are called the *Twelue Peeres of France*. These haue the precedence before all the rest of the Nobilitie, & of these, they of the Bloud, although they were latest called into the *Pairrie*. Of these Peeres, there bee sixe of the Clergie. 1. Arch-bishop and Duke of *Rhemes*. 2. Bishop and Duke of *Laon*. 3. Bishop and Duke of *Langres*. 4. Bishop and Comte of *Beauuais*. 5. Bishop and Comte of *Noyon*. 6. Bishop and Comte of *Chaalons*.

Peeres of France.

Of Temporall. 1. Duke of *Burgundie*. 2. Duke of *Normandie*. 3. Duke of *Guyenne*. 4. Count of *Tholouse*. 5. Count of *Champaigne*. 6. Count of *Flanders*. Since these were first instituted, manie other

houses haue beene admitted into the *Pairrie*, by the Kings of France, and the old worne out : As to them of *Burgundie* and *Flanders*, were added the Dukes of *Bretaigne*, *Burbon*, *Aniow*, *Berrie*, *Orleans*, the Counts of *Arthois*, *Ereux*, *Alençon*, *Estampes*, all of the Bloud in *Charls* the fiftes time.

Since also, in the times of *Charles* the ninth, and *Henrie* the third, haue new *Pairries* beene erected, as *Neuers*, *Vandosme*, *Guise*, *Monpensier*, *Beaumont*, *Albret*, *Aumal*, *Memorencie*, *Vzes*, *Pentheur*, *Mercoeur*, *Joieuſe*, *Eſpernon*, *Rets*, *Monbaſon*, *Vantadoure*, and others.

Yee muſt obſerue, that the five auncientest *Pairries* of the Temporality, are returned to the Crowne, the ſixt which is of *Flanders*, doth recognize it no longer, as now being Spaniſh.

Some ſay, theſe *Pairres* (*quasi pares inter ſe*) were firſt erected by *Charlemaigne*: others, by *Hugh Capet*, and others (which is holden for the trueſt) by *Lewis le ieune*, 1179. to aide & aſſiſt the King in his Councell (ſaith *Bodin*.) And therfore the Seſſion of the King with his *Pairres*, was called *The Parliament without addition*: as the Kings Brothers and Sisters are called *Monsieur*, and *Madame ſans queue*: Whereas all other Soueraigne courts are named with an addition, as *Le Parlement de Paris*: *le Parl. de Rouen*, &c.

Yeemay alſo obſerue, that they of the *Laitie* haue the right hand of the King, and the *Clergie* the left, in all aſſemblies or ſolemne Seſſions whatſoeuer.

I thinke, this diuiſion of the *Pairrie*, into theſe two ſorts, was deriued from that ancient order of the *Gaules*, of whom *Caſar* ſpeaketh: *Of the Nobilitie of Gallia*, are two ſorts; the *Druides*, and *Gentlemen*: where he likewiſe diſcourſeth of their diuers Offices.

This Honour of *Pairre* of France, was at firſt giuen for life onely, afterwards for them and their Heires Males; and laſtly, to the Women alſo, for default of Males: who likewiſe are called to ſit in Councel and Aſſemblies (as are the Queenes of France) as at the Aſſembly at *Blois*, and at the Arreſt of *Counte de Clermont*, in the time of *Saint Lewis*, where the Counteſſe of *Flanders* is named preſent among the other Peeres.

Ye muſt note, that Peeres and Princes of the Blood, be priuiledged from being ſubiect to anie Writ or Proceſſe, but in caſe of high Treason: and then alſo no Proceſſe can be commenced againſt them, before anie other Iudges whatſoeuer, but before the King ſitting in his Court of Parliament, ſufficiently aſſiſted by the Peeres of France. All other Iudges are incompetent.

But

But to leaue the discourse of this highest honour in France, and to speake of the *Noblesse* in generall, yee shall read in Historie, that at the end of the second Race of Kings, they began to take their surnames of their principall *Feifs*: Since when, of later yeares, some haue contrarily put their surnames vpon their *Feifs*, which hath so confounded the *Noblesse* (saith *Haillan*) as it is now hard to find out the ancient and true Nobilitie.

These are they, among whom the Prouerbe is still currant, *A man of Warre should haue no more learning, but to bee able to write his owne name*: And therefore their profession is onely Armes and good Horse-manship, wherein if they haue attained any perfection, they little esteeme other vertues, not caring what the Philosopher saith: One onely Anchor is not sufficient to hold a great shippe. Nor considering that the old Gallants of the World were wont to ioyne the one with the other: and ancient Painters were accustomed to paint the Muses altogether in a troupe; to signifie, that in a Nobleman they should not be parted.

Hereof it cometh, that the French Noblesse glorying in their Armes, call themselves, *The Arme of their Countrie, the Gardians of Armes, and terror of their Enemies*; but they neuer stile themselves the *Professors of vertue*.

This Estate of the Nobilitie, saith one; of all the three Estates, is smallest in number of men, and poorest in liuing. Which no question must needs be true, after so long a ciuile warre: and herewith accordeth he that wrote the late troubles. The French noblesse is fallen from their ancient wealth, wherewith they were adorned in the times of *Lewis* the twelfth, and *Francis* the first. And I durst affirme, that if all they that beare this Title, were deuided into ten parts, eight of them are impaired by Sales, Morgages, or other debts.

The same Authour yeeldeth fīue reasons of the pouertie of the Noblesse of France. First, the *Ciuile Warres*. Secondly, *Superfluous expences in apparrell*. Thirdly, *Household-stuffe*. Fourthly, *Building*. Fifthly, *Diet and Followers*. And in another place, taxing the extreame prodigalitie and superfluitie of the French in their Apparrel, Building, & Diet, he saith: If the Warre haue brought vs foure ounces of pouertie, our owne follies haue gotten vs twelue. I will not herein be mine owne Iudge, (saith he) but let vs doe as Players at Tennise, be iudged by all the lookers on, and they will confesse, that by these excessiue expences, a great number of the Noblesse goe a foote-pace, others trot, and manie run post to the downefalls of pouertie.

I should

I should in this relation of the French Nobilitie, doe them great wrong, to beleue and report for truth, what the *Cabinet du Roy*, one of their owne Countrey, saith of them; who according to the seuerall Provinces, giueth them seuerall Epithites.

” The Noblesse of *Berie* (saith he) are *Paillards*, Leachers: they of
 ” *Tourraine*, are *Voleurs*, Theeues: they of *Guyenne*, Coyners: they of
 ” *Tholouse*, Traytors: they of *Narbonne*, Couetous: they of *Prouince*,
 ” Atheists: they of *Lyonnois*, Treacherous: they of *Rheimes*, Superstiti-
 ” ous: they of *Normandie*, insolent: they of *Picardie*, proud, and so forth
 ” of the rest.

But I will doe them more right, and conclude of them, that for priuiledge and noblenesse of Race, they may compare with any Nobilitie of Christendome. For prooffe of the first; The King hath nothing of his Noblesse, but Sword-seruice. And for the second, saith another; The French Noblesse is composed of so famous houses, that there are a dozin of them descended by right line from Kings, that haue peaceably possessed Kingdomes.

Hauiing breefely spoken of the two first Estates of France, the Clergie and Nobilitie: It lastly remaineth I speake of the People in generall, and namely, of their freenesse of speech; manner of Dyet; kinds of Buildings; sorts of Exercise; fashion of Apparel; diuersitie of Language; suddennesse of apprehending; rashnesse in executing; impatience in deliberation, & diuers other natures and humors proper to the Frenchmen; wherein ye shall not looke for a methodicall and large discourse, but a breefe and compendious remembrance of such things, as I haue read and obserued in this Nation.

It is incredible to beleue, and odious to heare, how the Frenchman will talke, and impudently vtter what he foolishly conceiueth, not only of all forraine States and Princes of the World, but euen of their owne state and King himselte; of whom he will not spare to speak whatsoeuer he heareth, and sometimes also more than the truth; which insufferable vice of theirs, I heere put in the first place, because I hold it of all others the most disloyal & vnlawful. Hereof the wisest sort of them much complaine, and wish reformation: but it is a thing so naturall with them, as

—— *Expellas furca licet, vsque reuertet.*

He hath besides this libertie of speaking, a propertie incident to such like natures: namely, an inquisitiue Listning and hearkning after news, which is an olde fashion of theirs, and hath continued with them many hundred yeares. It is vsuall with all the *Gauls*, both to constraîne Trauellers (though vnwilling) to stay, and to enquire of each of them, what

what he hath heard or vnderstood of euery matter : and with the popular in townes, to flock about Merchants, and compell them to tell from what parts they come, and what newes they heard there : And led by these rumours and heare-saies, they determine many times of most waightie affaires, of which determinations they must needs eft-soones repent them.

Concerning the Dyet, it is, to keep no dyet : for they feed at all times, there being among them very few, which besides their Ordinarie of dinner and supper, doe not *Gouster* as they call it, and make collations, three or foure times the day, a thing as vsuall with the Women as Men, whom yee shall see in open streetes before their doores, eate and drinke together. No maruell therefore, though the *Italian* calls them the only gourmands.

The French fashion is, to larde all meates ; whose prouision ordinarie is not so plentifull as ours, nor his Table so well furnished : howbeit, in Banquets they far exceede vs ; for he is as *friand* (licourish) as the Trenchermen of *Media*, or *Aesope* the Tragedian, who spent fifteen thousand Crownes at one feast, in the tongues of Birds only. He liueth not like the *Italian*, with Rootes chiefly and Hearbs : nor like the *Lacedemonian*, That weares his haire shauen close to his skinne, bathes himselfe in cold water, eates browne bread, and sups black broth. Nor like the *Scythian*, who saith ; hunger is my best cheere ; the ground my Bed ; Beastes skinnies, my cloathing ; But rather like *Alcibiades*, of whom *Pintarch* reporteth ; that he was ouer-delicate in his dyet, dissolute in loue of wanton Women, excessiue in banquets, and ouer-superfluous and effeminate in apparell.

As for the poore *Paisant*, he fareth very hardly, and feedeth most vpon bread and fruits, but yet hee may comfort himselfe with this ; that though his fare bee nothing so good as the Plough-mans and poore Artificers in England, yet is it much better than that of the *Vilano* in Italy.

Of the French Building, I haue spoken before in the Relation of *Paris*, both that it is lately growne to be more magnificent, than it was in former times, and that many thereby haue much weakened their estate.

You may therefore obserue, that as I there said, the Citie of *Paris* was better built than that of London : so are in generall, all the Cities and Villages in France, fairer than ours in England, comparing the one with the other.

As for the manner of Building heere, how beautifull soeuer it be to the eye, the Offices and roomes, me thinkes, are not so well contriued as
ours,

ours, to the vse. One thing there is, by which they are much beautified; namely, the blewish kind of Tyle, which heere they haue in great quantitie, the which is very hard, & therefore durable; and very thin & light, and therefore not so burthensome to a house, as is our Tyle in England.

Their Apparell. Concerning their Apparell, if yee well obserue that of the Citizen, both Men and Women, it is very seemly and decent: that of the *Paisant*, very poore, all whose apparell for the most part, is of Linnen: As for that of the Noblesse, ye shall heare what *La Noue* saith: *The Noblesse in their expence in apparell, are excessiue and very rich.* And yet, me thinks, nothing so rich and costly as ours; the only excesse whereof, is the greatest preiudice and hindrance to the Common-wealth.

This Author reproveth two things in the French Apparell. First, that euery Gallant forsooth, must haue many suits at once, and change often in the yeare: and therefore (saith he) if in the Court they spie one in a sute of the last yeares making, they scoffingly say: *We know him well enough, he will not hurt vs, hee's an Apple of the last yeare.*

The second thing he dislikes, is this; that euery two yeare the fashion changeth. And heereof it commeth, that when ye see all other Nations painted in the proper habit of their Countrie, the French-man is alwaies pictured with a paire of Sheeres in his hand; to signifie, that he hath no peculiar habit of his owne, nor contenteth himseife long with the habit of any other, but according to his capricious humour, deuiseeth daily new fashions.

This varietie of fashions a man may well note in the Fripperies of *Paris*, whereof saith *La Noue*, if one would make a portreict in a Table, it would be the most sportfull thing that may be.

Their Exercises I am now by order to speake of his *Exercises*; wherein, me thinks the Frenchman is very immoderate, especially in those which are somewhat violent; for ye shall see them play Sets at Tennise in the heate of Summer, and height of the day, when others were scarce able to stirre out of doores. This immoderate play, in this vnseasonable time, together with their intemperate drinking and feeding, is the only cause, that heere ye see them generally itchie and scabbed; some of them in so foule a sort, as they are vnfit for anie honest Table.

Among all the other exercises of France, I preferre none before the *Palle-maille*, both because it is a Gentleman-like Sport, not violent, and yeelds good occasion and opportunitie of discourse, as they walke from the one marke to the other: I maruaile, among many more Apish and foolish toyes, which we haue brought out of France, that we haue not brought this sport also into England.

Concerning

Concerning their shooting with the Crosse-bow, it is vsed, but not very commonly. Once in a yeare, there is in each Citie a shooting with the Peece at a Poppingay of Wood, set vpon some high Steple (as also they doe in many places of *Germanie*.) He that hitteth it downe, is called the K. for that yeare, and is free from all Taxe: besides, he is allowed twentie crownes towards the making of a Collation for the rest of the shooters. And if it happen, that three yeares together he carry the Prize, he is free from all taxe and imposition whatsoever, all his life after.

Shooting in
the Peece.

This custome, no question, is very laudable, whose end tendeth much to a publike benefit: for by this practise and emulation, he groweth more readie & perfect in the vse of his Peece, and so more able & fit to do his Countrie seruice. And I suppose, if in times past we had had like Prizes for the long Bow (the ancient glory of our English seruice) wee had not so soone quit the exercise thereof, nor degenerated so farre from ancient custome. So doe I thinke, that in these daies, wherein the Peece is only prized, if we haue this fashion of France and Germanie, in England, to reward him in euery place that should best deserue therein; that our Countrie-man would grow more perfect and expert in the vse thereof: at whose vnaptnesse and aukwardnesse in their first training, before they come to haue serued some time, I haue often maruailed.

He hath also his sports of Bowling, Carding, Dicing, and other vnlawfull, and vnvsefull games; whereof I will omit to speake, being too common both with them and vs.

As for the exercise of Tennis-play, which I aboue remembred, it is more heere vsed, than in all Christendome besides; whereof may witness the infinite number of Tennis-Courts throughout the Land, inso-much as ye cannot finde that little *Burgade*, or Towne in France, that hath not one or moe of them. Heere are, as you see, threescore in *Orleans*, and I know not how many hundred there be in *Paris*: but of this I am sure, that if there were in other places the like proportion ye should haue two Tennis-Courts, for euery one Church thorough France. Me thinkes it is also strange, how apt they be heere to play well, that ye would thinke they were borne with Rackets in their hands, euen the Children themselues manage them so well, and some of their women also, as we obserued at *Blois*.

Tennis-Play.

There is this one great abuse in their exercise, that the Magistrates doe suffer euery poore Citizen and Artificer to play thereat, who spendeth that on the Holy-day at Tennis, which he got the whole week, for the keeping of his poore family. A thing more hurtfull than our Ale-

Ale-houses in England, though the one and the other be bad enough. And of this I dare assure you, that of this sort of poore people, there be more Tennis-players in France, then Ale-drinkers, or Malt-wormes (as they call them) with vs.

Dancing.

Neither would I speake of Dancing, saue only, that I presume, ye will giue me leaue, for Methods sake, hauing vndertaken to speake of the French exercises, not to omit that of Dancing, wherein they most delight, and is most generally vsed of all others. And I am perswaded, were it not for this; That they of the reformed Religion, may not dance (being an exercise, against which their strait-laced Ministers much inueigh) that there had long since many of the Catholikes turned to their side: so much are they all in generall addicted hereunto. For ye shal not only see the gentlewomen and them of the better sort, but euery poore draggle-taile, euen to the Coblers daughter, that can dance with good measure and Art, all your *Quarantes, Leualties, Bransles*, and other dances whatsoeuer: not so much but the Chamber-maid, and poore Citizens wife, dance vsually in the Citie-streets, in a round, like our Countrie Lasses on their Towne-greene, about the May-pole, making musicke of their owne voices, without any Instrument. And rather than faile, the olde Women themselues, both Gentle and base, who haue moe toes than teeth, and those that are left, leaping in their heads, like Iacks in Virginats, will beare their part. This argueth (I will not say a lightnesse and immodestie in behauiour) but a stirring spirit, and liuelinesse in the French nature: whereof also the musicke and songs they haue, is no small argument: for there is not almost a tune in all France, which is not *Ionicke*, or *Lydian*, of five or seuen tunes: a note forbidden youth by *Plato*, and *Aristotle*, because, saith *Bodin*, it hath great force and power to soften and effeminate mens minds. The tune *Doricke*, which is more graue musicke, and was commanded for the singing of Psalmes in the Primitiue Church, their inconstant and stirring humor cannot brooke by any meanes.

Musicke.

Their Language.

It remaineth, I speake of their Language, of whom the *Italian* hath a Prouerb: The French neither pronounce as they write, nor sing as they prick, nor thinke as they speake. In which first point, they differ from the *Latin, Italian, Spanish, and Greeke*, who fully pronounce euery letter in the word: whereas the French, to make his speech more smooth, and *ceulante*, (as he termes it) leaues out very many of his consonants, whereby it now is growne almost as sweet a tongue to the eare, as the *Italian* or *Greeke*: which two, by reason of the many vowels, are questionlesse the most delicate languages of the World.

It

It now remaineth I speak of the French Nature and humour : which by the change of his speech, apparell, and building, by his credulitie to any tale which is told, and by his impatience and haft in matter of deliberation, whereof I shall not omit presently to speake, ye may iudge to be very idle, wauering, and inconstant. Saith one, *As the Frenchmens pronounciation is very fast, so are their wits very wauering.* And yee shall reade in *Cæsars Commentaries* very often, how he taxeth them of this legeritie and suddennesse: *Cæsar being enformed of these matters, and fearing the vnstabilnesse of the Gaules (as being sudden and wauering in their resolutions, and generally desirous of inuouation) he thought fit not to trust them.* And in another place; *Cæsar vnderstanding, that almost all the Gaules were naturally hungry of change, and vnconstantly and suddenly stirred to Warre, &c.* And againe, *Vt sunt Gallorum subita & repentina consilia* : As the resolution of the *Gaules* are suddain, and vnlooked for, &c.

1. In deliberation.

To conclude, if ye will rightly know the Nature and Humor of the ancient *Gaules*, ye must reade the fixt of these *Commentaries*, and you shall obserue, how strange it is, that though all other things in the world are subiect to change, yet the same natural of lightnesse and inconstancie still remaines in the French. This is aptly shewed by *Haillan*, in his description of *Lewis* the eleauenth : *If he had one thing, he straight casts his affection to another, being violent, busy-headed, and impatient.*

To this accordeth another of their owne Writers; *Such is the condition of France, that if she haue no Warres abroad against powerfull Neighbours, shee must haue broyles at home among her owne Subiects, and her working spirits can neuer remaine long quiet.* And therefore *Tacitus* calls them, *Leuissima hominum genera* : The most fickle kinde of Men; suddaine to begin, and more suddaine to ende, apter to apprehend the action, than comprehend the cause, ready to lay hold, not able to hold fast : as by the making and reuoking of so many Edicts, against the *Reformed Religion* in so short a time, and by many other their actions appeareth.

2. In matter of Warre.

For yee must obserue of the French, that he entreth a Countrey like Thunder, and vanisheth out againe like smoake : He resembleth the Wasp, who after the first stroke, loseth her sting, and can hurt no more.

He sheweth this his lightnesse and inconstancie, not only in matters of seruice and war, but also euen in other his actions and carriages : But in nothing more, than in his familiaritiy, with whom a Stranger cannot so soone be off his Horse, but he will be acquainted; nor so soone in his Chamber, but the other like an Ape will be on his shoulder : and as suddainely

3. Intertaining of friendship.

dainely and without cause ye shall lose him also. A childish humour, to be won with as little as an Apple, and lost with lesse than a Nut: Quite contrary to the nature of the *Italian*, of whom ye shall in your trauell obserue that he is of too fullen and retired a fashion, and a *loup-garon* (as the French-man calls him) wherein I would wish you to obserue the vertue of the English-man, (for vertue is a mediocritie between two extreames) who is neither so childishly and apishly familiar, as the French; nor so scornfully and Cynically solitarie as the other.

4. In managing a quarrell.

So are wee in matter of Duel and priuate quarrell, in a meane, me thinks, betweene these two Nations: for we are neither so deuillishly mindfull of reuenge, as to tarrie seuen or tenne yeares for an opportunitie vpon our enemy, as doth the *Italian*: nor so inconsideratly hastie, as we must needs either fight to day, or be friends to morrow, as doth the French.

Of the French carriage and manage of a Quarrell, how childish and ridiculous it is, I haue seene two or three examples, wherein the parties haue neither shewed iudgement, to know their owne right, nor valour to reuenge their wrong: whereas the English Gentleman, with mature deliberation, disputeth how farre his honour is ingaged, by the iniurie offered, and iudiciously determineth his manner of satisfaction, according to the qualitie of the offence: which done, he presently imbarqueth himselfe into the action, according to the prescription of the old rule, *Postquam consulueris, mature opus est facto*: wise resolutions should be speedily executed.

I will heere remember you of one other instance more, wherein our Countrie-men keepe the golden meane, betweene the two extreames of defect and excelsse, and wherein these two Nations of *Italie* and *France* are culpable, and heere worthily to be taxed.

5. In gouerning his wife.

We may say of the *Italian*, who maketh his house his wiues prison, as *Plutarch* saith of the *Persians*: They are by nature strangely and cruelly iea- lous of their Women not only of their Wines, but also of their Slaves and Con- cubines, whom they guard so straitly, that they are neuer seene abroad, but re- main alwaies locked vp in their houses: Whereas the French libertie on the other side is too much: for here a man hath many occasions offered vpon any smal entrance, to come acquainted, & vpon euery least acquaintance, to enter, where he may come to her house, accompanie her arme in arme in the streets, court her in all places, & at all seasons, without imputation. Wherein me thinks, the French married man doth as *Plutarch* reports of *Pericles*, take away the Walls and fences of his Orchardes and Gardens, to the end euery man might freely enter and gather fruit at his pleasure.

No

No maruell then, the bridle being left in their owne hands, though sometimes they be saddled, and their Husbands know not. You may obserue therefore, that in this matter of Wedlocke also, the English vse is better than either the Italian or French.

It is also naturall to the French, to be a great scoffer; for men of light and vnsteadie braines, haue commonly suddaine and sharpe conceits. Hereto also their language well agreeth, as being currant and full of proverbes; to which purpose I will remember you of two answers, not long since made by two Frenchmen, wherein you may obserue, how little esteeme they hold of the Romane Religion in heart, though they make profession thereof in shew.

6. In aprnesse
to scoffe,

The one of these being verie sicke, and, as was thought, in danger of death, his ghostly Father comes to him with his *Corpus domini*, and tels him, that hearing of the extremitie wherein he was, hee had brought him his Sauour, to comfort him before his departure. The sicke Gentleman, with-drawing the curtaine, and seeing there the fat lubberly Frier with the *Host* in his hand, answereth; I know it is our Sauour, he comes to me as he went to *Ierusalem*, (*C'est, vn asne qui le porte*: He is carried by an Asse.

The other Gentleman vpon like danger of sicknesse, hauing the Frier come to him to instruct him in the Faith, and after, to giue him the *Host*, and the extreame vnction (it was on a Friday) told him that he must beleue, that this *Corpus domini* which he brought, was the verie reall flesh, blood, and bone, of our Sauour. Which after the sicke man had freely confessed, the Frier offered it him to receiue for his comfort. Nay, quoth the other: *You shall excuse mee, for I eate no flesh on Fridayes*. So that yee see the French will rather loose his God, then his good iest.

The French humour also (saith one) *Cannot away with patience and modestie*. And therefore another saith of him, that he is as shamefast and modest, *As a Page of the Court*. Or as *Hiperbolus*, who, *Plutarch* saith, for his boldnesse and saucie impudencie, was the onely Subiect in his time for all Satyricks and Commædians to worke vpon.

Hee is also such a one, as *Theophrastus* calles, *immundus*, vnclanelie; *Who being leprous and scabby, and wearing long unpared nailes, thrusts himselfe into companie, and saies, those diseases come to him by kind; for both his Father and his Grand-father were subiect vnto them*.

He is loquax, Talkatiue, *Who had rather seeme more chatting than a Swallow, than hold his peace*: so willing is he to make himselfe ridiculous. With which people (it is strange) yee shall talke all day, and yet at night

not remember whereof he hath talked : such multiplicitie of words he hath, and so idle is the matter whereof he treateth.

He is also *Intempestivus*, vnseasonably troublesome : *Who comming to his friend full of businesse, will giue him counsell, before he haue imparted the matter vnto him :* Of which kinde of people, *Theophrastus* bids vs beware, where he saith : *If you will not be troubled with a fit of an Ague, you must run as fast as your legs can carrie you from such kind of men: for it is verie troublesome lining with fellowes, that cannot distinguish the seasons of leisure and affaires.*

He is *Microphilotimos*, that is : Proud of trifles : Who, if he haue sacrificed an Oxe, vseth to naile vp the head and hornes at his gate, that all that come to him, may take notice that he hath kild an Oxe. And if he be to pay tortie shillings, will be sure to pay it in new-coined-money. This is he that comes to the Tennis-Court, throwes his Purse full of coine at the line, which giueth a sound, as if there were no lesse then thirtie or fortie crownes, whenas sometimes by mischance, we haue discovered that it was nothing, but Paper, and a few Sols, and doublefle of Brasse, that made it so swell, in all, scarce eightene pence sterling.

He is *Ostentator*, A Craker : Who comming to such as haue great Horses to sell, makes them belecue hee will buy some : And at great Faires, drawing to their shops that sell apparrell, calls to see a sute of an hundred pounds : and when they are agreed of the price, falls out with his Boy, for following him without his Purse. Such a one was the Gallant, who in the middelt of his discourse with manie Gentlemen, suddainely turned back to his Lackie, and saith, Fetch me my Clocke, It lies in my lodging, in such (or such) a place, neere such (or such) a Iewell. The *Lalero* returnes with a *non est inuentus*. My French Gallant straight bethinkes himselfe, that it is in his Pocket : (which hee knew well enough before) presently hee puls it out, not so much to shew how the time passeth) whereof he takes little care) as the curiosnesse of worke, and the beautie of the case, whereof he is not a little brag and enamoured. To speake thus particularly of all his seuerall humors and customes, vvould be verie prolix and not much necessarie : I will onely referre you to the fourth of *Tullies Rhetorickes*, where hee speaketh of a bragging Rhodomonte, and to the first Booke of *Horace Satires*, speaking of an endlesse and needlesse Prater, a fastidious and irksome companion. Where you shall see the French *natural*, verie liuely and admirably well described.

I vvill onely speake of his impatience and precipitation in deliberations of Warre or Peace, and such other affaires of greatest importance,
and

and so end. To this effect *Bodin* saith of him: The French is of so souldaine and busie disposition, that hee quickly yeelds to that a man demaunds, being soone tired with messages too and fro, and other delaies peculiar to the Spaniard. And in another place, The Spaniard had need of a more readie dispatch then hee hath, and the French of more moderation in his actions and passions. And whereas *Commines* saith of vs, that we be not so craftie in our treaties and agreements as the French; I thinke, sauing the credite of so great an Author, he might better haue said, so head-strong and precipitate. But where hee saith, that he that will treat and determine matters with vs, must haue a little patience; I yeeld vnto him, he hath good reason so to say; for his countymen the French, can endure no delay; they must propound and conclude all in one day. By this hast of theirs, they lost more, saith *Bodin*, by one Treatie at *Cambrey*, Anno 1559. to the Spaniard, than hee had before got of the French in fortie yeares by warre.

Belgia, Netherland.



Extlieth the 17. Prouinces, called the *Low-Countries*, the *Netherlands*, or *Germania Inferior*, concerning whom, the world can but wonder, howanie Prince would neglect such a benefit and inheritance of goodnesse, greatnesse, & wealth, which vnited with the loue of the Inhabitants, would haue exceeded Spaine for reuennues, multitude of people, cities, shipping, and all things else tending to worldly felicitie. In obseruing the distraction wherof, a discreet Reader may truly learne the inconstancie of worldlie prosperitie, most commonly procured by Princes themselues in following ill counsell and youthfull distemperature.

The Region conteineth the Dukedomes of *Brabant*, *Limburk*, *Luzzenburg*, and *Gelderland*: the Earledoms of *Flanders*, *Artoys*, *Hennault*, *Holland*, *Zealand*, *Nemours*, and *Zutphin*: the Marquesate of the Empire; the Lordships of *Friesland*, *Mechlin*, *Utrecht*, *Transisel*, and *Groning*, *East Friesland* belongeth to a Prince of its owne, who euer disclaimed to be vnited to the residue, belike to preuent all claime, that either Emperour or King might by cauill lay thereunto. They inuented the Art of Printing, restored Musicke, framed the Chariot, deuised the laying of colours in Oile, the working of colours in Glasse, the making of Tapestry, Saies, Searges, Wosteds, Frisadoes, and diuers sorts of Linnen-cloath, with innumerable other small trifles: all sorts of Clocks and Dials, and the Marriners compasse.

Townes.

In these Prouinces are numbred 208. great townes munit with wals, ramparts, ditches, war-like ports, draw-bridges, and in which are continuall guards, either of the Burgers, or Souldiours lying there in garrison, according to the proximitie of the enemy, the importance of the place, or necessitie of the time.

The Villages (or Dorps) are 6300. beautified with Churches imbatteled, and of manie several fashions, besides Granges, Castles, Religious houses, towers, & Gentlemens manours. The aire seemeth moist, yet not preiudiciall to the health of the inhabitants: for in the Campain of Brabant, men liue 100. yeares, and glorie in the same, as if the promise were fulfilled in them, *to haue their daies long in the Land, which the Lord God hath giuen them.*

The Emperor *Charles* had an intention to erect it into a Kingdome, but the difficultie consisted herein, that euerie of these Prouinces being gouerned by peculiar customes, prerogatiues, and priuiledges; would neuer haue yeelded vnto one royal Law, common to all, especially those that had the largest priuiledges: for which cause he gaue ouer his determination. It is seated commodiously for all the Prouinces of Europe, & containeth in circuit about 1000. *Italian* miles. The aire of later times is become much more wholesome & temperate then in times past, whether it be by reason of the increase of Inhabitants, or industrie of the people, who spare no charge to amend whatsoeuer is amisse.

Whosoever shall consider what commoditie they raise by the fishing and traffique onely, may well say, that no Nation through the whole world may compare with them for riches. For *Guicciardin* writeth, that of their Herring-fishing, they make yearly 441000. pound sterling; their fishing for Cod 150000. pound sterling: and of their fishing for Salmon, more then 200000. crownes, which is of sterling money 60000. pound. The continuall riches that groweth in the countrie of other sorts of fish taken all the yeare, is infinit. The value of the principall Merchandize yearly brought in and carried out, is likewise infinit; the foresaid Author esteemeth it to be about foureteene millions, one hundred and thirtie crownes: whereof England only bringeth to the value of five millions, and two hundred and fiftie thousand crownes. It is a wonder to see, how that the Inhabitants of all these Prouinces (especially of *Brabant* and *Flanders*) vnderstand and speake two or three Languages, and some foure or more, according to their entercourse with strangers, yea in *Antwerp* you shall heare the women speake *Dutch*, *French*, *Italian*, *Spanish* and *English*. The countrie is euerie where bettered by nauigable riuers, and those not emptie hande.

Nature of the
soile.

handed, but affording delicate water, and excellent fish. It is reasonably beautified with woods, affording materials to build withall, and pleasure for hunting. It is smally, or not at all mountanous, except about *Namurs*, *Lutzenburg*, and *Henalt*: fruitfull of corne, grasse and herbs fit for medicine; in some places of *Brabant* and *Gelder-land* full of heath, yet not so barren, but cattle are well susteined there, their flesh hauing an extraordinarie sweet tast.

It is free from those creatures, which are either noisome or dangerous to man, and wanteth none of those blessings (wherewith the God of all blessings indoweth a countrie) but a Noble Prince, vnitie of Religion, and a quiet Gouvernement. Which if it might please the Almighty to regrant, it would questionlesse shine as the Sunne amongst the inferiour Planets, with the rest of their adiacent neighbours, in treasure, potencie, content, and ordinarie felicitie.

For their forces at Land, of them it may truely be reported, that they haue not onely made their parties good against the potent wealth, and exact discipline of the Spanish; but haue also at all times preuented the Intimations, intrusions and vnderminings of all their neighbours, and lately regained the freedome of their ancient libertie; euen to point of admiration; *That where all other Nations grow poore by warre, they onely thrive and become rich.* Forces.

For the store of shipping they are also immatchable. In the yeare 1587. the King of Denmarke vpon some pretences of displeasure arrested one with another 600. in the *Sont*, at one time. In 88. vpon short warning they rigged to the narrow seas 100. good men of warre. And if suggestion deceiue not, at this day, *Holland*, *Zeeland* and *Freeisland*, are said to reioyce in the possession of 2500. good ships, from 150. to 700. tun a piece.

In regard whereof, other nations professing the same religion, and accomodated with like aduantages, may first obserue, to what height of courage and confidence this people is growne vnto, by good order and faithfull dealing; who in truth (being but two or three small shires) haue for fortie yeares space resisted, and beaten, the forces of a mightie King, who keepes *Millan*, *Naples* and *Sicil* vnder great bondage, in despite of all the *Italians*, for valour and policie, notwithstanding proclayming themselues to be the sole Minions of the habitable world. But truth is; These pettie Princes haue not now those daring Spirits, which they had in former times, when the *Visconti*, *Neapolitans*, *Fortibrachio*, *Francis Sforza*, with other Lords and *Common-weales* were of power to inuade the territories of the Church, and inforce the Romans them-

selues to thrust their Pope *Eugenius* out of Rome, to saue their citie from sacking.

The countrie now representeth vnto all Christendome nothing more liuelier, than a schoole of Martiall Discipline; whereunto all Nations resort to learne and see the practise of Armes, and the models of fortifications.

Whereupon no few considerations are to bee obserued: first into what follies and extremities Princes runne, by inuring their people to the assiduitie of warfaire: and secondly, what great aduantages, a small or weake Estate gaineth, by fortifying places and passages. For surely, there is nothing that sooner vndoeth a great Prince, than to be forced to besiege a Towne which is excellently defended; because herein he consumeth his time, and most commonly looseth his reputation. As did *Amurath* before *Belgrade*: *Soliman* before *Vienna*: *Charles* the fifth before *Mets*: *Francis* the first, before *Pauie*: *Maximillian* before *Padoa*: The *Catholikes* before *Rochell*: The Protestants before *Saint Iohn de Angels*: And *Albert* before *Oastend*. This manner of defence grew in vse first in *Italie*, by occasion of the coming of *Charles* to the Conquest of *Naples*, whose manner of war-farre, together with the terror of his Ordnance (neuer before that time practised in *Italie*) gaue the Inhabitants occasion to raise their wits to the utmost of Resistance. Then followed the famous ouerthrow of the *Venetians* at *Carauaggio*: where in an aduerse battaile, they almost lost all they held vpon the firme Land. By which examples, Princes being instructed in the danger that came by fields so foughten, the most part afterward turned all their imaginations of defence, from the field to fortresses. And the first that put this in practise to his highest commendation, was *Prosper Collonna*, who at two seuerall times most honourably defended the Dutchie of *Millaine* against the French, onely by shutting them from victuall, wearying them with all manner of distresses, and opposing them to the want of all things requisite for an Armie.

Whether the *Netherlands* borrowed this discreetnesse from the *Italians*, or more lately, provided for their best safeties, being by long time beaten with the rod of experience, I will not here dispute; but sure I am, that by this manner of discipline, they onely of all Christendome haue made best vse therof; As the people, to whose glorie, industrie, patience, and fortitude, and that in a good cause, too much honor and commendation can neuer be attributed.

Denmarke.

Denmarke.

ALthough it may seeme needlesse to make mention of *Scandia*, which is that whole *Pen-insula* of huge circuit, which is almost incompassed with the Waues of the Sea, and abut-
teth Northward and Eastward vpon the *German* and *Sarmatian* coasts, because it is as it were scituated in another World; and with whom there is no great entercourse of trading, yet for the spacious largeness thereof, contrayning two Kingdomes (viz:) *Norway* and *Sweeland*, with part of *Denmarke*, it may well deserue a place amongst other Kingdomes spoken of in these relations. It is scituate in that part of Europe which some tearme *Scandia*, others *Scandania*, or *Balthia*; from whence issued the *Gothes* and *Vandales*, the verie rooters vp of the *Roman* Empire. It is subiect both to the *Danish* and *Sweuian* Crowne. The King of *Denmarke*, besides the *Cimbrian* Chersonesse, (where *Helsatia* *Theutomarshia*, the Dukedome of *Slesia*, *Flensburge*, *Friesland*, and *Iuthland*, Regions fruitfull and replenished with store of cattle, and wilde beasts, doe lie) retaineth other spacious Islands, the best whereof stand in the entrance of the *Baltike* sea, being fiftene in number, all comprehended vnder the name of *Denmarke*. The chiefeft of them is *Selandunia*, containing threescore miles in length, and little lesse in breadth. It excelleth the rest, both for number of Villages, the mildnesse of the aire, and because it hath beene and is the seate of their Kings; He hath also *Gothland* vnder his iurisdiction, which is placed right ouer against *Gothia*. One of his Kinsmen hath the gouernment of *Osilia*, a prettie Island in the greater Gulfe of *Linonia*; and ruleth those fat and plentious counties, which lie on the Continent of *Linonia*. *Scania* likewise acknowledgeth his Soueraigntie; and he holdeth the Kingdome of *Norway*, which from the Confines of *Scania* extendeth and stretcheth Northward 1300. miles to the castle of Ward-house, vpon which, border the *Lappians*. The Isles adioyning thereto, *Sania*, *Shetland*, & *Faria*, (lying in the main sea) are in his tenure. In times past the people of *Norway* haue beene of great puissance: they afflicted *England*, scourged *France*, and therein obtained a Prouince, called to this day *Normandie*. In *Italie* they conquered the Kingdom of *Sicill* and *Apulia*. And in the holy War, *Boemond* Leader of the *Normans*, wonne the principality of *Antioch*. In the North Ocean (besides that

of *Friesland*, and the Sea-coast of *Island* and *Groineland*) he holdeth the Dominions of the foresaid Islands of *Shetland* and *Faria*. The *Orchades* acknowledged the kings of *Norway* for their Lords, although they are now subiect to the Brittish Crowne. Sithence then the Kingdom of *Norway* became electiue, and turmoiled with ciuile warres and intestine discords, it came to the possession of the Danish Kings, who, that he may hold it surely, intreateth the Inhabitants cruelly, spoiling them of their substance, and to leaue no hope of better fortune to this miserable people, he holdeth fortified all the Creekes, and Hauens of the Sea-coast.

Riches.

The wealth of the Kingdome consisteth in the aboundance of cattle and sea-fish, whereof there is such store, that of the herring-fishing onely, a mightie masse of Money is yearely gathered; so huge is the number of all sorts of fish, that at some times of the yeare a ship can make but slow way in the Sea; and the Marrishes and Meddowes adioyning thereunto are verie pleasant and saurie to the feeding of their cattle. *Scanida* is rich in corne, and pasture, and well replenished with people: *Norway* hath no riches of anie moment, except Timber fit for the erecting of houses and building of ships (from thence transported into *Holland* and *Flanders*) and cattle affoording great store of cheese and milke. Some profit also ariseth of a kind of fish dried in the winde, which the *Dutchmen* call *Stoch-fish*. It is taken in Ianuarie, and laid in the wind and cold, vntill it be indurate and hardned like Wood, and then carried into diuers Regions as a kind of sustenance. The greatest matter of gaine to the King of *Denmarke*, is the narrow Sea or straight, between *Cronburg* and *Eltzenburg* commonly called the *Sont*, or *Sound*, which is a passage so narrow; that no shipping can passe that way, without the licence and fauour of the Watch-men, keeping Garrison there to receiue the imposts and customes of the arriuing Vessels: It is easily gathered to what summe of money that impost amounteth, by the infinite number of shipping, of *Holland*, *Zealand*, *France*, *England*, *Scotland*, *Norway*, and the *Balticke* Sea, that saile in those seas, and of necessitie must passe the lawes of that narrow straight. The Inhabitants are as greedie of *Rhenish*, *French*, and *Spanish* Wines, the Spices of *Portugall*, and the fruits of *Andoluzia*, as They againe are needie of the Waxe, Honnie, Skinnes and Corne, which are brought thither from *Prussia*, *Liuania*, *Mosconia*, and the bordring Nations.

Forces at
Land.

Touching his powerfull ablenesse in Land-seruice, it was neuer scene that he enterprised anie iournie of reputatō, but that against the *Themarsi*, vpon whō King *Valdemar* laid the yoake of subiection: but they falling

falling againe into rebellion, after many chances of warre, beginning in the yeare 1500. were again vtterly vanquished by *Frederick the second*, in the yeare of our Lord 1558. Before these ouerthrowes they discomfited *John*, the sonne of King *Christian the first*.

What this King is able to performe by Sea, may be gathered by the Nauiies, which vpon occasions he hath rigged at the intreatie of *Henrie*, the second, King of France. *Christian the second*, sent a Nauie of a hundred ships into Scotland against the English, and in them ten thousand Land-Soldiours. And surely for as much as it is apparant that he is Lord of so ample a Sea-coast, & possesseth so many Hauens in *Denmark*, *Scandia*, *Norwey*, and so many Ilands without the *Balticke Sea*, it is most likely, that he is able to assemble a great flecte of ships, if Monie were not wanting: which as I take it, cannot but often faile him, considering that in his whole Kingdom there is growing no Merchandize of value (excepting Sea-fish) Neither is there any famous Mart-towne, which is able to draw, or long to maintaine Traffique with other Nations. The greatest matter is his Customes of the Sea-townes, the profit of certaine Mines in *Scandia*, the Horses and Cattle of the Danish *Chersoneffe*, the Timber and Fish of *Norwey*, and of the Ilands.

It hath beene obserued, that 50000. Oxen hath beene driuen out of these Prouinces into *Germanie*; for which, tolle hath been payed at *Gutthorp*. He reapeth some profit likewise of *Ward-house*, whether the English now of late yeares haue failed betweene *Norwey* and *Groenland*; some to *Colmogro*, others to *Stockholme*, not farre from *Saint Nicholas*, where they Traffique with the *Russies* for Waxe, for Honnie, and for Flax: thither resort likewise *Hollanders*, *Scots*, and *French-men*. Almost in the middle of this Bay is also an Iland and Towne called *Warde-huis*, which *Fredericke the second* caused to be very strongly fortified, and heere the Marchants doe also pay their Customes.

Norwey.

Norwey vpon the East respecteth *Denmarke*, on the West, it is bounded with the Ocean: on the South lyeth *Swenia*, vpon the North it is seperated from *Lapland*, by high and steepe craggie Rockes. The Westerne and Easterne tractes, are rockie and hard to trauell, yet is the Ayre there temperate; insomuch, that the Sea freezeth not, neyther do the Snowes long continue.

The Land it selfe is not very fruitful to sufficiencie; for it is poore, and towards the North, what by reason of the rockes and cold, yeeldeth no
fort

sort of Corne. And therefore the Inhabitants (except the better sort) in stead of Bread, eate dryed Fish, (*viz.*) Stocke-Fish, which to their great profit they transport through Europe, & exchange for Corne. The Countrie, (especially the Southerne parts,) transport rich Furrer, Tallow, Butter, T and Leather, Traine-Oyle, Pitch, Clapboord, all sorts of Timber-workes, and Mastes, Fire-wood, and Timber for building, and that with great ease and little charge.

Their own buildings are base and poore, and the Inhabitants honest, louers of Strangers, liberall of giuft, and most seruiceable. Amongst them are neither Filchers, Theeues, nor Pyrats, though they dwell in a most conuenient scituation for Pyracie. *Birgis* was once their Metropolis, a Hanse-Towne, and for its safe harbour, one of the foure cheefe Mart-townes in Europe, (*viz.*) *Birgis* in *Norwey*, *London* in *England*, *Nugardia* in *Moscouie*, and *Burgis* in *Flanders*: But it is now decaied.

The colde, Northerly, and smally-frequented Ilands of *Schetland*, *Friesland*, *Island*, and *Groneland*, with the Nauigations (such as they are) thereunto for Fish, I imagine euery Man can conceiue, and therefore forbear further to write of.

Sweueland.

THe King of *Sweueland* raigneth in part of *Scandie*, being a larger Prouince than *Denmarke*; for it is accounted to be a iournie of fife and fortie daies from the borders of *Scandia* to *Lapland*; and the Coast of the *Balticke* Sea, is little lesse than foure hundred leagues long, a tract of Land esteemed larger than *France*, and *Italie*. In *Liuania* he possesseth *Riuania*, the *Narue*, *Danonia*, and other peeces of good estimation; the Ilands *Vlander*, *Alandes*, and other places (not worthy speaking off) scituated in the *Sweueian* and *Finland* Sea. These Regions (besides *Liuania*) are diuided into three seuerall Kingdomes, (*viz.*) *Gothland*, *Sweueland*, & *Vandalia*, which again are subdiuided into eleauen Prouinces, and twelue Counties, amongst which, the *Lappians* are not accounted, because this people (though inhabiting a larger Countrie than *Sweueland*) cannot be tearmed to liue vnder any certain dominion, by reason of their miserie, pouertie, and wandering from place to place, thorough woods, and mountaines; but they who haue any manner of certaine aboade, or settled habitation, are vnder the *Sweuish* Dominion, and pay rich *Skinnes* for their tribute.

Of

Of the three Kingdomes whereof we spake, *Gotland* bordereth with *Gotland*. *Scandia*, and is diuided into East and West, both bounded vpon the Lake *Weret*: in the middest whereof the King (delighting in the pleasantness of the place) keepeth his Court. Twentie foure Rivers doe runne into this Lake, yet it emptieth it selfe but by one mouth. The Inhabitants for the excessiue noyse of Waters, call it in their tongue, *the Diuels Head*. The *Gothia* signifieth a good Countrie, which doth well agree thereto for the aboundance of sustenance; no Region being comparable vnto it for fertilitie of Flesh, Fish, and Corne.

Next followeth *Sweueland*, which is larger than *Norwey* and *Gotland* both together. In *Sweueland* is *Upsalia*, their chiefe Citie, and *Stockholme* (the Kings seat. *Stringa*, *Enuecopia*, *Orogundia*, *Arboia*, *Arosia*).

Then comes *Finland* scituated betweene the *Balticke* and *Finland* *Finland*. Bay, where stand *Abo* the chiefe Citie, *Rangina* and *Augo*, both famous Mart-Townes: *Vames*, *Viburge*, and *Castelholme*, in the *Alandian* Islands. The Husbandmen doe not inhabite in Townes, but by reason of the plentie of Timber and Woods, the Vallies and other places are so well defended from the furie of the Northerne winde, that they liue heere in very good sort, keeping in their houses Flockes of Cattle, and all sorts of Instruments, to digge, to builde, or to make any thing necessarie for the life of man; and this is the reason that Townes heere are neither so faire nor so frequent, as in *Germanie* or *England*.ouer and aboue, the Cities & villages, there are accounted 1433. Parishes: in some of which, a thousand people or (as they tearme it) a thousand Housholders or fires do inhabit, but there are few of these Parishes, in which at the least there are not one hundred families. By this a man may iudge the number of this people, especially if he consider the fruitfulness of their generation, for the Women of *Finland* by a secret operation of their Beere (as some think) become exceeding fruitful. The men liue heere very long, chiefly in the most Northerly parts; neither is it miraculous amongst them, to see a man liue aboue an hundred and 30. or 40. yeares. And in truth, this long liuing is the cause of their propagation: for where men liue shortest liues, there the vertue of generation must needs soonest decay: and therefore our Lord God in the beginning of the world, did permit mankind to liue seuen hundred yeares and more, that the world might the sooner be peopled, and the act of generation (which now for the shortness of our liues is determined within fortie yeares) was then more vigorous at one hundred and vpward, than in this our age at twentie.

The riches of this kingdom consisteth in plentie of victuals, which this Riches: word *Gothia* (signifying an heauenly Region, as we said before & *Finland*

land (signifying a good Countrie) doe well witnesse. Their prouision is Flesh, fresh-Fish, salt-Fish, Fish dried in the smoake and Sun, Corne, and Beere : whereof there is so great abundance, that it is a hard thing to see a Begger amongst them, and Trauellers are there freely entertained. It is so rich in Mines of Lead, Copper, Siluer, and some Gold, that no Prouince in Europe may compare therewith. And these Mines are to be found in euery place, if the Countrie-people (bound to carry wood to the Mines, and to seruile works) did not hide and hinder the discouerie thereof as much as in them lieth. Most fine Siluer is found in the Prouince of *Vestros*; and more would be, were it not for the enuie of the Inhabitants, who though they know not the vse of trying of Mettals, do notwithstanding murmur that any strangers should imploy their labours therein. And this their frowardnesse toward strangers, ariseth not of hatred, but vpon a ieaiousie, that they should be ouer-reached, or otherwise abused : for by nature they are simple and well meaning, not giuen to ambition, nor infected with avarice.

The Kings reuennue consisteth in foure things; the tenths of *Ecclesiasticall* liuings, Mine, Tributes, and Customes. The profits of the Church-liuings, amount to a great summe of monie : for in this Kingdome, there were seuen Cathedrall Churches : threescore Monasteries of Men and Women, endowed with most rich reuennues. First *Gustan*, and after, his Son *Eric*, seized the greatest part thereof into their possessions. Some of the foresaid Mines, are wrought at the Kings charges; some at the charge of priuate persons, allowing onely the tenth part.

Copper.

Of three Copper-workes I haue knowne the tenth part, (which is the Kings) to amount to the value of three thousand Dolars yearly : heereby estimation may be made of the Siluer and Lead. But his Taxes do farre surpasse all his other In-comes : for he leuieth the tenth of Rie, Wheate, Barley, Fish, Oxen, Skinnes, and such like. Of the tenth of Oxen, at sometimes he hath gathered eighteen thousand, and with them maintaineth his Court, his Officers, his Nauie, and his Armies: for in the time of warre, either with the *Dane* or *Moscouite*, he alloweth his Soldiers Viſtuals, and by this meanes prouideth it at very easie rates, as well offending as defending. The marriage of the Kings Daughters is at the disposition of the people, and they allow them besides Siluer, Plate, and other giſts, one hundred thousand Dolars for a dowrie. Of the vplandish people and others, which pay not the imposition of viſtuals, the King is accustomed to exact of euery poll according to his abilitie, five Dolars or more yearly. The Customes are paid in the Hauen-Townes:

Townes : the cheefe whereof are *Camaire Lodhuis*, and *Stockholme* (whereat sometimes three hundred ships of burthen are to be scene) *Abo*, *Auge*, *Renalia*, *Parnonia*, and *Narue*. It is thought that the King doth lay vp in his treasurie, sixe or seuen hundred thousand Dolars, ouer and about the expences vpon the fortresses of *Renalia* and *Viburgh*. There are maintained in *Sweueland* and *Gothland*, about thirtie two Forces at land Companies, euery troope consisting of fife or sixe hundred Soldiours, all Harquebusiers, alwaies readie to march whither occasion calleth. Because of the thicknesse of the Woods, the Horsemen serue with Petronels, and sildome vse Pikes or Lances. These are most excellent Foot-men; for euery Soldiour is able to make and furnish himselfe with any furniture whatsoeuer, euen the making of his owne Flaske and Touch-box; as likewise the common people in *Peruina*, and the neighbouring Prouinces, being contented with a little, haue alwaies accustomed to make all implements for their houses and bodies; to build, to weaue, to play the Tailors, to Sow, to Reape, and to forge tooles fit for their businesse. And as for these Trades, which are neither common nor necessarie, as to paint, to worke in Siluer, and such like, there are notwithstanding found among them very good Worke-men, wanting rather matter than Art to worke vpon. The *Swenian* Horse-men are diuided into thirteene companies: *Sweueland* and *Gothland* maintaine eleuen, & *Finland* two; and vpon necessitie they can raise a greater force: for the Dukedome of *Vrmeland* (as report goeth) is able to furnish better than ten thousand men with Horse. In *Marchland* there is such plentiful breed of Horse, that there they are sold at a very low rate. Both these Prouinces are in *Gothland*. Their Horse is not big bodied as the *Frieselander*, but exceeding hardie, actiue, able to endure trauell, and fed with a little. I will not omit to speake of two noble vsages of the King of *Sweueland* towards his Soldiers: one is, that if a Souldiour be taken Prisoner, he is ransomed at the Kings charges; the other, that if his Horse be slaine, the King bestoweth another vpon him. To his Captaines, and those which serue on Horse-back, in part of payment of their wages, he giueth yearely a Garment, which the *Germans* tearmeth *Idolis*, and may be taken for a Cassocke.

As touching their Sea affaires, by reason of their huge Sea-Coast, and infinite Hauens, the kingdome swarmeth with Mariners and shipping, which the King may arrest in his Dominions, as other Princes are accustomed to doe; he maintaineth commonly fiftie Ships of warre, whereof euery one carrieth fortie peeces of ordnance, more or lesse. King *Gustan* first brought in the vse of Gallies. In the warre which king *Iohn* waged

waged with the *Danes* (before the peace treated on at *Stetin* was agreed) he put to Sea seuentie great ships, besides other of smaller burthen, in which were 22000. fighting men. In the Summer time they warre at Sea; in the Winter at land: for then the Rivers are frozen, as likewise the Sea neer the shore for a great space. Seeing I haue spoken of Guns, I will adde thus much, that the King is thought to haue about eight thousand great peeces, the most part of Brasle, and that he could cast many more if he had more store of Tin. In the Castle of *Stockholme* only are numbred foure hundred.

Borders.

Vpon the West side of *Sweueland* is *Denmarke*; on the East *Moscouie*, with both which he hath had long warre. The *Swenians* haue suffered much losse by the *Denmarkes*: for King *Christian* the second besieged *Stockholme*, and forced it, committing all kinde of crueltie against the Inhabitants, filling the Citie with bloud and dead carkases. The title which the *Dane* pretendeth to the Crown of *Sweueland*, is the cause of their enmities. The Hauens, the scituation of the Countrie, and especially *Gothland* (which is a member of *Gothia*, and therefore the *Swenian* claimeth it as his right (affordeth the *Dane* this facilitie of inuading at his pleasure. After *Gustan* recouered the kingdome, he and his Son *Henrie* & *Iohn* raigned successiuelly: and although blood enough hath beene shed in the warres betweene *Gustan* and the *Danes*, yet the kingdome hath retained her honour: and the Citie of *Lubecke* (the mightiest State in that Sea) sometimes by confederating with the one, sometime with the other, doth in so euen a ballance peise the differences of these two Nations; as it suffereth not the one to practise against the other, vpon the perill that may ensue to the offender. In warring with the *Moscouite*, the *Swenian* hath most aduantage, because *Finland* which bordereth vpon *Russia*) by reason of the great Marishes, whereof it is full, yeeldeth hard and perrilous passage to the Enemy, oftentimes swallowing vp whole Armies in those congealed Waters: there be keepers of the Castles of *Viburge*, *Narue*, *Ranelia*, and other piles & peeces vpon the borders of the great Duke of *Mosconia*, excellent well fortified, as bridles to stop his violent courses. In which, he doth verie wisely; for those peeces which lye in the Territories of our Enemies, are to be regarded most carefully, because they bring forth two notable effects: first, they defend what is ours, and offend what is the Enemies. The further they are distant from our borders, the better they stand vs in stead: for while the enemy is occupied in besieging thereof, our owne State standeth in quiet, and time affordeth meanes for rescue, or deliuerie thereof at leisure, and that without spoile to our owne people, or losse of our proper

proper reuennues. They grieue the enemy with so much the more damage, by how much the neerer they are situated vnto him. Of this effect was *Caleis* in the possession of the English, and the places which the *Spaniards* and *Portugals* hold in *Affricke*. But the fortresses built in our owne borders, serue to no other end, than to defend what is alreadie ours, and that to our great disadvantage: for as often as they are inuaded, all things are done at a suddaine, and it cannot be auoided, but somewhat will fall to the spoile of the enemy. To end with the King of *Sweeland*, he is so much better able than the *Moscouite* to defend his territories, by how much Sea-forces ioyned to Land-forces are able to preuaile against a State furnished with Land forces onely.

Spaine:



Thence the remembrance of later times, a larger Emperie hath not be fallen anie Christian Potentate, than that which the Spanish enioyeth at this day, especially since the vnion of the Kingdome of *Portugall* (with the dependancies thereof) vnto this Crowne. For besides the large and faire Prouinces in Europe, the goodlie Regions of *Asia*, and diuers rich territories in *Affricke*, he enioyeth in peace and securitie, without anie corriual or competitor, the *New World*, in circuite more spacious, than either *Europe* or *Affricke*.

In Europe, he is Sole-Soueraigne of Spaine, holding it whole and entire; A thing worthie obseruation; for that by the space of 800. years before our age, it neuer obeyed anie one Prince, but was dismembred and peece-meale claimed by diuers Seigniors: He hath verie much shaken *Belgia*, and Lordeth it over the Kingdome of *Naples*, containing in circuit 1400. miles: and retaineth *Insubria*, otherwise called the Dutchie of *Millaine*, comprehending 300. Miles in circuite. Of the Islands, he holdeth, *Maiorique*, *Minorique*, and *Euisa*: the first of three hundred miles circuite; the second of 150. the third of eight. *Sicill* is reported to containe 700. *Sardinia* 562.

In *Affrica* he holdeth the great Hauē called *Masalquimir*, the most secure & safe harbour in the whole *Mediterranean* sea. He hath also *Oran*, *Mililla*, & the rock commonly called the *Penion* of *Velez*: And without the Straights, he possesseth the *Canary* Islands, twelue in number; & the least

His dominions
in Europe.

In Affrica.
Within the
Straights.

least of seuen, containing ninetie mile. In the right of the house of *Portugall*, he possesseth the famous places of *Septa & Tangier*: and of late he hath conquered *Alarach*: the which may rightly be surnamed the *Keies* of the *Streights*, yea, of the *Mediterran Sea*, and *Atlantique Ocean*.

Without the
Streights.

Without the *Streights*, he holdeth the Citie of *Mazaga*, and by the same Title in the vast Ocean, he claimeth the *Terceraz*, *Port-Santo*, and *Madera*, famous for the Wines which grow therein, and the Lady-like Island of all the *Atlantique*, containing by estimation 160. miles in compasse: Then the Islands of *Cape Verd*, seuen in number.

Vnder the Æ-
quinoctiall.

Vnder the *Æquinoctial* he holdeth the Island of *Saint Thomas*, somewhat more spacious than *Madera*, but most plentiful in Sugar, and from thence rangeth ouer, that huge traict of Land, which tendeth from *Cape Aguer*, to *Cape Guardafu*. Lastly, he pretendeth to be Lord of all the *Traffique*, *Merchandize*, *Negotiation*, and *Nauigation* of the whole Ocean, and of all the Islands, which nature hath scattered in these Seas, especially betweene the *Cape* of *Good-hope* and the promontorie of *Guardafu*.

In Asia.

In *Asia*, in the aforesaid right of the Crowne of *Portugall*, he ruleth the better part of Western coasts (*viz.*) *Ormus*, *Diu*, *Goa*, and *Malaca*, *Ormus* for his commodious scituation, is become so rich, that these verses are grown to a common prouerb among the *Arabians*.

*As in a Ring, the wel set stone appeareth to the eye,
Such (to the Worlds round circle) doth rich Ormus-Island lie.*

A great portion of *Arabia Fœlix* belongeth to the principallitie of *Ormus*, as likewise *Balsara*, the Island-Queen within that Gulfe, for plenty, circuit, varietie of fruits, and the rich fishing of Pearle. In this Sea the *Portugals* possesse *Damain*, *Bazain*, *Tauaan*, and *Goa*; which Citie (to omit *Chial*, *Canora*, *Cochin* and *Colan*) is of so great esteeme, that it is thought to yeeld the King as great a reuennue as many Prouinces in Europe doe their Lords: and finally, the *Portugals* hold all that Sea-coast which lieth betweene the Citie *Damian* and *Malepura*: wherein no Prince (except the King of *Calecute*) challengeth one foote of Land. The Island of *Zeilan*, wherein they possesse a strong Hauen and a Castle, commonly called *Columbo*, may rightly be called the delight of Nature; They enioy also *Malaca*, which in those places is the bound and limit of their Empire, as also the staple of the *Traffique*, and the *Nauigation* of the East Ocean, and of all those Islands, being so many and so spacious, that in circuite of Land they may well be compared to all Europe.

To continue their Trade with the *Chinois*, and the Islanders of *Tidore*,
and

and for their ensercourse to the *Moluccas* and *Banda*, they haue erected certaine strong places in all of them, but indeed resembling rather *Factories* than *Castles*.

Certainely, it would amaze a man to thinke, how manie puissant Kings and fierce Nations are bridled and yoaked by the Armes of twelue thousand Portugues; (for in so huge a tract of Land and Sea, there are, nor euer were, a greater nūber inhabiting) and those few, not onely to haue discovered, and conquered the *Atlanticke*, *Indian*, and the *East-Seas*, but also euer since, till now of late, to haue kept and defended the Soueraigntie thereof against all Inuadors. How euer their fame & fortunes, at this daie seeme to be eclipsed by the trading of the Dutch and English Merchants; They will not sticke to relate vnto you, how by the vertue of their Armes, they tooke the Kingdome of *Ormus*, from the Vassall and confederate of the King of *Persia*: as also how they drowned and defeated at *Diu*, the Nauie of the *Sultane* of *Egipt*, fully furnished with *Mammeluks*; a kinde of Souldiourie, no lesse famous for their valour and discipline, than the *Pretorian Turkish Ianizars*: As also that they made good the said place against the leagues of the *Turkes* and *Guzarits*.

In the Red-sea they haue often foiled the Turkish *Armada*. In the yeare 1552. they defeated his whole fleete at *Ormus*. In *Trapoban* they affronted the Kings of *Decan*, *Cambaia*, *Calecute*, and *Achem*; Princes fauoured, and throughly assisted with the forces of the said Emperour: yea, such haue beene their expeditions into *Cambaia*, *India*, that Ocean, and along the coasts of *Asia*, that in desert of glorie, and admiration, they are (by their owne writers) censured to be nothing interior to the victorious *Alexander*; yea, so much the rather to bee preferred, because neither in circuit, nor numbers of people they were euer comparable to the *Macedonian*; for with nineteene ships they overthrew the *Egiptian* Nauie, far more powerfull in number and furniture. With two thousand souldiours they forced *Goa*, and recouered it being lost with 1500. With 800. they won *Malaca*, and not with manie more, *Ormus*.

Another member of the Spanish Dominions, lieth in the *New-World*, wherein because he hath no corriuall able to make head against him; he challengeth as his owne, whatsoever either by discouerie, or conquest, he attaineth vnto. This *New-worlds*-dominion is diuided into Continent and Islands.

In the North-sea are so manie Islands, (most of them of fortie miles in compasse) that their number can hardly be ascertained or knowne:

L

and

and some of them are rich and spacious, sufficient to erect a great and stately Kingdome. Of these, *Boriquen* is three hundred miles long, and threescore broad: *Iamica* is little lesse. *Cuba* is three hundred long and twentie broad: *Hispaniola* containeth a thousand and 600. miles in compasse. On the Continent he is absolute Lord (say they) of al that sea-coast which watereth *Florida*, *Nova-Hispania*, *Lucatan*, and all that spacious Southerly *Peninsule*, to the Cape of *California*, and *Quivira*. For euen so farre haue the discoveries and Navigations of this Nation pierced. The coast of *Nova-Hispania* counting his beginning at the towne of *Santa Helena*, and cutting by *Panama* to *Quivira*, containeth about 5000. and 200. miles in length, to which if you please to adde the vp-land Regions, coasting towards the North, you shall find no lesse than 9000. miles.

Peru, beginning at *Panama*, containeth by the *Maritim* coast 12000. and 600. miles: of which three thousand lying betweene the Riuer *Maragnon*, and the Riuer of *Plate*, and including *Brasill*, doe acknowledge the Soueraigntie of *Portugall*.

Continent.

In the Continent are manie Kingdomes and Signiories, amongst which, those of *Mexico* and *Peru* (once most powerfull and wealthy dominions) were counted chiefe, and as it were two imperiall Monarchies. These Kings liued a long while in great Maiestie, inhabited sumptuous Palaces, and maintained a mightie troupe of their vassals for the guard of their persons.

On one quarter they enlarged their bounds, and transferred their Religion and language to the skirts of *Tegnan Pecan*, two hundred leagues remote from *Mexico*: and on another quarter as far as *Guatimall* 300. leagues distant. In these places they made the North and South seas their bounds; but *Mecoican*, *Tapcalan*, and *Terpeacan*, they could neuer bring vnder their yoake. Their differents with the citie of *Tascula*, incouraged the *Spaniards* to inuade their dominions: and being entered, made their victorie easie, and the end fortunate: this happened in the yeare 1518. This people (deuided into seauen Tribes) came into those Regions, from that part of the North, where, of late yeares the *Spaniard* discovered a most wealthie and populous Prouince, which at this day they call, *New-Mexico*.

The Riches of these places.

Besides Merchandize, incredible treasures of Gold and Siluer are transported out of *Nova-Hispania* & *Peru*. Of those treasures, commonly *Peru* yeeldeth two parts, and *Nova Hispania* the third; which is more rich in Merchandize than *Mexico*. Amongst the rest, it yeeldeth *Cochinella*, a commoditie of inestimable value, and infinite store of hides.

The

The Islands also afford plentie of Hides, Cotten, Wooll, Sugar, *Cana-*
fistula, hard wax, and Pearles.

Amongst these riches and treasures of *Peru*, two things are wonder- *Peru.*
full; one, that in the Siluer-Mines, which were discovered in *Potosie*, in
the yeare 1545. there is, and hath beene found so huge a Masse of Bulli-
on, that the fifth part (which is the kings) in the space of fortie yeares,
amounted to one hundred and eleauen millions of *Pezoes*: neither yet
did two third parts pay their Customarie due to his Maiestie. The
other is the Quickefiluer-Mines in *Guacanalcan*, found in the yeare
1567. out of which the King hath receiued 40000. *Pezoes*, all charges
defraied.

And in truth, were it not for the tribute of these Westerne Mines,
neither could the Pride of *Spaine* be divulged, nor the Cities, of *Sinior*
Lisbone, cum multis alijs, be enriched; nor the Escorial blazoned, no nor
Life happily maintained; nor the Ports frequented; nor the natie Com-
modities to satisfaction of foreine importation counteruailed, nor the
Garrisons paid, nor such frequent troupes of strange souldiours yearly
entertained.

But it is a strange thing to note, that whereas Nature hath interlaced so *Brasile.*
riotously her golden and siluer Veines in the bosome and wombe of
Peru, it hath bestowed no such blessing vpon her neereft daughter *Bra-*
sile: but in stead thereof hath enriched it with a most temperate & whole-
some aire, with manie pleasant springs and large Riuers, not without suf-
ficiencie of wood: she hath deuided the land into fruitfull & delight-
some hills, clothed it with the beautie of continuall greenesse, aboun-
ding aboue beliefe with Sugar-canes, which the *Portugals* haue there
planted, and now transport in infinit quantitie into forraine Regions.

The *Philippine* may well bee tearmed the appendances to this *New-Philippinæ.*
World; for although in respect of their scite, and proximitie, they may
be thought a part of *Asia*: yet the discoverers thereof, trauelled through
New-Spaine, before they could discover them: of which Islands, more
than fortie are subiect to this Soueraigntie, and by them haue beene re-
duced vnto ciuile kind of life and pollicie.

Hauiing thus generally run ouer the spacious (or rather boundlesse) *His greatnesse*
members of this Empire, I wil now relate vnto you the true qualitie and *in Europe.*
State of this great Prince of Christendome, (the matter being so much
the more hard, by how much the more copious in it selfe.) And not to
wearie your patience with long discourse, I will restraîne my selfe to
things of most importance, with all possible varietie. In performance
whereof, forbearing to tel, how out of this House of *Austria*, in the space

of three hundred yeares, ten Emperors haue already successiue-ly succeeded one another, from Father to Sonne; As also by what casualties, so manie Kingdomes and Prouinces haue bene vnited vnto this Crowne; And in particular, how the Houses of *Austria* and *Burgundie*, haue in such sort bene conioyned, that had his enterprises against *England* and *France*, falne out conformable to expectation, without Question he had bene much inabled to haue marcht on with large paces, to the Monarchie of the whole world.

Diuision of his
dominions,

Spaine,

This his Empire is diuided into foure parts, the Kingdome of *Spaine*, the Estates of *Italie*, the Dominions of the *Indies*, and the countries of *Flanders*. *Spaine* is by the *Spaniards* (for the greater grace) diuided into ten Kingdomes, and hath bene alway acknowledged for so wealthie puissant, and so spacious a Kingdome, that the *Romanes* and *Carthaginians*, continued so long and so cruell wars for the possession and royaltie thereof. The *Gothes* and *Vandals* (when with the streame of their ouerflowing multitudes) they swarmed ouer the greatest part of the *Romaine* Empire, here sat them downe, and made it the place of their habitation. *Trebellius Pollio*, rearmed it and *France* the ioynts and sinnewes of the *Roman* Empire. *Constantine*, when hee deuided the Empire, preferred it before *Italie*: And in the deuision, when *England*, *France*, *Spaine*, and *Italie* fell to his lot, he little esteeming the last, and voluntarily leauing it to his competitor, contented himselfe with the three formost.

The Estates of
Italie.

The Estates of *Italie* (the sinnewes & nurseries of his wars) cōprehend the Kingdomes of *Naples*, *Sicilie*, *Sardinia*, the Dukedome of *Millaine*, and the three Forts scituate vpon the Sea-coast of *Tuscain*, *Orbatello*, *Vrcole*, and *Telemon*.

The dominion
of *India*.

The dominion of *India* is deuided into the East and West: In the East he hath but some Islands far distant from the firme Land, but in the West he hath diuers Prouinces adioyning vpon the sea-coast; yet not penetrating far within the Land. And although he doth daily conquer some of the Neighbouring places, yet they be of no great value nor consequence.

The Low-
Countrie.

From the *Low-Countries* hee reapeth small profit; for he hath there lost his ancient Reuennues with his reputation, being faine to acknowledge the States of *Holland*, *Zeeland*, &c. for free, before they would yeeld to capitulate with him.

To intreat first of *Spaine* (because it is the center of this spacious Empire) it is conserued by two meanes; that is to say, by Iustice and Religion, keeping this people in obedience more with seueritie and chastisement, than with clemencie and mercie. The Prouince it selfe is barren,

if we consider each part thereof by it selfe, but being reduced into one grosse, it aboundeth with all things necessarie, especially towards the sea-coast: being also stored with diuers Minerals. True it is, that it hath few men, and is not populous, both by reason that a great number are drawne from thence to serue in the warres, to re-enforce the Garrisons, and to defend the forts abroad, as well amongst the *Indies*, as in manie other places of his Dominions: as also, for that manie of them do exercise Merchandize and Nauigation; Which (although it bring some dammage to the State, because so manie leaue the countrie) yet proueth it verie beneficiall and commodious by their enricht returne vnto their owne Houses, and ridding by that meanes the countrie of the more slothfull sort of Home-liuers. Two parts are incompast with the *Ocean* and *Mediterran* seas, the third is secured from the power of the French Armes, not onely by reason of the craggie scituation of the *Pirenean*, of *Scialon*, *Pargnan*, and *Pampelan*, where it is Mountainous and hard to passe, and by the forts, but also through the difficultie that they should there find in iourning, and the incommoditie and want of victuals, entring into a countrie so sterill and vnfruitfull. The other part (confining (as aforesaid) vpon the *Mediterran* sea) remaineth onely exposed vnto the Turkish Naue; from which, it is well secured by hauing few Ports, and those diligently kept & garded with powerful forces. But amongst all the offensive Potentates, the Kingdome of England is able to infest it, more than any other: for in the late warres, it did beyond measure trouble the kingdom of Portugal, in pittying the quarrel of *Don Antonio* (a man much fauored of that crown) in such sort, that the citie of *Lisbone*, once famous & well inhabited, became poore & wel-nigh dispeopled. For whereas in times past one might number 1000. vessels within her Ports, 500. of them were consumed & taken by the Enemye, which did not much displease his Maiestie: for (some said) hee was well content to see the Portugals so impouerished and abased, because they liue male-contentedly vnder his obedience & gouernment. Whereupon at all times his Maiestie is constrained to maintaine a strong *Armada* in these seas, to saue-guard the Nauigation to the *Indies*, and to secure the Merchants comming from thence, into these countries ouer and besides twentie foure Gallies which he keepeth to guard the coast, and to defend it from the Turkish fleete, and the incursions of Pyrats. The charges whereof, with the maintenance of the fortifications and defences, amount yearely to halfe a Million of Gold. The number of souldiours in all the presidiarie places of Spaine, amount to eight thousand, not reckoning anie man of sort, nor Marrines; for in

stead of these, the Moores and Turkish slaues doe serue in the Gallies. This Kingdome doth neuer send forth anie Horsemens, because there be but few, and yet not sufficient for their owne affaires.

Italian Pro-
uinces vnder
the Spaniard.

In the next ranke followeth the *Italian* Prouinces; *Naples*, *Millaine*, and *Sicilie*: wherein nature hath confined and heaped vp as it were into her Closset, all those delightfull happineses, which with her owne hands shee hath here and there scattered and disperced through the residue of the European Prouinces, whereof in their proper places.

Reuenues or-
dinarie,

The Reuenue which his Maiestie doth principally raise vpon the Ecclesiasticall liuings (viz:) the Tithes of the Church, the Bulles of the Crosse, both amongst the *Indies*, through all *Spaine*, and the Kingdome of *Sicilie*, doe amount to two Millions by yeare: and these may be well numbred amongst his ordinarie reuenues, because they be yearely raised, and be the surest and most certaine, that this crowne enioyeth. *Commendams* and presentations vnto benefices, doe yeeld yearely to his Maiestie, a great quantitie of money. The whole Reuenues of the Clergie are valued at sixe millions of gold by yeare, there being foure and thirtie Cathedrall Churches all verierich, of which some haue fiftie, some one hundred, and some two hundred millions of crownes of yearely reuenues: as in particular, the Archbishop of *Tolledo*, hath more than three hundred millions, remaining ouer and besides free to his substitute Prelate two hundred. Neither doth his Maiestie care to bring these Churches to a greater number, for then should he with greater difficultie make vse of the reuenues and riches thereof, when occasion required. And it is said, that the Cardinall *Birago* gaue to his Maiestie at diuers times, more than a million and a halfe of gold, vpon some simoniacall occasion.

Extraordina-
rie,

So it is thought that the ordinarie reuenues of *Spaine*, doe amonut to sixe millions of gold; whereof much hath beene pawned for the debts of the crowne, the rest is spent in charges of the wars, in the gouernment of the Kings household, and in the Gallies, which he maintaineth to safegard the coast of the Kingdome, as aforesaid.

In extraordinarie Reuenues he raiseeth much more; for in the Kingdome of *Castile* alone in one yeare, his Maiestie had nigh eight millions of gold. And while I was at his Court, his Maiestie sent a Iesuite thorough all *Spaine*, who went from House to House, requiring their beneuolence, as an almes for the expences in his warres: by which meanes he raised a million and a halfe of gold; but with much dishonour, sauing that it was said, that he did better to demaund this money for the loue of God, than to take it by force: yet was not the request such, but that

that it had in it, the effect of a commaund; his Maiestie excusing himselfe, that the Emperour his Father, whilest he liued, did the selfe-same thing, in his greatest and most vrgent affaires and necessities. There doth not want also other meanes and deuices to raise money, as the imposition of the Millstone; which as it is supposed, if it once take effect, will amount to two millions of gold yearly. There be also sales of Offices, Escheats, Penalties, Amerciaments, and other like meanes to raise money, as in other Kingdomes.

His Maiestie hath Orders of Knight-hood also, (viz:) of Saint *James*, of *Alcantera*, of *Callatrana*, of *Montesca*, and of *Christ*. This last order is in *Portugall*, which altogether doe yeeld him yearly 275. millions of crownes, and accrueth to them in rents paid by the *Inccari*. The Order of the *Crosse*, is much desired and greatly sought for, by the great men of Spaine, because it yeeldeth both honour and profit, being in number two hundred and fiftie, which haue in yearly Reuenues 1500000. crownes of gold. But to some hee giueth the Order, and not the Fee; to others, the Fee, not the order; but to manie for their good seruice, both Fee and Order. There is also the order of the *Toison*, of which his Maiestie is chiefe, which is the most honourable, and most sought for of Princes; although it yeeldeth no profit. Of this is made great account, and here with onely Princes and personages of qualitie, are honoured.

Orders of
Knight-hood.

In these Kingdomes are found diuers discontented Persons, and ill satisfied with the gouernment, for that all those *Moores* which there inhabit (being forced to turne Christians, and by the same force constrained so to continue) are wonderfully displeased. And such, as are called *Iewes*, or halfe Christians, doe daily increase in number, and multiply in Riches; For they al marrie and neuer goe to the warres, but continually intend their Traffique and commoditie. Besides these, there be all the descendants of them, that haue at anie time bin condemned by the Inquisition, which liue in Spaine most desperately, because they are thereby held infamous, euen to the third and fourth generation, and disabled to receiue anie dignitie, honour, or office. Of these sorts, it seemeth by the late proscriptions and banishment of the Inhabitants of *Valentia* into *Barbarie*, that he is most ialous.

Malecontents

The Iewes,

Next these, the *Portugals* may be comprized in this number, by reason of their ancient hatred which they haue alwaies borne to the *Castilans*, and for the bad vsage of the *Spaniards*, being alwaies held vnder their command, with minds cruelly affected.

The Portugals

The Prouinces of *Arragon* also, for their priuiledges broken and annulled, nois.

The Arrago-

The Nobles.

annulled, for rising in Armes by meanes of *Antonio Perez*, late Secretary to his Maiestie doe euilly brooke this gouernment, The chiefe citizens whereof (hauing with losse of their liues, paid the debt of that punishment due vnto them) haue left a memoriall behinde them of that their fact, the stroke whereof is imprinted in all the rest, which are yet for a long time readie to lay downe their liues vpon occasion. Last of all, be the Nobles of *Spaine*, which in times past, were manie in number, and in great estimation with their Kings, are now much abased and brought to the number 36. only, being vnimploied by his Maiestie, and receiue smal charges from him, & thole in places far remote, & of little or no reputation: some of which do much blame the King therfore, inferring that thereby hee maketh the people more insolent, in hating them and their greatnesse, indeed because they would not, that they should much increase in power; The State being serued in most affaires with common persons, and those of no great estimation; because these Kings for the most part suppose, that by them he is the better serued, as also, are very iealous of the greatnes of their officers. For in truth the *Spanish* Nation by nature is very proud, yet base, & such as careth not to be hated, so it be feared: in al passages aboue all other Nations vsing & imitating a kind of decorū, which they cal Respect, we complement, or apish curtesie, being full of seruility, yet in publike shewing more seueritie ouer their owne, then ouer strangers: which may well be, if well vnderstood. For, where he conquereth and commandeth, no people are so intolerable, as they; but mastered and subdued, no nation of the world so submissiue and crooching. At home, in general, poore timorous and vnwarlike; abroad (by hardning & custome) a verie hardie and valiant souldiour on foot, obedient to his Commander, & patient in the distresses and labours of war: but by night they neuer go vpon anie seruice. By it selfe alone this Nation hath don nothing of reckoning, but accompanied with others, it hath made good assaies of its owne valour, alwaies boasting of the taking of the French King, of the victories of *Germanie*, of the enterprise of the *Tercers*, & of the happie fight at the *Curzolari*, without once remembring their contrarie successes, of *Goletta*, *Algiers*, and *England*.

Reuenues
from *Italic*.

Of ordinarie Reuenues from *Italic*, it receiueh foure millions of gold. Much of that of *Naples* is pawned: the which the Kingdome of *Sicilie* doth yearely supply, by sending thither ordinarily 4000. crowns, and the Counsell of *Spaine* taking order for the rest. These States in *Italic*, are defended from the forces of bordering Princes, partly by Nature of scite, and partly by the aide of strong Forts; ordinarily maintaining in the presidarie places 10000. Spanish Foote-men, 1200. men

men at Armes, three hundred light Horse, and thirtie fixe Gallies for guard of the Sea-coasts: Of sixteene are of *Genoa*, twentie five of *Naples*, twelue of *Sicilie*, and three of *Sauoy*. This is the appointed number, but you shall seldome see it so strong. For notwithstanding this *Armada*, the coasts are badly secured; As it appeared by the late yeares example, in the damages done by the Turkish Nauie vpon *Puglia* and *Calabria*; amounting (as it is reported) to the summe of more than a million and a halfe of gold. He serueth himselfe also (when occasion requirereth) with the Gallies of *Malta*, with the Popes (which are eighteene) and sometimes also with those of the great Duke of *Tuscan*.

The mindes of these his *Italian* subiects are exceedingly exasperated through the insolencie of their gouernment, their intollerable charges, and the burthen of infinite taxation, which are continually imposed vpon them, finding out daylie one meanes or other to raise new summes of money. The *Neapolitans* are most doubted for reuolt, by reason of the instabilitie of that people, alwaies desirous of change and nouelties. *Millaine* is also suspected, by reason of the damage which they vndergoe by lodging of souldiours at discretion, being growne to a custome, with the finall desolation of diuers families.

The Italian humours.

The *Indies* are diuided into *Orientall* and *Occidentall*, the King pretending to be sole-lord, both of the one the other. The *Orientall* not onely are indangered by the English Nauies (which in time of war do continually trouble them) but in hazzard also, if not to be lost, yet to be forced to share quiet and peaceable Traffick, both to the English and *Netherland* Merchants. The King maintaineth there, for custodie of those countries, manie ships of war, hauing also distributed 8000. footmen, for the ordinarie saue-guard of the forts.

The Indies.

The West-Indies (exceeding rich and abounding with gold and siluer) are deuided into two parts: *Peru*, and *New Spaine*. These countries are full of Mines, in which is found great store of gold, keeping therein the *Indians* continually at worke, liuing verie barely, and vndergoing the punishment of their ignorance and pusilanimitie, in suffering themselves to be easilie ouercome & so basely subiected. The King hath the fifth part all extracted from the Mines. These *Indies*, in the time of *Charles* the fift, yeelded no more than five hundred thousand crowns of gold by yeare, but they now yeeld an exceeding comoditie to this king; for in some yeares past (comprehending the Bulls of the Crosse, & other confiscations in those parts) he hath receiued frō thence ten millions of gold. His highnesse Ministers doe stil procure some new gaine in those parts, & the people, stil continue their nauigatiō thither with more gain vpon

By one yeare coniecture, is to be made of another.

vpon their returne, than one hundred for another. The Merchants carrie thither Wines, Wollen-cloth, and other Merchandize of these parts, and bring from thence in lieu thereof (ouer and besides diuers sorts of Spices) a great quantitie of Gold: by extraction of which, the fruitfulnessse of the Mines is no whit diminished, but it seemeth that they doe rather daily more and more encrease and multiplie; in such sort, that the Countrey-men in Tilling the ground, doe finde great store thereof, together with the clods of earth, when they digge it vp; And in my time, there was discovered a Mine of Quick-Siluer, which will yeeld exceeding profit, and incredible gaine. True it is, that all these profits haue their interests, but they arise not to aboue twentie in the hundred laid out, by reason of conuoyes, for securitie of the Fleete. For there is alwaies maintained strong guards in the Isle of *Iaua*, apt by reason of the situation, to giue the Empire of all these parts to him, that can make himselfe once Maister thereof. The Soldiours which he sent into these parts, haue for their pay two Crownes a month, in such sort, that the Land-Soldiours, the guarders of the Fortes, and the Gallies which he maintaineth for this purpose, is a speciall cause, that his Maiestie expendeth in interests and charges amongst the *Indies*, more by a greater deale than a Million and a halfe of Gold. Which maketh mee nothing to wonder, that although this King by reason of his abundance of Treasure, and many other infinit riches brought yearely from the *Indies*, should seeme to be richer than other Princes, and his state much more wealthie and abundant, yet in truth the great Turke, not hauing any mines of gold, is more mightier and farre wealthier: And so in true interpretation is *France*, *England*, and *Neitherland*, as late experience (the touch-stone of ambiguities) hath fully discovered. Whereupon it must needs follow, that this Crowne is either much hindered by ingagement in warre, want of home-bred necessities, or by vncertain returns of its Fleetes, subiect euerie yeare to the casualties of Seas, currents and surprisals. If these be not the causes of so many crosses, as our eies haue lately discovered; than surely, his neighbouring Princes must be thought to be Lords of a valienter people, than are his Spanish.

For say they, it appeareth by record from time to time kept in the Citie of *Sinil*, that in 74. yeares space there haue come into Spain 260. Millions of gold. Of all which summe there remaineth now in Spain by coniectured, in readie Monie and Plate (wherewith this Nation is much delighted) about 56. Millions: 25. the *Genois* haue had for interest: Seuen millions were spent in the French warres, and the conquest of portugal: Eight were bestowed on that glorious & stately building of the

the Escuriall. And the rest (which is more than 100 millions) hath beene all spent in the fruitlesse warres of Christendome and Flanders, So that it may be truly said, that all the enterprizes which this State hath vnderaken, since the daies of Charles the Emperor have beene performed with Indian Gold: being certainly to be affirmed without contradiction, that Phillip the second, during his raigne alone, spent more than all his predecessors, being in number sixtie two, that haue raigned since these kingdomes shooke off the Romaine yoke; considering that he alone spent more than 100. Millions, and notwithstanding all this here spoken of, Spain is very poore and finally stored with wealth. For although his Nauigation to the Indies was upheld, yet the Traffique which he had with England and Flanders, (which brought him exceeding & most secure gains) was all cut off. Whence it seemes true that the Spaniards say in discourse of this Gold (brought from India into Spain) that it worketh the same effects vpon them, that a shewer of Raine doth vpon the tops and coverings of houses, which falling thereon, doth all at last descend below to the ground, leauing no benefite behinde, to those that first receiued it.

Flanders, once the true correlative of the Indies, but being now diuided and alienated, yeeldeth no profit to this Prince, yet Charles the first, by his good gouernment drew from thence by extraordinarie grieuances and Imposts (occasioned by his manifold wars) more than twentie foure Millions of Gold. Of Flanders,

This Countrey, though by Nature it be not very fruitfull, yet by Art, it proueth to the Inhabitants very profitable and commodious, exercising with all traualle & industrie the Trade of Merchandizes by which in former times infinit riches arose to their Princes, who alwaies held it deere, and fought by all meanes to conserue the Dominion thereof. And so Phillip the second would faine haue done, supposing that those warres would the rather haue drawn to an end, when he gaue his daughter Isabella for wife to the Arch-Duke (with the assignement thereof) for her dower; and that the people would the sooner haue quieted themselves vnder the obedience of that Prince, if they might be suffered to enioy the libertie of their consciences; but time hath reuealed what effects those projects haue produced.

It now remaineth to speak of the Councell, and qualitie of his Councell, and the conditions of his Counsellors; a matter both of great importance, and worthe of vnderstanding, being the verie Seate of the soule of his gouernment. Counsell,

The gouernment is absolute and royall: matters of seuerall qualities Gouernment,
are

are handled in severall Counsels, and they are seven in number, besides the Privie Counsell : That the King may be the better informed of all affaires, they keepe alwaies neere about his person in severall Chambers vnder one rooffe. Their Names are these : The Counsell of *Spaine*, of the *Indies*, of *Italie*, of the *Low-Countries*, of *Warre*, of the order of *Saint Iohn*, and of the *Inquisition*. In these the slow and considerate adviſoes of *Fabius*, rather than the rash and headie resolutions of *Marcellus* are receiued. As much as may be, innouations and change of ancient customes are auoided. In regard whereof, *Innocent* the eight, was wont to affirme, the *Spanish* Nation to be so warie in their actions, that they seldom committed any ouer-sight therein. By this course the King rangeth vnder his obedience, *Castilians*, *Arragons*, *Biscaines*, *Portugals*, *Italians*, the *New-world*, *Christians*, and *Gentiles*, people vtterly different in lawes, customes, and natures, as if they were all of one Nation, and his naturall subiects.

And whereas some obieſt, that this Empire cannot long endure in so flourishing an estate, because the members thereof are so farre diſioned: to such obieſtions, let this Maxime be opposed; *That spacious Dominions are best preserved against forraine attempts, as those of meane capacitie haue the like aduantage, against intestine diuisions*. But in this Empire thus diuided, spaciousnesse and mediocritie are well vnited. The spaciousnesse is apparent in the whole body compounded of severall members: the mediocritie in the greatest part of the severall members: For seeing that the portions thereof (as *Spaine*, *Peru*, *Mexico*) are so great and goodly States of themſelues, they cannot but be ſtored with all those good things, which are requisite either for greatnesse or mediocritie; that is to ſay, with a puissant vnion to reſiſt forraine attempts, and ſufficient inward force to provide againſt domeſticall diſcontents. For who knoweth not, that by means of Sea-forces, all these members may ſtrengthen one another, and ſtand as it were vnited, euen as *Cæſar Auguſtus* by maintaining one Fleet at *Reuenna*, and another at *Meffana*, awed, the whole *Romaine* Empire, and kept it in aſſured tranquillitie: As alſo we haue ſcene, the *Portugals*, by reaſon of their Sea-forces, which they maintained in *Persia*, *Cambeia*, *Decan*, and other places of the *Indies*, in thoſe partes to haue giuen the Law to many famous Princes.

This State layeth claime alſo to the Dutchie of *Burgundie*, as part of that Countie whereof the Houſe of *Austria* remaineth Heire. He doth the like to the Citie of *Tunis* in *Affrica*, to the Iſland of *Corſica* poſſeſſed by the *Genois*, to the baſe and higher *Brittanie*, as alſo to the Kingdome of *Hieruſalem*, whole Title he taketh vpon him; and finally (as it is
above

about mentioned) pretendeth himselfe the Monarch of the World. But this mightines of his, hath many disturbances in it self, which hinder motion, and cruelly curb designements, by reason whereof he sets forward with such dulnesse of speede, that for the most part the prouision which is prepared for effecting of future enterprises, cometh alwaies too late. For if he be to provide Soldiours in *Italie*, after they be pressed, inrolled, and set onwards, they lie waiting three or foure monthes at the Riuer of *Spaine*, before they be embarked for their voyage, their pay still running on, to the great dammage and preiudice of that Crowne; so that we may verie well auouch, that what another Prince performeth with two hundred thousand Crownes expence, his Catholike Maiestie can scarce execute so much, with the cost of 500. thousand.

Of no lesse danger is the dammage, which that Crowne may verie easily receiue, by a suddaine and vnexpected losse of their Fleete, because on it are grounded all the hopes and designes of the said State, that are of any importance. But more pernicious and fuller of trouble would be the losse of the *Indies*, which with ease, either by forraine fleets may be taken from them, or much molested and hindered: Or if neither of these; yet that the *Spaniards* themselues, sent thither in Colonies, combining themselues in one bond of vnitie, hauing all the fortresses in their owne hands together with the Ports and Ships that are there, may one day resolute to be gouerned by themselues, denying al obedience to their Kings commandements. Another contrarietie also doth this great State incur; That the Prince thereof, hath far better meanes to get Monie, than Men. For howbeit vpon euery occasion, and when need serueth, he is serued by the *Swizzers* the *Wallons* and *Italians*, yet these of themselues are little or nothing worth, being vpon euery sleight occasion of slack pay, readie to make commotions, and in their furie to forsake his seruice. Of other Nations (besides that, his Maiestie dareth lesse trust them) he cannot (although he would) haue such a sufficient number as should supply his neede and occasion. So, howbeit that this Prince be Sole Lord and Maister of so many mightie States, and of so great and Potent an Empire; yet liueth he full of continuall trauels and discontentes.

Now hauing taken a full view and mature consideration both of the States, as also of the endes and intents of this mightie Monarch, together with those contrarieties which these States doe suffer; it resteth, that in this last place we should intreat of the correspondencie which he holdeth with other Princes; which as it is of all other knowledges the most necessarie, so is it the hardest to be discovered, bringing with it for the most

Correspondencie.

most part greater difficultie, to be able fully and iudiciously, to pierce into the purposes and inward thoughts of Princes, but especially, into the secret Councils of the State of *Spaine*, being full of cunning dissimulation,

With the Pope

To begin therefore with this point: I say, that generally (to instance first of all the Pope) his Catholique Maiestie will haue him to be such a One, as may wholly depend vpon him, and be confident of his fastnesse. And therefore in their Elections, his indeuour is that not any ascend to that Dignitie, that doth any way fauour of the *French* faction (and therefore alienated from his deuotion) nor any that are of singuler Nobilitie, least their Spirits might be too generous to be baselie abused by him: nor any of the kingdome of *Naples*, for feare (taught by former examples) of some new disturbance in that State: But his principall desire is, to create one of base lignage, and of meane respect, and such a one (as shall if it be possible) acknowledge his Cardinalship, and all other Dignities, to proceede from him: and such a one, whose Parents and Kinsfolkes are poore, that by the bountie which he shall bestow vpon them, and the pensions which he shall conferre on their Friends, he may binde them vnto him, and confidently assure himselfe of their fauour and partaking, when occasion serueth.

And for this cause (in all that he can) he seeketh to weaken the Popes, and to detract from their Dignities, to make them inclinable to his wil, and wholly to depend vpon him, procuring them to continue in this office of their loue, by furnishing their State with Corne out of *Puglia* and *Sicilie*; and by vpholding the authoritie of the holy Sea; in defending their Coasts from the incursions of the Turkish fleetes, and from the depredations and inrodes of Pirats: and lastly, by giuing them to vnderstand, that it is in his power to call a Councel, & in it to take an account of their actions, and to call their prerogatiues into question. And howbeit the Absolution and rebenediction of the late King of *Nauarre*, did much moue, nay beyond measure trouble the mind of *Phillip* the second, who in those times did hope for great things at the Popes handes, yet did he dissemble this offence; As on the contrarie, did his Holinesse the preiudice that was, and is, done him in *Spaine*, in regard of holy Church, whereby not only his orders and decrees are broken and moderated by the Councell; but also, sometimes reiected and condemned, whereof his holinesse hath made often complaint to the Spanish Ambassadour, but to smal purpose.

With the Col-
lege of Car-

In the Colledge of Cardinals, the King at this present hath not much authoritie,

authoritie, by reason of his Imperious proceeding, and lesse will haue hereafter, the French Nation being now risen to some greatnesse; which will now euery day more and more, be able strongly to oppose themselves against the Spanish, by whose ieaousies, greatnesse, and dissimulation one with another, that See hath gained such greatnesse and reputation in the world.

In requitall whereof, his Holinesse insauour of *Philip* the second (wasted forsooth in warre against the Lutheraus) cut off by his authoritie, I know not how manie millions of debt, due to the Genois. He hath giuen him also all pardons sent to the Indies, worth by yeare halfe a million, with the collations of benefices and Bishopricks, and the inioyment of the two rich orders of *Saint James* and *Calatrava*.

With the Emperor (howbeit al be of his blood) his Catholike Maie-
stie hath not anie great intelligence, because in manie occurrences that
haue beene offered, he hath giuen him but slender satisfaction, neither
would euer seeke anie counsell of his Maiestie, which principally
is by him desired, to the intent that hee might seeme to relie vp-
on him. But true it is, that these gustes are now ouer-blowne, and
the distasts are at length some-what lessened, in consideration of en-
termariages.

For the Arch-Dukes, his Catholike Maiestie doth onely loue that
Noble Cardinall, to whom (as it hath beene told you) hath beene giuen
the gouernment of *Flanders*, and the *Infanta* for wife. With the
Arch-duke,

Howeuer France seemeth now to reioyce in a new alliance, yet let
the world not doubt but that out of ancient emulation, which hath
euer beene betweene these two Kingdomes, being exasperated one
against another, by so manie iniuries, so manie wrongs, and so manie
iars & brawles, new occasions of discontents wil euer more arise. For can
the French (thinke we) euer forget their expulsions out of *Italie*, their
deprivation of *Nauar*, or the intrusion of the late King vpon the maine
bodie of the Kingdome? With France.

With the King of *Polonia* hee hath not anie negotiation, saue good
correspondencie. And because betwixt these two Crownes there is
not anie pretension of State, or interest of Confines, which are wont to
be causes from whence discords arise, and also for the most part euill in-
telligence among Princes. *Polonia.*

As the Turke is Lord of a larger sea-coast thā the king, so can he hardly
compare with his Maiestie, either in furniture, or Marriners. Along all
the coast of *Affricke*, he hath not an harbour, where he can build or
keepe a couple of Gallies, except *Algier* and *Tripolie*. In the *Euxine* sea,
what
Turke.

what place of name is there, besides *Capha* and *Trapezond*? What better report can wee giue to the Coast of *Asia*? More implements than a spacious Sea-Coast are incident on either part to this businesse: he must haue plentie of Timber and Cordage; he must be furnished with a people practised in Sea-affaires, able to endure the labour and working of the Waters; delighting in Traffique & Nauigation; cheerfull in Tempests & rough weather, which dare dwell as it were amongst Perils, and expose their liues to a thousand dangers, and heerein, in true iudgement, I take the King to exceed the Turke: For the Turkish subiects, as to the better part neuer saw Sea, and those that haue vsed it, are not to be compared to the *Byskains*, *Catalonians*, *Portugals*, and *Geno-wais*; (I adde this people for their good seruices & affections at all times to this Crowne.) To conclude, in two things the King excelleth the Turke; the first is, that although the Turke can command more men, yet the best and greater part of them being Christians, he dare hardly trust; the second, that the Sea-Coasts of the King are nerer conioyned than those of the Turke, and in that regard hath his forces sooner incorporated. By this facilitie, experience hath proued, that the Easterne Nauies haue beene often ouerthrowne by the Westerne, the Southerne by the Northerne, the *Carthaginian* by the *Roman*, the *Asian* by the *Graecian*. *Octavius Cesar* with the Nauie of *Italie*, defeated the Fleete of *Egypt*, and in our times the *Armada* of the Christians, the Fleete of the *Turkes*. The *Turkes* themselues confesse, that in Sea-fights the Christians excell, and are vnwilling to deale with those forces. As often as *Charles* the sixt rigged forth his Nauie, it was so puissant, that the Turke neuer durst leaue the harbour. In his iourney of *Algier*, he rigged 500. vessels; in his *Tunis* voyage, 600. *Andrew Dorie* conducted so gallant an *Armada* into *Greece*, that the Turke not daring to moue out of his Station, the Christians tooke *Patras* and *Coronna* in *Morea*.

At this day they are at peace: The *Spaniard* is doubtfull of the Turkish forces, especially by Sea, if he be not assisted by the league of *Italie*: And againe, the Turke is as fearefull of him alone, and of his associats. For he knowes that he is to deale with a Potentate of much estimation, and well practised in the World; and although of late there haue fallen out betweene them certaine iarres and differents, vpon damages done by the one and the other Prince reciprocally done in each others Dominions, yet it is to be thought, that these two so powerfull Princes, will not easily be brought to take Armes, seeing they emulate each others greatnesse, and contented with equall strife, to bring all Christendome to their subiection; pretending both, one and the selfe-same end, viz: Religion.

Religion. Besides, it is sufficient for the Catholike King, to have reuenged his wrongs, and for the Turke, that he is no more molested by the *Spanish Armadoes*. As the one hath an warlike and wel armed Empire, so hath the other a vnited and most rich Kingdome. But herein the Turke hath the greater aduantage, that he spendeth but little in the wars, in regard of that, that not onely the King of Spaine disburseth, but euen all the Princes of the world. For his souldiours receiue for their pay, those Lands which he hath giuen them to hold for life, with condition annexed, alwaies to be in readinesse to serue at an instant.

His Land-forces consist in Causalrie and Infanterie: the best footemen of all the *Germane Nations*, is the *Wallon*: and it is well knowne, that in all ages, the *Spanish* haue beene accounted one of the most valourous Nations of the World. The *French* in nine yeare were subdued to the *Romane* yoake; the *Spaniards* held out two hundred. The power and person of *Augustus Cesar*, were requisite to the subduing of the *Cantabrians*, whereas they not only deliuered their owne countrie from subiection of the *Moores*, but inuaded *Affricke*, and therein tooke many strong places. So the *Portugals* inuaded *Barbarie*, tamed the coast of *Guinea*, *Ethiopia*, and *Cafraria*; they conquered *India*, *Malaca*, and the *Moluccas*. The *Castilians* sayling through the *Atlanticke* sea, subdued the *New-world*, with all the Kingdomes, Prouinces, and people therein: and finally, droue the *French* from *Naples*, *Sicill*, and *Millaine*. Forces at land.

This people is much inclined to melancholy, which maketh them solemn in their conuersation, slow and aduised in action: they loue complement, and stand much vpon appearance, presuming greatly of themselves, and exceedingly boasting of their owne doings: and to maintaine their reputation, they will imploy all they haue in furniture and apparrell: in suffering of hunger, thirst, heat, cold, labour, and extremities, they will lay vp anie nation in Europe. By these vertues, they haue atchieued the glorie of so manie victories, and although some-time they haue beene overcome; notwithstanding, they haue vanquished their vanquishers, as it fell out at *Rauenna*. They neuer suffered anie famous defeature, but in the iournies of *Algier*, and *England*; the one by the Casualtie of Tempest; the other by the skilfull prowesse and seafaring dexteritie of the English. Three or foure thousand of them turned topsie turuie the better part of *Germanie*, and made way with their Swords through the thickest of their enemies. In the iourney of *Caruen* in *Barbarie*, being 4. thousand foot-souldiours of great valour, they made a braue retraiſt the space of foure, or fivemiles, beset and charged with twentie thousand Horse by the King of the *Moores*, at least five or

six times, with the losse only of eightie men, and the slaughter of 800. of the enemy. They serue better on foot than on horsebacke (although they haue Horses of excellent courage,) and better with the Harquebuzze, than with anie other kinde of weapon. With great care they will couer their losses and weaknesse.

Their Calual-
rie.

As concerning their Cauallrie, it cannot be gaine-said, but that the Spanish Genet is the Noblest Horse of Christendome, far excellling the Courser of *Naples*, or the Horse of *Burgundie*, so much esteemed of the *French*; of the *Frieslander*, & in so great request with the *German*s. It should seeme that nature her selfe hath armed this people, in giuing them the Iron Mines of *Biskay*, *Guipuscoa*, and *Medina*, with the temperature of *Baion*, *Bilbo*, *Toledo*, and *Calataint*; the Armories of *Mil-lane*, *Naples*, and *Boscoducis*; the corne and prouision of the inexhausti-ble Garners, of *Apulia*, *Sicill*, *Sardinia*, *Artesia*, *Castile*, and *Andeleuzia*; with the plentiful vintages of *Soma*, *Calabria*, *San Martin*, *Aymont*, and sundrie other places. To conclude, this Prince is so mightie in gold and siluer, that there-with (to spare his owne people, ingaged in the defence of so manie Territories, Prouinces and Frontiers, from vndoubted destruction) hee is able to wage what numbers of Horse-men and Foot-men of the *German* and *Italian* Nations it pleaseth him.

Borderers.

The Princes, whose Dominions are bordering, and in regard of their forces are anie way able to indanger his Dominions, are the *Venstians*, the Kings of *France* and *England*, and the *Turke*.

The Venetians

The *Venetians* (long since the Dutchie of *Millane* came to the possession of this Crowne) haue set them downe with great quietnesse, rather looking to the strengthening and keeping of their owne Townes and pieces, than to the winning of others from their Neighbours. And good reason it is, sithence peace is the surest anker-hold of their Com-mon-wealth.

The French.

Concerning *France*, sithence the *French* Nation hath put an end to their ciuile discontentes, what Trophee or Tryumph can the *Spaniard* boast to haue carried from them? Indeed it cannot be denied, but in elder daies, the warinesse of the one, hath turned the furious attempts of the other to matter of too late repentance. For the great Captaine surprising *Barletta*, and then incamping vpon the bankes of *Garigliano*, first tooke from them the possession of the Kingdome of *Naples*, and afterwards all hope of regaining it againe. By the same temporizing, *Anthonie Leua* wearied King *Francis* at *Ticinum*, and *Prosper Collonna*, cleared the Dutchie of *Millan*.

In assaulting of Townes and fortresses, I confesse furie to be of great moment;

moment; I confesse likewise, that by this vertue, the *French* preuailed at *Ioious*, *Momedium* and *Caleis*; but in set Battels, as at *Graneling*, *Saint Quintins*, and *Siena*, most commonly they haue had the foile: for in the field good order and skilfull Conduct doth more preuaile, than valour and furious resolution: In all Assaults, furie, and resolution, more than counsell or temporizing.

In the East *Indies* hee confineth with the King of *Persia*, betwixt The Persian. whom there is not anie euill intelligence, but contrariwise, rather great tokens of much loue and amitie, as by whose helpe that King hopeth to finde meanes to ouerthrow the Turke. Howbeit he hath verie oftentimes denied him assistance and aide in those warres, which he made against the house and familie of *Ottoman*, being verie much vrged and sought vnto by the *Persian*, to send vnto him some of his people, men expert and skilfull in casting of great Ordnance, as also in building of Forts, and other the like matters of defence and assistance. Excusing himselfe, with the perill of his Religion, which doth not permit Christian Princes to lend aide vnto Infidels: though indeed the true cause was, because he would not thereby giue an occasion of future trouble & molestation to himselfe (by communicating these two aduantages so important in war) in his Nauigation to the *Indies*, which are adioyning to the *Persian* sea.

With the King of *Fesse* and *Morocco* his Catholique Maiestie is in In Barbarie. league, vpon interest of those States which he possesseth in *Affrica*.

With the Duke of *Sauoy*, to whom he is knit by coniunction of In Sauoy. blood, and tied by strictnesse of kindred, there ought not to be anie doubt of their good intelligence each to other.

For though it seeme that the King of Spaine and the Duke are at difference for the present, yet his Maiestie hath him alwaies in his hands, and the Dukes children receiue the verie bread they feed vpon from the Spaniard; which being denied them, they haue nothing to sustaine themselves vpon. For the Duke himselfe is not verie rich. They are of the blood of *Spaine*, alwaies their seruants, and oftentimes haue beene Commanders of their armies. His third sonne *Don Victorio Amado*, knight of *Malta*, is great Commander of *S. Iohns* with 10000. crownes allowance *per annum*, & withall generall of his Gallies; a place of great honour & profit. The fourth is a Cardinall, and hath the one halfe of the profits of the Archbishoprick of *Toledo*, with promise of the whole after the decease of the Incūbent, being an estate worth 300000. crownes *per an.* The 5. *Don Thomazo*, hath also a pension but as yet no perticular title.

His Catholike Maiestie would verie willingly that the great Duke In Tuscanie.

of *Tuscanie* should wholly depend vpon him; but He is so farre from that, that he doth not onely depend, but in manie occasions hath still shewed himselfe opposite vnto this crowne, and hath lately discovered himselfe to be a welwiller to the Crowne of France, by ioyning alliance with the most Christian King: and therefore it is not likely that anie good intelligence can be betwixt them. In like manner, the Ambassadour of *Tuscanie* is but of indifferent regard in that Court, and the Dukedome of *Ferrara*, is now diuolued to the Curch.

Ferrara.

In Mantua.

The Duke of *Mantua*, labours bodily to be in grace with his Catholike Maiestie; and for this end, hath allied himselfe and pretendeth protection; hoping hereby to be secured from those troubles, which he might receiue from the Duke of *Sauoy*, for the Marquiship of *Monferrato*. Imagining withall, that for the quiet of *Italie*, and for the better assurance of his owne States therein, and particularly, for the State of *Millaine*, the Catholike King will be readie to defend him from all molestations, that shall be offered.

Parma.

The Duke of *Parma* is not onely a deuout Seruant, and a neare Kinsman, but also a subiect to this Crowne, by the citie of *Placentia*, and therefore wholly depends thereupon, hauing taken a secret oath to obey him in all commands. Proceeding with all possible respect, not to giue the least occasion of offence, by reason that the inuestiture of *Placentia* was not granted absolutely to the house of *Farnesi*, but only to the fourth descendencie after which it returnes againe to the King of *Spaine*, as Duke of *Millaine*. And therefore his Excellencie (that he may not separate himselfe from his Maiesties good liking) did lately refuse to linke himselfe in alliance with the great Duke, least he should displease the King, whose minde he saw was bent against it.

Vrbine.

The Duke of *Vrbine* being a Prince of small power, wholly relies vpon his Maiestie, as receiuing his greatest benefit from him, to whom he hath committed the charge of all his *Italian* Cavalrie.

Genoa.

The Common-wealth of *Genoa*, is like a ship beaten at Sea, and rost with contrarie windes, and tempestuous stormes, placed as it were betwixt two Anchors; which are, Prince *Doria*, a true borne citizen, and the Ambassadour of the Catholique King, who hath the protection thereof in his Maisters name, to his great benefit. If euer he chance to become Sole-Lord thereof, it will adde a greater Dominion to his greatness, for the nature and qualitie of the situation of that citie, wherof the *Spaniards* are wont to say: That if the King their Maister were but once Lord of *Marselles* in Prouince, and of *Genoa* in *Italie*, by the benefit of these two famous ports, he might easily ariue to the Monarchie of

of the whole World. But howbeit the King of *Spaine* be not Lord thereof, nor yet hath so great a part therein, that hee can assuredly say, that it wholly rests at his command, yet by fauouring and vpholding the greatnesse of the Prince *Doria*, he maketh him the Instrument to serue his turne, and by his meanes obtaineth what hee will, or can, in reason desire of that people deeply interess'd, in regard that his Maiestie hath taken vp great summes of money vpon interest of them, and therefore will take heed how they breake with him, least they be hindred of their gaines, peraduenture of their principall: It hath beene thought, that some Kings haue beene behinde hand with them, for more than a million and a halfe of gold.

Of the Religion of *Malta*, the said King taketh a particular protection, as that in like sort depends wholly vpon his pleasure, and doth readily execute his royall commandements, seruing his turne oftentimes, in keeping the coasts of *Spaine*, and the Kingdomes of *Naples* and *Sicilie*, from the incursions of Pirates, and that without anie one pennie cost or charges to the said King; whereof in proper place.

The Signiorie of *Lucca*, hath placed both it selfe and all that it hath (fearing the potencie of the Great Duke) vnder the protection of his Maiestie.

In generall, the Spanish Nation beareth little loue to the *Venetian* Common-wealth, as suspecting it to fauour the *French*, and for the strict friendship which it holds with the most Christian King, and the most renowned State of England, of late, his apparant and professed Enemies.

Againe, there is also little inclination of loue towards this State, because they thinke, that it maketh profession to ballance the States and forces of the Princes of *Italie*; and though they esteeme well enough of it; yet they loue it not a iot. Notwithstanding, the Spaniards know, that in those wars which may happen betwixt the Turkes and this people, they cannot (out of their particular interests) but aide & assist them, & that on the contrarie from the, they haue no hope of retribution vnlesse in like occasion. But withall they assuredly beleeeue, that the aides which they shall affoord it, shall be but feeble, and slowly subministred, in such sort, that they shall not giue it anie great reenforcement, but only such as may be sufficient to saue it from ruine, yea scarce that.

Finally, for a perfect review of this tedious discourse, I will recite vnto you, these weightie, secret, & last instructions giuen by *Phillip* the second, King of *Spaine*, to his Son *Phillip* the third, now raigning: teaching him how to gouerne himselfe and his Kingdomes after the decease

of his faith Father; brought to light by a seruant of *Don Christophero di Mora*, called *Rederigo*, and translated out of Spanish and Dutch into English, that the world may see how iudiciously this manuscript of the Kings owne hand, agreeth with the purport of these relations.

SOn, I haue often troubled my minde, and entered into most deepe and serious considerations, how to leaue a quiet and settled estate vnto you after my descease: Howbeit, neither the long time of my life, nor the opportunitie of Princes affected to my seruice, would affoord me sufficient assistance in this behalfe. I confesse, that I haue spent more than 594. millions of Duckets; in lieu whereof, I haue inioyed nothing the space of three and thirtie yeares, but heart-sorrow, and vexation of spirit. True it is, that I recouered *Portugall*; but as lightly as France is escaped from me, so likewise may *Portugall* slide backe. Would to God I had followed the counsell of *Charles* the Emperour, my Lord Father of famous memory: for then could I much more quietly brooke those my sorrowes, and die with a more willing mind, leauing to you the succession of this mortall life.

This then, besides so manie stately Kingdomes and Seigniories, as a perpetuall testament I leaue behind vnto you, as a mirour & Looking-Glasse, wherein you may see how to frame your actions, and to carrie your selfe in your gouernment after my death.

Alwaies looke well to the charges and alterations of other States and Countries, to the end you make vse, and reape good profit thereby, as occasion shall serue; and withall, haue a cautelous and circumspect eye ouer them that be in Counsell with you.

Two meanes you haue whereby to maintaine your Spanish Kingdomes; the one is gouernment; the other, the Trade of the *Indies*.

Touching your Gouernment, you must draw vnto you, and relie either vpon the Nobilitie, or the spiritualtie, of your Dominions.

If you leane vnto the spiritualtie, you must seeke to bridle and curbe the other, as I haue done: but if you meane to strengthen your selfe with the Nobilitie, cut short the liuings and Reuenues of the spiritualtie, as much as is possible. For holding them both in equall fauour, they will consume you; and besides, you shall set your Realmes out of quiet, and neuer come to resolution, the ballance being ouer-weighed, sometimes by the one, and sometimes by the other.

My Counsell is, that you hold in league with the Prouinces of the *Netherlands*, especially if you meane to helpe your selfe with the Nobilitie: for they be friends to *France*, *England*, the *Germane* Princes.

And

And neither *Italie*, *Poland*, *Sweden*, nor *Denmarke*, can stand you much in steed: As for the King of *Denmarke*, he getteth his Reuenues by forraigne Nations.

Sweden is alwaies at diuision, and vnfit in regard of scituation.

The *Polacks* be as Maisters ouer their Kings. *Italie*, though it be rich, yet it is far distant from these before named; besides that, all the Princes therein are of diuers humours and dispositions.

But on the other side, the *Netherlands* are exceeding populous, and abound mightily in shipping: the Inhabitants being a people most constant in labours, diligent in searching out things profitable, courageous in their attempts, patient in aduersity.

True it is, that I haue bestowed those Prouinces vpon your Sister *Isabella Clara Eugenia*, howbeit in the transport thereof, are comprized an hundred meanes, whereby you may helpe your selfe: The principall whereof be, that you are Tutor and ouer seer of all her Children; and that shee may alter nothing in the Catholique Religion: These two maine points being taken away, you are absolutely dispossessed and quit of the *Netherlands*; and other Kings would be so forward to draw them vnto their allegiance, that it may happily redound to your ouerthrow.

Contrariwise, if you meane to relie and cleaue to the Clergie and State spirituall, you shall purchase your selfe manie enemies: I haue had the experience thereof: but hold all correspondencie with the Popes: Giue them much: be friendly alwaies to them: Entertaine such Cardinals as bee most in credit with them: Make your selfe Maister of the Conclauē. Make much of the *German*-Princes Bishops, and vse to bestow no more pension on thē by the hand of the Emperor, but deale so, as they may acknowledge your selfe for the giuer; surely they will serue you the more willingly, and receiue your gifts with greater gladnesse.

As for them that be of baser degree and qualitie, let them not come nere you, and so shall you seeme to giue your Nobilitie and Commons the better countenance. For certainelie I must needs say, their pride is great, they are mighty in substance, whatsoeuer they desire must be don, they will be chargeable vnto you, and in the end will seeke to rule your Scepter. Wherefore make your partie good, by the meanes of such as are descended of Noble parentage, & great families, and promote them now and then to some spirituall liuings. The common sort is not so seruiceable; for they will procure you such vnspeakable hatred, as that thereby you might be forced to consume your treasure, and therefore repose your trust in none of them, vnlesse they be of great qualitie.

Abandon and shake off your English Spies.

Clear your selfe of the French charges.

Use the service of some part of the *Netherlandish Nobilitie*, so that you may ioyne and knit them vnto your best and most trustie subiects. Now as concerning the trauaile and Nauigation to the East and West Indies; therein doth consist all the power and might of the Kingdome of *Spaine*, as likewise the straining and bridling of the *Italians*.

France and *England* cannot be debarred from meddling with the aforesaid Trade and Nauigation, their powers be great, their Sea-men be manie, their seas be too large, their Merchants too rich, their Captaines and Souldiours too greedie of money, and their subiects too trustie.

I haue for your sake, in the transport of the Low-Countries, put downe a prouiso, altogether to restraine the *Netherlanders* from dealing in the aforesaid Trade: but I feare that time and men will prooue changeable: wherefore you must doe two things. First, alter often your *Gouernours*. Secondly, those which you drawe from thence, you shall put in office heere at home, and make them of the counsell of *India* in *Spaine*. So shall you neuer (in my opinion) be deceived, but both parties will discouer your profit, and seeke their owne honour.

If you perceiue the English-men prepare to bereaue you of these commodities, as being strong both in shipping and Marriners (for the French I make small account) see that you strengthen your selfe with the *Netherlands*: notwithstanding, that a great part of them be Hereticks, and would so continue, with condition, that they shall haue full libertie to vtter all their commodities in *Spaine* and *Italie*, paying their royall Incomes and Customes, and all duties belonging vnto you: and then also you may grant vnto them passage to trauaile and Trade vnto your East and West Indies, prouided that they put in good securitie in *Spaine*, and take vpon them a corporall oath, that vpon their returne from the Indies, they shall arriue in some part of *Spaine*, and there to vnloade, vpon paine of death, if they shall be found to doe otherwise. Mine opinion is, that they will neuer refuse to accept of this easie condition, and to accomplish the same: and by these meanes shall the *Indian* and *Spanish* be lincked and knit to the *Netherlandish* Trade: and *England* and *France* must then liue vpon their owne purses.

My Sonne, I could relate vnto you more secrets for the conquests of other Kingdomes and Countries, but all such aduertisements, with the discourses thereupon deliuered vnto me, and by me amended, you shall

shall finde in my Cabinet. Cause *Christopher de Moro* immediatlie to deliuer the Key vnto you, least these so weightie secrets come into the hands of some other.

Vpon the seauenteenth of September, I caused the transcript or last scribled coppie of these remembrances, being in diuers places interlined, amended and altered, to be cast into the fire: but I feare somewhat thereof might vnderhand bee kept and reserved: wherefore set your eares to hearken thereafter.

I haue this present daie added thus much. If you can, deale with *Antonio Peres*, to draw him into *Italie*, or at least to procure him to doe you seruice in some other Countries, but into *Spaine* or the *Netherlands* neuer let him come.

Touching your marriage, the particular writings thereof remaine vnder the custodie of the Secretarie.

Moreouer, remember that you often read ouer this signed Bill and these Writings, here-about was neuer anie bodie in counsell with me, but mine owne hand.

Haue alwaies an especiall care ouer your Counsellors, and ouer those that are nere vnto you.

The deciphering of Letters you must your selfe take vpon you.

Doe not offend nor anger your Secretaries: deliuer them alwaies worke of small or great importance, Make prooffe of them rather by your Enemies, than by your Friends. And although you be inforced to discouer your secrets to your dearest fauorites, yet locke the chiefest alwaies within your owne breast.

Thus much gentle Reader, as it is thought hath beene saued out of those notes and writings which were seene to be burned, and this I thought good to publish for the common vnderstanding.

Portugall.

THis Kingdome (which is not aboue 320. miles long, and sixtie broad; not verie populous, and but meanelly rich in essentiall Reuenues:) by Nauigation and Acquisition of late daies, it held equall rancke with the most famous Prouinces of the World: yea, this humour of industrie so possessed their mindes, that they soly vndertooke the famous expeditions of *Barbarie*, *Ethiopia*, *India*, & *Brasile*. Wherein within these hundred yeares, they haue taken and fortified the principall places and harbours of those Prouinces, challenging vnto themselves

selues the peculiar Traffique of the *Atlanticke* and East Ocean. They seized vpon the *Terceraz*, knowing that without touching at those Islands, no ship could safely passe into *Ethiopia*, *India*, *Brasil*, or the *New-world*. Returning from the countries towards *Spaine* or *Lisbon*, they put in to relecue their wants and sicke Passengers, and outward they touch to take in fresh Water and fetch the Winde. In *Affricke* they are Lords of those places, which we spake of before, in the description of *Spaine*: In *Persia* they haue *Ormuz*: In *Cambaia*, *Diu*, *Damain*, and *Bazain*, the hither *India*, *Chaul*, *Goa*, and the fortresses of *Cochin*, *Colan*, the Island *Manar*, and the Hauens *Columbo* in *Zeslan*.

Amongst these *Goa* is the chiefeft, as the place where the *Viceroy* keepeth his Court. *Ormuz* is faire for the iurisdiction of the sea, and the Traffique of the *Persian* and *Cambaian* Gulphes. *Cochin* and *Colan* for their plentie of Pepper. *Manar* for the Pearle-fishing. *Columbo* for the aboundance of Cinnamon. *Damain* and *Bazain*, for fertile provision. In these quarters they haue some Princes their Confederates, others their Feodaries. The chiefe and wealthiest of Allies; is the King of *Cochin*, some-time tributarie to the *Calecute*, but now by the enter-course and Traffique with the *Portugals*, he is growne so rich and mightie, that the other Princes doe enuie his prosperitie. The King of *Colan* is likewise their confederate.

Forces.

Their chiefe force consisteth in scituation and strength of places, and in number and goodnesse of their shipping. As concerning scituation, this people wisely foreseeing, that in regard of their contemptible numbers: they were not of power to make anie famous journey into the In-land Regions, neither able to match the *Persians*, the *Gvizarites*, the Princes of *Decan*, the King of *Narsinga*, and other barbarous Potentates in *Campania*, turned all their cogitations to immure themselves in such defensue places, that therein with small forces they might euer haue hope to diuert great attempts, and make themselves Lords and Commanders of the sea and Nauigation: which when they had done, they entertained and maintained so strong a Naue, that no Prince in those parts was able to wrong them; yea, they furnished those Vessels so thoroughly, that one single ship would not refuse to cope with three or foure of the *Barbarians*. With this *Armada* (of one and twentie ships) *Francis Almeida* defeated the *Mamelukes* neere the Towne of *Diu*. *Alfonse Alburquerick* with thirtie great ships won *Calecute*: with one and twentie he tooke *Goa*, and regained it (being lost) with foure and thirtie. With three and twentie he tooke *Malaca*; with sixe and

and twentie he entered the Red-sea; and with two and twentie recovered *Ormuz*. In proceſſe of time, as their mightineſſe increaſed, *Lopes* *Zuarezus* made a iourney into the Red-Sea with ſeuē and thirtie *Gal-*
leons. *Lopes* *Sequeira* with twentie foure Ships, but with greater number of Soldiours than euer before, laid ſiege to *Guidda* in the Red-Sea: *Henrie* *Menefius* waſted *Patan* with fiftie ſhips. *Lopes* *Vazius* *Sampai-*
us left in the *Arsenall* 136. veſſels of warre, whereof the greateſt part were excellent well furniſhed. *Nonius* *Acunia* vnderooke a iourney to *Diu* with three hundred ſhips, wherein were three thouſand *Portugals*, and five thouſand *Indians*, beſides a great number of his Guard and Seruants, which ordinarily follow the *Viceroyes* in thoſe Countries.

These Gale-
ons, I ſuppoſe,
were but poore
Frigats.

Thus haue they much talked, of their victories and purchases, and ſo ſhould ſtill for me, If truth and time proclaimed not, that indeed they are but poore poſſeſſors of ſome Harbours, and Townes by the Sea ſhore; ſtanding on their Guard now, more than euer, as fearing to loſe them with more terror, than euer they intertained comfort in the facile acquisition of them.

Beſides his confederates & feodaries, he is confined with moſt mighty Princes, his enemies: as the *Persian*, who challengeth *Ormuz*, as holden of him in vaſſalage: the King of *Cambaia*, who maketh Title to *Diu*, and other places, which were once vnder his iuriſdiction: *Nizza-*
maluc and *Idalcam* (for ſo the *Portugals* call the two Princes of *Decan*) and the Kings of *Calecute* and *Narſinga*. Borderers.

As for the Kings of *Persia* and *Narſinga*, they neuer waged warre againſt them, becauſe they haue alwaies had to doe with more dangerous enemies: other Princes though they haue enterprized to their vttermoſt, to regaine *Diu*, *Cbial*, *Goa*, and other places, and haue left no meanes vnattempted to bring their deſignes to effect, yet their abilities could not worke any prosperous ſucceſſe to their laborious endeouours, by reaſon of ſcituation, ſo commodious for the transportation and receipt of continuall ſuccours from the Sea. And though they haue vndertaken the like aſtions in the deepe of Winter, hoping by tempeſts and other casualties, to barre the *Portugals* from their Sea-ſuccours, yet they neuer preuailed; becauſe the Ships and courages of the *Portugals*, the one reſolute to endure the ſiege, and by patience to overcome; the other determining (hap what may) neuer to forſake their diſtreſſed Countrymen, haue ſet all vpon hazard, and expoſed their fortunes to the mercy of winde and waues in thoſe tempeſtious ſeaſons. Their worſt, greateſt, and fierceſt enemy is the *Turke* (who being backed with the like advantage of ſcituation, which the Citie of *Aden* affordeth him) and ſome-

sometime pricked on by his owne proper enuie, emulation, and ambition, sometime egged on by the perswasion of the King of *Cambai*, hath often indeuoured to dispoile them of the Soueraigntie of the Red-Sea, and finally to driue them out of the East *India*. The greatest Nauie that euer he sent against them, was to recouer *Diu*, consisting of sixtie foure Ships, but by them defeated. Afterwards he sent a Nauie of greater vessels, to the conquest of *Ormuz*, and that likewise was almost wholly beaten, bruised, and drowned.

In the further Indies they hold nothing but *Malaca*, and the *Moluccas*. In times past, *Malaca* was farre greater than now it is: for it lay scattered three miles alongst the Sea-Coast; but the *Portugals*, that they might the better defend it, haue brought it into a round forme, containing not aboue a mile in compasse. Heere the King hath two puissant enemies, *Ior* and *Achem*, the one mightie at Land, and the other farre mightier at Sea, by whom the Towne, not without great danger hath more than once beene besiedged, but by the aide sent from *India*, alwaies relieued, with great slaughter of the Enemy. At length *Paul Lima* defeated King *Ior*, and rased the Castle built by him neere *Malaca*, wherein besides other spoiles he found 900. brazen cast-peeces. This Territorie is subiect to great danger, by reason of the puissance of this King of *Achem*, bending all his cogitations to the rooting and finall destruction of the *Portugals* out of this Prouince, and therefore the King of *Spaine* of late yeares, sent *Matthias Alburquerque* with a great power into *India*, with authoritie, either to secure the Territorie of *Malaca*, or to fight with the King of *Achem*.

To secure their Trade of Spice and Nutmegs in the *Moluccas* and *Banda*, they haue buile many Castles, yet for many yeares past they haue beene mightily molested by the *Dutch* and English Nations, who by no meanes will be excluded from the free Traffique of the Sea. The English, by reason of their great puissance, haue of late builded the fairest ships of the World for that onely Trade, and therein (as now) seated a hopefull and peaceable Factorie.

The Romaine Empire.

THis Empire in its greatest glory (*viz.*) in the daies of *Traian*, stretched from the Irish Ocean; and beyond, from the *Atlantique*, to the *Persian Gulfe*, and from *Catnes* in *Scotland*, to the Riuer *Albu*, and beyond, to the *Danubie*.

It began first to decline by the ciuill warres of *Galba*, *Otho*, and *Vitel-lus*. For in those times the Legions of *Brittanie* were transported into the Continent; *Holland* and the bordring Countries revolted, and immediately after, the *Sarazens* finding the Frontiers of the Empire without Garrisons, passed ouer *Danubius*. The *Alani* won the Streights of the *Caspian Hills*: the *Persians* inducoured to get them a name and reputation; the *Goths* wandred throughout *Mæsia* and *Macedonia*; the French-men entred *Gallia*. But *Constantine* the Emperor restored it to the former glory, made an end of ciuile Warre, and tamed the barbarous and truell Nations; and had he not committed two great faults, this Empire might long haue flourished. The first was, the translating of the Imperiall Seate, from *Rome* to *Constantinople*; which action weakened the West, and ouerthrew the Empire: as Plants remoued out of their naturall soile, and transported into Regions contrarie in temperature and ayre, retaine small vigour of their radicall vertue. In which regard, the *Romaine* Senate would neuer consent, that the people should leaue *Rome* and dwell at *Veij*, a Citie farre more pleasant and more commodious than *Rome*, especially after the sacking thereof by the French-men.

The second fault of *Constantine*, was, the diuision of the Empire to his Children, Anno Dom. 341. By this diuision, of one Empire he made three, and withall, a memorable diminution of his authoritie and forces. For when his Sonnes fell to ciuile dissention, they consumed one another so cruelly, that the Empire resembled a bloudlesse, yea, a liuelesse bodie. And though sometime, vnder some one Prince, it stood on foot againe, yet it remained alwaies subiect to diuision, and parted into two Empires, the East and the West; vntill the comming of *Odoacer*, King of the *Herules* and *Turingi*, into *Italie*, with a mightie Hoast: by which inuasion, *Augustulus* suffered such irrecoverable losses, that in extreame déspaire he was forced to cast himselfe into the protection of the East Empire. This happened in the yeare of our Lord 476. And about this time

time the *Hunnes* passed *Danubius*: *Alaricus* King of the *Gothes* tooke *Rome*: the *Vandals* first spoiled *Andoluzia*, afterwards, *Affricke*: the *Alans* wonne *Portugall*: the *Gothes* conquered the greater part of *Spain*: the *Saxons*, *Brittanie*: the *Burgundians*, *Prouince*. Anno 556. *Iustinian* restored it some-what to a better State, driuing the *Vandals* out of *Affricke*, and the *Gothes* out of *Italie*, by his Captaines; but this faire weather lasted not long. For in the year 713. the Armes and Heresies of the *Mahumetans*, began to vex the East Empire, and shortly after, the *Sarazens* wasted *Syria*, *Egypt*, the *Archipelago*, *Affricke*, *Sicil*, and *Spaine*. In the year 735. they vanquished *Narbon*, *Auignon*, *Tolouse*, *Burdeaux*, and the bordering Regions. Thus by little and little began the Westerne Empire to droop, and as it were, to draw towards his last age. As for the Easterne, it stood so weake and tottering, that withall the force it had, it was scarce able to defend *Constantinople* against the Armes of the *Sarazens*, much lesse to minister aide to the Westerne Prouinces. But in the year of our Lord 800. *Charles* the great, King of *France* obtained the Title of the Westerne Empire, and in some sort mitigated the furie of these barbarous Nations.

And thus the Westerne Empire stood then deuided: That *Naples* and *Sipont* East-ward, with *Sicill*, should belong to the Greeke Empire; *Bononia* should remaine to the *Lumbards*; the *Venetians* were Neuters: the *Popedome*, free; the rest *Charles* should possesse. *Blondus* saith, that the Emperesse *Iren*, gaue the first councill to this diuision, which afterwards was confirmed by *Nicephorus*. For before *Charles* his time, there was one forme of *Gouernment*; and the Lawes, Magistracies, and ordinances which were enacted for the welfare of one Empire, tended to to the good and honor of both, as to the members of one bodie; and if one Emperour died without issue, the whole Empire remained to the suruiuor. But when *Charles* the great was chosen Emperour of the West, there was no more regard taken of the East Empire, neither the Emperour of the East, had to do with the West, nor the West with the East. The Empire of the West, continued in this line aboue one hundred yeares, and failed in *Arnolph*, the last of that house. In the year 1453. *Mahumet* Prince of the *Turkes*, tooke *Constantinople*, and vtterly extinguished the succession of the Easterne Empire.

And as for the West (*viz: Italie*) the Emperour hath no more to doe therein, than hath a Pilgrime, who is admitted to visit the wonders of our Ladie of *Loretto*.

For, in the year of Christ 1002. all claime of inheritance reiected the Creation of the Emperour was granted to the free election of seven Princes,

Princes, tearmed Electors. The reason why the Empire became elective, which had so long continued hereditarie in the House of *Charles*, was, because *Otho* the 3. left no issue male. After whom the Westerne Empire was maruellously curtailed & diminished: nothing being left but *Germanie*, & a part of *Italie*. The Pope held *Romagnia*; the *Venetians* liued free, possessing great Dominions ioyned to their State: the *Normans* (taking *Naples* & *Sicill* from the *Greekes*) held thē in Fee of the Church, first vnder *Clement* the Antipope, then vnder *Nicholas* the 2. and his successors, who for their priuat gain ratified the former grāt of *Clement* Antipope.

In *Tuscane* and *Lumbarbie*, partly by the quarrels betweene *Henric* the fourth, *Henric* the fift, *Frederick* the first, and *Fredericke* the second, with the *Roman* Bishops: partly by reason of the valour of the Inhabitants, the Emperour reaped more labour than honour, more losse than profit. And therefore *Rodulphus* terrified with the misfortunes and crosses of his predecessors, had no great minde to trauell into *Italie*, but sold them their liberties for a small matter. They of *Luques* paid tenne thousand crownes; the *Florentines*, but sixe thousand. And so euerie State by little and little forsaking the Emperour, no part of *Italie* remained, but the bare Title. The Dukes of *Millaine* (and so euerie other State) vsurped what they could catch, without leaue asking, onely they desired their inuestiture of the Empire. But *Frances*, after the conquest thereof, did little regard this inuestiture, saying; *That hee was able to keepe it by the same meanes that he had got it.* The Princes beyond the Mountaines also withdrew their obedience; so that at this day the Empire is inclosed in *Germanie*: and why the Prouinces of *Germanie* are not vnder one gouernment, I will now relate.

And first of the Emperour, who being of the House of *Austrich*, and therein estated by the descent of manie Ancestors, yet is it in such a fashion, as whē *Adonias* laide claime to the kingdom, wherein an other fate confirmed, and perished for want of supportation. For neither is it hereditarie, nor after inauguration, can hee command, as other Kings, expecting or inforcing the reciprocall duties betweene Prince and subiect, no nor powerfull inough to countermaund the priuiledges of the Empire: nor to call the diet without the consent of the maior part of the Electors.

For some Prouinces are as it were members of the Empire, yet dis- Prouinces, vnited; for they neither doe, nor will acknowledge that they belong to Empire; as the Kings of *Denmarke* and *Sweathland*, the Duke of *Prussia* and *Swissers*, the *Netherlands*. Others confesse the Emperour for their Soueraigne Prince; but they come not to the diets of the Empire,

Empire, nor will beare the Taxe and Tallages of the Empire, as the Dukes of *Sauoy*, *Lorraine*, and the Princes of *Italie*. Other come to the diets and pay all impositions; those are properly the Princes and Cities of *Germanie*. But the King of *Bohemia*, by the grant of *Charles* the fourth, is exempted from all contributions. Other places do not only pay contribution, but likewise a peculier tribute to the Emperour; those are the Cities termed Imperiall.

Princes,

The Princes be so many and so mightie, and so beloued, that they attend in Court at pleasure, raise forces at pleasure, contest with the Emperour at pleasure, and supplie his wants of exchequer at pleasure. Some of them haue to doe both in the diets, and at the election of a new Emperour; those are the fixe Electors; three Church-men, and three Laymen, to whom vpon equalitie of voyces, the King of *Bohemia* is ioyned; Though he come not to the dyets, yet hath he his voice in the election. To speake in a word, those are truly termed the Cities and Princes of the Empire, who haue to do in the diets, and as members of one body, participate of good and euill, aduantage or disadvantage, throughout the Empire. These, liuing after the manner of a Common-wealth well vnited, make vse (in manner aforesaid) of the Emperour for their head, and common safetie.

Dyets or Parliaments,

The Ordinances of these dyets cannot be frustrated, but by another dyet; but of putting the decrees in full execution, the Emperour hath full & sole authoritie. And therefore as touching prae-eminence and dignitie, he is to be accounted the cheefe of the Christian Princes, as the person vpon whom the Maiestie of the Romaine Empire resteth, and who ought to defend the Church of God, the Catholique Faith, and to procure the peace and wel-fare of the whole Christian Common-wealth.

Situation.

Whereupon, sithence the glory thereof at this day consisteth onely in *Germanie*; It is good reason to say somewhat of this most ample and flourishing Prouince. It lyeth betweene *Odera* and *Mosa*; betweene *Viçtula* and *Aa*; and betweene the *Germanie* Sea; the *Balticke* Ocean, and the *Alpes*. The forme thereof is foure square, equall in length and breadth, stretching fixe hundred and fiftie miles every way. That it aboundeth with Corne, Caele, and Fish, let experience shew. For *Charles* the fifth, had vnder his Ensignes at *Vienna*, nintie thousand footmen, and thirtie fiue thousand horse. *Maximilian* the second at *Iauerin*, almost one hundred thousand footmen, and thirtie foure thousand horse, and yet no man complained of deerenesse or scarfitie. In the warre between *Charles* the fifth and the Protestants, for certaine months, one hundred

Plentie,

red and fiftie thousand men sustained themselves abundantly in the field.

And surely, of all Europe, it is the greatest cōtrie, and beautified with the best and richest store of cities, townes, castles, and religious places. And in that decorum & order (for in a maner see one, and see all) as if there had beene an vniuersall consent to haue squared them, like Courts, to one anothers proportion. Whereto may bee added a secret of morallitie; That the inhabitants for honestie of conuersation, probitie of manners, assurance of loialtie, and confidence of disposition (setting apart their imperfect customes of drinking) exceed our beliefe. For notwithstanding these their intemperat meetings, and fantasticalnesse in apparell; yet are they vnoffensie, conuersible and maintainers of their Honours and Families: wherein they step so far as if true gentrie were incorporat with them, and there had his principall mansion. And wanted they not an vnited and hereditarie succession of gouernment, hauing sometime an Emperour by partialitie of election, and sometime by the absolute command of the Pope; I should stand as forward as the best, to say with *Charles* the Emperour, That, they were indeed a valiant, a happie, and an honourable Nation. But in respect of these apparant and materiall defects, in some abatement of their ostentation, concerning their owne glorie, and the honour of Maiestie (in my iudgement) they should not doe amisse, to reforme the custome of entituling the younger sonnes of Dukes, Earles, and Barons, by the honourable titles of their Ancestors; especially (sithence the *Italians* in *Facetie* iest; That, these Earles of *Germanie*, the *Dons* of *Spaine*, the *Monsiers* of *France*, the Bishops of *Italie*, the Knights of *Naples*, the *Lairds* of *Scotland*, the *Hidalgos* of *Portugal*, the Nobles of *Hungarie*, and the yonger Brethren in *England*, make a verie poore compagnie. Otherwise, if nouelty transport you to view their Pallaces of Honour, you shall eftsoones be brought into their well fortified cities, wherein you shall find *Armorie*, *Munition* &c. with a presence of the verie Burgers excellently wel trained in Militarie discipline: you shall see braue musters of horse, with their exercises of hunting, hawking and riding; yea how euerie man liueth of his owne, the citizen in quiet, and the women blessed with plentifull issue.

The nature of this Climate is temperate enough, somewhat of the Climate coldest, yet tollerable and healthy. No place thereof, vnlesse by nature it Soyle, be vtterly barren, lieth vnmanured; insomuch, that few Remainders of that huge wood of *Hercinia*, are to be seene at this day, vnlesse in place where humane necessitie requireth their growing, or Nature hath made

the Earth fit for no other imployment; as are the *Blacke-wood*, the *Otonique Wood*, and the Woods of *Bohemia*. And yet doe they neither carrie that horrid face of thicknesse, as in old times, neither are they so vntrauelled, or vnhabitable, but exceeding full of Habitation, Hamlets, Villages, and Monasteries.

Commodities.

It is rich in Mines of Gold, Siluer, Corne, Vines, Bathes and all sorts of Mettall, and therein surpasseth the residue of the Prouinces of Europe. Nature hath also bestowed vpon the Vp-land countries, manie Springs and Pits of Salt Water, of which hard Salt is boiled. Neither is it lesse stored with Merchandize; for the Inhabitants more than anie other Nation, doe excell in curious workmanship, and mechanically inuenton: and it is so watered with Nauigable Riuer, that all sorts of Merchandize and Wares are with ease conuayed from one place to another. The greatest of them is *Danow*, next the *Rhene*, which runneth cleane through the countrie, from the South to the North, as the *Danow* from East to West. *Albis* riseth in *Bohemia*, passeth by *Misnia*, *Saxonie*, *Marchia*, and the ancient *Marquisat*. *Odera* springeth in *Moravia*, watereth *Silesia*, the two *Marquisates*, and *Pomeran*. Then followeth *Welara*, *Neccarus*, *Mosa*, *Moselia*, *Isara*, *Cenus*, *Varia*, the *Mase*. This diuideth *Germanie* into two parts, the higher and the lower: The high, stretcheth from the *Mase* to the *Alpes*: the low from the *Mase* to the Ocean. It is diuided into manie Prouinces, the chiefe whereof (I meane the true members of the Empire) are *Alsatia*, *Swenia*, *Bauaria*, *Austria*, *Bohemia*, *Moravia*, *Silesia*, *Lusatia*, the two *Marquisates*, *Saxonie*, *Misnia*, *Thuringia*, *Franconia*, *Hassia*, *Westphalia*, *Cleueland*, *Magunce*, *Pomeran*. In these Prouinces (besides *Belgia* and *Heluetia*) are esteemed to be ten Millions of men, and eightie great Cities; Villages innumerable, and those plentifully stored with all sorts of Mechanicall Occupations. Those which are seated neere Riuer, for the most part are builded of Stone; the Vp-land, part of Stone, and part of Timber. The Houses thereof are verie faire and high, the Streets straight, large, and paved with stone; yea, more neat and handsome than those of *Italie*. *Strabo* writeth, that the *Romans* excelled the *Gracians*, in cleanlinesse of their cities, by reason of their Channels to conuay away the soile; but at this day, the Dutch-men doe far exceed the *Romans* herein.

Cities.

The greatest number of the cities are free, and haue had the libertie; some for service done to the Empire, some for money: And some are so strong, so priuiledged, and so populous that out of obstinat repining at taxes and impositions, they haue manie times opposed against their naturall

naturall Lords, and in Hostile manner excludeth them from the superiority of commanding: witnesse the last contention betweene *Brunswick* Brunswick, Saxonie, and Denmarke. and the Duke: the power of the Duke of *Saxonic* in maintaining *Luther*: the exclamation of the cities and Princes, when the *Lantgrane* of *Hesse* was imprisoned; and the generall cause of the Protestants protested in euerie place, against Ecclesiasticall courses and Temporall threats.

These cities are of three sorts, viz. free cities (yet those stiled Imperiall) Hanse townes, & cities by inheritance immediatly holden of Princes and Prelats. The free cities are those which are by time and prescription immediatly subiect to the Emperor, and haue no other protector but him onely. In times past they haue bin accounted 96. now 60. gouerning themselves by their peculiar lawes, & bound no further, than to pay two five parts of whatsoeuer contribution is assessed in the assemblies. They pay tribute to the Emperour (some say) fiftene thousand Florens, but they haue for the most part sufficient reuenue of their owne, to defray the impositions.

Of Hanse cities there were 72. mutually bound by antient leagues to enioy common priuiledges and freedoms, both at home, and in foraine counties. In antient times they were of high estimation in England and other Prouinces, in regard of their numbers of shipping and sea-trade; whereby they stored all countries with their Easterne commodities, and serued Princes turnes in time of warre with vse of shipping: But at this day wee shall finde neither themselves, nor their meanes so great, that the English should either feare them, or fauour them, especially in cases of preiudice. I write this because of their continuall grudges and complaints against our Nation. For if the State vpon occasion (as of late yeares) after the example of other Princes, should forbid them all offensive trade into *Spaine* (which is their chiefe support) they would in short time be quit of that indifferent porportion, which as yet remaineth. As for that true estimation which is so much spoken of beyond-sea, and vaunted of in Historie, almost nothing remaineth at this present but bare Report. For of those, which in some good measure seeme to hold vp their heads, and appeare by their Deputies in their assemblies, they are seldome of one minde, as being in truth vnable (vnlesse with much adoe) to bring vp the charges, and contributions necessarie and incident for the defence and maintenance, of their leagues, priuiledges and trade, in foreine parts, and at home.

Maydenburg is one of these Hanse townes, and the countie wherein it

standeth is also *Maydenburg*. It is one of the most ancient Townes of *Germanie*, and conteineth in circuit about three miles. The streetes are verie large, but durtie; and the houses built partly of stone and partly of timber, manie of them being ancient and faire. The walles are strong, & vpon them are moued manie good pieces of brasle Ordnance. It hath ten Churches, the Inhabitants for the most part being Lutherans. It standeth vpon the riuer *Elue*, ouer which it hath a faire and large bridge of timber.

Hamburg standing in the Land of *Holst* vpon the riuer of *Elue* also. It is 4. miles in compasse, & of great strength, and much resorted vnto by foraine nations for traffique of Merchandize. In it are 9. Churches, and manie large streets, which are verie durtie in foule weather. The greatest part of the inhabitants are Brewers. For here are said to be 777. Brewers, 40. Bakers, 2. Lawyers, and one Physition: for most of their quarrels and contentions, as they begin in drinke, so they end in drink. And being sick and ill at ease, their phisike is to fill their guts with *Hamborow* Beere. If that helpe not, their case is desperat. It is one of the *Hanse* towne also, and the people are Lutherans.

Stoad, being neither faire nor great, standeth within the iurisdiction of the Bishop of *Breame*, but not subiect vnto him, by reason it is one of the *Hanse* townes. It standeth about 2 English miles from the riuer of *Elue*, and hath a small creeke which runneth through the citie, into the riuer, & beareth small barques for transportation of Merchandize. In it are foure Churches, and a Monasterie of Lutheran Friers.

Of other goodlie Cities, there are a far greater number, some by inheritance belonging to the Temporall Princes, and some to the Spirituall.

In criminall causes they inflict most sharpe torments, and vnusuall kindes of death; a signe of the crueltie of their Natures. They were the inuentors of Printing, of Gunnes, and of Clockes, things of notable vse for mankind.

The people is diuided into foure sorts, Husband-men, (they beare no office) Citizens, Noble-men, and Prelats; The last three sorts make the assemblie, and States of the Empire.

Of Prelats, the Archbishops Electors haue the chiefest place. The Archbishop of *Ments* is Chācellor for the Empire, the Bishop of *Colou* is Chancellor of *Italie*, & the Bishop of *Treuers* is Chācellor of France. The Archbishop of *Saltzburg* is of greatest iurisdiction & reueneue. The Bishop of *Maidēburg* writeth himself primat of *Germany*. *Breme* & *Hāburg* had iuridictions: next follow about 40. other Bishops, the Great Maister

Spirituall
Princes,

Maister of the *Dutch* order, and the Prior of the Knights of *Ierusalem*: then seauen *Abbots*, and they likewise are States of the Empire.

Of secular Princes, the King of *Bohemia* is principall, who is chiefe Taster: the Duke of *Saxonie*, Marshall: the Marquesse of *Brandburg*, high Chamberlaine: the Earle *Palatine*, Sewer. Besides these places, there are thirtie other Dukes, amongst whom, the Arch-Duke of *Austria* holdeth the highest place: and of these Dukes, the King of *Denmarke* by his tenure of the Dukedome of *Holsatia*, is reckoned to be one. The Marquises, Lantgraues, Earles, and Barons are innumerable.

Temporall
Princes.

It is thought that the Empire receiueth euerie way aboute seauen millions, which is a great matter: yet besides this ordinarie, the people, not ouer pressed as in *Italie*, doe pay other great subsidies to their Princes in times of danger. The Empire was bound (at leastwise accustomed) to furnish the Emperour, when he went to Rome to be crowned with twentie thousand footmen, and foure thousand Horse, and to maintaine them for eight monthes, and therefore it was called *Romanum subsidium*. The Reuenues of the cities and Lay-Princes, haue beene greatly augmented since the suppressing of Poperie, and bringing in of new impositions, which taking their beginning from *Italie*, (euill examples spread far) quickly passed ouer to *France* and *Germanie*. In times of necessitie great taxes are laide vpon the whole Empire, and leuied extraordinarily; And that they may be gathered with the greater ease, *Germanie* is parted into ten Diuisions (or circuits) which haue their particular assemblies for the execution of the Edicts made in the generall diets of the Empire.

Reuenue.

As concerning their multitudes, it is thought, that the Empire is able to afford two hundred thousand Horse and Foot, which the warre (before spoken of) may prooue to be true: As likewise the forepassed warres of *France* and *Belgia*, which were euer continued in those two Prouinces, for the most part, with *Germanie* souldiours. At one time, *Wolfgang* Duke of *Bipont* led into France, an Armie of twelue thousand foote-men, and eight thousand horse-men in behalfe of the Protestants; and at the same time, the Count *Mansfield* was leader of fiue thousand horse-men of the same Nation, in behalfe of the Catholiques. *William* of *Nassaw* had in his Armie eight thousand *Germanie* horse-men, and tenne thousand foote-men: the Duke of *Alua* had at the same instant 300. What should I speake of the numbers that entred *Flanders* with Duke *Casmere*? Or those that entred *France* vnder the same Leader, in the yeare of our Lord 1578. Or to what end should I make mention of that Armie, whereof part serued *Henrie* the fourth, part the league?

Forces.

But to prooue that this Nation must be verie populous, seeing that warres are continually open in some one or other, part of Christendom; and no action vndertaken therein, wherein great numbers of *Germans* are not waged, and entertained. To speake nothing of the *Netherlands*, who in times past, haue resisted the whole power of France, with an Armie of fourscore thousand men; or of the *Swissers*, who in their owne defence, are thought able to raise an Armie of one hundred and twentie thousand souldiours; I will onely put you in minde of that expedition, which they made out of their owne Territories into *Lumbar-die*, in defence of that State, against *Francis* the French King, with an Armie of fiftie thousand foote-men.

The best foot-men of *Germanie* are those of *Tiroll*, *Sweuia*, and *West-phalia*: the best horse-men those of *Brunswicke*, *Cleneland*, and *Francia*.

Of Weapons, they handle the Sword and the Pike, better than the *Harquebuze*. In the field they are verie strong, as well to charge as to beare the Shocke: for Order is of great effect, which is as it were naturall vnto them, with a stately pace and firme standing. They are not accounted off for the defence of fortresses; and for their corpulent bodies, I hold them not fit for the assault of a breach. And therefore they are to be accounted rather resolute and constant, then fierce and courageous; for they will neuer come to the seruice, wherein courage & magnanimitie is to be shewed. After the victorie, they doe kill all whom they meet, without difference of age, sex, or calling: If the warre be drawne out at length, or if they be besiedged, they faint with cowardize. In Campe, they can indure no delaies, neither know they how to temporize. If their first attempts fall not out to their mindes, they are at their wits end and loose courage; if they once begin to run, they will neuertirne againe. He that retaines them must be at extraordinarie charges and great trouble, by reason of their wiues who consume so much prouision, that it is a verie hard thing to prouide it, almost vnpossible to preferue it; and without this prouision they stand in no stead. Their Horses are rather strong than couragious: and because of tenne, which goe to the warre, eight are prest from the plough, they are of small seruice, and when they see their bloud, their heart quaieth. The Spanish Genets in this case waxe more force.

In Sea-forces they are not much inferiour to their Land-forces, although they vse no sea-fights: the cities of *Hamburg*, *Lubecke*, *Rostoch*, and some other places, are able to make a hundred ships; some say one hundred and fiftie, equall to the forces of the Kings of *Denmarke* and *Sweath-*

Sweathland. When these strong and invincible forcible forces are vnited, they feare no Enemie; and in imminent perrill they are sure of the aide of the Princes of *Italie*, *Sauoy*, and *Lorraine*; for these Princes neuer forsooke the Empire in necessitie. To the *Zegethan* warre, *Emanuel* Duke of *Sauoy*, sent sixe hundred *Argolitrees*. *Cosme*, Duke of *Florence* three thousand foote-men, paide by that State. *Alphonfus* the second, Duke of *Ferrara*, was there in person with fiftene hundred horse-men; better horse-men there were not in the whole Campe. *William* Duke of *Mantua*, was there also with a gallant troupe of footmen; and *Henrie* of *Lorraine* Duke of *Guise* had there three hundred Gentlemen. The Common-weales of *Genes* and *Lucca* assisted them with money. With the aide of these Princes, and with those whom *Pius* the fifth sent to his successours, *Maximillian* the second, had in the the field one hundred thousand footmen, and fiue and thirtie thousand horse. Anno 1566. the States of the Empire granted him an assistance of fortie thousand footmen, and eight thousand Horsmen for eight months, and twentie thousand footmen, and foure thousand Horsmen for three yeares next following.

And now because the Westerne Empire hath continued in the most *Austrich*. Noble Familie of the House of *Austrich*, and eight Emperours haue successiuey succeeded one another of that line; for the delight of the Reader, we will speake somewhat thereof.

This house grew famous almost about the same time that the *Ottoman* Prince began his Empire, and (as it may seeme) was raised vp of God, to stand as a Wall or Bulwarke against these Turkes and Infidels.

Phillip the first, King of *Spaine*, Arch-Duke of *Austrich*, &c. had two Sonnes, *Charles* the fifth, afterward Emperour, and *Ferdinand* the first, King of *Romans*. To *Charles* as to the eldest, fell *Belgia* and *Spaine*, with their dependances; *Ferdinand* succeeded him in his Lordships of *Germanie*, as *Austrich*, *Boheme*, *Tiroll*, and other Prouinces, whereunto by the marriage of his Wife *Anne*, *Hungarie* was adioyned. This *Ferdinand* left three sonnes behind him, who although they diuided their inheritance into three parts, yet their successours euen to this day, did and doe gouerne them as one intire gouernment; their counsels are one; their minds one, their designements one, most liuely representing the ancient *Gerion*, where for the common safetie, if anie part be afflicted, euerie member runneth to the succour of the other, as if it were to their peculiar tranquillitie. Their dominion stretcheth so large, and of such force, that if (by reason of the great tract of Land lying betweene the *Carpathie* Mountaines and *Segonia*) they did not border vpon the

great Turke (who alwaies constraineth them to stand vpon their guard; and to be at excessiue charges) no Potentate throughout the Christian World, could goe beyond them for numbers of people, for Wealth and Treasure, or for magnificent cities. Anie man may perceiue this to be true, that considereth the distance from *Tergiste* to the Borders of *Lusatia*; from *Tissa* to *Nobus*; from *Canisia*, to *Constantia* vpon the Lake *Podame*.

In this progresse are contained *Lusatia*, *Silesia*, *Bohemia*, *Moravia*, *Austria*, and a great part of *Hungarie*, (Territories large and ample,) abounding with people, corne, and riches. Then follow *Stiria*, *Carinthia*, *Carniola*, the countries of *Canisia*, *Tiroll*, *Slesia*, the Princedomes of *Swenia*, *Alsatia*, *Brisgonia*, and *Constantia*.

Bohemia.

The Kingdome of *Bohemia*, being in a maner round, is incompassed with great mountaines and woods, and conteineth in the whole circuit 550. English miles. Those mountaines (as I haue said elsewhere) as also the whole soile, are pleasant and fruitfull, abounding with corne, wood, wine and grasse, and affoord gold, siluer, copper, lead and iron in great quantities. Onely here is no salt, but such as is brought out of *Germanie*. The countie is so populous, and so replenished with buildings in all places, that here are credibly affirmed 29237. cities, townes and villages to be numbred. Others say, 780, castles and walled townes, and 32. thousand villages. Here is also plentie of fowle, and great store of fresh water-fish, by reason of the greate Lakes, which are found in manie places of this Kingdome. The people are for the most part Lutherans, and their language is more than halfe Polish. They are a free people and after the death of their King, they may make choice of whō they will to be their Gouverneur. So did they lately choose *Mathias*. And for their more strenght and better securitie against the Romanists, they linked themselues with the *Slesians* their next neighbours in a perpetuall and firme bond of amitie, offensive, and defensive against al men whatsoeuer.

Moravia.

Moravia for the bignesse thereof affoordeth more corne, than anie countie of Europe. It aboundeth also with good and pleasant wine, like vnto Rhenish: and is wonderfully replenished in all parts with faire, cities, townes and villages, all built of stone or bricke. It is a free State like *Poland*, and may make choice of whom they will to be the Lord, whose stile is to be called *Margraue* of *Moravia*. And for that informer times, the Emperor and *Mathias* his brother offered them some wrongs concerning religion, they haue sithence contracted a league offensive, and defensive with the Nobilitie of *Hungarie* and *Austria*, aswel against the

the inuasions of the *Turke*, as the oppressions of the *Romanists*. Amongst these Prouinces, *Silesia*, and *Lusatia*, are as large as *Bohemia*, but in strength and numbers of people, farre inferiour. These two Prouinces are 400. miles long, and 120. broad: they abound with excellent good horsemen and footmen. The Inhabitants of *Lusatia* (where twentie thousand men fit for warre may be gathered) are accounted as good footmen, as anie other: *Stiria* is rich in Mines of Siluer and Iron, threescore miles broad, and a hundred and ten long: *Carinthia* a hilly and woodie countrie, is seauentie five miles long, and fiftie five broad: *Carniola*, with the bordering countries vp to *Tergiste*, is 150. miles long, and fortie five broad. They are plentifull of Corne, Wine, Flesh, and Wood.

The countrie of *Tirol* is full of Mines of Siluer and Salt-pits, and is *Tirol*.
eightene *Germane* miles long and broad. The Territories *Swenia*, *Swenia*,
Alsatia, & *Rhetia*, do pay little lesse than two millions & a half of ordi-
narie reuenue, and so much extraordinarie: besides the eightene Can-
tons of *Rhetia*, are vnder the same iurisdiction. They are so well peo-
pled, that vpon occasion, they are able to leuie an hundred thousand
footmen, and thirtie thousand Horse. I know no other Prouince in
Europe able to say the like. And therefore the Emperour is not so
weake a Prince, as those, ignorant of the State of Kingdomes who doe
suppose him to be, reporting his Territories to be small, vnprovidid of
necessaries, poore in money, and barren of people. But this is certaine,
that as he is Lord of a large dominion, fertile, rich, and infinitie of peo-
ple; so let euerie man thinke, that by the neighbourhood of the *Turke*,
bordering vpon him from the *Carpathie* Mountaines to the *Adriatique*
Sea, the forces of a mightier Prince may seeme small and be overlaid.
For what Prince is there bordering vpon so puissant an enemy, but ei-
ther by building of fortresses, or by entertaining of Garrisons, is not al-
most beggered; I will not say in time of warre, but euen during the se-
curest peace; especially considering that the forces of the *Turke* are al-
waies readie, strong, and cheerefull; yea, better furnished in the time of
peace, than anie other Nation in the hottest furie of warre? Wherefore it
stands him vpon, who is a borderer vpon so powerfull an Enemy, either
for feare or ielousie, for to be euer watchfull, and to spare no charges, as
doth the Emperour; retaining in wages continually twentie thousand
souldiours, keeping Watch and Ward vpon the borders of *Hungarie*.
These aske great expences, and yet lesse than these, are not to be defrai-
ed for the strenthning of other places; besides other expences not meet
here to be spoken of.

The

Saxonic.

The Dominion of the Dukes of *Saxonic*, containeth the Marquisat of *Misen*, the Lant-graue-dome of *Turinge*, *Voitland*, part of neather *Saxonic* (almost within two Dutch Miles of *Maidburg*) part of the Lands of the Earles of *Mansfielt*, pawned to *Augustus* for some summes of Money, and a parcell of *Frankhenland*. The whole Countrie is seated almost in the midst of *Germanie*, on all sides very far from the Sea, except *Voitland*, very plaine and Champion, sprinkled heere and there with some few of them nauigable. The chieftest of them all is the *Elue*, to which all the rest pay the tribute of their waters. All of it together is imagined to be in bignesse about a third part of England, or somewhat more.

Scituation.

The climate in temperature is not much differing from ours of England. It confineth on the South-east with the Kingdome of *Bohem*, and is parted with many high hils and great woods : on the South with the Bishop of *Bamberg*s Countrie, and on the South-west with the Lant-graue of *Hesse*: on the North and North-west with the Counts of *Mansfielt*, the Princes of *Anhalt*, and the Citie of *Maidburgh* (of which, this Duke writeth himselfe *Burgrau*e, and the Marquesse of *Brandeburgh*s eldest son, Arch-Bishop) yet is it not vnder either Iurisdiction, but freely gouerned within it selfe : On the North-east lieth the Marquesdome of *Brandeburgh* and the *Lansknights*, who partly belong to the Marquesse, and partly to the Emperour.

Borderers.

It is in peace at this time (as all *Germanie* beside) with all the Neighbour-Princes. Betweene the *Bohemians* and them, there is a great league, but betwixt the Emperour and their Dukes great iealousies vnderhand. The Duke of *Saxonic*, the Marquises of *Brandeburg*, and the Lant-graues of *Hesse*, haue many yeares (they and their ancestrie) beene linked together, and both *Lutherans*, howbeit the Lantgraue is thought to fauor of Caluenisme. The Bishop of *Bamberge*, both himselfe and his Countrie are all Catholikes, but of no power to hurt, though they were Enemies. The Counts of *Mansfielt*, haue a grudge to the house of *Saxonic*, because most of their land being pawned to *Augustus*, is, as they pretend, wrongfully detained, the debt being long since satisfied : but they are so many, and so poore, as they may well haue the will, but not the power, to annoy *Saxonic*; in Religion, Catholiques.

Anhalt.
Mansfield.

The Princes of *Anhalt* (as also the Counts of *Mansfield*) are homagers to -his Duke, but of small power or riches. In Religion *Caluenists*.

Force.

For home defence and strength, this Dukedome is so strong by nature,

ture, on *Boheme* side, and vpon the frontiers, and within Land so well fortified by Art, with reasonable strong Cities, Townes, and Castles; so well peopled, and all places of strength so well looked vnto, and kept in so good order, that it seemeth provided to withstand the Enemie, not onely of any one, but of all the Neighbour-Prouinces. The greatest and cheefest Citie within this Dukedome, is *Erdford* seated in *Turing*, Erdford. not subiect to the Duke, but a free and Hanstowne; the next vnto it is *Leipsique*, the Metropolis of *Misen*; a Towne very well seated, both for profit and pleasure, yet of no great strength, though it held out *John Fredericke*, a sledge of two or three monthes with small disadvantage: of building very faire and stately, most of the houses of seuen, eight, or nine Stories high, but all of Brick and no stone. It is greater than *Dresden*, and hath many faire and large streetes, and yet inferiour in beautie and strength: for the Duke will not suffer the inhabitants neither to fortifie nor to repaire the walles, lest they should againe rebell, as in former times: within the walles are 900. Houses; it hath three Churches, five Colledges, and about 400. Students; as also a faire Castle with a small garrison to keepe the Towne in obedience. To it resort diuers Marchants for trafique, and many Gentlemen to learne the Language.

There are besides, diuers other prettie and reasonable strong Townes, but aboue all, *Dresden* the ancient seat of the Dukes of *Saxonie*: It standeth in the Countie of *Misnia*, round and conteining in compasse about the walles, the circuite of two English miles. These Wals are of faire and large squared stones, well countermined with earth on the inside, and wonderfully fortified with seuen strong Bulwarkes, and as many great Mounts on the outside. On the which (as also on the wals) are one hundred and fiftie goodly peeces of Brasse artillerie, with a garrison of five hundred well appointed Soldiours in continuall pay. This Citie within the wals hath eight hundred houses, foure Churches, three Gates, two faire Market places, and a great Bridge of stone ouer the *Elue*. Dresden.

The Moate which incompasseth the wall is deepe and cleere without any filth or weedes, and is on all sides walled with faire stones to the bottome. The Streets are not many, but very faire, the houses not very great, but of one vniformitie, and pleasing to behold. In most of the streetes runneth from the Riuer a small streame of water, and in many of these streetes are tubs placed vpon sleds full of water, alwaies readie to be drawne by horses or men, whether occasion of fire should craue imployment. For preuention whereof they maintaine men of purpose to walke euery night in the streets, and some to watch carefully on the highest Towres. The pallace of the Duke is of great beautie and magnificentie:

iestie; the Chambers are flowerd with coloured Marbles, and garnished round with Stags heads of extraordinarie greatnesse; many bedstedds and tables also are of diuers colored marbles, most curiously carued and polished. Within the Pallace is an Armorie for horsemen of vnspeakeable magnificence, with a great number of horses curiously framed in wood, and painted to the life, with as many wodden men on their backs, furnished most richly with all furniture fit for a horse-man to vse in the warres. Amongst these are the the liuelie portratures of many of the Dukes of *Saxonie* carued and painted to life, couered with such robes, armour and furniture for their horses made of gold and siluer, and set with pretious stones as they vsed to weare when they were liuing.

There are also thirtie six sleds for pleasure of great beautie, and rare inuention, with two carued and painted horses to euery of them, richly furnished with siluer bits, and the bridles and caparisons imbrodered with siluer and gold, hanging full of siluer bells according to the German custome. Heere are also many Chambers full of Masking garments, and other abiliments for triumphes and pastimes both for Land and Water. In this Armorie also, are many costly weapons, both offensive and defensive; such, so good, and so rich, as monie can procure, or the wit of man inuent.

Vnder this Armorie standeth a most princely Stable arched with stone, & supported with goodly pillars of marble. Out of euery of which pillars runneth sweet and fresh water for the daily vse of the stable: The racks are of yron, the mangers plated ouer with copper, the stalles for the Horses of strong carued timber; euery Stall hauing a faire glazed window, and euery window a greene curteine. The ground betweene the stalles is paved with faire broad stones. In this stable are 128. horses, and yet no wet nor filth to be perceiued, nor dung to be seene or smelt.

Neere vnto the Pallace standeth the Arsenall, wherein is seene such plentie of great Artillerie, yellow as gold, such strange Engins, and such wonderfull qualities of all kind of Armour and Munition whatsoever, necessarie for the Warres, or a long siedge, that for Land seruice, it farre excelleth the Arsenal of *Venice*, or any other Store-house in Europe, able to arme 300000. Horse and Foot at a daies warning. And as the Armorie and Arsenall excell all others, so the Citie for its quantitie (in my iudgement) is to accounted the fayrest and strongest of Europe, and that far surpassing *Noremberg*, *Anwerp*, or *Lubech*, at this day reckoned to be the prime Cities of Christendome. Besides this Armorie, all the

the Cities and Townes haue their Armories very well kept and provided : neither are the Noblemen, Gentlemen, and Countrie people, vnfurnished.

There are in *Saxonie* three Vniuersities, *Wittenberg*, *Liepsique*, and *Iene*. The first is supposed to bee : the prime Vniuersitie of all *Germanie*. It is about two miles compasse within the wals, being neither strong nor faire. In it are only two Churches, and foure Colledges, being neither rich nor beautifull, and in them about 1000. Students of all sorts. It hath a strong Bridge of Timber ouer the *Elue*, and a faire Castle or Pallace appertaining to the Duke. In the Church of this Castle are interred the bodis of *M. Luther*, and *P. Melancthon*, vnder two faire Marble stones with superscriptions of copper vpon them, and their pictures from head to foot in great tables set vp by them.

Vniuersities.
Wittenberg.

The other two, haue some sixe or seuen hundred Schollers a peece; but in Colledges, Lectures, Order, proceeding, and all things else, infinitely inferiour, either to *Cambridge* or *Oxford*: There are all professions in each of them, but *Wittenberg* is esteemed the chiefe Seminarie of Diuines; *Iene* of *Ciuilians*, and *Liepsique* of Philosophie.

Iene.
Liepsique.

All the Dukedome, but especially *Misen*, is one of the pleasantest and fruitfulest parts of all *Germanie*, and in truth, much exceeding any that I saw, but only the Dukedome of *Wittenberg*. It hath great store of very good Corne of all sorts, reasonable good and conuenient store of most sort of Cattle : of Horses they haue plentie, and those strong and tall of stature, but fitter to draw, then to serue, yet very well fitting their maner of seruice, being heauily armed (*viz.*) with a Petronell, a case of Pistols, a Courtle-axe, & diuers times with a Battle-ax; ouer and aboue all which, his Horse must be able to carrie, two or foure Bottles of Wine or Beere, in his great heauie Saddle, least in any case, his Maister should faint for want of liquor in his iourney. But their best races they haue out of the neither *Saxonie*, where there be exceeding store. The Bullocks are but small and nothing good. Of sheepe they haue in some places indifferent store, especially within these few yeares; of body little and but reasonable good, yet so, as bearing indifferent good wooll; either the sheepe themselves or their fleeces, are bought vp by the Netherlands, and imploied in the making of cloth to some preiudice of ours in England.

Fertilitie.

They haue great store of Mines of most sorts, as Siluer, Copper, Tin, Lead, Iron, and (as they say) some Gold. The cheefe places of the Siluer Mines, are *Tiberg*, *Ausberg*, *Mariaberg*, and other Townes at the foot of the *Bohemian Mountains*. In *Vostland* there are also some

Riches.

Hlis

Hills verie rich in Mineralls, especially, one called which being much celebrated for hauing some riuers running out of it, East, West, North, and South, is exceedingly spoken of for Siluer and Gold Mines, insomuch as in a Storie written of the Mines of *Saxonie*, called *Berg-Cronicon*, it is affirmed, that this Hill yeelded to the Dukes of *Saxonie* in eight yeares, twentie two Millions of Florens, onely for the Tenth. Besides these Mines, the Duke hath the Mine of *Mansfelt*, pawned to diuers Merchants of *Noringberge* and *Augusta*, and are thought to be worth yearely 30000.li. sterling. It is held that all his mines of *Saxonie* (besides those of *Mansfelt*) yeeld the Duke one yeare with another, 700000. Florens, which is about 130000. thousand pound sterling.

Commodities.

Other commodities of worth they haue none, but flax, and a kind of thick course cloth, which by reason of the exceeding falsifying & decrense of ours, groweth euery day into more and more request with them.

People.

The whole dukedome, but especially *Misen*, is verie populous, full of Cities, walled Townes, and countrie Villages, and all of them very well peopled. It is certainly affirmed, that the Duke at twentie daies warning, is able to make an armie of 80000. men, very well armed and furnished.

Maners of the people.

The people generally are reasonable faire of complexion and flaxen haired, but not well fauoured, either men or women. In behauiour, as ciuile as any part of *Germanie* whatsoever, especially the women, who taking themselues (as they are indeed) for the fairest and best spoken of all *Dutchland*, are in their apparrell and entertainment indifferently gracefull. For their disposition (as indeed almost all the rest of the *Germans*) is very honest, true, and not ordinarily giuen to any notorious vice, but drinking, nor willingly offering any iniurie, either to their own countrie-men, or to strangers, but when they are drunke; and then very quarrellsome, and (as it is said) more valiant, than when they are sober. Wise in mediocritie, but not of any great sharpnesse or subtiltie of wit: Of bodie strong, and big boned, especially the countrie people, but of a kind of lumpish, heauie, and vnactiue strength, fitter for husbandrie, and other toilesome labour, than fighting.

In their chiefe cities some few giue themselues at their great and principall feasts to a little vse of their peece, in shooting at a marke; but otherwise, by reason of their long peace, altogether vntrained to the wars, or any warlike exercises: But the vse of the pot serueth for all other pastimes, and delights, in which notwithstanding they haue very smale store of wine, yet they are nothing inferiour to any other part of *Dutchland*.

They

They haue great store of artizans, and handy-crafts men of all sorts, but in their seuerall trades, nothing so neat and artificiall as the Netherlanders and English, or those of *Norimberg* and *Augusta*. Of Merchants they haue great store, especially in *Liespiege*, and other chiefe cities, and those for the most part very rich, wherof this reason is yeelded; that though they haue no commodities, saue those before mentioned, nor are neere the Sea, or anie great riuers, (by which they may haue cheape & commodious importation or exportation of wares,) yet *Germanie* is so seated in the midst and heart of all Christendome, and *Saxonie* in the bowels of it: as by continuall trafficking with *England*, *France*, the *Low-Countries*, *Italie*, *Poland*, and all the *Easterne Countries*, and by dayly conueying all the commodities of each Countrie ouer-land to others that want them, they grow very wealthie.

Artizans.
Marchants.

For such as giue themselues to the wars, and haue no other profession of liuing, though generally all the *Germans* are mercenarie souldiers (and so their seruice accordingly) yet I heard of as few in this prouince, as in any part of *Germany*; whether it were that the wars of *Hungarie* imploied them all, or that other Princes growing wearie of their seruice, their occupation began to decay.

Touching the Nobilitie, I can say nothing in particular of their numbers, names, titles, dispositions, &c. onely in generall, there be Earles and Barons. Some are meere subiect to the Duke, others are Borderers, which are onely but homagers; as the Princes of *Anhalt*, the Counts of *Mansfelt*, the Counts of *Swarzenberge*, &c. Of Gentiles there are good stoore, to the number as it is suppoled of three or 4000. at the least, by which meanes the Duke is alwaies in his Warres well furnished with Horse-men, euery one, one with another, bringing three or foure good Horses with him to the field.

Nobles.

The Nobilitie and Gentilitie generally through all *Germany*, and particularly in this Dukedome, haue great royalties and reuenues. The lands, goods, and chiefe houses, are vsually equally diuided amongst all the Children, reseruing but little prerogative to the eldest Brother. The Honours likewise discend equally to the whole Familie; all the Sons of Dukes, being Dukes; and all the Daughters, Duchesses, all the the Sonnes of Counts, Counts; and the Daughters, Countesses, &c.

They are exceedingly had (both Noblemen and Gentlemen) in extraordinary reuerence & estimation amongst the vulgar people, which both in their Gate and Seates in publique places, they verie religiously maintaine. In time of Peace they are but little vsed in coun-

sell

sell or matters of State, being almost all vutterly vnquallified, either with wisdome, learning, or experience; onely contenting themselues with shaddow of honor which their ancestors haue left them. And if they haue beene famous (as by the raising of their Houses to that greatnesse it should seeme they haue beene) they imitate them in nothing, but in onely continuing their so long, and so holily obserued order of carowling.

In time of warre (which hath beene for many yeares till the late warres of *Hungarie*, very small, or rather none) because of their greatnesse, both in Reuenues and number of Tenants, their seruice hath been vsually imployed: but now by reason of their long disvse of Martiall matters (which therefore seemed to make some amends, or at least some excuse of their other defects) they are become, if I gesse not amisse, not so fit for their greatnesse, as vnfit for their want of knowledge, euerie way, either in experience or contemplation. And truly I cannot so much as heare almost of any of them, either Noble or Gentlemen, that giue themselues to any Noble studies, exercises, or delights, except now and than to the hunting of the wilde Boare; by which, and by accustoming their heads to the wearing of their heauie thrummed Cappes, in stead of a head-peece, they take themselues to be greatly inabled for seruice.

Valour.

For the Valour and warlike disposition of the people of this Dukedome, I cannot commend them aboue the rest of their Countreymen; neither shall I, as I thinke, need to stand much vpon that point, sithence their actions shall plead their sufficiencie in generall. The great matters which they haue vndertaken, and the little that they haue performed will produce sufficient testimonie. What they did one against another in the time of *Charles* the fift, is not much materiall to proue their courage; since without question, Bulrushes against Bulrushes, are very good Weapons. But in the same time, and vnder the same Duke and Capitaine, they performed very little against the *Spaniards*, though with far ouer-ballanced numbers, as in diuers places of *Sleyden*, manifestly appeareth: Touching their actions in the Low-Countries, in the Prince of *Orange* his time, and in France during the ciuile wars, and sithence for the King, (if I mistake it not) it hath alwaies beene praise enough for them, if they haue helped to keepe their Enemies from doing any great matters, though they haue performed nothing themselues. Of latter time they haue rather increased than diminished this opinion in the warstennyeares since in *Hungarie*, besides many other times of notable disorders amongst them by false Alarmes. They fled most shamefully

fully out of the Island of *Komora*, being charged by a few *Tartars*, who with infinit hazzard and inconuenience swam over a part of the *Danubie* to come at them. The Sommer after, Count *Charles* of *Maunnsfelt*, their Generall, had them in such ieaiousie, as when the *Turkes* onely with some twelue or foureteene thousand men, came to victuall *Gran*, and past almost close by their Tents, and they being at least fiftie thousand strong, he durst not set vpon them till they retired, hauing performed the proiect of their iourney, least the *Germans* (who were by farre the greater part of his Armie) being lustily charged, might giue backe, and so indanger the whole Campe. To omit manie other particularities, about this point, too long to dwell vpon in this discourse, they are no more to be commended for their discipline, than for their valour. For though they be commonly verie well armed, and keepe indifferent good order in their march, yet are they for the most part no more watchfull and prouident in their campe, than if they were safely intrenched in an Ale-house. Quarrellsome exceedingly, and in a manner giuen to drinking continually, and almost euerie common souldiour carrying with him his Shee-baggage, besides his baggage and other furniture. For their vnreasonable spoyling and free-booting, the French Stories make sufficient relation; and it hath alwaies beene hard to discern, whether those Nations that haue called them to their succour, haue received more detriment by them, or by their professed Enemies. For instance of their spoyling humour, the Marquesse of *Turloch*, taking in the Marquedome of *Baden*, and being constrained to keepe some foure or fise thousand men in sundrie places in garrison, they all offered (though he gaue them verie extraordinarie pay) to serue without anie Wages, so they might haue free libertie of pillage. Therefore let it not seeme strange, that I produce these generall examples of this Nation, for though in diuers Prouinces they are much differing in complection, in stature, and manie other circumstances, yet for war, especially for their vices in warre, they are in a manner all of the same ayre.

They haue greatly affected the English Nation, but of late, were they not a little distated, vpon pretence of iniuries offered them about prizes, sea-matters, and suppressing their priuiledges of the *Stillyard*; wherein though they themselues (as being Inland people, and trading little by sea) are nothing interessled; yet their neighbours of *Hamborough*, *Lubeck*, and diuers other Hantse-townes, making all these matters far greater and worse than indeed they are, haue spread euen into their mindes, the contagion of their owne grudge.

O

The

Councell.

The Councell of *Saxonie*, are at this time few. Amongst them, there are some that are of the Nobilitie, Councillors rather in name, than effect. For in that they liue in their countries, they are sildome present at anie consultations, and meddle little in the ordinarie gouernment of the State. The rest, after the manner of *Germanie*, are most Ciuilians. The whole gouernment of the affaires (as also the Court) is verie priuate. Other particulars I cannot specifie, neither in truth if a man consider their outward portlinesse, though otherwise I doubt not but wise enough, doe they merit the setting downe of anie. For being (as all *Germans* are) plaine and homely in their behauiour and entertainment, they are both in their retinue, apparell, and all things else verie sutable; so that not onely in this court, but in the Courts of diuers great Princes of *Germanie*, they go vsually apparelled in black Leather, or Linnen dyed black, the chiefest hauing only an addition, for ornamēt sake, of the Princes picture in gold, or a chaine of one or two boughts, whereby they seeme such letherne and linnen Gentlemen, as, if they were in England, all men would take them for honest factors vnto Merchants, or else some vnder Clerke of an Office, rather than such great and chiefe Councillors to so great Princes and estates. But as it should be great folly for a man to iudge the pretiousnesse of a Jewell by the case wherein it is kept, & much greater to esteeme it by the couer of the case; euen so, by the same reason, it were an equall indiscretion, to estimate a mans worth, either by his bodie or apparrell, the one being but an earthen case of the heauenly minde; the other, but the outward couer of that worth-lesse boxe. So on the other side, it is an vndeniable certaintie; that not onely the common people and strangers, but euen wise men are moued and stirred vp with outward shewes; and their mindes according to those exterior matters, prepared to receiue a deepe impression either of like or dislike, fauour or disfauour, of reuerence, or carelesse retchlesnesse, and debased dispositions.

Reuenues.

The Reuenues of this Dukedome are, as most men affirme, verie great, and without comparison the greatest of anie *Germane* Prince whatsoeuer. The meanes whereby it ariseth to that greatnesse, are diuers; first, the great quantitie of Siluer Mines, and such like, whose profit notwithstanding is verie vncertaine, according to the goodnesse or badnesse of the veines: the great impositions vpon all sorts of Merchandize, and the assize vpon Beere, which only in the citie *Lipsiege*, being a little town of two Parishes, amounteth yearely to aboue 20000. pound sterling. The tenths of all sorts of increase, as corne, wine, &c. The Salt-houses at *Hall*, and some other places, which being all to the Duke; besides

sides the Lands of the Dukedome being verie great, and the Taxes and Subsidies assessed at their Parliaments or diets, with diuers other casualties, which fall not within my knowledge. But about all, the greatest is an Imposition which hath long time beene laide vpon the people towards the maintenance of the wars against the Turke; which notwithstanding, they haue bin suspended for a long space lately, yet vnder colour of being sufficiently provided and furnished against future necessities, they haue beene continued, and the treasure conuerted to the Princes priuate vse, arising in all this time to that quantitie, that if it had bin reserued to the pretended vse, the wars might be continually verie royally maintained (I speake as much as is required on the behalfe of that Dukedome) and the people freed these manie yeares from the imposition; which notwithstanding is not onely still continued, but since the last wars increased. What the generall summe of all the reuenues arise vnto, I haue nothing certaine, neither indeed is it certaine in it selfe, a great part thereof as aforesaid, consisting vpon casualties, as the Mines and Tents, &c. But for mine owne particular conceipt, being not altogether vnconfirmed by other mens opinions, I cannot imagine how that it can arise to lesse than foure hundred thousand pound sterling yearly at the least.

Thus haue I briefly runne ouer some few particulars of the Great and Noble Dukedome of *Saxonie*, worthie a much more ample discours, and a far more vvorthier and better enformed discourser; being (all things considered) not onely the greatest and mightiest Princesdome vnder the Empire, but euen greater and mightier (I meane as it stood vniited in the time of *Christianus*) than the Empire it selfe. For though the Emperour by his sacred imperiall Seat be his Liege-Lord, and in greatnesse of Dominion far superior, yet is he in reuenue, in great loue of his people, in warlike prouision, and in *German* leagues and confederacies, far inferior.

Of all Princes vnder the Empire, the *Palatine* elector is in place before him, as being the chiefe Elector temporall, and first Prince of the Empire, but in power and riches nothing comparable. The Palatine.

The Marquesse of *Brandenburg* possesseth a much greater circuit of cuntry, and hath more Noblesse and people; yet is a great deale of it verie barren, his people for the most part poore, and himselfe (though of great reuenue) yet far short of that of *Saxonie*. The Marques
of Branden-
burg.

The Duke of *Brunswicke* hath a large Dominion, well peopled, well furnished, and himselfe of a great reuenue; but both in place much inferior (being no Elector) being as of bodie the strongest, so also of mind The Duke of
Brunswicke.

the vilest natured people of all *Germanie*. In other things likewise he is inferior to the Duke of *Saxonie*, a great part of his countrie being barren, and his subjects poore.

Bauaria:

The Duke of *Bauaria* hath a large rich, and goodly countrie, lying in great length on both sides the *Danubie*, a great Reuenue, and his Subjects in good estate: but (as being almost the onely Catholike great Prince of the Temporaltie) of no great partie, and vnfurnished of warlike prouision, but much more of treasure, being exceedingly behind hand, principally through the abuse of his Iesuits, by whom being wholly gouerned, hee hath spent, and daily doth, infinitely, in building them Churches, Altars, and Colledges, and indowing them with large Reuenues.

Wirtemberg.

The Duke of *Wirtemberge*, as in dignitie he is inferior to all these, so doth he (if I be not deceiued) approach nearest in most particulars of greatnesse to the Duke of *Saxonie*: hauing a countrie, in circuit but small, being not much bigger by gesse than *Yorke-shire*, but verie full of neat townes and rich villages, verie well peopled, and they generally verie rich: The Land is not so fruitfull as in other places, but farre excellling the best in England, that euer came vnder my view, abounding exceedingly (especially about *Stutgard*) with wine, and the countrie so pleasantly diuerlified, as that the hills (whereof it is full) and Riuer sides, being onely imploied to Vines, the plaines are euerie where full of corne of all sorts, of excellent Meadow and Pasture, with sufficient store of wood. The Duke himselfe is well loued of his people, verie rich in treasure and yearely reuenue, so that setting the mines aside, he is thought to be equal, if not superiour to the Duke of *Saxonie*. But for prouision of warre (excepting powder, whereof there is some store) verie meanelly furnished, and for manie respects not loued of his neighbour-Princes. This Prince (as the *Palatine*) is also of the Order of England.

Michelburg.
Hesse.
Baden.
Ansbach.

The rest of the Princes of *Germanie*, as the Duke of *Michelburg*, the Lantgraue of *Hesse*, the Marquesse of *Baden*, the Marquesse of *Ansbach*, or anie other whatsoever, being in all respects much inferiour to these alreadie named, need not to be brought into competition with the Dukedome of *Saxonie*, which makes the case more lamentable, that so mightie a Princedome hauing beene manie yeares wholly vnited in *Maurice*, *Augustus*, and *Christianus*, should now by the ill ordred custome of *Germanie*, be distracted and diuided into parts, and likely in time to be more disvnited by subdiuiding it againe to future Issues.

Genoa.

Geneua.

GENEUA, is also an imperiall citie in *Sauoy*, scituated at the South end of the Lake *Lomanus*, hard by the Lake. It is in circuite about two English miles, reasonable strong by nature and art, as well for that it is seated on a hill, which on the West is not easily accessible, as also for that it is indifferently well fortified with raelings, Bulwarkes, and Platformes, besides a deepe ditch. The East and West parts thereof standing continually full of water: The South part remaining drie continually, and is well defended with Casemats, the better to scoure the Curtaine: it is so much the stronger, for that it standeth almost in an Island, hauing the Lake afore-saide on the North, the Riuer of *Rhosne*, vpon the West, and the Riuer of *Arba* vpon the South, being from the Towne halfe a mile, and by reason of the swiftnesse of the currant, and great moouable stones in the bottome, which are violently carried downe the Riuer, it is not passable, but with great danger.

Scituation.
Circuit.

Strength.

The Riuer *Rhosne* diuideth the Towne into two parts, the one is called the high Towne, and the other Saint *Gernais*. Betweene the Riuer (in passing) it diuideth it selfe into two branches, making a little Island, wherein are some few Houses, and seauen or eight milles to grind corne. The weakest part of the towne is vpon the East-side, and out of the West by Saint *Gernais* Church; and for that it might haue beene surprised from the Lake, *Mounsier la Noue* caused a new Fort to be made in the mouth of the Lake, by reason whereof, that part is most secure. The Towne is well peopled, especially with Women, insomuch as they commonly say, that there are three Women for one Man: yeelding this reason, that the Warres haue consumed their Men. They reckon some sixteene thousand of all sorts. The Territories are small, being no way about two leagues and a halfe; yet by reason the soile is fruitfull, being well manured, it bringeth graine of all sorts, and great store of Wine. There is likewise plentie of pasture & feeding grounds; by meanes whereof, the Inhabitants are verie well provided of all sorts of good flesh at a reasonable rate: no want of good Butter and Cheese, and for most part of wildfoule; as Partridge, Quaile, Pheasant, and Mallard, in great abundance.

The Territorie

There are all manner of good fruits, and especially excellent pe-
maines: besides the riuer and the lake afford diuers sorts of fresh Fish;

Fertilitie.

Handicrafts.

as Pike, Roch, Carp, Tench, &c. and about all, the best and biggest Carpes of Europe. The commodities of the Dukes cuntry, and of the *Berneſi*, with tenne, or twelue miles next adioyning are brought to this Tower, by reason the Peasant can get no money in anie other place, which maketh the market to be well serued. The Towne standeth verie well for trade of Merchandize, and if it might haue peace, it would grow rich in short time; for, the ordinarie passage to transport commodities out of *Germanie* to *France*, especially to *Lions*, and so back againe into *Switzerland* and *Germanie*, is by this Towne: beside all *Sauoy*, in a manner, and a good part of the cuntry of the *Berneſi* resort hither to buy their Armour, Apparrell, and other necessities, the Inhabitants being for the most part mechanickall persons, making excellent good Peeces; as Muskets, Calceuers, &c. They likewise worke, Satten, Veluet, Taffata, and some quantitie of Cloth, though not verie fine nor durable. There are manie good Merchants, especially *Italians*, who haue great dealing: some others are thought to be worth 20000. crownes, and in generall, the Towne is reasonable rich notwithstanding their warres.

Reuenue.

The ordinarie Reuenue of the Towne, is some 60000. Crownes, which ariseth of the Gables of merchandize, flesh, demaine, and tithes: and if there might bee peace, it would amount to twice or thrice so much.

There is reasonable prouision against a siege, the Towne being able to make some two thousand men, and one hundred horse, and furnish them with all necessities; and hauing the Lake open, they want no prouision of corne, or anie victuals. In the Arsenall there is Armour for some two thousand men, with Muskets, Pikes, Calceuers, &c. Some twelue or foureteene Peeces of Ordnance, wherof there are about eight or nine Cannons and Culuerings: plentie of small shot, bullets, and fire-workes, besides some sixtie pieces in the Bulwarkes. There was in former times prouision of corne for six months, but of late yeares they haue not beene so prouident. The people generally are maruellous resolute to defend their Towne, especially against the Duke of *Sauoy*, whom they hate exceedingly, and he them, not onelie in respect of the difference of Religion, but in matter of State: for the Duke counteth them Rebels, and pretendeth a Title to their Towne, alledging, that till the yeare 1535. they were vnder the rule of their Bishop, who was Lord both in Temporall and Spiritual matters, and the Bishop acknowledged him for his chiefe Lord, and did him homage, till the yeare thirtie, at which time, and before, the money which was coined in *Genena*, was stamped

stamped with the Dukes name and figure vpon it. Besides, till the time aforesaid, the Duke of *Sauoy* might pardon offendours that were condemned: and further, there was no sentence of Law executed, but the Dukes officer was made acquainted there-with, in whose power it was to disanull, as he liked best. Likewise in the yeare 1529. when as those of *Genena* had leagued themselves with *Friburge*, the Duke disliking thereof, because it was done without his priuitie, caused the league to be broken, alledging, that the towne of *Genena* could not conclude a matter of such importance, without his allowance and approbation. Besides, all these reasons before remembered, this also is alledged as most materiall, that Duke *Charles* comming to *Genena* with the Dutches *Beatrice* his Wife, those of the Towne presented him the Keies thereof, thereby acknowledging him their chiefe Lord and Master. During the ciuile Warres in France, the Towne was maruellously peopled, insomuch as there were to the number of twelue or foureteene thousand strangers, the greatest part whereof were Gentlemen: but since those troubles beganne to diminish, the number likewise hath decaied, and at this instant there are not manie besides the Inhabitants, by reason whereof, the Towne is verie much impouerished.

The Towne is gouerned by a Counsell of two hundred, called the *Gouernment*. great Counsell, out of which is chosen another Counsell, composed of five and twentie, and of these, foure especiall men, called *Sindiques*, who haue the managing of the whole Common-wealth: vnlesse it be in some great matters, wherein the whole State is deepe lie interessed, as in making of peace or warre, in leagues offensive and defensive, appeales, &c.

The people are gouerned by the ciuile Law: the iudge whereof is called a Lieutenant Criminall, before whom all causes are tried, and from whom there is no appeale, vnlesse it be to the generall Counsell of two hundred. When the Towne was besieged in eightie nine, the *Venetians* did not onely send them intelligence of sundrie practises against them, but also sent them twentie foure thousand Crownes to maintaine their warres; and out of England they had 13000. crownes. The Great Duke of *Thuscane* did likewise send them manie intelligences at the same time: and heretofore when as the Pope, the King of *Spaine*, the French King, and the Duke of *Sauoy*, haue ioyned their powers together, with purpose to besiege them, the Emperour hath not only reuealed all their practises, but offered to aide them with men and money: yea, and sometime the Dukes of *Sauoy* haue lent them money to maintaine them against the others. For he had rather the Towne

should remaine as it doth, than fall into anie other mans hands than his owne.

Queene *Elizabeth* heighly fauoured it, and relieued it: so did all the Protestant *German* Princes, together with the French King. VWho though he be of a contrarie Religion, yet hath he had it alwaies in especiall protection.

Behauiour.

The people are verie ciuile in their Behauiour, speech, and apparrell, all licentiousnesse being seuerely corrected, and especially dauncing: Adulterie is punnished with death, and the Women drowned in the *Rhofne*; simple Fornication with nine daies fasting, Bread and Water in prison; for the second offence, whipping out of the Towne, and the third time, with banishment. The Towne lent vnto *Henrie* the third, King of France a little before his death 450000. crownes, and twelue Canons, vvhich are not yet restored: the *Bernes* seeme to be their friends, but those of *Geneua* are verie ieaious of them, and dare not trust them.

The Ministers haue a consistorie, vnto vvhich they may call publicke offenders, and such as giue scandall vnto others, and there reprove them: and if the crime be great, and the partie obstinate, they forbid him the Communion; if notwithstanding he persist, they may excommunicate him. But the Ministers cannot call anie before them into the consistorie, but by the authoritie of a *Sindique*, who must assist them; otherwise, the Ministers haue power to summon anie Man. They haue their maintenance out of the common Treasurie, and meddle with no Tithes. Maister *Beza* in eightie seauen, had some 1500. Florens for his stipend, vvhich amounteth to some seauen or eight and fiftie pounds sterling, besides twentie coupes of corne, and his house. All vvhich, vvill hardly amount to foure score pounds: the rest of the Ministers had some sixe or seauen hundred Florens, twentie coupes of corne, and their houses. The Ministers in the countrie haue 345. Florens, and twentie coups of corne. The professor in Diuinitie, hath *per annum* 1125. Florens, and twentie coupes of corne; the professor in law 580. Florens; the professor in Greeke 510. Florens; the professor of Philosophie 600. Florens, and twentie coupes; the professor in Hebrew 510. Florens.

All honest exercises, as shooting in Peeeces, Crosse-Bowes, Long-Bowes, &c. are vsed on the Sabboth daie, and that in the morning, both before and after the Sermon, neither doe the Ministers finde anie faule therewith, so that they hinder not from hearing the vvord at the times appointed.

Switzer.

Switzerland.

IN the daies of *Cesar*, this Prouince contained 240. miles in length, and one hundred and fourescore in breadth; which circuit or territorie, seeming too narrow a roome to containe so valiant and a warlike people, that not long before had ouerthrowne *L. Cassius* a Roman Confull, slaine the Confull himselfe, and sold the souldiours for bondslaues; vpon these apprehensions, and the conceipt of their owne valors, they began to entertaine a resolution, by conquest to gaine a larger territorie, correspondent to the ambitious greatnesse of their mindes, and to forsake their owne countrie, which first gaue them breath and being. In heat whereof, they prepare for their departure, they provide victuals, studie tillage two yeares, buy carts and carriage beasts, and least anie mans courage should decline vvith the time, they make a law, that euery one should be in readinesse to set forward in the beginning of the third yeare. Being vpon their way, and hearing that *Cesar* (then Pro-consull of France) had caused the bridge of *Genewa* to be hewen downe, and to debar them of passage, had raised that famous fortification betweene the *Lake* and Mount *Iura*, they sent some of their greatest Commanders to *Cesar*, to intreat a quiet passage thorough the Roman Prouince. At their appointed day of Audience, hearing *Cesars* deniall, they resolue to open the way with the power of their forces. In triall of which proiect, after they had receiued diuers defeatures, they againe sent their Ambassadors to *Cesar*, to intreate an acceptation of submission, throwing themselues at his feet, and with manie supplications, crauing such fauourable conditions of peace, as might best comfort so distressed a people, and beseeke the glorie of so mightie a conquest: which requests, *Cesar* vpon deliuerie of pledges, mercifully granted, inioyning them to returne to the countrie, from vvhence they came, & to build the cities and villages, which before their comming forth, they had destroyed. Euer since vvhich time they retained the reputation of their ancient glorie, but neuer enterprised to forsake their limited habitations. The number of Men, Women, and Children, that were in that iourney, vvvas 3680000. vvhereof 920000. vvvere fighting men: of them that returned, & saw the fortune of both their States, vvvas 110000. Some hold opinion, that this Nation is vtterly extinguished, and that the present Inhabitants (wherof we now intreat) both for their resemblance in manners and phrased of speech, are descended from the *Germans*.

It

Scituation,

It is almost all scituated amongst the *Alpes*, and therefore, supposed, to be the highest Region in Europe, and the rather, for that the most famous Rivers of this part of the World, (*viz.*) *Rhone*, *Rodan*, and *Po*, falling from these high places, do dispierse their channels through diuers Prouinces of Christendome. It is called in Historie, *Confederatorum Regio*, a State populer, and subiect to no one Prince. And although it seeme to be inuironed with steepe and barren Mountaines, alwaies couered with Snow, yet in truth it is fertile enough, and intermixed with fruitfull places, full of excellent Pastures, wherein they bring vp infinit numbers of Sheep and Cattle, to their inestimable profit, by venting of Butter, Cheese, and other white meates to forrain Nations. Of Wheat and Wine they haue no such plentie, but are glad to craue in aid of their neighbours, to releue their wants.

From the times before spoken of, vntill the comming of the *Sarazens* into *Italie*, at what time the Pope sent an honourable Embassage of Cardinals, to intreat their fauour and assistance, they seemed to liue contented within their owne limits; and only in reward of their many good seruices, (imployed for the defence of the Church and Christendome) they desired of his Holinesse; that they might liue in libertie in these places, which they then inhabited, with the vse of their owne lawes and ancient customes. Which the Pope not onely graunted, but in token of their worthinesse and valour, he gaue them a red banner, with the Image of the Crucifix painted therein. After this seruice, they againe gaue themselues to a quiet and peaceable life; to follow tillage, and to husband their granges; vntill such time as certaine Noblemen their neighbours began to inroach vpon them, and to exercise tyrannicall iurisdiction ouer them. Which kind of seruitude (as people bearing in fresh remembrance their ancient & generous reputation) being vnable to indure, and inured to giue and not to take the law, of their neighbours, opposed their forces against the insolencie of this Nobilitie.

The Causes of
their first Re-
uolts,

The discontentment first burst out in the yeare of our Lord 1300. about which time the Countes of *Aspugrh* (afterward Dukes) had placed in one of their Castles of *Vrania* in *Valstreete*, a Gentleman proud aboue measure, vnsoociable, and in lust insatiable. At first he was secret, but by custome imboldned, in Feasts and publique banquets he would boast, how he had now abused one Woman, then another: at last, amongst the rest hauing rauished a verie yong and beautifull Damsell, he was slain by her two Brethren. The Count agreed hereat, offered to do justice vpon the offenders, but the Inhabitants of that Vallie valiantly resisted, ouerthrew two or three of his Castles in one day, & slew diuers
of

of his officers. Which president the *Underwaldenses* imitating, committed the like outrage vpon the Gentlemen of their Territorie, exclaiming that the tyrannie of the Nobilitie had inforced them to this action. The first of the confederates were, the *Suani*, those of *Uro*, *Zurich*, and *Underwald*; who so well as they might in so suddaine an innouation gaue themselves to peace, and to respect the good of the league and the confederate Cities.

The residue of the Noblemen and Gentlemen (fearing if this example were left vnpunished) the fore would grow incurable, as an euill which could bring forth no lesse a mischiefe, than the vtter losse of their iurisdiction; mustred all their friends and followers, determining, either to tame or to raze these confederated Cantons. But the *Swizers* well acquainted with the difficult passages of the Countrie, easily frustrated the attempts of their enemies: thereby rather encreasing, than deminishing their libertie.

Lupold Duke of *Austria*, enterprizing vpon them with a mightie Armie for the same quarrell, had the like fortune. So in succeeding ages, had *Charles* Duke of *Burgundie*, by their seruice vnder-taken and performed for the defence of *Rhene* Duke of *Lorraine*. They are men of small stature, and very seldome goe armed, but serue only with the Pike, or two-hand-Sword, because they feare no other forces saue the furie of the great Artillerie, from which (say they) a breast-plate or curace is not able to defend them. And because of their order, they think it a matter impossible, for any forces to breake them, or to enter vpon them, neerer than a Pikes length. In a pitch field, without doubt they are excellent good Foot-men, but to inuade a Prouince, they haue little courage, and lesse to defend it; and commonly, where they are not able to maintaine their accustomed order of fight, they auaille nothing; as in the war of *Italie* was plainly manifested, especially when they were put to assaults (as at *Padoa*, and other places) wherein they gaue but weak testimonies of valour: whereas when they fought it out in open field at the Pikes length, they carried themselves valiantly; in so much that at the battaile of *Rauenna*, if the French had been without their assistance, they had questionlesse lost the glorie of that daies victorie. For before both Armies came to handy-strokes, the Spanish had already ouerthrowne the French and *Gascoine* Foote-men, and if the *Swizers* had not seconded them, they had been all slaine or taken. So in the war of *Guien*, it plainly appeared, that the Spanish were more afraid of one band of *Swizers*, whereof the K. had waged ten thousand, than of any of the rest of the French Regiments. Thus by the reputation of these and their former exploits,

exploits, they won vnto their Nation so glorious a perpetuities of their Armes and valour, that euer since they haue beene called vnto the aide of diuers Princes, and in continuall action vnder some one State, or other, bordering vpon them; but especially vnder the Kings of France, of whom, They entertaine sometimes more, and sometimes lesse. Sithence the raigne of *Lewis* the 11. they haue beene in perpetuall league, and in their pension; to whom they giue yearelie fortie thousand Florens, twentie thousand to the cities, and twentie thousand to particular persons. They againe are diuided into thirteene Cantons, eight whereof are Catholike, the residue of the Religion. But those of the Religion, are much greater; and out of these it is, that the Kings of France are supplied: the residue are in pension with the King of Spaine.

Leuying of
souldiours.

When the Fench King demandeth anie forces out of their Cantons, they call a Diet, the charge whereof, as likewise the souldiours wages the King defraie. These forraine bands, more or lesse, to whom he alwaies committeth the battaile, and the guard of his Cannon, (as for entring of breaches, and giuing assaults, they doe expressly capitulate to be exempt) with the fise regiments before spoken of in the discourse of *France*, are his maine moderne forces on foote: but when he would haue greater numbers, he giueth his Captaines Commissions to take vp Souldiours through the whole Realme, (not by presse, as with vs) but by striking vp the Drumme, when if anie come voluntarily, and take pay, they are inrolled, and inioyned to serue, otherwise not.

Gouernment;

The Gouernment of these thirteene cities, with their dependances (which they tearme Cantons) is merely populer. For though the members seeme to be separated, yet liue they as one bodie firmly knit and vnited, hauing a chiefe Magistrat ouer euerie Territorie chosen by the commonaltie of euerie particular citie, and euerie citie hath his particular counsell and place of assemblie, saue only when they are to sit vpon matters of importance, and such as concerne the generall estate; Then they appoint a generall Diet, and that to be held in some one of the cities, which they thinke most conuenient: whereunto foure or fise, of the most principal of euerie citie, are bound to resort. In their Consultations, for the most part, they are conformable one to another, and because one citie is as free as another, hauing no one chiefe Gouernour superiour to anie other, in case the cause (be it peace or war) concerne the Vniuersall State of all the Cantons, looke how the maior part of voices shall sway in the Senat, so it preuaileth, and that which the greater number resolue vpon, is without more adoe put in execution. The benefit which

which they gaine by a common War, is deuided in common : but if sometimes two or three vnited Cantons purchase anie bootie by their peculiar Armes, of that purchase, the residue can claime no share. Yet hath it happened, that the residue thinking themselves iniured in not participating generally haue raised diuers controuersies; and because (as aforesaid) they are equally free, and as great is the Soueraigne authoritie of one Citie, as of another : both parties haue appealed vnto the French King ; who vpon hearing of the cause in question, gaue iudgement, *That a particular gaue, appertained to particular persons.* And so the rest.

Therefore, when they are eyther occasioned or determined to make any particular war, the vnited Cantons erect lights and make Bonfires : but when they are to raise forces in generall (as suppose they should for the French King) first they strike vp their drum, then all the cities do present as many persons as they think good : which may be to the number of fine and thirtie or fortie thousand, of whom after the Captaines haue cul'd out their limited portions, the residue are licensed to depart to their owne homes. Euery Citie hath his principall Standard, with their peculiar armes and deuises therein, to distinguish one people from another. And because no politike body can stand without a head (although in no case they will tollerate one absolute gouernour ouer the whole) yet are they contented to submit themselves to the gouernment of one particular Magistrate in euery particular Citie : him they tearme *Vnama*. The election of which officer is on this maner. On the first Sunday in May, the principall of all the houses and Families through euerie Canton, of all sorts and qualities, assemble themselves, either in some meadow, or else in the chiefest streetes of their Citie : where all of them taking their places in order, the *Vnama*, whose time of office is now expired, (seating himselfe in a place some-what aboue the rest,) after some stay, riseth vp and maketh a speech to the people, excusing himselfe in good termes of his insufficiencie to discharge the weight of the office committed vnto his charge, and craueth pardon of that which he hath through ignorance or negligence committed, to the preiudice of the common good, and therewithall offereth to resigne his determined office into the hands of the people. Immediately vpon this resignation, with a lowd voice he nominateth the partie, whom in his iudgement he thinketh worthe to succede in his place. He that is nominated, commeth forth before the multitude, and presenting himselfe before them, after some speeches, nominateth a second ; and the second, with like ceremonie, a third. The Nomination being ended,

the

Their Soue-
raigne Magi-
strate.

the cheefe of the companies demand of the people, which of these three thus nominated, they are willing to elect. So naming them a new, one by one, the multitude lift vp their hands at the naming of him, whom they desire to be their Gouvernour. And oft-times it falleth out, that he that hath beene once *Vnama*, in desert of his iustice and good carriage towards them, hath beene chosen againe the second time. This election finished, they proceed to the choise of other Officers.

This officer continueth in his place three yeares, and although he be the chiefest amongst them, yet goeth he but little better attired than the meanest, only attended with five or sixe persons. He dwelleth in his owne house, because they imploy the publike places for the holding of the Dyets, the keeping of their Munition and Artillerie, and other furniture belonging to the wars. In criminall causes, he can doe nothing without the counsell of the fifteene, but in ciuile matters, he hath larger limitation.

Next the *Vnama*, is that Officer of Iustice, who is as it were the Chancellor, and the second person in that State. After him, are certain Counsellors, men well experienced in affaires of Princes, and occurance of Prouinces. Then the Chamberlaine, and his is the charge of the Munition and publike Treasure. Next to him are the foure Deputies, in authoritie greater than the Councillors, & may do manie things in absence of the *Vnama*, so as the Chancellour be present. These with the *Vnama* make the fifteene, which gouerne the State as well in peace as in war, and are euer present at the hearing and deciding of all occurrences arising within the Territorie of their owne Canton.

These are from yeare to yeare confirmed by the people, although (as doth the *Vnama*) they continue their office for three yeares. These send gouernors to the Castles on the Frontiers, and (to decide inferiour matters) they allow ten persons chosen out of the meaner sort; but the parties in controuersie may appeale to the fifteene: other Iudges, or further appeales (as in the Ciuile Law) they haue not to flie vnto. For their chiefest care, is their tillage & warfare, coueting to liue simply & plainly, and not to intrap one another in quarrels and suits of Law. The partie euicted is seuerely punished. Neyther will they suffer any of their people to appeale out of their own Countries; and if anie offend therein, he is grievously chastened.

Through the whole world, lawes are not obserued with lesse partialitie; for they are neuer altered according to the humors of the inconstant multitude, nor violated without due penaltie inflicted; for as of those five sorts of popular governments, which *Aristotle* discourseth of, there

there is none more dangerous than that wherein the will of the people beareth sway aboue reason, and standeth for Law, as *Zenophon* writeth of the *Athenians*; so no forme of gouernment can be compared to that wherein the commonaltie without distinction liue subiect to the censure of the Law: in regard of which pollicie, we ought not to maruaile, if this Common-weale haue flourished now these two hundred and fiftie yeares, in great reputation of valour.

For by two means hath this estate beene preserued, (*viz.:*) by vnpartiall administration of Iustice, and frequencie of neighbourly feastings; whereas the scornfull ambition of great men, hath heretofore ruined the popular estates of the *Megarians*, the *Romans*, the *Florentines*, the *Syennott*, and the *Genoise*. Of which sort, the *Swizzers* haue none at all; or if there be any (as there are but few which escaped the generall massacre) yet are they contented (without laying any claime to their ancient gentilitie) to range themselves with the residue of the basest commonaltie, and can but seldome be admitted to the chiefeest magistracies, being commonly bestowed vpon Butchers, and such like Mechanicall Artizans.

Italie.



Italie, (according to *Plinie*) the most beautifull and goodliest Region vnder the Sun, the Darling of Nature, and the Mother of hardie Men, braue Captaines and valiant Souldiours: flourishing in all Arss, and abounding with Noble wits, & men of singuler spirits, is situate vnder a Climate most wholesome and temperate, commodious for Traffique, and most fertile for Corne and Herbage; containeth in length, from *Augusta Pretoria*, vnto *Otranto*, one thousand and twentie Miles, and in breadth, from the River *Vara* in *Prouince*, to the River *Arfia* in *Friuli* (where it is the broadest) foure hundred and ten miles: and in the narrow places, as from the mouth of *Pescara*, to the mouth of *Tiber*, 126. miles. So that to compassse it by Sea, from *Varato* *Arfia*, are 3038. miles, which with the 410. by Land, maketh the whole circuite 3448. miles.

Thus it appeares, to be almost an Iland, bounded on the East with the *Adriatique* Sea, on the South and West, with the *Tirrhene* Seas, and on the North, with the *Alpes*: the which, for that it is described by others,

Situation.

Length, and
Breadth.

Natures and
manners of
the people.

others, we will but point to, and so much the rather, because there is no Countrey in the World better knowne, and more frequented by Strangers.

Inheritances there, descend to the Children, as Lands holden by *Gavelkind* with vs in some parts of England, so that one Brother hath as good a share as another, and if the elder be borne to the Title of a *Conte*, so is the yonger, and so called; yea, if there be twentie Brethren; (except it be in the Estates of Prince-domes, as *Mantua*, *Ferrara*, *Vrbino*, and such like (which euermore descend to the eldest entirely.) By this meanes it cometh to passe, that oftentimes you shal see Earls and Marqueses without Lands or goods, yet most strictly standing vpon descents, and the glorie of their names, for themselves, and their Issues for euer. But the Gentlemen which haue whereof to liue, are reported to surpasse the Gentry of any other Nation in good carriage and behauiour; and for the most part professe Armes, and follow seruice. And to be discerned from the vulgar, they all in generall speak the Courtisan, which is an excellent commendation, considering the diuersitie of dialects amongst them. For leauing the difference between the *Florentine* and the *Venetian*, the *Milanois*, and the *Roman*, the *Neapolitan* and the *Genois*, (which may well be likened to the difference between a *Londoner* and a Northern man) yet by the tongue you shall not lightly discern of what part of the countrey anie Gentleman is of. No more different are they in manners and behauiour: honourable, courteous, prudent, and graue withall, that it should seeme each one to haue had a prince-like education; to their superiours obedient; to equals respectful; to inferiours courteous; to strangers affable, and desirous by kind offices to win their loue. Of expence and loue of his money, very warie, and will be assured to bee at no more cost, than he is sure either to saue by, or to haue thanke for. In apparrell modest, in furniture of household sumptuous, at their table neat, sober of speech, enemies of ill report, & so iealous of their Reputations, that whosoever speaketh ill of one of them, if the partie slandered may know it, and find opportunitie to performe it, the partie offending shall surely die for it.

Merchants.

The Merchants likewise, for the most part are Gentlemen: For when of one House, there be three or foure Brethren, lightly one or two of them giue themselves to trafficke. And sometimes, if they chance not to diuide their Fathers substance and patrimonie (as many times they doe not) then do they which professe themselves Merchants, trauell for the welfare of their Brethren, jointly participating of losse and profit. But in outward shew, these carrie not like reputation to the Gentlemen

men aforespoken of: for they professe not Armes, but desire to liue in peace, and how to vent their Wares, and haue new Traffique into strange Countries: yet haue no lesse reputation of Nobilitie for their Trade of Merchandize, but by reason they stay at home, and vse the richest Farmes, and follow Husbandrie by their Bailiffes and Factors, they become the best and wealthiest Merchants in all Christendome.

Their Artificers are thought the best workmen of the world, and are Artificers: so well paide, that manie liue by their labours as well as manie doe by Reuenues: yea, and grow verie rich, and within two or three descents to the reputation of Gentry.

The poorer sort are the Husbandmen, for they are oppressed on all Husbandmen: hands, and in the countrie liueth no man of wealth. The Gentry and wealthier sort dwell in Townes and walled Cities, leauing the Villages, fields, and pastures to their Tenants; not at a rent certaine, as wee doe in England, but to halfe, or to the thirds of all graine, fruit, and profit arising of the ground, according as it shall bee, either barren or fertile. And this the poore Tenant must Till and manure at his owne charge, so that the Lords part commeth cleare without disbursing one pennie; yet shall you see manie faire houses in the villages, but they are onely for the owners pastime in Sommer. For then they leaue the Cities for a month or two, where vnder the fragrant hedges and bowers, they solace themselves in as much pleasure as may be imagined. And for the most part, euerie man hath his Mistris with Instruments of Musicke, and such like pleasures as may serue for recreation and delight. Thus much of the manners and nature of the Inhabitants, now will we speake of the estates of the countrie.

The King of Spaine hath the greatest part for his share, as Naples, Sharers: and the Dutchie of Milaine. The King of Spaine.

The Pope hath the Citie of Rome, Campagna, part of Maremma, part of Tuscan, the Dutchie of Spolet, Marca d' Ancona, Romagna, and the citie of Bononia. The Pope.

The Venetians haue for their part, the citie of Venice, with the towns The Venetians in and about that Marish, called *La contrada di Venetia*, *La marka Triuigiana*, a great part of Lombardie, and part of Istria. They likewise are, and haue beene Lords of certaine Islands, some whereof the Turke hath won from them.

The Common-weale of Genoa, hath the Territorie about them, called at this day, *Il Genouosato*, and anciently *Lyguria*. Genoa.

Tuscan, once *Heetruria*, is diuided into diuers Signiories, whereof the Florence. Bishop

Florence:

Sienna,

Lucca.

Ferrara.

Mantua.

Vrbine.

Parma.

The Bishop of
Rome.

Marchia.

Bishop of *Rome* holdeth a small part, but the greatest is vnder the Iurisdiction of *Florence*.

Then are common-wealthes of *Sienna* and *Lucca*, whose Territories are not great. 13. The Duke of *Ferrara* hath part of *Romagnia*, and part of *Lombardie*. 14. The Dutchie of *Mantua*, lieth wholly in *Lombardie*, and the Dutchie of *Urbino* betweene *Marca d' Ancona* and *Tuscane*. 15. The Dutchie of *Parma* and *Placentia*, are in *Lombardie*, and holden of the Church.

Of these Princes and Common-wealths, euerie one holdeth himselfe in his owne Territorie absolute Prince and Gouvernor, and maintaineth his estate vpon the custome, taxes, and impositions of the people. For lightly, they haue little or no Lands of their owne.

The estate of the Pope is two fold: the one consisteth in Temporall Dominion; the other, in Spirituall Iurisdiction. His Temporall Dominion, is likewise diuided into two kinds; the one profitable, and as a man may tearme it, an hereditarie: the other immediate, and holden in fee of the Church. As touching his Temporall Dominion, he is Lord of a great part of *Italie*; as, of all, that lieth betweene the Riuer *Fior*e and *Caietta*, betweene *Preneft* and the *Truentian* streights (except the Dutchie of *Urbino*.)

In that compasse are incircled the Prouinces of *Bonnonia* and *Romandiola*, *Marchia*, *Umbria*, the Dutchie of *Spolet*, *S. Peters* patrimonie, *Tuscan*, and lately *Ferrara*. It is seated in the heart of *Italie*, stretching from the *Adriatique* to the *Tirrhene* sea; and in regard of scituation, as also in plentie of prouision, as corne, wine, and oyle, it is comparable to anie State of *Italie*: For *Romandiola* imparteth great store vnto their Neighbours, the *Venetians* and *Sclauonians*; And yet haue the Inhabitants sufficient for their owne prouision.

Marchia reacheth from *Tronto* to *Foggia*, betweene the *Apenine* and the Sea; it is deuided into little hills and plaines. It is rich of Wine, Oyle, and Corne, hauing diuers great Townes and Castles therein. The citie of greatest Trading, is *Ancona*, by reason of the Hauen, to which manie Easterne Merchants doe repaire. The fairest is *Ascoli*, the most powerfull *Fermo*, because of manie Fortresses subiect vnto it. *Macerata* is a new Citie, and because it lieth in the midst of the Prouince, it is the Gouvernours seat. In some yeares it hath supplied the *Venetians* wants, with manie thousand measures of Corne and Oyle. And although *Umbria* is not so plentifull of graine, as to spare for their Neighbours, yet is it able to maintaine it selfe without buying of others, and in stead thereof, it is abundantly stored with Wines, Cattle, and some

some Saffron. S. P. Patrimoine and *Tuscane*, often selected *Genes*, and at some seasons, *Naples*. This Territorie bringeth forth fierce and warlike souldiours; and herein it is reported to excell all the residue of the *Italian* Prouinces. *Bonnonia*, *Romania*, and *Marchia*, are able to leuie twentie thousand foot-men, and the other Prouinces as manie. In the time of Pope *Clement*, *Marchia* alone aided him with a thousand souldiours. The chiefe seat is *Rome*, once the Ladie of the World, and at this day inhabited with 2000. soules, but two parts thereof consisting of Church-men and *Curtesans*. The defenceable places are the Castle and Borough of *Rome*, *Onietta*, *Texacine*, &c. It is a great credite and commendation to this State, to haue manie Noble-men therein so excellent in Negociation of peace and warre, that the residue of the States and Princes, doe most commonly chuse their Leaders and Lieutenants out of these Prouinces. If the Prince hereof were secular, both for people and power, hee might verie well be compared with anie State of *Italie*.

Besides these Dominions, the Pope hath the Territorie of *Auignon* in France, wherein are foure cities, and fourescore walled Townes. In *Naples* he hath *Beneuent*.

Romagna extendeth from *Foglia*, *Panora*, and from the *Apenine* to the *Romagna*, Riuer *Po*. For temperature and fertilitie it is like to *Marchia*, but hath generally more famous cities, as *Rimini*, *Cesana*, *Faenza*, *Rauenna*, *Turly*, *Imola*, *Sarsina*, *Ceruia*, *Bertinoto*, once a Bishops seat, but now translated to *Forlimpoli*. The Noblest of all these, is *Rauenna*, where some Emperours haue kept their Courts, and after them their *Exarches* or Lieutenants. When *Pipin* hauing explused *Astolpho*, put the Church in possession thereof, this Territorie comprehended *Bologna*, *Regio*, *Modena*, *Parma*, *Piacenza*, *Rauenna*, *Sarsina*, *Classe*, *Forli*, *Forlimpoli*, and made one estate called *Pentapoli*, which indured an hundred eightie three yeares, euen to the yeare of our Lord 741. in which yeare, it ended by the taking of *Rauenna*, by *Astolph* King of *Lombards*. So that first the Roman Emperours, especially *Honorius*, and after him the Kings of the *Gothes*, and than *Exarkes*, amongst all the cities of *Italie*, choole this for the seat of their Courts, which from amongst other respects, I suppose to proceed by reason of the plentifull Territorie (now couered with water): and the conueniencie of the Haven, which at this day is likewise choaked. This Prouince was first called *Flaminia*, but *Charles* the great, to raze out the remembrance of these *Exarkes*, and to make the people willing to obey the Roman Prelats, called it *Romagnia*.

As touching his immediate Soueraigntie, hee is the Lord Peramount of the Kingdomes of *Naples* and *Sicil*, and the Dutchies of *Vrbis*, *Ferrara*, *Parma*, *Placentia*, and manie others.

Riches,

Where his authoritie is maintained, hee hath supreme gouernment of all religious orders, and bestoweth the Ecclesiasticall benefices at his dispose. Hauing manie strings to his Bow, hee hath manie meanes to raise money, so that *Xistus* the 4. was wont to say, *That the Popes should neuer want Coine, as long as their hands were able to hold a pen.* *Paule* the third, in the league betweene him, the Emperour and the *Venetians*, against the *Turke*, bare the sixth part of the charges of that warre. Against the Protestants, and in aide of *Charles* the fifth, hee sent 12000. footmen, and 500. horsemen, bearing their charges during the war: this was he that aduanced his house to that honour, wherein it continueth to this day in *Florence*. *Pius* the fifth, aided *Charles* the ninth King of France with 4000. foot-men, and 1000. horse. *Xistus* the fifth, in five yeares and a halfe of his Pontificacie, raked together five millions of crownes, and spent bountifullly notwithstanding, in bringing Conduites and Waterpipes into the citie, and in building *Pyramides*, *Palaces*, and Churches.

So that it should seeme, that the Entrado could not, but amount to much about the value of ten hundred thousand crownes, *per annum* for *Newman*, a late Writer, would haue this surplusage to be raised vpon vse monie, yearely laide vp in the castle of *Saint Angelo*. And this to arise of his ordinarie Reuenues within his Territories of *Italie*. Since those times it cannot, but be much more augmented, by the addition of the Dukedome of *Ferrara*, as also for that in those daies, the monthly expence of the Court (being thirtie thousand crownes) is in these times defalked vnto five thousand.

The State of Rome,

A State, wherein you shal see religiō metamorphosed into policie, & policie meditating nothing but priuat greatnesse: the Man-seeming-God affecting Honor, Maiestie & Temporal riches with no lesse ambitiō & effusion of blood, thā anie the merciles tirants of the former monarchies.

The Colledge of Cardinals.

As for the Colledge of Cardinals; It stretcheth out the Westernne Churches on the tenterhookes of Vaine glorie and Authoritie; suffering no man, no not so much as in thought (if it were possible) to depresse, or question, the priuiledges of religious persons: who (according to their means,) liue in great State, keepe Curtizans, trauell in Carosses though but for a quarter of a mile) to the Consistorie; solemnize feasts and banquets, make shew of ceremonies, and are, in truth, of no Religion. So that, if a man were an Athist, and had no conscience to belieue,

belicue, that God must one day call vs to account for our trangressions, I had rather liue a religious Man in Rome, than be a Noble man in Naples; who of all men liuing wash their hands most in carelesnesse, being neuer disturbed with wordly cares or incumbrances.

It lieth betweene the *Apenine* and the sea: and containeth from *Tuscan. Magrato Tenere*, aboue 200. threescore and ten miles. It hath larger Champions than *Lyguria*, because the *Apenine* stretcheth not so neare the sea, and so enlargeth the plaine. In it are manie large valleies, populous, and rich in commodities. But to speake of particulars: when we are past *Magra*, *Sarazana* offereth it selfe to our view, a citie holden by the *Genoise* with great ieaiousie, by reason of the Neighbour-hood of the Great Duke, and a little higher lieth *Pentrimoli*, a castle belonging to the King of *Spaine*, of great account, and scituated not farre from the sea; then *Massa* and *Carrara*, places famous for their quarries of white Marble. *Lucca* standeth on the Riuer *Serichio*, *Pisa* on *Arnoy*, and beyond the citie of *Florence*. To the State whereof belongeth *Pistoia*, *Volterra*, *Montepulcino*, *Arezzo*, *Cortona*. Those of *Lucca* doe stand vpon their guard for maintenance of their liberties. The citie is three miles in compasse, strong in scituation and wals, and well stored with Artillerie and Munition. On the North it confineth *Carfagnana*, a fruitfull valley, and well inhabited with seruiceable people, on the other parts it is incompassed with the Territories appertaining to the Great Duke. *Pisa* was once of such wealth, that at one instant, the citizens thereof held warre against the *Venetians* and the *Genois*. They grew great by the ouerthrow which the *Sarazens* gaue to the *Genois*, in the yeare 1533. the remainder of which defeature, were receiued into the protection of their citie; and declined by the slaughter of their people, and also of their Nauie giuen them by the *Genois* neere to the *Isle Giglio*. For thereby they became so weake, that not able to sustaine their wonted reputation, they were forced to submit themselues vnder the protection of *Florentines*, against whom (when *Charles* the eight inuaded *Italie*) they rebelled. But being againe reduced to their former obedience, the citie notwithstanding was in a manner left desolate, because the citizens (impatient of the *Florentines* gouernment) passed into *Sardinia*, *Sicill*, and other places to inhabite. So that the place wanting Inhabitants, and the countrie people to manure it, the scituation thereof being low and moorish, by reason of Fens and Marishes, it became infectious. *Cosmo* the Great Duke, vndertooke to re-people it againe, and to further his intention, he builded there a stately house for the receipt of the Knights of *Saint Stephen*, gracing it with manie priuiledges,

Florence.

which yet to this day remaine vnaltered. *Florence* is the fairest citie in *Italie*. It is in compasse sixe miles. It is deuided into 44. Parishes, and into 21. companies. It hath in it 66. Monasteries, and 37. Hospitals. The citizens bought their freedome of the Emperour *Rodolfe* for 6000. crownes, as they of *Lucca* theirs, for 10000. In whose time, and euer since it hath flourished in great prosperitie. For vpon occasion, the Citie is able to arme 30000. men, & the Countrie 60000. It is strongly walled, the situation thereof being low, especially on the North side: but on the other parts is somewhat subiect to the command of certaine hilles, which outlooke it, the inconuenience whereof they haue preuented by fortifications. It hath a Citadel built by Duke *Alexander*, and after enlarged by *Cosmo*. The streetes thereof are straight, large, and verie cleane kept. There are to be seene the most artificall buildings of all Europe, both publike and priuate. *Charles* Archduke of *Austrich* was wont to say, that it was a citie not to bee showne but on Holidiaies. No soile is Tilled with more Art, dilligence and curiositie: for you shal see one little peece of ground to bring forth Wine, Oyle, Corne, Pulse, and fruits. Notwithstanding, it will not afford sufficient victuals for for a third part of the yeare: to remedie which scarcitie, it was not without good reason that they spent two millions of crownes for the recouerie of *Pisa*. The last Duke became an earnest Petitioner to the Pope, that he might be created King of *Tuscanie*; but the Pope not brooking so lordly a Title in so neere a neighbour, answered; that he was content, that he should be King in *Tuscanie*, but not King of *Tuscanie*, which scholar-like distinctions, great Princes cannot well digest.

Manners of
the Floren-
tines.

The qualities of the *Tuscans* appeare by the excellencie of the *Florentines*, whom Nature aboue all the Prouinces of *Italie* hath adorned with sharpnesse of wit, frugalitie, prouidence, industrie, and speciall insight into the Negotiations of Peace and War; yea, their continuall dissensions and hazzards, wherein they haue almost liued from the first foundation of their citie, I doe, to nothing so much attribute, as to the sharpnesse of their wits. So, the ciuile discords of the *Pistolians*, did not onely ruinate their owne estate, but therein likewise engaged *Florence*; yea, and as a man may say, drew all *Tuscanie* after it, by the factions of the *Neri* and *Bianchi*, for thus it happened. Two young men descended of Noble Families falling out, the one of them chanced to be lightly hurt: the father of the other to extinguish all sparkes of mallice, and that no further inconueniencie should arise vpon that quarrell, sent his Sonne to aske forgiuenesse of him that was hurt, but the effect ensued contrarie to his expectation: for the Father of the wounded Gentleman

man, caused his Seruants to lay hold on him, and cut off his hands, and so sending him backe againe, willed him to tell his Father, that wounds were not cured with words, but with Weapons. Hereupon grew betwene those two Families a mortall and cruell war, which drew the rest of the Cities into the quarrell, and was the cause of great effusion of blood: yea, the *Florentines* in stead of executing due punishment vpon the principall authors of the faction, receiued the banished on both sides, into their Citie: where the *Donati* vndertaking the protection of the *Neri*, and the *Cherfi* of the *Bianchi*, all the Citie became to bee diuided into *Neri* and *Bianchi*, this sedition was not of long time after pacified.

Arezzo, being by long dissention amongst themselves almost brought to wracke (as the other cities of *Tuscane* likewise were) was sold to the *Florentines* by *Lewis* of *Anjou* for fortie thousand Florens of gold; and not manie yeares after, *Cortona*, by King *Ladislaus*.

Arezzo.

Sienna.

With the State of *Florence*, doth confine that of *Sienna*, a Citie builded by the *Senoni*, and of late time become subiect to the house of *Medici*. It is fife miles in compasse, strong by scituation, and whereunto *Cosmo* the Great Duke adioyned a Citadell. From *Florence* it is not aboue thirtie three miles distant; but the people thereof are much differing in Manners, as also disposition, they sparing, slow, and vsociable towards Strangers, these bountifull, and of kinde entertainment: they loath to part with money, and prouident, these liberall, and onely caring for the present; they graue, melancholie, and alwaies expecting their profits: these plaine, and of cheerefull countenance; The one inclined to Traffique and gaine; the other, content with their Reuenues, and the fruits of their Farmes. *Sienna* hath a large and fruitfull Territorie, vvherein are contained in the Cities of *Pienza*, *Montalcino*, *Chiusi*, *Soana*: and in *Maremma*, *Massa*, and *Crosseto*, the ports of *Orbetello*, *Portercole*, vvith twentie sixe other vvalled Townes. The coast beginneth at *Capiglia*, and extendeth to the little Riuer of *Fiore*, being all good soile for corne, but the aire is so infectious, that none liue long therein. The ports doe all belong to the King of Spaine, together with the Hill *Argentino*, a place famous, by the discours which *Claudius Ptolomens* made thereof, for the excellencie of the scituation fit for the building of a royall Citie. Next this Prouince beginneth the patrimonie of *S. Peter*, bequeathed to the Church by the Countesse *Matilda*.

The chiefe place hereof in ancient time was *Capua*, the pleasant *Campania*. Scituation vvhich was the overthrow of *Hanniball* and his Armie.

Cicero writeth, that the Romans were Lords of three imperiall cities, Carthage, Corinth, and Capua. The two first being farre off, they vtterly ruinated; of Capua they long consulted: in the end they concluded that it were extreame tirannie to spoile so noble a citie of Italie. But for their better securitie, they confiscated the Territories thereof, and deprived it of all forme and Maiestie of Common-wealth. They let the buildings stand to serue for receit of those which should Till the ground.

Naples.

Naples is now the chiefe seat, not onely of Campagnia, but of the whole Kingdome, and is indeed a princely citie: It is in compasse seauen miles, but narrow: of late times it is much augmented, and would increase continually, if the King of Spaine had not forbidden a further increase by building; whereunto he was mooued, partly by the complaints of the Barons (whose Tennants to inioy the liberties granted to the Neopolitans, did forsake their owne dwelling to seat themselves there) partly by the danger of rebellion, which in so mightie a citie cannot easily bee repressed. It is stronglie walled, and hath in it three castles, the chiefe whereof is Castle-Novo, builded by Charles of Angew. The hauen is not large nor safe, but that inconuenience is somewhat eased by an artificiall key. It hath likewise an Arsenall, wherein all Instruments of warre are forged.

House of Pietie.

Amongst other religious places (of which sort there are manie, and those well maintained) there is the house of Pietie, called *il monte della pietà*, which by ordinarie Reuenues and gifts, may dispend yearly 60000. crownes, wherewith (amongst other charitable workes) it maintaineth through the Kingdome 2000. Infants.

Compasse and continuc.

It is one of the regions belonging to the Kingdome of Naples; It is bounded with the riuer Iano, and the Terrhene and Ionian seas; it is in compasse aboue 500. miles, and is diuided into two Prouinces; the one lieth on the Terrhene sea, where in ancient times the Brutians did inhabit, and that part is properly called Calabria; the other lieth on the Ionian, and called *Magna Grecia*. It is deuided into the higher and lower. Of the higher, the chiefe seat is Cosenza, of the lower, Catanzara. Cosenza is a large citie, Catanzara, a strong. Betweene the cape of the Pillars, and the cape Alice, is Corone, a place of verie holesome aire. Vpon this Territorie, Anno 1551. the Nauie of the Great Turke landed and made some stay; which was the cause that mooued Charles the fifth to fortifie this citie. It is a thing worthie to be noted, how much the Inhabitants of this countrie in former age, exceeded the numbers of this present: for in those daies this citie sent more men against the Locrians

Locrians than the whole Kingdome of *Naples* is now able to affoord, being numbred to 130000. A little about that doe inhabite the *Sabariis*, who were alwaies able to arme 30000.

At *Tarent* beginneth the countrie of *Otranto*, in ancient times called *Tarent. Iapigia*. It containeth all that corner of Land almost inuironed with the sea, which lieth betweene *Tarent* and *Brundisium*. In it (as *Strabo* writeth) were once thirteene great cities, but in his time onely two, *Tarent* and *Brunduse*. The aire is verie healthfull, and though the superficies of the soile seeme rough and barren, being broken with the plough, it is found to be excellent good mold. It is scarce of water, neuerthelesse it yeeldeth good Pasture, and is apt for Wheate, Barley, Oates, Oliues, Cædars, excellent Melons, Oxen, Asses and Mules of great estimation. The people are in their manners dangerous, superstitious, and for the most part, beastly. The Gentlemen louers of libertie and pleasure; scoffers at Religion, especially at that, which we tearme, the Reformed: And yet themselves of their owne great Blasphe-mers. For outward shew they liue in great pompe, and make the citie more stately, because they are not permitted to liue in the countrie: yet (as they dare) they bitterly groan vnder the Viceroyes controll; who exerciseth the Spanish pride amongst them, so that in these daies they come nothing neere their native glorie, nor customarie wantonnesse. In this countrie is bred the *Tarantola*, whose venome is expelled with Fire and Musique, as *Gellius* reporteth out of *Theophrast*-his Historie of liuing Creatures. There are likewise bred the *Chersidi*, Serpents liuing both on the Land and in the Sea: yea there is no part of *Italie* more cumbred with Grashoppers, (which leaue nothing where they come, but would vtterly consume in one night whole fields full of ripe corne,) if nature by sending the Birds called *Gaine* into those quarters, had not provided a remedie against this miserie. The place at all times of the yeare indureth much dammage by Haile: Thunder is as vsuall in Winter as in Sommer.

This Prouince is scituated betweene two seas: The citie is seated in Scituation; an Island like vnto a ship, and ioyned to the Continent with bridges, where the tide setteth violently: on the other side, the two seas ioyne together by meanes of a trench cut out by mans hand, and is of largenesse sufficient to receiue a Gallie. Where the citie now standeth, was before a Rock, & is holden to be the strongest fortres of the Kingdom. From thence along the shore lieth *Casaria*, now ruined by them of *Gallipoli*. *Gallipolis* is seated on a ridge of Land, running into the sea like a tongue; On the furthest point whereof, standeth the citie, and is
Casaria.
Gallipolis.
of

of great strength, by reason of the situation, being fenced with vnaccessable Rockes, well walled, and secured by a castle; with which Motiues of encouragement in the warres, betweene the *French* and the *Arragons*, the citizens thereof to their great honour, continued cuer faithfull to the fortunes of the *Arragons*. It hath beene counted one of the chiefe cities of *Italie*; it is now by their ciuile dissensions almost desolated, the cause, as I take it, wherefore the aire thereabouts is become so vnhealthfull: an influence incident to all great cities. For as nothing doth better temper the aire, than the frequencie of Inhabitants (because by husbandrie and industrie,) they drie vp Fennie and vnholosome places, prune such woods as grow too thicke and obscure; with their fires purge noysome exhalations, and with their high buildings extinguate grosse vapors. So on the contrarie, there is nothing apter to breed infection, than desolation: for so the places are not onelie deprived of the aforesaid helpe, but euen the houses and their ruines are receptacles of infection, and matter of corruption. Which appeareth to bee true, by the ruines of *Aquilea*, *Rome*, *Rauenna*, and *Alexandria* in *Egipt*. For which inconuenience, the *Gracians* neuer built huge Cities; *Plato* would not, that his should exceed fiew hundred Families, and *Aristotle* wished, that all his people might at once heare the voice of one Crier.

Extent.

This Prouince, extendeth from the Confines of *Brunduse*, to the River *Fortore*. It is diuided into two Territories: the one at this day called *Bari*, and by the Latines *Peucetia*; The other *Puglia*, and by them, *Dawnia*, diuided each from other, by the River *Lofanto*.

Capitanato.

In the second part, it comprehendeth *Capitanato*, contayning in it manie great Cities, places of Trade, and Fortresses of good account.

Monfredonia.

Amongst the number whereof, is *Monfredonia*, built by King *Monfredi* in a high place, and healthfull, with a conuenient and safe harbour. It lieth vnder the hill *Gargano*, at this day called *S. Angelo*, because of the appearing of *S. Michael*, who is honoured there with great deuotion. It should seeme, that in this Hill all the riches of *Pulgia* are heaped together: it hath plentie of Water, an element rare in this Prouince. The *Sarazens* finding the opportunitie of the situation thereof, did there fortifie, and therein maintained themselves a long time: for in truth, there is no place better to molest the Kingdome, and to command the *Adriatique* Sea. It is another Prouince of this Kingdome: it is bounded with the River *Fortore*, and the River *Tronto*: in which circuite are contained many people. Towardes the Sea it is a fruitfull Country, in the midst rough and mountainous, and the coldest Region in

Puglia.

in the Kingdome. The wealth thereof consisteth in Cattle and Saffron.

The cuntry of *Malifi* is deuided with the Riuer *Pescara*, the Go- Malifi.
uernour thereof resideth in *San-Seuerino*. This Prouince hath no fa-
mous place vpon the Sea-coast, but in the Inland. *Beneuento* was giuen Beneuent.
to the Church by *Henrie* the 4. in recompence of a tribute which *Leo*
the 9. did release to the Church of *Bamburgh*; which in those daies be-
ing by diuers casualties often vsurped, was at last restored againe to the
Church by the Armes of the *Normans*.

It was the habitation of the *Lucans*, extending from the Riuer *Sarno* Conteinue.
to *Lauo*: it is a Territorie rough and mountainous. Towards the sea-
coast are *Nico*, *Sorrento*, *Massa*, *Almazi*, and *Salerne*, the aire whereof is
verie temperate; in the vpland are *Cana*, *Nocera*, *Sanseuerino*, and more
nere the sea, *Peste*, where Roses blow twice a yeare; *Agropoli*, *Possidoni*,
no *N. Licosa*, *Policafter*, *Capace Noui*, *Venosa*, *Accella*, and *Melfi*, holden
second to *Naples*.

The places of most note therein are *Nizza*, hauing a castle of great Lyguria;
account, *Villa franca* a Hauen of great receipt, but dangerous: *Monaco*,
a notable fort, *Ventimilia*, a good citie. The Champion of *Arbenga* is
fertill, but the aire infectious. *Finale* is a famous Lordship; *Noli* hath a
conuenient harbour for shipping, but *Saona* had a better, if the iealous
Genois had not choaked it.

The people are wittie, actiue, high minded, tall of stature, and of Manners of
the Lyguriens.
comely personage. They build stately: At home they liue sparingly,
abroad magnificently.

Genoa, is now the Metropolitan citie of the Prouince, and by reason Genoa.
of situation vvas holden to be one of the keies of *Italie*. The people
thereof vvere once verie famous for their manifold victories, and great
command by sea, insomuch that vvrastling with the *Venetians*, they had
almost bereaued them of their estate and taking their citie: But (For-
tune fauoring the *Venetians*, and crossing the *Genoise*, euen to their vter
vndoing) euer since this citie hath declined, and that not onely in re-
gard of their former defeature, and their continuall and ciuile discords,
but also, for that they haue giuen ouer their Trafficke and care of their
publicke good; and haue betaken themselves to liue by vsurie, retaile,
and mechanickall Trades, altogether regarding their priuate benefit;
whereupon, not being of puissance, as in former ages, to make good
their actions, they were forced to put themselves vnder the protection,
sometimes of the Kings of France, and sometimes of the Duke of *Mil-*
laine, and now vnder the *Spanish*.

In

Venice.

In the verie bottome of the *Adriatique*, called at this day, the Gulfe of *Venice*, is a ridge of Land, reaching from the Lime-kils, called by them *Fornaci*, to the mouth of the Riuer *Piane*, in forme of a Bow; and containeth in length thirtie five miles; and in breadth two, where it is broadest, and in some places, no more then what an Hurquebush can shoote ouer. This ridge is parted and cut (what by the falling of Ri- uers and the working of the sea) into seauen principall Islandes: the Ports of *Brondolo*, of *Chiozza*, of *Malamoco*, of the three castles, of Saint *Erasmus*, the *Lito Maggiore*, or great shore, and the *Treports*. Be- tweene that part of this ridge, which is called *Lito*, and the Continent, standeth the Lake of *Venice*, in compasse nintie miles. In this Lake is seated the citie of *Venice*, vpon 72. Islands, distant from the shore two miles, and from the firme land five; deuided with manie Channels, some greater, some lesser. It was begun to bee built in the yeare 421. the 25. of March, about noone.

The increase thereof.

The description.

It increased in people, with the report of the *Hunnes* comming into *Italie*, and more afterwards, by the desolation of *Aquilie*, and the bordering cities; as *Padoa*, and *Monfelicie* destroyed by *Agilulfus*, King of *Lombardie*. Some are of opinion, that anciently the Lake reached vp as high as *Oriago*, which standeth vpon the *Brent*: which being true, then was *Venice* ten miles distant from the Continent. The Citie, amongst manie other Channels which doe incircle it, is deuided by one maine Channell (for his largenesse, called the *Grand Canale*) into two parts, whereof the one part looketh South-west, the other North-east. This Channell in his winding, maketh the forme of the Letter S. backward: And it is the more famous for the admirable prospect of so manie most curious and goodly Pallaces, as are built all the length of it on either side, to the astonishment of the beholders. Some report, that the Channell was the bed of the old Riuer *Brenta*, which it made before the course thereof was turned, by making the banke of *Leccia fusina*, and so broke out and emptied it selfe by the mouth, which is called the three Castles. On the middle of this Channell, standeth the bridge of *Rialto*, built first of wood, but in our time reedified and built of stone, and that with such excellencie of workmanship, that it may iustly bee numbred amongst the best contriued Edifices of Europe. This Bridge, ioyneth together the two most and best frequented parts of the citie, the *Rialto*, and Saint *Markes*. Manie lesse Channels fall into this, which are passed ouer either by Bridges, or Boates appointed for that purpose. The citie hath in circuit seauen miles, and yeeldeth an inestimable Reuenue. About the citie, especiall North-ward, lie scatter-
red

red here and there in the Lake seauentie five other Islands, the chiefe whereof, are *Murano* and *Burano*, both for circuit, building, and number of Inhabitants. Especially *Murano*, abounding all ouer with goodly Houses, Gardens, and a thousand other obiects of delight and pleasure. Here are these so famous Glasse-houses, where so manie admirable inuentions in that kinde are made in Gallies, Tents, Organs, and such like; whereof the quantitie yearly vented, amounteth to 60000. crownes.

Murano.

The Glasse-houses.

Now the citie of *Venice*, which from her Infancie hath maintained her selfe free, and as a Virgine, for one thousand and three hundred yeares, and that hetherto hath beene vntouched with anie iniurie of War or Rapine, amongst other aduantages required in the scituation of a citie, hath those two which are required in a well seated citie, whereof hauing already discoursed in the scite of England, we will here surcease further to dilate off. The safetie then of this citie, groweth from the Waters, and the scituation thereof in the Water, where neither it can be well approached or assaulted by Land, for the interposition of the Water betweene it and the Land: nor yet by Sea, for that the streames are not nauigable, but by Vessels of the lesser size onely: for greater ships riding out of the Channels (where the Water is some-what deepe) would driue; and riding within the Channels, with euerie turning water should be on ground. So that a Nauie of lesser shipping would doe no good, and greater shipping cannot well there be mannaged. In conclusion, these Waters are rather made for the places, and intertainment of peace, than for motions of warre. Wee may adde to these difficulties (which nature and the scituation doe present) another as great, which ariseth from the power and prouisions of the citie, which are euer such as will better inable the Inhabitants to offend another in those Waters, than anie man can inuent to offend them. All which young *Pepin* tasted to his losse.

Venice.

The scite thereof, and hardnesse to approach.

*Who with his ships and men fild all the Coast,
From the Fornaci to the greater shore,
And laid a bridge to passe his ventrous Hoast,
From Malamocco all the Channell ore,
Euen to Rialto: yet for all this boast
Hee's faine to flie with shame: the Seas do drowne
His men: His Bridge, the IVanes haue beaten downe.*

And lastly we may adde the continuall Art and care which the Seigniorie doth vse, euer to augment something to the fortification of this their Citie and State.

The

Diuision of
the State of
Vedice.

The whole Dominion of the *Venetian Seignorie*, is diuided into Firme-land and Sea. By the Firme-land, we vnderstand all that which they possesse in *Lombardie*, in *Marca Treuisana*, and in *Friuli*; for that all those parcels doe make one continuat country, passable from one to the other, without helpe of Sea. Wee will tearme that sea, which confineth with the Lake Sea-ward, or that, which cannot be approached without passing by Water. This State is againe diuided into Continent and Island. On the Continent they haue *Istria*, *Dalmatia*, *Sclauonia*, *Albania*, or at least, some parts thereof: The Islands stand partly within the Gulfe, not farre distant from the Continent, and part of them are without the Gulfe; which are *Corfu*, *Cephalonia*, *Zante*, *Candia*, *Cenigo*, *Tine*, and other in the *Adriatique*.

The State of the firme Land, containeth one of the Marquisats of *Italie*; to wit, *Trenisa*, which besides the head citie, whereof, it taketh its Name, hath also in it, the cities of *Feltre*, *Belluno*, and *Ceneda*. It hath morcouer, two of those Cities which are of the first rancke of the cities in *Italie*: namely, *Venice* and *Brescia*. Nor, let it seeme strange to anie man, that I reckon *Brescia* amongst the said cities, considering, that for largenesse of Territorie it giueth place to no citie through *Italie*; containing in length one hundred miles, and in bredth fiftie. Considering also the number of Inhabitants, and the entrade it yeeldeth to the Seignorie, besides the priuate reuenue of the citie it selfe; In all which, few other cities come nere it.

There is also in the firme Land the citie of *Verona*, called so for its supereminent conditions, as *Verè vna*. And is the first of the second rancke of cities of *Italie*.

The citie of *Padoa*, which for goodnesse of soyle, exceedeth *Bologna* it selfe. There is also the cities of *Bergamo*, *Vicenza*, and *Crema*. There is againe the State of *Friuli*, with two honourable cities; *Vdine*, where the Lieutenant of the State, resideth, and *Cuidall*; besides, a number of other populous Townes, little inferiour to cities. Lastly, there is the fruitfull *Polesine*, with the Noble citie of *Ronigo* therein, with other places of good respect.

If wee consider the Water, there are few States of *Italie*, that hath more abundance in that kinde, either for standing Waters or Riuer. In the Territorie of *Bergamo* is the Lake of *Iseo*; in the countrie of *Brescia*, the Lake of *Idro*. In the *Veronesse* and *Brescian*, is the Lake of *Guardo*. It is also watered with manie great Riuer, that not onely serue to make the fields fruitfull, but also to fortifie the place. And those riuers are, *Oglio*, *Chiese*, *Nautilio*, *Mincio*, *Seri*, *Mela*, and *Garza*; which
in.

indeed is rather a Mountaine Bourne, than a River, &c. The countrie of *Polesine* and *Padoa*, are so stored with Lakes and Rivers, that therein is no Burg or place which standeth not within five miles of some fresh Water. And all this countrie of the Firme Land (whereof I haue spoken) is also for aire exceeding wholesome and temperate, as the completions and cheerefull countenances of the Inhabitants can well witness, together, with the quicknesse of their apprehension and wit, as well for matter of Armes as learning.

Touching the Land, this State hath in it manie parts that are verie diuers in qualitie, some-where exceeding happie and fruitfull, but lesse industrie in the people; other-where, the people are exceeding industrious, but the ground defectiue. Againe, some parts there are, where both the people are exceeding carefull and industrious, and the soile also good. Of the first sort, is the Territorie of *Crema*, of *Padoa*, of *Vicenza*, of *Trenis*, and the *Polesine*.

Of the second sort, is the countrie of the *Bergomasche*, the *Veronese*, and *Friuli*.

Of the third sort, is the countrie of *Brescia*. And touching the first, it is almost incredible what the riches and increase is of those grounds; what fresh Meadowes, what fruitfull arable, what abundance of Cattle, of flesh, of all things that come of Milke, what plentie of Corne, of Pulse, of Fruit, Wood, Flaxe, Linnen, and Fish. Amongst all which particularities, the *Padoan* doth notwithstanding excell; which for goodnesse of soile, doth carrie the praise from all the rest of *Lombardie*. The wealth of this Territorie may hence be coniectured, that it hath the richest Bishopricke and Predendaries of *Italie*. It hath one of the richest Abbaies of *Saint Benet* in *Italie*, which is *Saint Iustina*. It hath one of the most beautifull Conuents of the same order (viz:) that of *Praxa*. It hath the richest Monasterie, belonging to the *Austensians*, which is that of *Caudiana*. It hath two of the greatest Churches that may bee found in *Italie*, which are, *S. Iustina*, and *S. Anthone*, with one of the greatest Customes of salt in Europe.

In the time of the *Roman* Common-wealth, no citie of the Empire had more Knights of Rome, than had *Padoa*. For that (as *Strabo* testifieth) there were some-times counted five hundred of them at once. Which must needs proceed from the extraordinarie goodnesse of the soyle, and the greatnesse of priuate liuelihoods. But at this day, the greatnesse of the *Venetian* Nobilitie, hath in great part diminished the Nobilitie of other Cities. Amongst which, *Aquileia* in old time, tooke in compasse twelue miles, and made 120. thousand citizens.

And

And *Rauenna* which was situated in a Lake (as *Venice* is) was once of such respect, that it was thought fit, and chosen, first by *Honorius*, and afterwards by the *Goths* and *Exarches*, for the seat of the Empire. In our daies, by the coniuration of *Cambrsie*, it was besieged by *Maximilian*, with seauen hundred French Lances, 1200. men at Armes, *Italians*, 18000. *Dutch* foote, 6000. *Spaniards*, 2000. *Italians* in pay, and 600. Aduenturers of diuers Nations, with a huge quantitie of Artillerie, and all other Munition. Against this force, the Seigniorie opposed as great a force for defence, and put into the citie sixe hundred men at Armes, 1500. light horse, as manie *Carabines*, vnder verie expert commanders: And for foote, they had about 12000. *Italians*, 10000. drawne out of the Gallies, a great number of Gentlemen of *Venice*, and Peasants of the countrie without number; together with an Armie of inestimable quantitie of Munition and victuall. With which quantitie of men and prouisions, the greatnesse of their workes and fortifications well answered. Now, there being about and in *Padoa*, two so great and populous Armies, one to assault it, another to defend it, and that this infinite number of Horse on both sides, did neuer cease from boothalling and forraging the countrie about, setting fire on all that they could not carrie away, and that the Peasants had also conueied away as much as they could into the citie, and the adioyning holds, yet did neither of these Armies euer want victuals during all that sidge.

And yet as fruitfull as is *Padoa*, the countrie of *Crema* is no whit behind it, for all things; for store and finenesse of flax, beyond it. Of *Polesine* it shall onely suffice to say, that it holdeth the like proportion with *Padoa*. The countrie of *Vicenza*, hath the Champion exceeding fat, and for that part thereof which is hillie, few countries come nere it for pleasantnesse. It leaneth its shoulders vpon the *Alpes*: it hath on the right hand the new Riuer, on the left, *Brenta*, in the midst of it runs *Bacchilion*, *Remon*, &c. It is the Garden of *Venice*.

The Territorie of *Trenisa*, as it cannot be reckoned amongst the fertilest, yet it is numbred amongst the pleasantest.

Now the countries where the industrie of the people is more than the goodnesse of the soile, are those of *Verona*, *Bergamo*, and *Friuli*. For in the *Bergamasch*, there is more than fortie miles of Mountaine: the *Veronese* hath manie miles of Champian, altogether barren and sandie. The like hath *Friuli*; whence it commeth that these parts are much subiect to dearths, and scarcitie of corne; but what they want in Bread, is recompenced in Wine abundantly; so that as I vnderstand, the
Island

Island alone of *Scala*, which is one great Village in the *Veranefse*, doth rent in this commoditie, to the number of 5000. crownes yearly. Nor are they destitute of verie good Wooll, whereof they of *Verona* doe vveaue Cloathes and Felts: The *Burgamash*, an infinite quantitie of *Dornix*, besides Broadcloathes and Kerfies, which they vent partly into *Lombardie*, and partly into *Almaigne*.

The fruitfulnessse of the soyle, and industrie of the people together, is notably discovered in the Territorie of *Brescia*; in somuch that I belecue that no part of *Italie* in these two points, can be compared thereto, for opulencie and plentie, in those parts vvhich for goodnesse of soile wee count to be fertill. There is no priuate mans Garden for art and gracefulnessse of compartement or order, more exquisitely cast, or more diligently planted, or more neatly kept and dressed, than this whole Territorie.

Now touching that part of the *Brescian* Territorie that is vnfruitfull, impossible it vvere to declare the diligence and art that is there vsed, for plowing of Mountaines, and for planting of Vines throughout the said Mountaines. But a sufficient Testimonie thereof will be, that the barrenest part of this Territorie, is no lesse well inhabited, than is the best. In the towne of *Cardone* alone it is knowne, that if neede require, they are able in one day to make two hundred Harquebushes at all points out of the Masse, although there be no Harquebush that goeth through lesse, than ten hands at the least. No Iron is brought in, more than groweth in the countrie, and yet little goeth out vnwrought. Some is sold made into barres, but most into vvares. In the citie of *Brescia*, are accounted more than two hundred Smiths shops, of which, fiftie at least are Cutlers.

There are also some Iron Mines in *Val Comonica*, which yeeld Water for sixe Furnaces, and sixe Milles, in vvich they make Plate for Armour. In the citie of *Cordone* are made in great quantitie, Swords, Daggers, Halberds, Kniues, and other like Weapons: In the Marquisate of *Trenisa*, great quantitie of excellent Steele, and so in *Alphaga Soldo*, and in *Cador*; exceeding good swords are wrought in *Belluno*, *Feltre*, and *Seravalle*.

The Dominion vvich the Venetian hath by sea, is of two kinds, as Of the Conti-
hath formerly beene said; partly *Continent*, and partly *Islands*. The nent.
greatest Territorie of the Continent is *Istria*, and the best, vnlesse it
were for that the ayre thereof, is naturally vnwholesome, or rather to
speake freely, contagious, and pestilent, especially about *Nola*. For
vvhich cause, that it grow not to be disinhabited, the Seigniorie alloweth

to all men that will dwell there, a certaine quantitie of Land, with diuers immunities and priuiledges besides. It yeeldeth great abundance of Oyle, Fish, and Salt.

Dalmatia, *Sclauonia*, and *Albania*, affoord excellent wines: and in these quarters, (partly by the commodiousnesse of the sea, and partly by reason of the intertainment and pay that runs there amongst the Garrisons,) with the carefull industrie of the Inhabitants; the people liue indifferently well there.

Of the Islands
of the Gulfe,

The Islands belonging to this State, and lying within the Gulfe, are not manie. The names of them are *Veggia*, *Arbe*, *Brazza*, *Pago*, *Liesina*, *Curzola*, *Lissa*, with the Islands of *Zara* and *Sesa*. They all yeeld in generall, Wines of reasonable goodnesse. *Cherso*, with some other, doe exceed for plentie of Cattle, Milke, Meates and Wooll. *Pago* hath Salt-pits, and yeeldeth great profit. *Veggia* hath store of Pulfe, light Wines, Wood, and Horse, though small. They are all beautified with Hauens, excepting *Arbe*, which defect is there recompenced with the naturall pleasantnesse of the countrie. They haue verie rich Fishings; especially *Lefina*, whose sea yeeldeth Pilchers in great abundance. The greatest of these Islands is *Lefina*, containing in compasse fiftie miles. The best peopled is *Curzola*: The most delicious, *Arbe*: and both with the parts of the Continent ouer against them, whereof wee spake before, do yeeld great number of seruiceable men for the field and the Gallies.

Of the Islands
out of the
Gulfe,

It remaineth to speake of the Islands out of the Gulfe. Of which the first in order, is *Corfu*, for commodiousnesse of scituation, of great account. For it lieth in a manner in the verie center of all the Sea-Dominions belonging to this State, betweene the *Adriatique* and the *Ionique* Seas, equally distant from *Venice*, and *Candie*. In which respect, it standeth fitly both to hinder an Enemie that would assault the Islands, and Continent within the Gulfe; and to releue *Candie*, if it were distressed. It also lieth fitly to defend all the Westerne parts, and to molest the East. It standeth in so excellent a Seat, for the defence of *Italie*, that it may properly be tearmed the *Bastion* thereof. It standeth well also for the Conquest of *Greece*, bordering vpon it, as it were a strong Mount or Cavallier. It standeth opportunely for the receipt, releuing and vniing of the Forces and Nauies of Christendome against the Infidell. And albeit the Island be not verie plentifull in graine, yet thorough the vicinitie thereof to *Puglia*, and *Epire*, and the facile transportation it hath to *Venice* and *Sicill*, it cannot want anie necessities. The experience whereof, hath beene manifested both in the time of the *Romans*,
and

and in our daies also. The *Roman* Fleete made head alwaies at *Corfu*: There also, in the ciuile warres betwixt *Cesar* and *Pompey*, did ride *M. Bibulus*, *Pompeis* Generall. And in our memorie, the forces of the league concluded by *Paul* the third, and *Pius* the fift; did there assemble, and from thence set forward.

The Island was of so powerfull an estate, that it armed sixtie Vessels to Sea. It aboundeth with excellent Oyle, Wine, Waxe, Honie, and fruits of all sorts. All which commodities, it hath in that goodnesse and porportion, that better in the same kinde, are not to be found through the whole World. It hath in length sixtie Miles, twentie Miles ouer, and in circuit 120. It hath three places of great importance; to wit, the olde Citie, neere the old Seat of *Pagiopili*; the new Fort, and thereto adioyning the Castle Saint *Angelo*, besides sixtie and eight Townes.

Next in order, is *Cephalonia* containing in compasse 166. miles. It hath two hundred Townes, with Hauens belonging vnto them: Two whereof *Argostoli* and *Guiscardo*, are most famous; the third is *Nallo*. It yeeldeth store of Graine, Oyle, Sheepe, Cheese, Wooll, Honie, and Currans, and these in such plentie, that thereby it receiueth great and yearely Reuenues. *Candia*, is likewise one of the most renowned Islands of the *Medterranean*. It containeth in length two hundred fixtie miles, in breadth fiftie, and in compasse, in regard of the manie promontories, it maketh almost sixe hundred. It yeeldeth great plentie of Wine, with vs called *Maluesies*; Cheese and Honie. It is seated so conueniently, and with such aduantage for Marrine occurrences, that *Aristotle* censured it, to be Ladie of the Sea. His reason, because it lieth verie neere the middle, betweene *Europe* and *Asia*, and betweene *Greece* and the Islands of the *Archipelago*, which in a manner Court her a their Mistris and Soueraigne. It lieth from *Constantinople* three hundred and fiftie miles, from *Alexandria* and *Soria* fiue hundred, from *Caramania*, *Epire*, and *Ciprus*, three hundred, from *Affrique* two hundred.

There remaine behind two other Islands, *Cerigo* and *Tine*. Of which, *Cerigo* containeth in compasse sixtie miles. In scituation it is Mountainous, hauing one good citie, seated on the top of a Hill. It hath two Hauens, one called, *Delphino*, the other *Tine*. That looketh North, this South. It hath besides diuers Creekes, but narrow and vn safe: with the ancients it was of good esteeme; for *Leon* of *Sparta* considering well the seat and qualitie of the place, wished that either it had neuer beene; or being, it had beene drowned, as soone as it

had beene made. Which wish, as things afterwards fell out, wrought him a great opinion of wisdom, and fore-sight. For *Romarus*, who banished from *Sparta*, and sojourned with *Zerxes*, counselled him to bring vp all his Nauie vnto this Island, if he meant to impatronize himselfe of *Greece*; as he might easily haue done, if hee had followed that counsaile, as in few yeares after did *Nicias*, Generall of the *Athenians*, in the vvarre of *Peloponesus*. In our time it is called the Lanthorne of the *Archipelago*.

Tine is in the midst of the *Archipelago*, fixe miles from *Delos* (round about which *Delos*, lie the *Cyclades*, in number fiftie three.) It hath in circuit fortie miles, vvith one great & populous citie. And by reason of the Scite which is on a Hill verie strong, verie manie Townes it hath besides. And herewith endeth the Sea-Dominion of the Venetian. In all vvwhich, there are little lesse than three hundred and fiftie thousand soules. Which number perhaps is greater, than a man at first vvould beleeue, especially if he consider withall, how some of these parts, as *Sclanonia*, are not verie fruitfull: and manie of the Islands are barren; besides the terror of the Turkish incursions. Insomuch, that if their countries vv ere vnder anie other Lord than the Venetian, they would surely be deserted. But the Seigniorie, with intertaining peace with all their Neighbours, with building of Forts, maintaiuing of Garrisons in places of necessitie, and with exceeding expence of money, keepe and maintaine their people in this sort, as at this day we see them inhabited.

Riches.

Fame reporteth, the *Venetians* to be exceeding rich: But besides opinion, there is great reason, why they should be so indeed. First, they are Lords of a large Territorie, both by Land and Sea: but chiefly on Land: vvhere they haue cities of the best ranke of *Italie*, with large and opulent Territories adioyning vnto them, and full of people, industrious and thriftie. They haue also rich Bishopricks, wealthie Abbies, with the fattest and most commodious benefices of *Italie*: Families both for Nobilitie and Reuenue, worshipfull; and Buildings, for State and Magnificence, singular. Besides which, they haue also verie wealthie commonalties. Amongst which, to omit manie, *Brescia* alone hath 18. thousand crownes of yearly Reuenue: and *Asola* which is but a Towne, subiect to *Brescia*, ten thousand.

Another reason, is the great aduantage which the Venetian hath for Traffique, both in drawing vnto himselfe other mens commodities, and in venting his owne. I call his owne commodities, vvhatsoever is growing, or made vvithin the State: or vvhatsoever Trade besides hee hath ingrossed, or by prescription of time appropriated to himselfe;
This

This aduantage is maruellous great throughout the whole State of *Venice*, for that the firme Land on euerie side, is full of Nauigable Riuers and Lakes. Besides, it is for the greater part a plaine countrie, so that the conueiance of all sorts of Merchandize by Cart or by Horse, is verie easie. They are also in possession of the Vallies and passages of the *Rhetian*, *Giulian*, and *Carmian Alpes*, by which lieth all the Traffique betweene *Italie* and *Germanie*.

The State of the sea, is full of excellent, large, and safe Harbours, especially *Dalmatia*, and *Sclauonia*. The Islands haue the like, especially the greater ones, as *Corfu*, and *Candia*. But the flower of Gaine and emolument to this State, is the Traffique of the great Sea of *Soria* and *Egipt*, which the *Venetian* had altogether in his hand; especially so much of the ancient Traffique for spice, which hath beene, and yet is, of resonable good consequence vnto them. In summe, all the Ouerland Trade of Cloues, Nutmegs, Ginger, Cinnamon, Pepper, Waxe, Sugars, Tapestries, Cloathes, Silkes, and Leather, with al the commodities of the East do passe this way, and are vttered from hence into the greatest part of *Italie*, and a good part of *Germanie*. The greatnesse of this Trade, may the better be perceiued by the greatnesse and multitude of priuate shipping, belonging to Citizens and other Strangers, Merchants of *Venice*, and other Hauen-townes belonging to the State: As also by the multitude & wealth of the said Merchants, and of the great stirring and bartering, that is there euerie day. In which kinde the Merchants onely of the *Dutch Nation*, in *Venice*, doe dispatch as much, as were thought sufficient to furnish a whole World. To which purpose I may not omit to note, that cities of Traffique haue three degrees of difference; For either the Trade lieth by the Ware-house, that dispatcheth by grosle; or by open shoppes, that doe retaile, or by both. Of this first sort, are *Lisbon*, *Ciull*, *Antwerpe*, *Amsterdam*, *Hamburgh*, *Danske*, *Norimberg*; and in *Italie*, *Naples*, *Florence*, and *Genoa*. Of the second sort, are all the other cities of *France* and *Germanie*. And amongst the cities of *Italie*, *Milan* is herein the cheefest; where there are to be seene shops of all wares so rich, and well furnished, that they may well serue for Megazins to manie cities. In both sorts, *Venice* goeth beyond all the Cities of *Italie*. For there are open shops of infinite number, and the Ware-houses there, doe farre passe all other in *Italie*. So that this citie doth Traffique by way of shop, as much as anie other citie, and by Ware-houses, more. And to conclude, putting both together, it is the citie of greatest Traffique in Europe, and perhaps of the World. And ouer this, whereas wealth doth arise to

Of the sea.

euerie citie, by three waies; first, by profits of Dominion; secondly, by recourse from places, to Iustice: and thirdly by Merchandize; *Venice* is by all these waies continually enriched. First, the Reuenue of the whole is brought to *Venice*, both of the Firme-Land, and of the sea: Secondly, all Appeales and suites of importance through the whole State, doe come thether; and thirdly *Venice* is as it were the center of the East and West, the Store-house of all that is produced by Sea or Land, and in summe, the receipt of the whole wealth of *Asia* and *Europe*.

To set downe precisely the Reuenue of the State, is no easie matter: but a man may bee bold to say, that it is held to be the greatest of anie Prince Christian, except those of Spaine and France. But whatsoever it be, certaine it is, they doe lay vp euerie yeare a great Masse, ouer and aboue their expences, notwithstanding, their incredible charge they are at in the *Arsenall*, in the building of Gallies, in Fortifications, in Garrisons, and Stipends. To this, the *Venetian* hath beene for these manie yeares in continuall peace with all Princes: during which intermission, they haue set all their studie to the augmenting of their Reuenues, whereby it is now credible, that hauing some yeares since discharged their debts, and disburthened themselues of the interests of the said Monies, they haue saued together great quantitie of Treasure. Besides which Treasure in readie coine, they haue another treasure of no small consideration, and that is the vwealth of the citie, and the priuate substance of particulars, with the Reuenues of the greater schooles, or as they tearme them, Hals; which the Common-wealth in her need may vse as her owne. For that in occasions, some do giue voluntarily; others do lend franckly, or vpon light vse: And in the warre of *Cambray*, they gathered fife hundred thousand crownes, vpon the sale onely of certaine offices amongst them.

The strength
of the State.

Now the *Venetian* Territorie, for the extent of it, hath in length some-what aboue one thousand miles; and the breadth thereof answereth not to the length. But when soeuer they are drawne vnto seruice, they wage forraine forces. And hereupon, they haue alwaies amongst them ten bands of *Albanesses* and *Croatians*: They keepe moreover in entertainment, certaine Colonels of the *Swisses* and *Grisons*, with diuers captaines besides, out of the State of the Church. In former times, they haue beene able to draw vnto their seruice such a Potentate as a Duke of *Urbine*, vnto whom they committed the Lieutenancie and leading of their Armies, making as secure a vse of his forces, as of their owne. But aboue all things, they haue alwaies made right excel-

excellent vse of their leagues and confederacies with other States. In the league which they made with *Amadis de Launie*, called commonly the Greene Count, and with *Theobald Earle of Champaine*, with *Lewis Earle of Blois*, *Baldwine Earle of Flanders*, and *Boniface Marquesse of Mountferrat*, they first recovered *Zara* and then entred vpon the protection of *Constantinople*: wherein they got for themselves three eights of the whole Conquest; and in particular, the cities of *Gallipoli*, *Modoni*, *Corone*, and *Durazzo*; with all the Islands in those seas, sauing a few, which lie before *Morea*. Amongst which Islands, *Candie* and *Corfu* fell to their shares, the greatest part whereof, they inffected to their priuate Gentlemen. The citie of *Constantinople* it selfe, remained to the Emperour, but not without a proportionable consideration made to the Seigniorie.

In the league made with *Azzo Visconti* and the *Florentines*, against *Martin Scala*, they possessed themselves of *Treuegi*, *Bassane*, and *Castilbald*. Being confederated with *Mathias Coruinus*, King of *Hungarie*, and *G. Scanderbeg*, Prince of *Albania*, they made head against the *Ottoman* power. In another league contracted with the *Florentines* against the *Visconti*, they enlarged their Dominions within *Lombardie*. Lastly, in the confederation which they had with *Francis* the first, King of *France*, they re-entred vpon *Brescia* and *Verona*.

With their Money they haue also not a little aduanced their affaires. Of *Emanuel Paleologus*, they bought *Lepanto*, *Napoli*, and *Malualia*. Of *George Belsichius*, they had the Towne of *Scutari* in pawne of mony lent him.

Neither haue they beene wanting to helpe themselves with honourable pretences. In the warres which *Charles* the eight King of *France* made vpon *Italie*, the *Venetians* vndertooke to stand Head and Protectors of the common libertie; and in that pretence, made all *Italie* arme against him.

And because indeed, this State may, and is rightly held for one maine Fort of *Italie*, and Christendome beside, against the Turkish inuasions; therefore haue they had also in their assistance from time to time, the forces of the Church, and of the King of *Spaine*: of whom the danger hath alwaies beene accounted common, and as nere vnto themselves.

Now, on the Firme-Land, they haue a continuall Ordinance of Forces at land
 twentie and eight thousand Foote, vvith Captaines, Ensignes, and all
 other Officers inrolled and paide. They haue besides, to the number of
 foure thousand Muskateers, men well trained to that kinde of Weapon.

For which occasions, they haue also their times of Musters yearly; partly to approue their experience, and partly to render such rewards as are due to the best deseruers. Of this multitude and their valour, the battaile fought at *Lepanto*, to the vtter rowting of the Turkish Nauie, is a sufficient Testimonie. Besides these, they maintaine fixe thousand men at Armes, well mannaged and appointed, the like whereof is not to be found in all *Italie* besides.

Touching their sea-forces, they haue on the firme Land ten thousand men inrolled to serue at the Ore: And of these kinde of Men, all *Dalmatia* and *Sclauonia*, doth yeeld them what numbers they will besides; and that at a reasonable hand.

At sea,

The citie of *Venice* alone, armeth vpon occasion fiftie Gallies, and *Candie*, fortie.

What their whole power and forces euerie way may amount vnto, they shewed in the warre of *Ferrara*: wherein they had on foote two seuerall Armies, one about *Ferrara*, the other on the Confines of *Milan*. They had at the same time besides, two seuerall Nauies; the one vpon the *Po*; the other vpon the sea, to obserue the proceedings of *Naples*; and all this without associats. In the warre against *Lewis* the twelfth King of France, their Armie was composed of 2000. men at armes, 3000. light Horse, and thirtie thousand foote. In the yeare 1570. they armed foorth one hundred and fiftie lesser Gallies, eleauen great Gallies, one Gallioon, and twentie fiue tall ships: albeit, that number by occasion of Pestilence happening in the Nauie, was reduced to one hundred and twentie, and seauen lesser Gallies, and foureteene ships, the other Vessels remaining vntoucht; like as had befallne them before, in the yeare 36. when as they had the name onely to make one part of three: but indeed they made a full halfe of all the Christian forces besides.

But because there is nothing that can giue more certaine coniecture of the power of anie State, than to haue sustained and gone through with great and perillous warres: it will not be vnpleasant to set downe some of their most important actions, which in that kinde they haue supported.

Anciently they had warre with the Kings of France, and in that war they discomfited *Pepin*, sonne to *Charlemagne*. They warred afterward with the King of *Hungarie*, and tooke from them the Townes which they now hold in *Dalmatia* and *Sclauonie*. They fell at debate with the Emperors of *Constantinople*, and gat from them the cities of *Salonichi*, and of *Moria*. One, the most dangerous warre that they euer had, was

was that which they mannaged with the *Genois*: and yet at length, such was the issue thereof, that howsoever, hauing lost to the Enemie *Chiozza*, and were neere driuen to their vtter desolation, yet was the enemie so farre of from gayning an intire victorie vpon them, that in the pursuit thereof, hee most of all destroyed himselfe: insomuch that hauing for maintenance of that warre engaged the Reuenues of the State of *Saint George*, so by little and little through feeblenesse growing vpon the, they were compelled to throw the citie within the armes & protection, sometimes of France, and sometimes of *Millan*; so that to this day they could neuer recover their Pristinat fortunes.

Then had they to doe with the *Visconti*, Princes of *Millan*, who were at that time dreadfull through *Italie*: yet by that War, the *Venetian* not onely gained profit, but honor also.

They opposed themselves against all the Princes of *Italie* in the prosecution of *Ferrara*, and that with such successe, that in fine they annexed to their owne Dominion, all the *Polesine* of *Rauiso*. And after they had irritated the Princes of *Italie*, these letted not to draw vpon themselves a warre, vndertaken by all the Potentates of Christendome, combined against them in the confederation concluded at *Cambray*: which vwarre, as it vvas the most haplesse and dispairefull that euer they mannaged, through the miscarriages of their Armies at *Carranaggio*, at *Brescia*, and at *Vicenza*: yet in the end they remained Lords still of their owne, and of being conquered, at last remained with Conquest.

They haue for manie ages together, waged vwarre with the Turke, especially with *Amurath* the second: *Mahomet* the second; with *Baiazeth*, and with *Zelim* the second. They maintained a sixteene yeares vvarres with *Mahomet* the second, euen him which had the fortune to haue subdued two Empires, *Constantinople* and *Trapifond*; to haue destroyed twelue Kingdomes, and to haue sacked two hundred Cities. Which warre they finished, although not altogether to their profit.

They held vvars for seauen yeares without intermission with all the Princes of Christendome, and went away Winners: neither in all these occasions were they destitute, either of Men or Money.

In our memorie they vvarred with *Selim* the second, and in that warre they disbursed aboue twelue Millions of Money. The like excessive summes they spent in their Warres with *Michaell*, Emperour of *Constantinople*; in the enterpize of *Ferrara*, and in the war vndertaken of the confederacie at *Cambray*. All which so inestimable sums, notwithstanding at this day, whether they were parcels of their owne Treasure,

or lones of Money from others, they haue re-imburfed or extinguished.

Of Neighbors.

The Princes that border and confine vpon the *Venetian*, are these. *Turke*, the King of *Spaine*, the *Pope*, and the house of *Austria*.

The Turke.

As touching the *Turke*, whose State and power hath beene so regarded in the Worlds opinion, he seemeth at this time rather to be impaired, than otherwise. Whereof, one great signe is, his protraction of the Warre in *Hungarie* these many yeares, with Armies of much better qualitie, than any his predecessors were wont to lead or send thither. Whereupon it hath happened, that not only his forces haue oftentimes beene broken and discomfited, but also the Prince himselfe hath hardly escaped from being taken or slaughtered; if on our parts there had beene other better Chieftes to temporize with him, or more agreement in those Heads, to assaile him. Notwithstanding, he hath there lost the Townes of *Filech*, *Lippa*, *Rab*, and *Strigonia*, places of great consideration. He hath also the second time lost *Gianarine*. These losses doe more than counteruaile the winning of *Agria* from vs, being a fortresse of many knowne imperfections for scite and building, besides the withdrawing of *Transilvania* and *Valachia* from his subiection, with the alienation of many rich Provinces in *Asia*.

The State of these presents considered, the *Venetian* for that part of Dominion, that confineth vpon the *Turke*, had neuer more cause to thinke himselfe better secured from violence, especially hauing all Maritime Towns, both by Sea and Land gallantly fortified: which strength is also the greater, by the facilitie, the Sea affordeth to succor his owne, and to distresse his Enemy.

The Spaniard.

Touching the King of *Spaine*, vpon whom they doe border, as well in the *Adriatique*, as in *Lombardie*, it is now more than threelcore yeares, that there hath beene any variance at all befallne them. Neyther in truth can it turne the *Venetian* to any great gaine to haue war with so powerfull a King; nor the King of *Spaine* to make war in *Italie*; where by putting things in vprore and tumult, he might perhaps hazzard some part of his owne. For that, war (as *Emanuel* duke of *Sauoy* was wont to say) hath something of the nature of Dice, which no man knoweth how they will run.

The Emperor.

I may say as much of the House of *Austria*, Princes that do exceedingly cherish and affect quietnesse, wherewith they are become great, and with the same means do maintaine their greatnesse.

The Pope.

Of the *Church*, it were alike superfluous to speake; for that neither *Saint Peter* can make any excuse to make war vpon *Saint Marke*, nor will

will Saint *Marke* seeke to trouble Saint *Peter*, vnprouoked.

In somme, the *Venetian* hath two many aduantages aboue all other Princes: The one is that they haue a counsel, that is immortal; the other, that the heart of the State cannot be pierced vnto by any Enemie. And so conclude, that the *Pope* and the *Venetian* at this time are more potent, and of greater antiquitie in *Italie*, than euer heeretofore they haue been; not only for that the *Pope* hath a more ample Territorie, and that but little incumbred with pettie Lordships; and that the *Venetian* hath his Dominion better fortified, and his Coffers fuller than in times past: but also in regard, that the States of *Naples* and *Millan* are in the hands of a Prince, absent and far off, and therefore circumspect to raise innovations.

Lumbardie, anciently called *Cisalpina*, extendeth from *Panaco* vnto *Sesia*, lying betweene the *Apenine* and the *Alpes*. *Marca Triuigiana*, some-time called *Venetia*, lyeth betweene the *Menzo* and the *Po*. Most commonly both Prouinces passe vnder the name of *Lumbardie*, because there the Kings of the *Longobards* seated their dwellings, longer than in any other place of *Italie*. Besides, the soyle, the ayre, and the Inhabitants, hold such correspondencie, that they ought not to be distinguished. This is the richest and ciuillest Prouince of *Italie*; For, such another peece of ground, for beautifull Cities, goodly Riuers, fields, and pastures, for plentie of Fowle, Fish, Graine, Wine, and Fruits, is not to be found againe in all our Westerne World; arising partly by the ease of Nauigable Riuers, as *Tesino*, *Adda*, *Oglio*, *Menzo*, *Oglio*, *Menzo*, *Adige*, and *Po*: partly by Channels cut out of those Riuers, and partly by the great Lakes of *Verbano*, *Lario*, and *Benaco*. No lesse Commoditie ariseth by the plaines passable for Cartes, Mules, and other carriage.

The greatnesse likewise of the Lords of *Lumbardie* hath been a great furtherance thereto. For while the *Visconti* raigned, this State maintained warres of great importance against most puissant Princes. And for the Empirie hereof, happened those notable warres of our daies, betweene the Emperour and the French King. And no maruell, that two such puissant Potentates contended with so great effusion of blood for this Dukedome: for though to many it should not seeme great, yet in verie truth, for the wealth of the Countrey, and the quantitie, it hath bin of as great reputation, as some Realmes of *Europe*: some Dukes whereof haue possessed greater Territorie, enioied wealthier Reuenues, and haue bin more puissant in Warres, and more honorable in Peace, than diuers Princes, graced with Kingly Titles.

Amongst

Lumbardie.

Millan.

Amongst the Cities of these Prouinces (accounting *Venice* amongst the Islands) *Millan* without controuersie holdeth the precedencie. It is able to reckon vpon 200000. persons, and hath a large and populous Territorie. A Citie (saith *Guicciardin*) most populous and rich in Citizens, plentiful in Marchants and Artificers, proud in pomps, and sumptuous in ornaments, for men and Women; naturally addicted to feasting and pleasure, and not only full of reioycing and solace, but also most happie in all other nature of contentment for the life of man.

And howeuer now the *Spaniard* one in the Citie, and another in the Castle, ouerlooketh both Citie and Countrie, yet is the brauerie of the place very little abated: nor doth the Noble man shrink vnder the burthen, but carrieth his load lightly; howeuer his inward grones are breathed, yet lieth he vp a face of cheerefulnesse, as if he drank wine, and fed on oile, according to the properties of either: so good and bountifull is the Countrie.

Brescia.

The second Citie of *Lumbardie*, is *Brescia*, not for compasse, or multitude of people, for it is not able to make 50000. men, but by reason of the large iurisdiction thereof, comprehending therein many large Townes, and populous Champaines, therefore censured to be able in all to leuie 350000. men. Among the Townes subiect thereto, *Asolo* and *Salo* haue the preheminence: amongst the Vallies *Valcamonia*, being fiftie miles in length, & therewith populous and full of Iron Mines. *Bologna* (if it please you to account it in *Lumbardie*) and *Verona* are alike populous: *Verona* is larger and of more beautie: *Bologna* more rich and commodious: as well for that it hath a larger Territorie, as also for that there is no Citie that doth more absolutely enioy her owne commodities, and doth more freely pertake of others, by the great resort of Courtiers, Clergie-men, and Officers dispersed through all the Ecclesiasticke State. To which, three things are much auailable: the Vniuersitie, where all professions are practised; their wealth, which is equally diuided; and lastly, their inclination and patience to take paines, and do seruice.

Bologna.

Verona.

Betweene *Verona* and *Padoa*, there is no great difference in respect of circuit; but *Verona* hath double the people. Whereof the *Venetians* to supply that defect, do as much as they may, grace their Vniuersitie and the Schollers. As in this Prouince the Cities are great and beautifull, so are the fortresses many and impregnable. And whereas other Prouinces haue their places of strength on their Frontiers, in this, the neerer you approach the center, the stronger shall you see the Countrie planted and fortified.

Modena,

Modena, is an hereditarie Dukedome, full of riches and fashionable Gentry, after the best Italian manner, newly allyed to *Mantua*, and reasonably well fortified against his dangerous neighbour in *Millan*, and inuiceth you to the view of a verie delicat Countrie.

Modena!

Mantua, is a late Dukedome erected of an ancient Marquiset, in the name of *Gonzaga*. He liueth in better fashion of Courtship, than the other Princes, with a guard of *Switzers*. The Citie is large, boasteth of *Virgils* birth, & the delicate streams of *Po*, ouer which for all the swiftnesse and largenesse, a gallerie-bridge transporteth both Coach, Cart and Horse: Vnder which are preserued many courtlie Barges, both for magnificent shewes and pleasure of the water in Sommer-time, as also for the necessities of the inhabitants throughout the yeare.

Mantua.

Sauoy.

BVt if you will haue *Sauoy* flie vpon her owne wings, then looke vpon *Chamberie* (her chiefe seat) scituate in a most delicate rich valley, full of gentlemens houses, and euery way inclosed with heigh mountaines. In times past, it was one of the fower Earledomes of the Empire, and so continued well neere 400. yeares, from the time of the Emperor *Henrie* the fifth, till the time of *Sigismund*; Who at the councill of *Constance* created these Earles, Dukes. And it is no longer since, than the time of *Charles* (this mans grand-father) that, after he had giuen his oath to the Emperour, within two yeares after, he made suit to haue the forme of his allegiance altered. He is much tied to the See of Rome both in Religion and benefit. For, from him his sonne *Don Victor* hath receiued a Cardinals-Hat. And Cardinall *Alabrandino*, nephew to *Clement* the eighth hath purchased *Raiensa* & *Piedmont* to the Duke. After whose decease, that rich territorie must fall to the Church, if his Holinesse of his grace do not confirme it vpon the Duke. It is the most flourishing part of *Sauoy*, as opening the gates of cheefest passage, and boasting of the faire Citie of *Turin*, where a citadell, furnished with *Spanish* Souldiours, taketh account of all passengers, which trauaile ouer the *Alps*. How, by reason of the dangerous passages, it was first named *Malvoy*, vntill a noble man attempted the reformation of the disordered people, by force and exemplarie punishment; and he in reward of his virtue, by the Emperor created a Duke, and the Countrie thenceforth named *Sauoy*, *quasi salua via*, I will not heere insist, &c.

Naples.

Naples.

Naples was first the Receptacle of *Philosophie*: secondly, of the *Muses*, and now of Soulderie: the moderne Inhabitants having their cares dailie inured to the sound of the drum and fife, and their eyes to the management of Horses, and glittering of Armour. For the ambitious *Spaniards* now governeth this Kingdome by a Vice-Roy, directed (vpon occasions) by the Councell appointed for *Italie*: which innouation hath principally befallen them, by their dependencie vpon the Popes; who knowing (by reason of the breuitie of their liues) not otherwise to gouerne, than by spleene, passion and priuate respect: haue continually disquieted the estate, vntill a third man hath bereued both parties of their imaginarie greatnesse. And this is the *Spaniard*, who making right vse of former defaults, hath secured the piece: first, by taking all power and greatnesse from the Nobilitie (more than Titular) and secondly, in suppressing the popular, throughout the whole Kingdome, by forraine Souldierie.

A regiment consisting of fower thousand *Spaniards*, besides sixteene hundred quartered in the Marritime Townes and fortresses. To these one thousand great Horse, and foure hundred and fiftie light Horse are inrolled.

Forces at
Land.

They say, through the whole Kingdome, Two hundred thousand, five hundred and threescore persons (able to beare armes) may be leuiued, and trained; but are not in pay, nor raised, but in time of seruice; and then but in part, according to occasion.

To make good this proportion, euerie Hundred, fires (or families) are charged with five foot-men, and there are foure millions, eleuen thousand, foure hundred fiftie and foure Fires, in this Kingdome. Ouer whom Captaines are appointed, who haue their intertainements aswell in times of peace, as of war.

At Sea.

Reuenue.

Their strength at Sea consisteth of thirtie seuen Gallies; yet, more than trouble and title, the King of *Spain* reapeth not from this Kingdome. The Reuenue, and donatiues (now made reuenue) with impositions, amount yearely to two millions and fiftie thousand dukats, one million and thirtie thousand thereof, are ordinarily giuen away in pension and other largesses; the remainder cannot suffice (by much) to discharge the Garrisons, Gallies, Horsemen, and the residue of the Souldierie.

Nobilitie.

The bodie of their Nobilitie consisteth of foureteene Princes, five
and

and twentie Dukes, thirtie Marquesses, fiftie foure Earles, and foure thousand Barons : too too manie to thriue one by another. For, as they increase in number : So, great Princes will be sure they shall decrease in authoritie. No office is allotted them, neither any command assigned them, whereby they might ascend to estimation. Euery Officer is countenanced against them, all their misdemeanours lookt into, seuerely examined, and iustice rigorously inflicted. Their ancient vassalls (their ancient honor and confidencie) are now alienated from them, and being backt against them in their pretentions, are growne neglectfull of them. They haue lost their stings ; and being either desperate of their libertie, or far degenerated from their ancient glorie, dare not expresse, much lesse put in hazard, any action tending to redemption : Indeed they haue no likelic-hood of forraine assistance, all the Princes of *Italie* in these daies, either fearing, or flying into the protection of the *Spaniard*. A pregnant presedent of the many calamities incident to all Kingdomes gouerned by Deputies.

The riches of the Kingdome are especially filkes, wrought and vnwrought, and wines. The Taxes now imposed vpon these wares haue so inanced the prices, that the forraine Marchant neglecteth to trade : to the no small impouerishment of the Tradse-man and Marchant, whose especial liuelie-hoods consist in worke-man-ship, and the quick returne thereof. What rates may be imposed heereon, as also vpon victualls and wines, let reason iudge ; when vpon herbs onely, spent in Naples, foure thousand pounds sterling are annually leuied by way of imposition. As for Wines, twelue thousand Buts are reported to be transported from thence at euerie season.

Among all men that professe Christ, there is not a more vneiuiill *Calabria* creature than the *Calabrian*. Ouer land there is no travelling without assured pillage, and hardly to be auoided murder, although you haue not about you (and that to their knowledge) the worth of a dollar. More silke is made from the Silke-worme in this Prouince, than in all *Italie* besides.

Sicill.

Sicill.

IT is subiect to *Spain*, and is gouerned by a Vice-roy vnder the Spanish Councell for *Italie*, consisting of three Spaniards, and three Italians, hauing for their President the Constable of *Castile*. Who by authoritie from the King, doe create Gouvernors, Iudges and Commanders, &c. It yeeldeth to the coffers of *Spain* yearly sixe hundred thousand dukats; but that drawne pack againe in rewards and payments.

Number of Inhabitants.

It feedeth and maintaineth about a million of soules; and what force, out of that proportionment, it is able to raise, may be coniectured by that leuie which *Don Garzia* of *Toledo* raised, only out of the South Angle of the Iland, at what time the Turke passed by it, to the inuasion of *Malta*; consisting of three thousand Horse, and tenne thousand foote.

Modern Forces.

For remonstrance of the populousnesse of the ancient world, wonder you may, how this then-goodly Iland, in the daies of *Dionysius* the elder (being but Lord of *Siracusa* and the adioyning territories) continually maintained ten thousand foot-men, and as many horse-men, for his guard; with fower hundred Gallies at Sea: of which, now in these times, the whole Kingdome, affordeth but eight.

Nature of the people.

A people they are standing much vpon their Honour, yet excessiue given to idlenesse; talkatiue, busie-headed, quarellsome, ielous and reuengefull. Their commodities are exported by strangers, and withall the profit; themselues little trafiquing abroad, and therefore vnexpert in the art of Nauigation, selling their sugars, vnextracted from the Cane, to the *Venetians*, and buying it againe from them, after it is refined: The Vpland sort so vnospitable to strangers, that without a sufficient guard, there is no traueilling without assured destruction by robberie and murder.

Scicill.

The better sort (especially about *Messana*) liue in all abundance and delicacie, hauing more than inough of food, of fruits and of excellent wines. They are Spanish in attire, and the meanest artificers wife is clothed in silke; whereof infinite quantities proceed from the worine, a part whereof is wrought into rude stufes for their owne vses. Eight thousand Bails are yearly made in the Iland, and fure thousand fetcht from thence, at the Mart time, by the Gallies of *Naples*, *Ostia*, *Ligorn* and *Genoa*.

Garrisons.

The Garrison appointed for the securitie of the South part of the Iland)

Island) consisteth of two hundred Spaniards, and three hundred horsemen of the Countie adioyning, who serue by turnes, and nightly scoure and guard that Coast. So on the North towards *Calabria*, *Philip* the second erected a verie strong Castle, and thrust into it a guard of natural Spaniards.

The whole Island nominateth seuen Princes, foure Dukes, thirteene Marquesses, foureteene Earles, one Vicont, and eight and fortie Barons: The chiefe and ancientest of whom, rather of policie than freewill, for the most part of their liues attend in the Court of Spaine.

Malta.

IT lieth in the Libean sea; betweene *Tripoli* of *Barbarie*, and the Southeast *Angle* of *Sicil*, conteyning threescore miles in circuit. How it came into the possession of the Spaniards, I cannot relate, but *Charles* the fifth gaue it to the Knights of the *Rhodes*, after their expulsion from thence by the Turkes: of them at this day there are seauen Seminaries; one of *France* in general, one of *Auverne*, one of *Prouince*, one of *Castile*, one of *Arragon*, one of *Italie*, one of *Almaine*; the eight of *England* was suppressed by *Henrie* the eight. Of euerie one of these, there is a grand Prior, who (as Hee once in *England* at *Saint Johns* without *Smithfield*) doe liue in great reputation in their countries, and there order the occurances of their Orders.

The Island conteineth sixtie villages, and foure cities quartered vnder the commaund of ten captaines. *Valetta* is the fairest and strongest, victualled continually for three yeares; new prouision still supplying the expence of the old, prouided from *Sicil*, and in those hot countries, preserved vnder ground.

Of Knights five hundred remaine in the Island, and as manie abroad; in times of daunger trayning and mustering the Citizens and Islanders, wherof the whole Island reckoneth not aboue twentie thousand soules.

The Religion maintaineth but onely five Gallies, and one Ship (by Forces report) so stinted: But more (peradventure,) wise men wil imagine, that a barren & small Island (for the most part) liuing vpon neighbourhood, can hardly maintaine. If more there are, they pertaine vnto priuat men; And the expeditions which they make, are little better than for bootie; either in the night time landing on the maine of *Affrike*, and surprising some village; or, scouring along the coast, and taking small and weake
R barkes:

barkes : Out of which they disburden the goods and persons, and suffer the Hulk to driue with the weather.

Lorraine.

Bounded.

L *Otharij regnum* ; or as the *Germans* speake, *Lotarripk*, is bounded vpon East with *Alsatia* ; vpon the South with *Burgondie* ; towards the West, with *Champagne*, and towards the North, with the Forest of *Arden*. In it are manie goodly Riuer, as the *Meuse*, *Mosel* &c. And fine townes ; as *Nancie*, where the Duke commonly resideth ; *Saint Nicholas*, and others of good esteeme vpon the Frontier.

Fertilitie.

It yeeldeth wine and wheat sufficient for the prouision of its owne Inhabitants, and affoordeth Cattle, Horse & Riuer fish, in some good measure, to the defects of their neighbours.

Manners.

In maners and fashion, they resemble their neighbours, the French and the Germans. In courtesie and ciuilitie, they strue to imitate the French ; in drinking, the Germans. Yet, not here the one so punctu-ably as the French, nor the other, so inordinately, as the Dutch. They are good souldiours, free of disposition, and rather subtile, than poli-tique. And for such Courts as these petty Princes maintaine, you shall find therein manie fine Gentlemen.

Riches.

Surely his Riches cannot be great : for of commodities nothing of value can be said to arise therein, saue certaine workes (or cups) of *Cassidonie-stone* ; some horses, linnen cloth and manufactures, and those vented into France and Germanie. What to thinke of the siluer mines therin, I cannot shew : Those that haue estimated with the most, haue not related of aboue 708. thousand crownes of yearely Reuenue ordi-narie ; viz. siue hundred thousand of rent and royaltie, 200. thousand from the Salt-pans, and from the fishing of the Riuer and Lakes two thousand pound sterling.

Forces.

Nancie is exceedingly well fortified after the moderne fashion : And in former ages, as it resisted the whole forces of *Charles the Great Duke* of *Burgondie* ; so this people also (but vnited with the *Switzers*) gaue him three sattall ouerthrowes in the field. Of anie great expeditions which they should particularly make of themselves, I neuer read ; nei-ther that anie of their neighbours haue much affrighted them. With the *Switzers* and the House of *France*, they haue alwaies held good Cor-respondencie and Alliance : So that if the Archduke should quarrell them on one side, they haue the Low-countrimen their friends on the other.

Neighbours.

other. And as for the King of Spaines neighbourhood, (by reason of the proximitie of the French-countie.) It may alwaies be supposed, that in regard of the Alliances (before spoken of) the one will be loath to prejudice the other, to neithers boast of aduantage. As for other petty Princes, they stand in as much need to take care for their owne preservations, as to inuade anothers; for that in truth this Prince exceedeth most of them in meanes, forces, friends and circuit of Territorie.

Hungarie.



Hungarie, is a Noble Kingdome. I call it Noble, because whole volumes might be writ, and yet extenuat the worth, but not relate, the troubles thereof; Externall, with the enemy of Christendome, Internall, by reason of confused dissention. For, sometime the glorie of the Kingdome elateth them, sometime priuate reuenges deuide them: sometime the Clergie doth tirannize ouer them, & sometime the generall cause exciteth compassion.

For the plentie wherewith it aboundeth of all things, both for vse & pleasure, it may be numbred amongst the most fertile Kingdoms of Europe. In it are found fruits of as much varietie and goodnesse, as in *Italie*: Corne sufficient to sustaine the Inhabitants; wine to furnish their neighbours (*Poland, Silesia, Morauia, Bohemia*) Fish in such plentie that strangers borrow of their abundance from them, and out of *Valachia* (before the losse of *Agria* in 96.) were Bees driven into *Italie*, and all parts of *Germanie*, which now find a present want in their former provision thorough the Turkes stopping of that passage.

The *Hungarian* Horse, by nature are not improper for warre, being courageous, strong, hardie, and swift, but for want of mannagement they fit no seruice but trauaile, to which the *Italian* Hackney-men, and *Almain* Coach-men, find them excellent.

Hungarland is deuided by the Riuer *Danubius*, into two parts: the one Mountainous; and therefore called the vpper *Hungarland*, abounding in Gold, Siluer, and Copper-Ore; the other, Neather *Hungarland*, plaine, without Hills, and called for the fertilitie thereof, the Storehouse of *Italie*, & *Germanie*. The Metropolitan citie of that part of *Hungarland* that obeyeth the Emperour, is *Possonium*; little, and not verie beau-

Diuision of
Hungarie.

beautifull, no more than are *Strigonium*, *Coffonia*, *Nitria*, *Teruamio*, or any other cities of *Hungarland*: a reason whereof may be, that the Gentlemen, haue their Houses in the countrie, and the citizens are more studious to build for vse, than for pompe.

Bounded,

It confineth toward the North with *Poland* & *Moravia*: on the East, lieth *Transilvania* and *Valachia*; on the South, *Bulgaria*, *Sernia*, *Bosnia*, *Scaluonia*, and *Croatia*: and towards the West, it is ioyned to *Stiria* and *Austria*; two thirds of it possessed by the Turke. The Inhabitants be of stature and complection not vnlike the English, but in habit resembling the poore Irish; in warre strong, valiant, and patient; couetous aboue measure, yet hauing rather desire than art to enrich themselves, permitting (of negligence) the *Germans* to inherit in their Cities, and to Traffique their Merchandize; a cause why none of them rise by their owne industrie to anie great wealth. They neuer combat amongst themselves, but reuenge iniuries with words, except vpon obiection of cowardize, whereof the charged is neuer disburthened, vntill he haue preoued himselfe in singular combat with a Turke. It hath beene an ancient custome amongst them, that none should weare a Feather, but he who hath killed a Turke, to whom it was lawfull to shew the number of his slaine Enemies, by the number of Feathers in his Cappe. They punish Adulterie and Fornication with death: the Husband forcing his Wife, the Father his Daughter, and the Brother his Sister, to the place of Execution. The Sonnes inhabite equally after the death of their Fathers, occupying for the most part the possessions left them in common. The Daughters haue the value of the part of the Lands in Money. They are desirous of warres aboue measure, they admit no vnprofitable man into their Campe, but such as hold Seruants, are serued with men. They march in troupes both Horse and Foote lodging apart, but not in that good order, which is vsed by the *Germans*, who distinguish both their Companies and Regiments into streetes, placing their baggage at their backes, or flanks, according to necessitie. They goe no round, neither in their Campes nor Townes, but instead thereof, one Sentinell whoopeth to another, as in like case doe the Turkes. The Horsemen in battaile, range themselves in files after the German order, as doe also their foot, placing all their shot on front. They giue a furious charge, and the Enemy broken, fall presently to spoile, leauing to follow the execution for anie small bootie: but being broken, they flie euerie man home, without euer turning head, lying in weight by the way for their enemies, whom they rob in their flight counterfeiting for the more terror
the

the clamour of the *Tartars*, from whom they differ in the fashion of their Caps.

The Government was anciently spirituall, and secular, the spiritual-
Gouvernement
tie was governed by the Arch-Bishop of *Strigonium* (who were Chancellors of the Land) and of *Colozza*. They had vnder them twelue Bishops, which are all now vnder the Turke, except *Strigonium*, *Nitia*, *Iauerine*, and *Vacia*.

For the due administration of Iustice vnder the secular, the ancient Lords deuided their Land into twentie countries appointing to euerie countrie a Baron for Gouvernour, with 21. Doctors of Law, to be his assistants, reseruing euer to themselves an Appeale for the redresse of Injustice, and preuenting of extortion. Now since the Princes of *Austria* got the crowne, their tirrannie so yoaketh the Peasants, that nothing may be done without the Lords leaue. Insomuch, that these people liuing in the true condition of slaerie, want nothing but the name thereof. In the time of the ancient government, when the Kings would alter anie thing in the administration of the Common-weale; vndertake a forraine war, or conclude a peace, there assembled together at one place three degrees of Subiects; Barons, Bishops, and Gentlemen: with consent of the greater part whereof, the Kings had authoritie to confirme, abrogate or institute lawes, to denounce war, to conclude peace, and to charge their Land with impositions, fit for their necessities.

This assemblie is still in vse, but the freedome thereof is altered, nothing being at this day propounded to the assembled, by the new Gouvernours, but a contribution of Money; to which demaund at a day giuen, the Nobilitie gaue their resolutions, (which in the yere 96. and 97. when the Turkish Emperour threatened to descend himselfe in person) was; That the Nobilitie would put themselves in Campania with their forces, and promised for their subiects (for so they tearme their Peasants) that euerie Housholder should send a Man, and giue two Dollars of Money for entertainment of souldiours: but the Turkish Emperour not comming in person, the Gentiles did not further bind themselves, than that their subiects should pay euerie house one Dollar; with which money were to be waged 20000. horse and foot, the halfe of which neuer appeared in field, there being not at anie time in armes vnder the three Generals of *Tensfenbach* in vpper *Hungarland*, of *Palseis*, Forces at land
vpon the border of *Danubius*, and of *Zerius* in neather *Hungarland*, aboue 9000. men: And at the battell of *Keresture* in 96. where were assembled the greatest forces that could be made by the three Confederates, *Germanie*, *Hungarie*, and *Transilvania*: the combatants amounted

not to aboue 51000. (viz:) out of *Hungarland* ariued 6000. horse, and 10000. foote: out of *Transilvania* 6000. horse, and 12000. foote: out of *Germanie*, 9500. horse, and 7000. foote. The *Germans* were so well appointed, (horse and foote) as for quantitie of Armes, and goodnesse of horse, nothing could be better deuised; Of the foote, the third part were Pikes armed compleate, the rest were shot, whereof three parts were Muskets: the Horsemen were all armed, manie of whose Curases were Musket prooffe: some of them carried fise Pistols, most foure, all two. That which was indeed a want amongst them was, that three parts were Seruants, according to the *German* custome, manie of whom tooke pay for eight Horses. The *Hungarish* and *Transiluanian* Foot were all naked, part of whom carried Fire-lockes of two foote, and the residue Pikes of nine foote long, either Armes of small or no vse, either in offence or defence, vvhether in Forts, Streights, or Campania. The Horse-men carried hollow Launces of twelue foote long, which they brake by the helpe of a Leather Thong fastned to their Saddles: for the rest, they were armed according to their meanes, the rich vvith Curases, the meane vvith Shirtes, the poore vvith Sleeues of Male, and all vvith Caskes, which kinde of arming, as it maketh them much defectiue in prooffe, so are they of lesse vvorth for their horses, which (for their maner of riding, bridles and saddles) are more forceable to doe execution vpon victorie, to make excursions, and to discover, than they be either to giue or to sustaine a charge.

Forces by water.

Their forces by Water (or to speake more properly the Emperours) were much impaired by the losse of *Iauerin*, in 94. where, of 13. Gallies the Turkes tooke ten; that losse is not yet repaired, the Emperour not hauing at this time aboue fise Gallies: vvvhich at the siege of *Strigonium*, durst not make head against three of the Turkes which came to releue the Towne. There be moreouer ordinarily vpon the *Danubie* sixteene small Barkes, twelue foote broad, and fiftie foot long; These carrie in the prow two peeces, a crogue three foot long, and one pound ball; they are rowed by souldiours vvith twentie Oares on a side, hauing their halfe pikes standing by them, and their peeces hanging at their backs.

The captaine gouerneth the rudder, and the Lieutenant attendeth on the peeces. These barkes (for that which I haue seene) are fitter for the Skout and gard of the Campe, when it marcheth or lodgeth by the water side, than commodious for fight.

Fortification.

The *Hungarians* presuming (more than reason) on their valour in Campania, haue euer neglected to fortifie their frontiers; the last and best

best inuented meanes, whereby small States preferue themselves from being ouer-run by the great; which error being better lookt vnto by the Princes of *Austria* (who about fiftie yeares since, obtained that Kingdome) haue used some dilligence in this kind, yet with so small iudgement, as that no fortresse in the Land, can iustly be said to be strong, (except *Rab*) the rest being either onely strong by scite, as *Tockay*, *Villak*, *Strigonium*, *Comora*, *Altemburgh*, *Papa*, *Canisia*: or by art, as *Castlenouo* and *Novigrade*; or neither by art, nor scite, as *Gvents*, and *Edenburgh* (passages of importance in neather *Hungarland*) with almost infinit others. *Tockay*, *Altemburgh*, *Papa*, and *Canisia*, are gouerned by the *Germans*: *Novigrade*, *Castlenouo*, *Strigonium*, and *Komara*, haue *Hungarish* Gouvernours, but the greatest part of their Garrisons bee *Dutch*, a device peraduenture as vvell to secure the Emperour of *Hungarland*, as to defend those places against the Turkish inrodes, to which seruice the *Hungarians* are more proper, if they were provided of like armes.

These fortresses were well provided of all sorts of Munition, Artillerie, Powder, Bals, Fire-workes, and Victuals, but not so well foreseene vvith defendants, as is conuenient against so mightie an Enemy as the Turke; there being in the last recited fortresse not about 1500. men, and in some, not 200.

How abundant this Prouince is in victuals, I say no more then hath beene mentioned in the beginning of this discourse; That it is one of the most plentifullest countries in Europe, furnishing the Inhabitants with abundance, without borrowing of anie Neighbour Prouince. For, as for the Bread, Wine, and Oates which *Austria* ministreth, that is onely when the Campe is lodged by the Riuer *Danubius*; which Merchants transport thither, rather for their gaine, than that their Armies suffer anie scarcitie, in want thereof. Artillerie is sent them from the Emperours Arsenall in *Vienna*, themselves neither finding great peeces, nor making small; vvhich likewise they haue out of *Germanie* as also Powder and Balles; A note of their exceeding negligence, hauing excellent Mettals for this purpose, which they transport vnwrough into *Germanie*.

The greatest fruit vvhich the Emperour reapeth by the crowne of *Hungarland*, ariseth by the benefit of Mines, which yeeld him yearly one Million and a halfe of Guilders; vvhich commeth clearly in his Treasurie, the presidarie souldiours being al paid vvith the contribution money, as is also his Lieutenant Generall 30000. Dollars yearly for his prouision. The Emperour *Maximillian* the second, tooke into his hands the liuing of the Cathedrall and Colligiat Churches, giuing to

the Bishops and Cannons small stipends; by which deuice he gained yearly halfe a Million of Gilders. The religious houses are almost all abandoned for the feare the Monkes and Friers haue of the Turke, except those of the Gray-Friers, to which order he is verie favorable. The Villages likewise are manie, but, some wholly desolate, the Peasants retyring themselues vnder the Turke, where they liue with lesse agreeuance, than vnder the Emperour. Their liuings are confiscat, which hath much increased the yearly Reuenue of that Kingdome.

Reasons why
the Turke
standeth at a
stay in Hunga-
rie.

Now *Hungarland* being not in better tearmes, to support it selfe against the irresistable power of the Turke, than appeareth in the premises; it may reasonably be demanded, what hath beene the cause that the Turke in an hundred and fiftie yeares space (about which time he inuaded that countrie) hath not made an absolute conquest thereof: For hauing in this time not conquered about two third parts thereof, it is manifest, that he must be defectiue in the meanes before spoken of, wherewith Princes augment their greatnesse, (viz:) either in Treasure, Munition, Men, Armes, or (that which is principall) in iudgement to embrace or prosecute occasions. For answer vnto which, I say; first, that the Turkish Emperour hath not only about these foure hundred yeares beene superiour to the Kings of *Hungarland*, in Treasure and Munition, but also to anie other Prince in the World: So is he likewise in number of his captaines and priuate souldiours; but borrowing a coniecture from the manning of his actions, it is manifest, that his counsell of war (schooled aboue in the barbarous seruice of *Persia*) hath euer beene inferiour to that of Christendome, as it is at this present. Secondly, the Emperour hath of late serued himselfe in all his occasions of worthie chieftaines, as *Count Charles Maunsfelt*, the *Marquesse Sanseuerino*, *Alexander Malospina*, *Francisco de Monte*, the *Baron Swarzenburg*, *George Basta*, *Ferront di Rossi*, &c. All which, either by their experience in their Netherlandish warres, or dilligence in Historie, or else paines in both, haue long sithence obtained the names of great souldiours; which prouidence of late times vsed by the Emperours, and heretofore by other Princes, hath in part preuented the Turkes designs in the intierty of this Conquest. Another hindrance hath beene the euill arming of the Turkish souldiours, the greatest numbers whereof are naked: And which is as great a defect, none of them carrie Weapons of much offence, except the Ianizers, who serue with Muskets of longer & bigger bore then the Christians: To which number of Ianizers, being 2000. tripled, if 20000. Pikes compleat were added, they would make an Armie of greater consequence for the Conquest of this Kingdome (which

(which is secured by passages) than doth the multitude of Horses, in which the Turke putteth so great confidence.

I must also confesse, that the Turke in all his attempts against *Hungarie*, hath vsed irreprovable iudgement, in making no inrode into that countrie, but when hee had peace with his Neighbours, and the Christians at diuision amongst themselves, atchieuing by such prouidence, infinite victorie; So, if hee had prosecuted the least aduantage, with constancie and celeritie, befitting the occasions; the Conquest of *Hungarland* had beene finished manie yeares since. Of all negligences in this kinde, none hath beene of greater note, than that of *Mahomet* the third, superiour in the battell of *Keresstur* in nintie sixe. By which victorie, not *Hungarie* alone, but all *Austria* stood in great danger. For the Christian Armie being irrecoverably overthrowne, and all the Townes disfurnished, both of defendants and Munition, there wanted nothing (in mans iudgement) to the gaying of that Kingdome, but the speedie prosecution of that absolute victorie.

But whether with the learned wee may belecue, that Great Kingdomes haue their periods; Or that Greatnesse in it selfe produceth carelesnes, whose true symptoms are pride, effeminacie, and corruption in militarie discipline: most certaine it is, That, those Empires which formerly haue fallen from their prime-felicite, haue generally declined through the *Alteration of their ancient Orders and pristinat vertues*.

Nor can it otherwise be, but that, as those Ordinances and Lawes which reason at first introduced, and experience afterward approoued, doe settle and fortifie States: so the manifest neglect of the same, should make them weake againe and crazie.

Which being duely considered, a Prince ought not in anie thing to be more watchfull and vigorous, than to keepe in life those Lawes, by which his State at first became to be exalted to that height, wherein he found it, at the decease of his predecessor: for let him be assured, that the same are still and shall be, the foundations and basis of future prosperitie.

Herein the *Ottomans*, haue by two meanes especially aduanced their power, and haue raised it to the height, wherein we see it at this day. The one was their personall presence, and traouelling to the warres; the other, their making of great warres and fierce to effect, but short. Their perpetuall expeditions produced manie profitable effects; as first, that it kept in awe and attendance the great Seruitors of the State: Secondly, that the *Ianizars* were thereby the better inured to obedience, patience,

Causes of
greatnesse of
Empires.

patience, and practise of their Armes, with the discipline of the field. Thirdly, it caused their whole forces intirely to attend them.

For better vnderstanding whereof, it behoueth to know, how that the Port (or Court) of the great Turke, was anciently wont to make twelue thousand Ianizars monthly paid, and that without faile. Now that number, by occasion of the wars of *Hungarie*, is much increased, and their pay raised to five Aspers a day; to some, more in regard of desert.

Out of the number of these Ianazars, are chosen 200. whose Office it is to run by the startup of the Prince, and 300. Porters that receiue twentie Aspers a day, aboue their ordinarie stipend: The Caulrie ariseth to a far greater number. The *Spahi* are six thousand, marshalled in two troopes; whereof the one guardeth the right hand of the Prince, the other the left, in all marches. Euery one of these *Spahi*, is bound to maintaine three or foure Seruants on Horsebacke for the war: and these Seruants, eyther in valour or costlinesse of furniture, doe in little or nothing giue place to their Lords. Their place of march, is in rere of their Maisters, but in distinct troopes.

Besides these troopes, doe march two other squadrons, consisting of 1000. Horse a peece: The one is made of certaine select and stalled persons, knowne for someone or other famous exploit. Into which troope doe also enter some Ianizars, and many Seruants, as well belonging to the Prince himselfe, as to other of his principall Ministers, that haue approued themselues by some notable indeuour, to be worthie and capable of that degree.

The other Squadron is all of naturall Turkes, recommended to that Honor, for some superordinarie skill at their Weapon; for horse-manship, or some such like qualitie.

The Soldiours of these two troopes, are not tyed to keepe aboue two Seruants mounted at the most. So that these foure squadrons (whereof we haue spoken) do make in all, as good as fortie thousand Horse, all excellently furnished.

Besides these, there are also neere twentie thousand men, that are Seruants and attendants vpon the supream Officers of the State; As Iudges, Treasurers, Councillors, and Commanders. Amongst which, some there are, that bring into the field two or three thousand a peece; all wel armed, and in like liuerie being indeed tyed for euery five Aspers that they haue of prouision, to finde one Horse-man. So that what for pomp, and what for their owne safetie, in this occasion they doe set all their slaues being Renegadoes on Horse-backe. What shall I say of the infinite

finite number of carriages, of Mules and Camels, accompanying this Equipage? Of which sort, *Baiazet* led into the field fortie thousand, and *Selim* in the enterprise of *Egypt*, one hundred & thirtie thousand. This was the ancient proportion: Now all these forces, (whereof I haue spoken) from the Court doe accompanie the Prince, setting forward to the warres. But if His person mooue not, then doe these also stay idle at home, where the *Ianizars* (for their too much ease) doe often fall into munitries, and the great *Bashas* busie themselues about nothing, but to disgrace or ouerthrow one another through enuie, & ambition. Which is well witnessed on the one side, by the extreame rancors and partialities that boile amongst them, and sometime breaketh forth; and on the other, by their immoderate affection and swelling into tytular dignities, which of necessitie cannot be auoided; for that, as Trees which are lesse fruitfull, doe thrust forth most leaues and branches, to couer therewith the defects of nature: So doe men (in whose minds desert and vertue is wanting) seeke nothing so much as with outward vanitie of apparell, and shew of great discent to shaddow their inward imperfections. Thorough which abuse, it is not possible to imagine, vnto what number the titularie Officers of that State are augmented. The *Bashawes*, which in the flourishing daies of this Empire were onely two, one in *Asia*, the other in *Europe*, are now seuen in *Asia* alone (viz:) of *Natolia*, *Caramania*, *Amasia*, *Anadule*, *Damascus*, and *Cair*: who do suck from the Princes Coffers, no lesse than one hundred and thirtie thousand Duckets yearely. And this is sprung from nothing else, but that vpon opportunitie of the Princes keeping at home, the Ministers of the State especially such as lye farthest of, haue by little and little presumed to vsurp and arrogat to themselues more power and authoritie, than was anciently belonging vnto them. Besides which, the Prince by his personall interuention in all expeditions, became by his experience, better acquainted with the condition of his Armies, made himselfe cunning in the causes that did enuigor or corrupt his Soldiours: so that, by cherishing of the one, and redressing the other, the discipline of the field, was made more firme euery day, than other.

And in truth, it can seeme to no man lesse than a very myracle, that in this house of the *Ottomans* should follow a continuall succession of twelue Princes together, that haue beene all, men of great action, and extreame Warriors. But since the successors of *Soliman* haue disused themselues from the field, and to be personallie absent from the Warres, it is wonderfull againe to see, how much the power of that Empire is im-
Causes of de-
clination.

The

The first that gaue passage to this disorder, was *Soliman* himself; who howbeit he were a Prince of excellent courage and great sufficiencie for State; and not only did put his owne person into many and hazzardous attempts, but also did leaue his life in one of them (which was at the sledge of *Sigeth*) yet did he suffer his Sonne *Selim*, to lye shamefully ryoting and consuming himselfe at Court. By which custome once taken, he neuer after his Fathers time, would abandon the Citie, but managed all his affaires abroad, by his Captaines and Ministers.

The selfe-same course held *Amurath* also, *Selims* Sonne; *Mahomet* indeed his Sonne, hath not wanted to shew both spirit & valour enough by his personall going into *Hungarie*, and forcing of *Agria*. But for all that, whether through the indisposition of their own persons, or through the ouer deep rooting of disorders growne in the Empire, he was neither able to recouer the old reputation of his predecessors, nor to reform the lost discipline of his Souldiers.

Besides, since those times, men are now weighed by the abundance of their fortunes, not of their virtues: who buying their greatnesse of the Prince, like Marchants, must make their profit of the people: which violent humour in the great Ones, hath bred disobedience in the inferiours. So that the Princes commandement is no more esteemed in any remote part, than it fitteth with the profit of him to whom it commeth. From hence haue budded all these so great inconueniences.

For the Iauizars lying idle, and hauing nothing to doe, are swolne vnto such insolence, that they make euerie thing lawfull for them (as it were) by prescription, nor forbearing to sacke and pillage the naturall Townes of the State, in stead of the enemies: yea, falling into further furie and insurrection, they were (these few yeares passed) the causes that *Amurath* was forced at their instance, to behead his best beloued *Bassa*, *Hebraim*. In which mutinie they also fiered aboue fise thousand houses in *Constantinople*. And euen the last day almost, at the importunate request of the *Spahi*, he was faine to behead his *Capi Aga*, who was the greatest personage for counsaile, and the most deere Seruitor, he had in Court. Albeit indeed his death was afterward reasonably well reuenged, with the heads of three of the principall of the said seditious *Spahi*.

And for as much as through the want of exercise of Armes, and imployment of the Ianizars, their valour also is much abated; for recompence of such defaults, they haue beene faine to increase their number from twelue, to twentie and nine thousand. Which number also being not able to be made vp of Christian Children, and the *Azamoglani* of Europe,

Europe, they haue beene faine to supplie it with *Asians* and *Mahumetans*, contrarie to the first and ancient ordinance of the *Ianizars*.

Neither are lesse the inconueniences and mischiefes, that do arise from prolonging of warres; whereas by contrarie vsages, the *Ottomans* were wont to reape two notable benefits. One was, that by leading a full force into the field, whether they wan any Town, or had the better of a field: they euermore in the same instant oppressed their aduersaries; and againe on the other side, by making speedie and short wars, they gaue respit and leisure vnto the Subiects of those parts, where their Armies lay, to repaire themselves againe: vnto which subiects, otherwise, the neerenesse of the *Ottoman* Campe doth bring vnrecoverable dammages: for it is obserued, that the *Ottoman* Prince neuer doth conquer so much of the Enemies coutrie, but that he destroyeth more of his own. Nor can they otherwise chuse, hauing no peaceable or orderly way of provision, but for want of necessities, they must make prey of all they can come by.

And the reason is, that because of the vast extent of that Empire, and the distance of the Frontier parts from the head, they are faine to march more vpon their owne ground, than vpon other mens. And they passe it not once, but twice; first, in setting forth; and againe, in the retrait. Whereby the people, and especially the Husbandmen, being pilld and spoiled of their substance, are consequently constrained to forsake their tenures, and to leaue their land vnmanured.

Another benefit which they receiued by making great, but short warres, was, that thereby they kept their owne Soldiours in continuall practise and exercise of warre, without giuing their Enemy so much breath, as to doe the like. For as soone as any one exploit was ended, their order was, suddenly to bring the aduersarie a sleepe, by negotiating of some truce or peace; that done, as suddenly they transferred the warre vpon an other part and Enemy, neuer giuing time to their owne to lay downe, or to their Neighbours, to take vp their Weapons. With these practises they tooke from the *Venetian*, *Cyprus*, and making peace with them, they presently transferred the War into *Affrique*, where they surprized *Goletta* and *Tunis*: and that war being finished, *Amurath* himselfe, without intermission put himselfe into the expedition of *Persia*. And this course is indeed in it selfe of so great consideration, that *Lycurgus* amongst the three Laws only, which he left to the *Spartan* Common-wealth, left this for one: first, that they should vse no written Laws; secondly, that they should admit of no other architecture, but of such as might be performed with an Axe & a saw; & lastly, that they should neuer fight twice together, with one enemy.

In

In this point *Philip* the second, amongst many other errors, committed the greatest over-sight, in protracting the wars so many yeares in the Low-Countries. For by meanes thereof, the people of *Holland* and *Zeland* (who in former times had little or no experience in the warres) became one of the most war-like and soldiour-like Nations of *Europe*. So *Amurath*, contrarie to the custome of all his predecessors, made warre in *Persia*, that lasted twentie two yeares or more. And albeit he tooke from the *Persian* at that time a good peece of his State, yet doe I not thinke, but that the losse thereby received, did more than counterpoize the gaine; not so much by fight and fortune of the field, as by length and tediousnesse of the iournies; wherein, partly through want and distresse of victuall, with other sinister accidents, arising from the qualitie of those Countries, he lost the flower and vigor of all his forces; namely, aboue two hundred thousand Horse, and five hundred thousand men: leauing the Countrie besides so naked of Inhabitants, so poore and ruinous, that in one Prouince alone (*Armenia*) *Osman Basha* was forced to destroy and set fire on aboue two hundred thousand houses. Moreouer, by occasion of so long a warre, not onely the *Persians*, but the *Georgians*, and *Arabians* also, betooke themselues to the exercise of Armes, and therein attained to such habilitie, that to this day they are euer and anon in tumult, and begin to recouer some of their losses. This was the true reason (as aforesaid) that induced *Amurath* and his Councillors, distrusting the obedience of that people, (against the Turkish custome) there to erect many Citadels, as at *Chars*, *Nassian*, *Leri*, *Teflis*, and at *Tauris*; whereinto they thrust great Garrisons: as namely, into that of *Tauris*, eight thousand. The predecessors of *Amurath*, who reposed the maine reputation of their forces to consist in being Maisters of the field, made no account of these holds; maintaining this rule: *That who is strong in the field, needeth not the assistance of Holds; and who will maintaine many fortresses garriioned, can neuer be verie strong in Campania.*

From these and such like oversights, haue arisen all the corruptions, wherof I haue spoken in this relation of the Turkish greatnesse. Wherby these Armies, which were wont to amount to two hundred thousand fighting men and vpward; and their Nauies accustomed to be of two hundred sayle & more, are now brought to a far lesse reckoning; They are now come to fiftie thousand, the proportion that *Hebraim* brought with him not many yeares since into *Hungarie*: And to some thirtie six Gallies, or thereabouts, with which *Cicola*, Admirall of that Empire, came of late into the Leuant Seas.

By

By which diminutions it hath fallen out, that a Poore Prince of *Transilvania* durst meete *Sinan Bassa*, and fight with him; and that the *Vaynod* of *Valachia*, durst also make him the like opposition.

So likewise, I say that this one Kingdome, and one Common-wealth hath done more in abatement of the ambition, and checking the fortune of the *Ottoman*, than all Christian States haue done all together: For where all the rest of the Princes bordering anciently vpon them, were in short time deuoured and spoiled of their Estates; the *Hungarian* and the *Venetian* alone, hath for the space of one hundred and fiftie yeares and more, maintained themselves. And though both the one and the other, haue quitted vnto the *Ottoman* some parts of their Territories, yet haue they well warded, and retained the residue; So that to speake truth, Christianitie hath at this day no other frontier vpon the Turke, but what is theirs. Which, how much it importeth, no man can rightly iudge, who hath not by experience made triall, how dreadfull the *Ottoman* power is to all those that dwell neere it. And howbeit, in these latter yeares, the *Hungarian* hath had in his fauour the continuall supplies of *Germanie*, & the *Venetian* hath bene assisted by the association of the *Pope* and the *Spaniard*, yet it is to be vnderstood, that vnlesse both those, and these, had had of their owne a sufficient bodie of war, the cold assistance of others, would smally haue helped their suddaine necessities.

Poland.

THis kingdome was neuer so spacious as at this day, the great Dukedomes of *Lituania* and *Liuonia*, being ioyned thereto. It stretcht from the flouds, *Notes* and *Orba* (which deuide it from *Marchia*) and *Odera* (which seperateth it from *Silesia*) to *Beresay* and *Boristhenes*, which two parteth it from *Moscovia*. It reacheth from the *Baltique* Sea, to the Riuer *Niester*, which deuides it from *Moldauia*, and to the Mountaines *Carpathie*, which sepe-
rate it from *Hungarie*. By this limitation (from the borders of *Silesia*, to the frontiers of *Moscovia*, between the West part and the East) it containeth 120. German miles, and from the vttermost boundes of *Liuonia*, to the borders of *Hungarie*, not much lesse. So allowing the forme thereof to be round, it is farre larger than a man would take it to be. It containeth many and goodly large Prouinces, as *Polonia* the great, and the lesse, *Massonia*, *Prussia*, *Russia*, *Volinia*, *Linonia*, and *Lituania*.
Among

Among these Prouinces, *Poland* was the proper inhabitation of the *Polonians*: but *Pruse*, part of *Pomeran*, *Podalia*, *Volonia*, *Masouia*, and *Liuonia*, haue beene obtained and gained by *Armes*. *Lithuania* and *Sa-mogathia*, (Prouinces of *Russia*) were the inheritance of the house of *Iagello*. For in the yeare 1380, *Iagello* then Duke of *Lithuania*, tooke vnto Wife the Princeesse of *Hedinge*, the last of the bloud Royall of *Polonia*, and was then installed King on three conditions: the first, that he should become a Christian; secondly, that he should cause his people to do the like; and thirdly, that he should vnite his principalities to *Poland*. These couenants were accomplished in our age, when the race of *Iagello* ended. For when the people were vnwilling, by depriuing the Heires (who had right to the Empire by iust inheritance) to subiect it to election, they alwaies cald vpon the performance of the conditions, hoping that the Nobilitie and the people of *Lituania* would not loose their honour and dignitie by this mixture: yet at last, on the one side, when they considered the issue of their Princes to faile (for *Sigismund Augustus* was the last heire male) and on the other side, fearing the force of the *Moscouite*, they agreed to vnion and election. In times past, *Liouonia* was the seate of the Dutch Knights, and they had therein their chiefe *Gouernor*, whom they tearmed the *Great Mayster*: But in the yeare 1558. being spoiled of the greatest part of their teritorie by the great Duke of *Moscouy*, they fled to *Sigesmond* King of *Poland*, who tooke them into his protection, and vntill the raigne of King *Stephen* 1582. the Prouince was neuer regained.

For the most part, *Poland* is a plaine Countrie, and (but for certaine mountaines, rather hils than mountaines, scituated in the lesser *Poland*, deniding it from *Prusland*) all the residue of the Countrie stretcheth it selfe into most ample paines, wherein are very many woods, especially in *Lithuania*. The greater and lesser *Poland* are better inhabited than any other Prouince of the kingdome. The like may be almost spoken of *Russia*, for the neerenesse of the Sea, concourse to the Hauens, and commodiousnesse of the Riuers. *Prussia*, and *Liouonia* haue fairer Cities, goodlier buildings, and by Traffique and concourse of Marchants, greater plentie of riches. For when the Dutch knights were Lordes of the Countrie, they builded Cities like those of *Germanie*, and all along the Sea-Coast (for the space of fourescore miles) many Castles and peeces of good esteeme. They haue many faire Hauens of good worth, and are Lords of all the Traffique betweene *Poland* and the *Baltique Sea*: which is a thing of great value and consequence. For the Riuer *Vistula* arising in the extreamest boundes of *Silesia*, watereth all *Poland* the lesse, and

and part of the Greater, *Mazonia* and *Prussia*, and then it falleth into the *Baltique* sea below *Danske*, whether it transporteth the greatest quantitie of *Rie*, *Corne*, *Honie*, and *Waxe*, of the whole Kingdome, a journey of foure hundred miles. From another coast, the most famous Riuer *Duina*, arising out of the Lake *Ruthenigo*, and parting *Linonia* into equall portions, falleth into the sea about *Riga*, a citie of great concourse. There are in *Prussia* and *Linonia* manie Lakes, amongst which one is called the *New-Sea*, one hundred miles long: in *Linonia* is a Lake called *Berhas*, more than foure hundred miles long: from thence spring the Riuers, which runneth by *Pernonia* and *Narue*, make two notable Hauens for Traffique. Betweene these two cities, stands *Rinalia*, giuing place to neither in beautie. *Samagithia* is more rude and barbarous than the other Prouinces, and *Podalia* more barren; which is not to be attributed to the nature of the soile (for it is plentifull of those commodities, which the climate, vnder which it lieth, can afford) but to the crueltie of the *Tartars*, which so vex it with continuall inrodes, that the Inhabitants are driuen either to flie for feare, or to be led away captiues by these barbarous people.

The riches of *Poland*, are the abundance of corne, and all sorts of graine, which grow there in such plentifull sort, that in it selfe it neuer suffered want, but euermore, as in the yeare 1590. and 1591. it relieved not onely the bordering Nations, oppressed with famine and scarcitie, but also yeelded some portion of reliefe to the wants of *Genoaies*, *Tuscane*, and *Rome*. It floweth with Honey and Waxe: And whereas in all these Northerly Nations of *Poland*, *Lithuania*, *Russia*, & *Mosconia*, there are no Wines growing, in stead thereof, Nature hath bestowed vpon them incredible quantities of Honey, whereof these people doe brew an excellent kinde of Beuerage. The Bees make Honey either in Woods, where they finde the Trees made hollow by rotnenness or mans industrie, or in Hives set in open field by the countrie people, or in holes of the earth, or in anie place where they can finde neuer so small a liking.

It aboundeth with Flaxe, Hempe, with Sheepe, with Cattle and with Horses. Amongst the beasts of the Wood, are found wild Oxen, wild Horses, and the Buffle, which cannot liue out of the Wood of *Nazonia*; The riches of the Land consist in the Salt-pits of *Bozena* and *Velisca*, in the Territorie of *Cracouia*.

The Reuenues of the kingdome (for the most part) are equally deuided betweene the Noblemen and the Gentlemen: for no man is left so rich by inheritance, that he may exceed others aboue measure; and the
S greatest

greatest Reuenue of all exceedeth not five and twentie thousand Duckets. Onely the Dukes of *Curland* and *Regimount* exceed this meane. For although they are feodaries of the Kingdome, and acknowledge the King as their superiour, yet are they not as liuely members of the State: they come not to the diets of the Kingdome, they haue not their voices in the election of the Prince, neither are they accounted as naturall Lords of the Kingdome, but for strangers (as in truth they are:) the Duke of *Curland* being of the house of *Ketleri*, and the Duke of *Regimount*, of the familie of *Brandenburge*.

All *Prussia* did belong to the Dutch Knights, who had their Great Maister resident there, but hee not being able to withstand the force of the *Polonians*; yeelded himselfe feodarie to King *Cassimere*. Afterwards, when *Albert* of *Brandenburge* their Great Maister became a Protestant, he was created Duke of *Prussia*; and the countrie was deuided into two parts; the one Regall, mediately holden of the Crowne, the other Ducall, allotted to *Albert* and his Successours, to hold by fealtie. In the Kings partition stand *Marieburge*, *Toronia*, *Culma*, *Varnia*, and *Danske*: in the Dutchie (which yeelded 120. thousand Duckets yearely) the chiefe Towne is *Regimount*: the *Germans* call it *Conningsburgh*, and there the Duke keepeth his Court.

The gouernment of *Polonia* is altogether electiue, and representeth rather an Aristocracie than a Kingdome; the Nobilitie (who haue great authoritie in the diets) choosing the King, and at their pleasure limiting him his authoritie, and making his soueraignie but a slauiish royaltie. They haue neither law nor statute, nor forme of gouernment written, but (by custome from the death of one Prince to the election of another) the supreme authoritie resteth in the Archbishop of *Gesna*, who is president of the Counsell, appointeth the diets, ruleth the Senate, and proclaimeth the new elected King. Before King *Stephen* erected new Bishops, Palatines, and Castellanes in *Linonia*, few other besides the Archbishop of *Leopolis*, and his thirteene Suffragans, eight & twentie Palatines, & thirtie of the chiefe Castellans, were present at the election of the new King. They hold an assembly of the the States euerie yeare, for two causes; the one, to administer Iustice in Soueraigne causes, vnto which are brought appeales from all the Iudges of the countrie: the other, to prouide for the safetie of the Common-weale, against their next Enemies the *Tratars*, who make often incursions vpon them.

In the time of their Diets, these men assemble in a place nere vnto the Senate-house, where they choose two Marshals, by whom (but with a tribune-like authoritie) they signifie vnto the Counsell what their requests

quests are. Not long since their Authoritie and reputation grew so mightie, that they now carriethemselues as heads and Gouvernors, rather than Officers and Ministers of the publique decrees of the estates. One of the Counsell, after the manner of *Clodius*, refused his Senators place to become one of these Officers. When a King is to be chosen, these men doe more and more limit his authoritie, not suffering it to stretch one iot farther then accustomed. But although the crowne of *Poland* be at the disposition of the Nobilitie, yet was it neuer heard, that they reiected or ouerslipped the Kings successour, or transferred the Kingdome into anie other line, more than once, when deposing *Ladislaus* (whom notwithstanding they afterward restored) they elected *Wenceslaus* the *Bohemian*. Likewise, they haue alwaies a regard to the Kings Daughters, as of *Hedinge*, married by them to *Iagello*, and in our times, of *Anne*, giuen in marriage to King *Stephen*. It was no small cause of the aduancement of *Sigismund* the third, to the crowne of *Polonia*, that he was the Sonne of *Katherin*, Sister to *Sigismund* the Emperour, and of the foresaid *Anne*. And although the Kingly authoritie be elective, yet after he is chosen, his power is absolute in manie things: As to call the Diets, to appoint the times and place at his owne pleasure; to chuse lay Counsellors, and nominate the Bishops, and whom he will haue to be of the Priue Counsell: he is absolute disposer of the Reuenue of the Crowne, and Lord of those which hold of him immediate, but over the Tenants of the Nobilitie hee hath no iurisdiction; he is absolute establisher of the decrees of the Diets, and Soueraigne Iudge of the Nobles in criminal causes; it is in his power to reward and aduance whō pleaseth him; to speake in a word, such as is his valour, dexterie, and wisedome, such is his power, authoritie, and gouernment. As the *Polanders* say, the decrees of their King indure but three daies, and they conuerse not with him as *Cozins*, as in *France*, but as Bretheren. And as the King hath absolute authoritie ouer them, which immediatly hold of him, so the Nobilitie dispose absolutely of their vassails, on euerie of whom they exercise more than Kingly Authoritie, in manner as vpon slaues. In establishing their Kingdome, they haue done one thing worthe the noting, which is, that as the *Romans* increast their Name and Dominion, by communicating the Lawes and Honors of *Italie*, and the Citie of *Rome* to other cities, yea whole Prouinces: so the Kings of *Polonia*, haue enlarged, vnited, and strengthened their estate, by participating the priuiledges of the *Polish* Nobilitie to those Prouinces, which either they haue conquered by Armes, or otherwise purchased, gracing the Nobles thereof with fauours equall to anie bestowed on

the Polish Nation. By this equallizing, King *Lawdislaus* strongly united *Russia* and *Podalia*; *Sigismund Augustus*, *Lithuania*: *Stephen*, *Lithuania*: for respect in offices and promotions knitteth affections in peace and warre.

Forces,

The force of this Kingdome (as of others) consisteth in graine, Coine, Foot-men, Horse-men, Armor, and Munition. Of Graine we haue spoken already. In Coine it is not verie rich: for excepting *Danske*, they haue neuer a Mart-towne worthie estimation; and the wares that are brought from *Prussia* and *Lithuania*, doe not enrich the Kingdome with ready money; yea, they doe hardly suffice to barter with the English and Flemish for Cloth, Silkes, or Wools; or with the Spanish, Portuguese, and other Merchants, for Sugars, Spices, Fruites, and Maluesies. For when the countrie is not giuen to Traffick, nor the Cities to buy & sell, nor the people to labour; and the Nobilitie is verie gallant, prodigall in expences, spending more than their Reuenues in diet and apparrell, and the seasoning of their Viands (for the Polanders vse more Spices than anie other Nation:) and their Wine, their Silke, and the greatest part of their Wollen-cloath is brought from forraine Nations, how can the Kingdome be rich in Siluer? For in transporting of much ware, and returning of little, consisteth the wealth of euery dominion; gathering together (by venting home-bred commodities) the coine of forraine Nations, and keeping it once brought in, from passing abroad. In this practise consisteth the wealth of *Naples* and *Millain*: for *Naples* sendeth to Sea great store of Corne, Wine, Oyle, Silke, Woad, Horses, Fruits, and such like commodities, which bring in huge masses of forraine coine: *Millain* supplieth the want of other Prouinces, with Corne, Rice, Cloathes, Iron-workes, wares of all sorts; and returneth little againe. If the Kingdome of *Sicill* were as well stored with manuell workmanship, as it is provided with corne, sugar-canes and silke, no other Kingdome could compare with it.

Riches,

To returne to Poland; notwithstanding, their riches are not so small as some say they are; for the Reuenues of the Crowne raised of the Mines of Salt and Siluer, amount yearly to fixe hundred thousand Duckets. True it is, that *Sigismund Augustus* pawned part of these Reuenues; and King *Henrie*, a month before his flight (to bind some part of the Nobilitie vnto him) sold vnto them more than 300000. Duckets of yearly rent. It is lawfull for the King by sales of escheats (falling to the crowne,) to purchase liuings for himselfe, and of the said Reuenues to retaine great portions to his proper vse, and to spare his owne expences: for when the King with his Court abideth in *Lithuania*,
the

the *Lithuanians* defray the charge: the like is done in most places of *Poland*. He that weigheth with himselfe, that the ordinarie Reuenues of *Scotland*, *Naples*, or *Sardinia*, exceed not yearely one hundred thousand Duckets, nor the Kingdome of *Arragon*, to yeeld aboute one hundred thousand crownes euerie three yeares; cannot lightly esteeme of the reuenues of this Kingdome; yet the King might raise his reuenues to a higher reckoning, if hee were lesse bountifull to his Palatines and Castellanes. For most commonly he bestoweth on them two parts, and three parts; yea, now and than the whole profits arising in their governments. But in the time of war (yet by the decree of the assemblies of the Kingdome) the King doth lay grievous impositions and taxes on the people, which are either leuied of the Prouinces, or of the excise of victuall: and these tallages haue amounted to such a reckoning, that therewith King *Stephen* sustained the burthen of a most heauie three-yeares-warre against the Great Duke of *Mosconie*: yea, the Gentlemen for defence of the Kingdome, are bound to serue at their owne charges. These serue on Horse, some armed as our men at armes, some more light, some like the *Tartars*; And those they tearme *Cossaches*, or aduentures, trained vp to steale, to depopulate, wast, and to turne all things vp-side downe. These Gentlemen serue in the field gallantly furnished, attired in Cassocks and Hose shining with Gold and Siluer, and a thousand other colours: they adorne themselves with plumes and Feathers of Eagles, with the skins of Leopards and Beares, and with manie Banners and partie-coloured Ensignes. These and such like furnitures, doe cause them to be discerned of their fellowes, make them seeme terrible to their Enemies, and doth encourage their mindes to fiercenesse and prowesse: Their Horse are but small, yet verie nimble, and farre more couragious than the Dutch.

It is thought, that vpon necessitie, *Poland* is able to raise 100000. horse, and *Lithuania* seauentie thousand, but farre inferiour in goodnesse to the *Polish*. They haue so great trust in the great number of their Horse, that nothing fearing the power of anie Enemies, they regard not the building of fortresses, but resolute, that they are able to defend their Countrie, their Wiues and Children, their libertie and goods, in the open field against anie Prince whatsoever; boasting, that in either chance of warre, they neuer turned their backes. *Sigismund Augustus* laboured, that in the diets of the Kingdome, order might be taken for the fortifying of *Craconia*, because of Neighbour-hood of the Emperour: but he could neuer effect it, partly because it should not giue their Kings opportunitie of absolute authoritie, and tyrannicall Emperie, partly

Forces.

Infanterie.

partly because they thinke themselves by Noble courage sufficiently able to defend the Kingdome. They haue no infanterie; for all the people of the kingdome is deuided either into Merchants and Artificers (which inhabit the cities) or labourers which liue in the countrie, in such subiection as we speake of before: and this is the reason that the Gentlemen onely goe to the warre, and will not in anie case serue on foote; but alwaies when occasion serueth, they doe giue wages vnto the *German* and *Hungarish* footmen; and of these, King *Stephen* in his iourney into *Lithonia*, entertained vnder his colours little lesse than 16000. to conuay his great ordnance: 1609. *Sigismund* being called into *Moscouie* by the treason of *Sulskey*, who had slaine *Demetrius* his Lord and Maister in *Mosco*, departed from *Craconia* with 30000. horse and 10000. foot; exceedingly well furnished and resolute. Wherein in truth consisteth the sole commendation of the *Polish* Gentlemen. As for manners, for the most part they are discourteous and vnciuill, a verie murderous and wicked people, especially in their drunkenesse, & that towards strangers.

Pioners.

For Pioners they vse the *Tartars*, and their owne vplandish people. The Kingdome is sufficientlie furnished, stored with great ordnance, and all furniture belonging thereto, of which it can suffer no manner of scarcitie: first, because the Gentlemen and Noblemen keepe manie in their castles; Next for the neighbour-hood of *Germanie*, which is exceeding rich in Metall to that vse, and plentifull of Artificers to forge anie thing belonging thereunto. And though it is not vsuall to see manie castles in *Polonia*, yet the fortresses of *Leopolis*, and *Camentzie* in *Russia*, the castle of *Craconia* in the lesse *Poland*, *Polocensis* on the Frontiers of *Moscouia*, *Mariembourg*, and some other Townes in *Lithonia*, are peeces in truth of great strength.

These forces of *Polonia* (which we haue spoken of) are such in quantitie and qualitie, that few Nations in Europe can equall them, none surpasse them: one thing they want, and that is Celeritie: For to the sure strenghtening of euerie Kingdome, foure things are required: that is to say, That their forces be of their owne subiects; That it be populous, valiant, and quicke: their owne, because it is dangerous trusting to a stranger. Populous because of re-enforcements, after checks or overthrowes; Valiant, because number without courage little auaieth; yea, it bringeth forth confusion, And quicke, that they may lightly mooue, & speedily be drawne, whether necessitie enforceth. The last of these foure the *Polacks* especially want; that is, Celeritie: occasioned two waies. First for defect of absolute authoritie in the Prince, which is much checked

checked by prolonging and adiourning of Parliaments, procured manie times by the frowardnesse of the Nobilitie : And secondly for want of readie monie, and quick leuies thereof.

For the King hath no power to determine anie thing ; to denounce war, to impose taxes, or to gather treasure, without the consent of these Parliaments, and these Parliaments (where it is necessarie that manie be present) are like an engin made of manie peeces, which (without losse of time) can neither easly be ioyned, nor readily moued. For in warlike affaires, those Princes make best speed, which are best able to commaund, and haue most money in readinesse : otherwise, in appointing and ordering the diets, and deuising that the actions may answer the counsels ; than in executing, and in prouiding of money, there happeneth such losse of time, that little is left for the beginning of the iourney, much lesse to accomplish. Besides the Barons and Nobles are at such charges, and tarrie so long when they are there, that at their departure they haue little left to maintaine after charges. It may be, that for the defence of the State, quicker and readier resolution would be taken, because of the imminent danger, fatall in generall. But for the conquest of anie forraine place, I beleue they will alwaies proceed with like slownesse and irresolution ; for the hope of good doth not so much moue vs, as the feare of euill : Yet hath our age scene (in the raigne of *Sigismund Augustus*) the *Moscouite* to haue conquered the Prouinces of *Moloch* and *Smolock*, and that without resistance or reuenge ; a cowardize ill be seeming so great a King, and so mightie a State : as likewise he inuaded *Liuania* without impeachment, which had shadowed it selfe vnder the protection of the said *Sigismund*. In the daies of *Henrie of Aniom*, *John* Prince of *Moldania* (euen he that with an vndanted spirit and famous victorie held warre against the Turke) was shamefully forsaken of them, contrarie to the couenants of confederacie betweene him, and this *Sigismund*, concluded. So that we must needs confesse ; That such as is the courage, valor, and reputation of the Prince ; such is the resolution, alacritie, and forces of the *Polackes* ; of themselves populous, valiant, and couragious. *Stephen Bathor* had good testimonie hereof, in whose time *Polonia* not onely maintained the honour of a King, sufficient to defend it selfe from forraine armes, but also to make conquests of great matters from most potēt Enemies. And seeing we haue spokē of Celeritie, a vertue most necessarie for euerie State, it shal not be amisse to speake of the causes thereof, which (as is aforesaid) are two (viz :) the reputation of the Prince, which giueth it life, and store of Coine, which preserues it in action : for we haue scene in mightiest Armies, the bodie

by the slownesse of the head, to haue spent the time most idely, and verie famous victories for want of money (to giue continuall motion to action) to haue brought forth small, or no effects. Besides, the disposition of a souldiour is a great helpe hereunto: for no man can truely praise the *German* and *Bohemian* Foot-men for celeritie; but this commendation without doubt is proper to the *Italian*, *Spaniard*, and *French-men*, not only for that they are of better constitution of bodie, but for that (which in warre is all in all) they are better contented to liue with a little: Though they want coine they are not discouraged, neither waxe sicke with fruits. If flesh be wanting; and happen what may, they longer and better can indure hardnesse and scarfitie. Their riding light armed, is of more execution than armed at all pieces, and their argolitires more seruiceable than Lanciers: for which cause the French also in their late broiles haue quitted their Lances, wherein of old did consist the glorie of their Armes, and now taken themselues to the Pistoll. But to what purpose they haue thus done, let another dispute; for I say not, that a light armed man is absolutely to bee preferred before a man a armes in chances of warre; but onely affirme, that hee is more actiue and more readie: yea, the goodnesse of the Horse is of great consequence. For the *Flanders* Horse farre excelleth the *Frislander* and *German*. The *Hungarie* Horse, the *Polonian*; the *Turkie* Horse, the *Genet*: the *Barbarie* Horse is more speedie than the rest. Betweene both, is the Courser of *Naples*, who though he be not so swift as the *Spanish Genet*, yet is hee better able to indure trauell, and to beare the weight of Armor, not becoming ouer-slow therewith. To speake truth, experience manifesteth the *German* Horse, by reason of their slow pace to worke small effect, either to pursue the flying Enemie, or swiftly to flie from their executing aduersarie: for if the *Wallachian*, *Hungarian*, *Polish*, *Turkish*, *Morish*, or *Barbarie* Horsemen should breake the *Germans*, they cannot speedily fall, and if it happen the *Germans* to ouerthrow them, they are as vnable to pursue them: for they charge slowlie, and retire heauily. So in fights at sea, Ships, of burthen are of small seruice; because if wind want, they cannot be mooued, the *Galleasses* are somewhat better, yet performe little more, but the best of al is the Galley for his swift sterage. And for prooffe hereof, we haue scene the Nauie of the Christians, consisting of great ships, to haue spent the better part of Sommer and warlike season in preparations onely; And on the contrarie, the Turkish fleet soone furnished, and speedily put to sea: Of such aduantage is spare diet, and needfull prouision of the Turkish affaires, and so discommodious is gluttonie to the proceedings of the Christians: For the prouision

uision of Wine, and other delicates, is as troublesome to the Christians, as the whole prouision for a Campe, to the Turkish Armies. Therefore let no man maruaile, if they march in all their iournies, excellent well furnished with Ordnance, Shot, Gun-powder, and all necessaries; for at land they haue their carriages laden onely with prouision, at Sea, their Ships without Wine, Pullets, and such needlesse vanities. At a word, they goe to the warre to fight, and not to fill their bellies.

The third Booke.

Of Afrique.



*That tract of the habitable world tending to-wards the South, which at this day we call A-
phrica, & the Gracians Libia, containeth one of those three diuisions, which were knowne to the Ancients, & yet not fully discovered; partly in regard of vast Desarts, impossible to bee travelled by Land, and wholly couered with wind-driving sands, in manner of a tempestuous Sea; and partly in regard of the long, tedious, and uncertaine Nauigation, undertaken by few, discovered but little, and fully knowne to none. The undertakers whereof, were Hanno the Carthagenian, and Eudoxius, a banished man vnder Ptolomie King of Alexandria. But in this latter age, it hath beene wholly navigated by the Portugals, and sufficiently by them discovered, especially from the Pillars of Hercules, almost to the verie bottome of the Arabian Gulfe. The first of them, that passed the Cape of good Hope, was Vasco de Gama, in the yeare of our Lord 1497. from whence continuing his course to Calcut, & so to the residue of the East Indies, to the unspeakable honour and atchieuement of that Nation.*

The discription
of Afrique.

*I will not spend time in discourse; upon the Originall of the
name,*

name, Quia paucae ciuitates norint originem, but it is scituated in manner of a Peninsule, conioined with a small neck of Land, lying betweene the Mediterranean Sea, and the Arabian Gulfe. In quantitie it exceedeth Europe at least by twice, but it is not halfe so well inhabited, for that is not so temperate for inhabitation. Many places lying wast, some-where for want of Water, some-where for want of manurance, som-where for abundance of light-sand & stirile Dust, & al subiect to the immoderate heat of the scortching Sun. And the Nature of these Sands are such, that some-times they lie as Mountaines in one part of the desarts, and presently vpon the rising of any gale of wind, they are carried most furiously to another, in manner of a violent & terrible tempest. And last of all, the increase of venomous Serpents & deuouring Creatures, is so general, that in some places no man will, in some places no man dare to manure or inhabite the adioyning Countrie, although most fruitfull. By reason wherof (as aforesaid) the Region seemeth rather wast, than inhabited; but where it is manured, it is exceeding fruitfull, and full of inhabitation, especially toward the North side, which looketh toward Europe, and alongst the Sea-Coasts, betweene the promontorie of Good Hope, and Cape Niger, where the Plaines, Mountaines, and Vallies are singular fruitfull and pleasant, as places inioying the benefit of a perpetuall spring-tide.

Our moderne Cosmographers vpon the North-side bound it with the Mediterranean and Herculean Seas, vpon the East with the Arabian Gulfe, and that Isthmus of Asia that lyeth betweene the said Mediterranean and the Arabian Seas: vpon the South, beat the waues of the great Ocean, especially towards the Cape of Good Hope; which deriuing its denomination from the Countrie adioyning, (viz:) Æthiopia, is termed the Æthiopian Sea: vpon the West, on this side the Æquinoctiall lieth the Atlantique Ocean, and beyond that, it is termed the Æthiopian.

The Celestiall scituation, with the description of the renowned Mountaines, famous Riuers, and remarqueable Capes, all worthie to be registred (if breuitie, requisite for so small a volume did not perswade the contrarie) I would not omit, for the delight of those who desire to make deepest progressions in this kind of studie.

The

The living Creatures both tame and wild, which this and no other climat affordeth, by the testimonie of Leo Afer, are many. As first the Elephant, a docible and wilde beast, found in many parts of the continent. The Giraffa most admirable, fierce, and sildome scene. The Camell is a gentle beast and tame, wherein the wealth of the Arabians doth chiefly consist. The Barbarie Horse, and the wilde Horse, whereof many of the Arabians inhabiting the desarts, do feed. The Dant or Iant resembleth the Oxe, and of his Hide are wrought impenetrable Bucklers. Heere likewise liue the wilde Oxen, and the wilde Asse. The Adimain is like the Ramme, but in stature resembling the Asse, with eares long and flapping. The tame Oxen that liue on the Mountains, are small bodied, but labour some & strong. Their Rammes differ only in their tails from ours, being most broad, and containing twentie pound in waight. There are a kinde of Lyons, which in many places dare to aduenture vpon two hundred Horsemen. The Leopards are strong and cruell, yet sildome hurt they men. The Beast which the Arabians terme Dabul; and the Affricans Iesef, is a base and simple beast, in fashion and bignesse resembling the Wolfe, but in feet and thighs like a man. This beast will dig mens Carcases out of their Graues and deuoure them; towards all other Creatures he is harmelesse. The sorts of Apes are verie diuers. Heere liueth the Mus-Cat and the wilde Conie. The strange Fishes, and other waterie Creatures found in Nilus, Niger, and other principall Riuer are innumerable. The Ambara, for his shape and Hugenesse it prodigious, as a Creature containing twentie fve foote in length. The Hippotame, a Beast like an Horse, and as big as an Asse, liueth as well in Waters, as on the Land, and by his often striking of Boates laden with Marchandize, with his sharpe prickles sinketh them vnder water. The Sea-Oxe differeth nothing from the Land Oxe, saue in smalnesse of stature. The Tortoyce liueth in desarts, and are found oftentimes as big as a barrell. The Crocodile resemble the Lacrete, and is twelue cubits long in bodie, and as many in taile. Most huge Dragons and poysonsome are often scene.

Creatures
proper to
Affrique.

What

What people inhabit Afrique.

FIve feuerall Nations inhabit this part of the World (viz:) the *Casseres*, that is, people without Law: the *Moores*, the *Abyssines*, the *Egyptians*, the *Arabians*, and the *Africans*, whereof some are white, and some blacke. In Religion some are likewise *Gentils*, and worship Idols, some *Mahumetans*, some *Christians*, and some *Iewes*. All which Nations some Writers will haue deriued from *Cham* the Sonne of *Noe*, excepting some certaine *Arabians*, of the seed of *Sem*, which entred *Afrique* after the residue. And these *Arabians* are distinguished into many Families or regiments, vse diuers and many habitations, and possesse as many Regions; some dwelling by the Sea-side (properly termed *Arabians*) some in the Vpland, and they are called *Baduini*. Others in innumerable swarmes lead a roguish life with their Wiues and Children in the Wildernesse, dwelling in Tents in stead of Houses, altogether giuen to spoile, and a like infectious to neighbour and trauel-lour; which is the cause that the Inhabitants dare not trauell alone, but stay the time of the Carouan: that is, the whole assemblie of the Marchants, traueilling vpon Camels and Asses all in one companie at a set time of the yeare, for feare of the theeuish and roguish *Arabians*.

As the Nations are diuers, so are their languages: the chiefe they call *Aquel amarig*; that is, the Noble Language: And of the *Arabians* inhabiting *Africa*, the *Barbarian* Language. And this is the true and proper Idiome of the *Affri*, vterly differing from the residue, saue that it fauoreth of many Arabique words. The *Gnabets*, *Zombati*, *Ghinians*, the *Mellidi* and *Gagonti* vse the *Sungai* Language. The *Gubarits*, *Cannonets*, *Chesenes*, and the other Black-Moores vse the *Guber* tongue. The *Abyssines* haue their proper speech. Moreouer, the *Chaldean*, *Egyptian*, and *Arabian* tongues, with another compounded of all three, is in vse in some places: and by the intercourse of Marchants, many are accustomed to speake the Moorish, Turkish, Spanish, and Italian Languages. All the Sea-Townes, from the *Mediterran* to Mount *Atlas*, speake the *Arabian* corruptly, except the Kingdome and Citie of *Marocco*, which wholly speake the *Barbarian*.

The Noblest part at this day is called *Barbarie*, and containeth all that Sea tract which reacheth from *Egypt* to the *Gaditan* Sea, inhabited by the *Arabians*, and including diuers Prouinces. At first, it was under the Empire of the *Greekes*, secondly under the *Vandals*, and lastly under the *Saracens*

cens and Arabians, who left them their language. Some part thereof at this day is subiect to the Turke, some to Xeriffe, and some to the King of Spaine.

Their manners are not so much differing from those of the Arabians, but that they are some-what more ciuill, ambitious, light, subtile, treacherous, wrathfull, boasters, suspitious, and exceeding ialous. They are very active and readie Horse-men, but not able to indure labour.

Barbarie.

BArbarie is deuided into foure Kingdomes, *Marocco, Fex, Telessine, and Tunes*. *Sanutus* addeth a fift (viz:) *Barca*. Into what, and how manie Shires or Prouinces these portions are deuided, let him reade *Leo Afer*, that desireth the particulars.

Numidia is the second part of *Afrique*, and is tearmed by *Leo Afer*, *Numidia, Biledulgerid*, that is, the *Almond-Country*. But it is of lesse estimation than the residue, and therefore inioyeth not the Title of a Kingdome. It was once disinhabited, as was *Barbarie*, and at this day the Townes are but small, base, scattering, and verie farre distant one from another. Those places that they manure, lye beyond *Atlas*, and are hot and drie; but being watered with certaine streames discending from the Mount, they yeeld Almonds in abundance, but scarcitie of Corne, nor any fruitfull tree except the Palme. Those grounds that border vpon *Libia*, are inuironed with craggie Mountaines destitute of water, and all manner of trees, except some fruitlesse shrubs at the foot of the Hills. As for infinite store of Scorpions and Serpents, it is so overlaid, that manie are daily found dead by their venomous bytings. In old time they were idolatrous, and at this day little better, irreligious, ignorant, base, treacherous, man-killers, & Theeues, vterly destitute of any ciuill knowledge, saue that some few of them addiect themselues to the studie of the Lawes. The *Arabians* that liue amongst them, loue Poësie, and are more ciuill, but very poore. They liue long, but their teeth soon perish with eating of Almonds, and their sight fayleth by the annoyance of the Sands. They know not the French disease; yea if an infected person should but come into the Country, it were Phisicke enough to cleare him. Their cheefefood is Barly, Almonds, and other most course food; as for Bread, they neuer tast it but on feastiualls. And that Corne which they haue, they exchange for Almonds.

Lybia.

Libia.

Libia the third part of *Africke*, was once called *Sarra*; that is, desert; and so it is, a Desert, drie, and sandie countrie, vterly bereaued of Springs and Riuer, vnfruitfull, and those which they haue, they keepe in standing pooles, and those also, but rare and salt. So that the Merchants which are to trauell ouer those countries, must provide carriage for Water; otherwise man and beast might perrish, as not possible to finde one drop in sixe or seauen daies iourney. By this Region lieth the way from *Fez* to *Tombut*, and from *Telensine* to *Agadus*, a countrie of the Moores. Not past one hundred yeares since, they that were to trauell from *Fez* to *Cair*, were accustomed to trauell by these Deserts; but vpon the rising of the South-Winde, the Welles (although intrenched with Skinnies and bones of Camels) were so overwhelmed with sands, that the Merchants not able to finde either signe or token of way or water, haue perished in the iourney through extreame thirst.

Some Riuelets they haue descending out of *Atlas*, and standing in manner of Lakes, as the Lakes of *Gir*, and *Ighidi Gheogan*, to the great comfort of Trauellers, and preservation of the Inhabitants.

They liue without anie forme of law, in manner of bruite beasts, leading a miserable life. What learning meaneth they know not, and vertue they absolutely desie. They are altogether addicted to hunting, notorious theeues, and most dangerous to Merchants: Yet there liue amongst them manie *Africans* and *Arabian*, ciuill and curteous entertainers of strangers, and true of their words. In comparison of the other *Africans*, they liue but a short time, the strongest bodies not exceeding the yeares of sixtie.

Yet for the time they are verie healthfull, slender, and leane of bodie, riding vpon Camels, and feed verie sparingly, as also verie patient of thirst and hunger. Bread they know not, but liue vpon Milke, Camels flesh & butter. Their clothing is a short raymēt & rude, scarce couering their middle. Some of them couer their heads with blacke cloath, in fashion of a Turbant. Their Nobilitie goeth attired in a kind of long garment like a shirt, made of blew Cotton-wooll, with large sleeues. In stead of beds they vse the greene banckes, or Mats wrought of Bulrushes. Their Tents are wrought either of Chamblet, or of a course kind of Wooll, which they finde amongst the Date-trees.

This

This Region taketh his name either from the colour of the Inhabitants, or from the Riuer Niger. Some Writers affirme that (excepting *Egipt*) this countrie was first inhabited, and yet at this day is scarcely knowne, although in latitude it containeth verie neere 400. miles. By reason of its scituation nere the *Torrid-zone*, it is extreame hot, yet not altogether vninhabited. Yea it is most full of Inhabitants, and in some places alwaies spring-time. On this side the Riuer *Canaga*, which is the bounder of these blacke people, the countrie is most drie, sandie and desart, but beyond for the most part fruitfull, by reason of their continual letting of water from the Riuer *Niger*, running through the midst of the countrie: Whereby all the grounds which lie neere thereunto, or such as participate of this water, are exceeding fruitfull, both in graine, Cattle, Scarlet die, Cucumbers, Onions, and such like sawces. But they haue no trees, saue one which bringeth forth fruit not much vnlike a Chest-nut, but somewhat bitterer. About the bankes of *Niger* there are no Mountaines, nor Vallies, but manie Woods stored with Elephants, and other strange creatures, watered with manie Lakes and Mistes, compacted with the ouer-flowings of *Niger*. Here raine neither profiteth, nor damnifieth, but in the ouer-flowing of *Niger* consisteth welfare, euen as it doth in *Egipt* by the inundation of *Nilus*. For euen as *Nilus*, so this fortie daies, (from the 25. of Iune) increaseth, and in so manie againe falleth, so that during those fourescore daies, they saile ouer the whole Land in Boats and Barges.

The Inhabitants deriued their Originall from *Chus*, the sonne of *Cham*, the sonne of *Noe*, whom at the first they worshipped as Lord of Heauen. Afterward they receiued the Iewish lawes, and perseuered therein manie yeares, vntill they receiued the Christian faith. But sthence the Mahumetan superstition im poisoned the whole Confinnes of *Libia*, they likewise turned, excepting some few Prouinces, which to this day obserue the Christian rites. Towards the Ocean Sea they are all Idolaters and Gentiles. Generally they all lead a brutish life, far different from the instinct of reason, from imployment of wit, and manuarie sciences. They are exceeding luxurious, by reason whereof the countrie swarmeth with Whoores. But they that inhabite the good Townes, are a great deale more neat and ciuill than these other *Africans*; They liue not long, yet retaine they their wonted vigour, and the soundnesse of their teeth to their last gaspe.

The countrie was once diuided into 25. Kingdomes, now reduced to three; that is to say, the Kingdome of *Tombut*, the Kingdome of *Borneo*, and the Kingdome of *Gaoga*. Besides *Gualata* hath its proper King.

Gualata

Gualata.

Gualata is distant from the Ocean an hundred miles, it is very small, and containeth but three Burroughes, with some Territorie of ground, Hamlets, and Date-bearing fields thereunto adiacent. The Inhabitantes are most black, louers of Strangers, exceeding poore, without any gouernment, Gentrie or Iudges.

Tombut.

Tombut taketh his name of a Citie so called, and lieth beyond the Riuer *Canaga*. It is exceeding plentifull of Corne, Cattle, Milke, and Butter. Salt they haue none, but buy it at a deere rate at the hands of Marchants. Of Horse they haue infinite store. The King thereof is very rich, as a Prince rainging ouer manie other kingdomes, and is Lord of some Ingots which weigh 1300. pound weight.

He keepeth a royall Court, guarded with 3000. Horse-men, and many more foot, armed with Bowes and imppoisoned Arrowes. He is an vtter enemy to the Iewes, and doth not only forbid them his kingdome, but likewise confiscateth those his subiects goods, of whom he vnderstandeth, that they vse any Traffique with any of that Nation. He maintaineth a great number of learned men. The buildings of his imperiall Citie, are built of mud and thatch, except one faire Temple, and the Kings Pallace, which are wrought of stone and Lime. Sweet Springs are euery where to be found in this Countrie: and the people are courteous, and merrie, spending the thrd part of their time in Songs and dancing. They are verie rich, and especially the Stranger. Infinite sorts of Manuscripts are brought hether from *Barbarie*, which are heere sold at very high rates.

Gago.

Gago is the name of the chiefe Citie, where the King resideth. It is very large, without Walles, and distant 400. Miles from *Tombut*. The buildings are very base, except those which pertaine to the King & the Nobilitie. Fresh water is heere very frequent, with plentie of Corne, Rice and flesh; but of fruits except the Melon and the Citron, great scarcitie. The Marchants are rich, and their wares sumptuous and precious, but excessiue deere.

Borneo.

Borneo is a large Countrie, hath vpon the West *Guangara*, and towards the East it reacheth almost 500. miles. In some places it is plaine, in some mountainous. The plaine Countrie is replenished with many Market-Townes, from whence commeth great store of Corn. The Mountaines are inhabited with Neat-heards, and Sheep-heards, and bring forth Mill, and other fruits to vs vnknowne. The Inhabitantes are Infidels, liuing like beasts, neither knowing their proper wiues, nor their owne Children. They haue no names at all, but are distinguished by bodily accidents. The King is a mightie Prince, as maintaining three
thousand

thousand Horse, and infinite troupes of foote, but hath no other reuenue, than what he taketh by force from his Enemies.

Gaoga, lieth betweene the Kingdome of *Borneo*, and the desarts of *Nubia*, stretched out five hundred miles in length, and breadth. The Inhabitants are vnciuill, ignorant, and most rude, especially the Mountainers. They goe naked all saue their priuities. Their Houses are built of boughs and leaues, hauing great flockes of cattle, which they preferue with much care.

These are the chiefe, the residue are not worth the reading; for nothing can be spoken vnto, but their barrennesse or fertilitie; their pouertie or riches; blessings and curses, peculiar more or lesse to euerie of these Nations.

The Xeriffe.

AMongst all the Potentates of *Afrique*, I doe not thinke that there can anie one be found to excell this Prince, either in wealth or power. His Dominion containeth all that tract of *Mauritania*, which the Romans called *Tingitana*, and stretcheth from the promontorie *Bayadir* or *Tanger*, and from the *Atlantique* Ocean to the Riuer *Muluia*. In which progresse is contained the best portion of all *Afrique*, the best inhabited, the pleasantest, the fruitfullest, and most ciuill. Herein amongst others, are the famous Kingdomes of *Fex* and *Maroch*, the one deuided into seauen Prouinces, the other into eight. The countrie is diuided into plaines and mountaines. The Mountaines are inhabited with a fierce people, rich in pastures and cattle, and possessing a great part of the lesse and bigger *Atlas*. Betweene the greater *Atlas*, and the Ocean, lieth the plaine Countrie, and therein the Royall Citie of *Maroch* distant foureteene Miles from *Atlas*, watered with manie Springs, Brookes, and Riuers. In times past, this citie contained one hundred thousand Housholds, and was the chiefest of *Afrique*; but by little and little it is decaied, and now lieth more wast, than inhabited. In the the Kingdome of *Maroch*, besides others, is *Tedsi*, a Towne of 5000. Housholds, and *Tagoast* of 8000. *Taradent* giueth place to none, for Noblenesse and Traffique, though for largenesse and circuit. It is situated betweene *Atlas* and the Ocean in a plaine, sixteene miles long, and little lesse broad, abounding with Sugar and all kinde of prouision. The good regard and continuall abroad which *Mahumet Xeriffe* made in this place, did greatly augment & ennoblis this Towne. Being past

T

Atlas,

Atlas, you enter into most batle plaines, wherein how fruitfull the soile is of Sugar, Oliues, Cattle, and all good things, can hardly be spoken.

Fez.



He Kingdome of *Fez* likewise containeth diuers Prouinces excellent well peopled. Amongst them is *Alga*, a Territorie of eightie miles long, and sixtie broad: *Elabut* is 100. miles long, and sixtie broad. *Eriffe* is a Prouince wholly mountainous: therein are said to be three and twentie branches of the Mount *Atlas*, inhabited for the most part with sauage and barbarous people. *Caret* is drie and rockie, more like *Libia* than *Barbarie*.

Now because the glorie and Maiestie of this Kingdome consisteth especially in the citie of *Fez*; I thinke it not amisse to describe the sciuation thereof. It is deuided in two parts, a little distant one from another, the one is called the old towne, the other the new. A little Riuer likewise deuideth the old Towne into two parts. The East part is called *Beleyda*, containing foure thousand Housholds: the West part is commonly called old *Fez*, and hath fourescore thousand and vpward, standing not farre from the new *Fez*, which likewise hath eight thousand. Old *Fez* standeth partly vpon hils, partly on plains, and hath in it fiftie Mahumetan Temples of admirable largenesse. All of them haue their fountaines and pillers of Alabaster and Iasper: Besides these, there are 600. of a lesse sort: amongst which, that which is commonly called *Carucen* is most beautifull, built in the heart of the citie, and containing halfe a mile in compasse: In breadth it containeth seauenteene Arches, in length an hundred and twentie, borne vp by 2500. white Marble Pillers: vnder the chiefest Arch (where the Tribunall is kept) hangeth a most huge Lampe, encompassed with 110. lesser. Vnder the other Arches hang verie great Lampes, in each of which burne an hundred and fiftie Lights. They say in *Fez*, that all these Lampes were made of the Bels which the *Arabians* brought out of *Spaine*, who not onely made prey of Bels, but of Columns, Pillars, Brasse, Marble, and whatsoever was rich, first erected by the *Romans*, and afterwards by the *Gothes*. There are in *Fez* aboue two hundred Schooles, two hundred Innes, and foure hundred water-mils, euerie one driuen with foure or fise wheeles. There are also diuers Colledges, among which, that which is called *Madarac*, is accounted for one of the most finest peeces of workmanship throughout all *Barbarie*. There are likewise 600. Conduits,

duits, from whence almost euerie house is serued with Water. It were a long labour to describe their *Burse* (they call it *Alcacer*) it is a place walled about, hauing twelue gates, and deuided into fiftene walkes, where Merchants meet to dispatch their businesse vnder Tents. Their delightfome Gardens and pleasant Parkes, with the Rilllets and Waters running through them, I can hardly describe.

For the most part, the King keepeth his Court at *Fez*, wherein hee hath a Castle, Pallaces and Houses adorned with rare workemanship, rich and beautiful, euen to his hearts desire. He hath away vnder ground from the old Towne to the new.

For greatnesse and statelinesse thereof (by the grant of former Kings) it inioyeth this strange priuiledge; not to indure anie siege, vnlesse the Citizens shall thinke their Prince for strength and forces, able and equall to cope with his Enemy: if not, without reproach of treason, they may yeeld their citie before the enemy approach within halfe a mile of the citie. This haue they done, that so goodly and so flourishing a citie, should not suffer spoile vnder pretext of vnprofitable temporizing.

It is of no lesse moment for scituation, store of Corne, Oyle, Flax, and Cattle, than for pleasantnesse of Territorie, and plentie of Water. The Wals are verie strong, and defended with manie Bulwarkes. The Inhabitants are verie thriftie, giuen to Trafficke, and especially to the making of Clothes of Wooll, Silke, and Cotton. The Kings eldest Son is called the Prince of *Mequinez*. Though the Kingdome haue no good Hauens vpon the *Mediterranean* Sea, yet great store of Englishmen and French-men resort to *Alarach*, *Aguer*, and other Ports in the Ocean, whereof some belong to the Kingdome of *Fez*, and other to the Kingdome of *Maroch*. They carrie thither armor and other wares of Europe, which they barter for Sugar and other commodities. But how the Kingdomes of *Fez* and *Maroch* (two seuerall principalities) with their dependances, became subiect to one Crowne, I thinke it worthie relation, because a more strange and memorable accident hath not happened in our age. About the yeare 1508. a certaine *Alsaque* borne in *Tigumedet* in the Prouince of *Dura*, began to grow in reputation, a man of a reaching wit, & no lesse ambitious than learned in the Mathematickes. His name was *Mahumet Ben-Amet*, otherwise called *Xeriffe*, by his owne commaundement. This man deriuing his petegree from *Mahumet*, and imboldned by the ciuile warre of *Afrique*, and the differents of the States and Common-weales thereof (wherein in those daies the *Portugals* were of no small puissance) began to dreame

on the Conquest of *Mauritania Tingitan*. Which the better to effect, he first sent his three Sonnes, *Abdell*, *Abnet*, and *Mahumet*, on pilgrimage to *Meca* and *Medina*, to visite and worship the Sepulchre of their great Prophet *Mahumet*. The young men returned from this pilgrimage with such opinion and estimation of holinesse and Religion (if it be lawfull to vse these tearmes to so great impietie and fopperie) that the Inhabitants as they trauelled, could hardly be kept from kissing their garments, and adoring them as Saints.

They againe, as men wrapt in deepe contemplation, iournied through the Prouinces sighing & sobbing, and crying with a high voice; *Ala*, *Ala*. They had no other sustenance but the almes of the people. Their Father receiued them with great ioy and contentment, and perceiuing the fauour and opinion of the people not to be like a nine daies wonder, but to continue fresh & the same as at the first, resolved to make vse thereof, and thereupon sent two of them, *Abnet* and *Mahamet* to the Court at *Fez*. The King receiued them kindly, and made one of them President of the famous Colledge of *Amadorac*, and the younger Tutor of his Children. In processe of time, when they perceiued the King to grace them, and the people to fauour them, by the councell of their Father (taking occasion of the grieuances which the *Arabians* and *Moores* seruing vnder the *Portugall* Ensignes had done to the professors of their superstition) they desired leaue of the King to display a Banner against the Christians, making him beleue that they would easily draw the *Portugall Moores* to their partie, and so secure the Prouinces of *Sus*, *Hea*, *Ducala*, and *Maroch*. *Muly mazer* the Kings Brother resisted this petition, alleadging, that if once vnder the shew of holinesse, they grew to head, it would not afterwards lie in his power to suppress them vnder his obedience. For warre makes men awlesse; victories insolent; popularitie ambitious, and studious of innouation. But the King, in whose heart their hypocriticall factimonie had taken a deepe impression, little regarding his Brothers councell, gaue them a Banner, a Drumme, and twentie Horsemen to accompanie them, with Letters of credence to the Princes of *Arabie*, and cities of *Barbarie*. In these beginnings, manie things falling out to their honour and good liking, they began to make incursions into *Deucala*, and the countrie of *Safi*, ranging as farre as the promontorie *Aguer*, then vnder the government of the *Portugals*: and perceiuing themselves to bee fauoured, strong, and well followed, vrged the people (who for the most part in those daies liued in libertie) to aide those which fought for their Law and Religion against the Christians, as likewise with willing mindes

mindes to giue God his Tithes, which they obtained of the people of *Dara*. Then by little and little, they intrenched vpon the territorie of *Taradant* (of which they made their Father Gouvernor) and inuaded *Sus, Hia, Deucala*, and the neighbouring places. They first seated themselves in *Tednest*, and after in *Tesarot*. In their next iourney (but with the losse of their elder Brother) they defeated *Lopes Barriga*, a great Warriour, and Captaine generall of the *Portugal* Armie. By flattering speeches they entred *Marcho*, poisoned the King, and proclaimed *Amet-Xeriffe* King of the countrie. After this, happened the warre of the *Arabians*, of *Deucala*, and *Xarquia*, with the *Arabians* of *Garbi*, where while each partie weakned other, and either promised to himself the fauor & assistance of the *Xeriffes*: they turned their armes vpon both factions, & carried rich preyes frō both Nations. Before this war, they sent vnto the King the fifth part of all their spoiles, but after this victorie, little regarding their Soueraigne, they sent him onely six Horses, and fixe Camels, and those verie leane and ill shapen. Which the King disdainig, sent to demaund his fifts, and also the Tribute which the Kings of *Marcho* were accustomed to pay to him; which if they denied, he vowed reuenge with fire and Sword. In the meane time the King died, and *Amet* his Sonne, once the pupille of the younger *Xeriffe*, not onely allowed, but also confirmed *Amet* in the Kingdome of *Marcho*; vpon condition, that in some things he should acknowledge the king of *Fez* to bee his L. paramount. To this the *Xeriffes* (whose power and estimation daily increased) when the day of paiment of the tribute came; willed the Messenger to say vnto his Maister, that they were the lawfull successors of *Mahumet*, and therefore that they were bound to pay tribute to no Man, yea, that they had more right to *Afrique* than he had: but if he would reckon them in the number of his friends, no doubt but it would turne to his good and honor, for if he diuerted them from the warre of the Christians, they would not leaue him so much as a heart to defend himselfe.

The King taking this in ill part, proclaimed warre against them, and besieging *Marcho*, but for that time, was constrained to dislodge. Afterward returning with eightene thousand Horse-men, and two thousand Harquebusiers to renew the siege; as soone as hee had past the Riuer, hee was overcome of the *Xerifs*, who led an Armie of 7000. Horse, and one thousand two hundred shot. In the pride of this victorie they exacted tribute of this Prouince, and passing *Atlas*, they tooke the famous citie *Tafilet*, and partly by loue, and partly by force compelled diuers people of *Numidia* and the Mountaines, to beare the

yoake of their subiection. In the yeare 1536. the younger *Xeriffe*, which called himselfe King of *Sus*, gathering together a mightie Armie with great store of Artillerie, part whereof he tooke from the King of *Fez*, and part wherof were cast by certaine *renegada French-men*, made a iourney to *Cape Aguer*.

This place is of great consequence, and possessed by the *Portugals*, who built it and fortified it, first at the expences of *Lopes Sequiera*, and then at the charges of King *Emanuel*, after he vnderstood of the commodious scituation thereof. It was fiercely assaulted, and as valiantly defended, vntill the fire began to take hold vpon the Bulwarke where their Gun-powder was stowed; with which misfortune the companies appointed, for the defence of that quarter, growing fearefull and faint hearted, gaue way for the *Xeriffe* to enter, who made slaues of the greatest part of the defendants. After which victorie, they subdued almost all *Atlas*, the Kingdome of *Maroch*, and the *Arabians* which were vassals to the crowne of *Portugall*; the residue, as *Safi*, *Azamor*, *Arzil*, and *Alcazar* (places scituated vpon the Sea-coast of *Mauritania*) King *Iohn* the third perceiuing the profit not to equalize the charge, voluntarily resigned.

These prosperous beginnings brought forth sower ends; for the Bretheren falling at discord, twice put their fortunes vpon the hazzard of a battaile, twice the younger overcame the elder, tooke him, and cast him into prison in the citie *Tasilet*. Then turned he his Armes against the King of *Fez*, tooke him prisoner, and restored him to his libertie: but taking him againe, for breach of Couenants, depriued him and his Sonne of life and kingdome. By the valour of his Sonnes, he tooke the citie *Tremissen*. But *Sal Aries*, Viceroy of *Algier* being iealous of these good fortunes, gathered a puissant hoast, recovered *Tremissen*, put the *Xeriffe* to flight, tooke *Fez*, and bestowed it with the Territorie vpon the Lord of *Velez*, who afterward in a battaile against the *Xeriffe*, lost both life and kingdome. At last, in his iourney to *Taradant*, by the subordination of the Viceroy of *Algier*, he was murdered in his Tent by certaine Turkes, who with their captaine *Assen* comming to *Taradant*, rifled the Kings Treasures, but were all slaine (except foue) by the Inhabitants in their iourney homewards. This came to passe 1557. when *Muley Abdala* the *Xeriffes* sonne, was proclaimed King.

Let this suffice for the originall of the *Xeriffe*: now let vs see how these risings were like the fortunes of *Ismael* King of *Persia*. Both of them in small time conquered manie Prouinces: both grew great by the ruine of their Neighbours: both suffered crosses by the armes of the Turkes,
and

and to them lost part of their Dominions. *Selim* tooke from *Ismael Carazit*, and diuers other cities of *Mesopotamia*. The Vice-roy of *Algier* droue the *Xeriffe* from *Tremissen* and the adiacent Territorie. *Selim* won *Tauris*, the chiefe seate of *Persia*, and then gaue it ouer; *Salaries* tooke *Fez* the head citie of *Mauritania*, and left it.

This Potentate is absolute Lord of the bodies and goods of his Subjects: whatsoeuer imposition he laieth on them, they repine not thereat. For tribute he taketh the tenth, and the first fruits of their fruits and cattle: yet is it most true, that for first fruits hee taketh not aboue one in twentie: and though it exceed that number, euen to one hundred, yet he neuer taketh aboue two. Of euerie Acre of Land, he taketh a ducket and the fifth part, and so much of euerie household, and so of euerie pole male and female aboue 15. yeares of age, yearly. If he want, he taketh a greater summe. To make the people more willing to pay what is imposed, he alwaies demaundeth more than is paid, that so by paying their due, they may thinke they are well dealt withall, in seeming to be forgiuen somewhat of his full demaund. The Inhabitants of the Mountaines, a sauage people, for the difficult accesse vnto them, he cannot inforce to pay tribute, but those that manure the plaines, he constraineth to giue the tenth of their haruest.

His manner of
gouernment,

Besides these Reuenues, he taketh Tolle and Custome of all kindes of Reuenues; Merchandize in cities: inward, of a citizen two in the hundred, of a stranger, ten. His rent of Milles is a great matter: for vpon euerie Asseload of Graine grinded in *Fez*, he taketh halfe a reall: in this Towne there are aboue foure hundred Milles. The Church of *Carranen*, was indowed with 80000. Duckets of yearly Reuennue, the Colledges and Monasteries of *Fez* with much more which now are escheated into the Kings Coffers. Moreouer hee is heire to all the Iudges (whom they call *Alcaids*) and hath the bestowing of all their Offices. When they die he seizeth vpon all their Horses, Armor, Apparrell, and all their other Chattles. If the intestate leaue Children behind him fit for the warre, he bestoweth his fathers annuitie vpon them: if they be Sons and young, he nurseth them till they come to full yeares: if Daughters, he maintaineth them till they find husbands. To be fingring the wealth of the richer sort, he hath some Office of Lieutenantship with an annuitie to sell them: but commonly to preuent those sales, they will not bee knowne of their abilities, remoouing their aboads farre from the Court and kings sight, which is the cause that the citie of *Fez* is much fallen from the auncient splendour.

He hath no Castles or pieces well fortified, but onely *Aguer*, *Larach*, *Forces* (lately

(lately taken) and *Tetuan* vpon the sea side. His chiefeft confidence is in the valour of his souldiours, especially his Horse-men, like the Turke and Persian. In this regard, he taketh no great care to furnish himselfe with Ordnance, yet hath he great store thereof in *Fez*, *Maroch*, *Taradant*, and in the afore said haue Townes taken from the *Portugals* and others. As he seeth occasion, he causeth new to be cast, for which seruice he can want no workemen out of Europe. In *Maroch* he hath an Arsenall, wherein he laieth vp monthly at least 46. Quintals of Gun-powder. Here he causeth his Harquebushes & Bowes likewise to be made. In the yeare 1569. by fire which happened among the Gun-powder houses, the greatest part of the citie was verie much defaced.

His souldiourie is of diuers sorts: the first consisteth of 2700. Horsemen, and 2000. Harquebushers, part lying in garrison in *Fez*, and part in *Maroch*, where also lieth the Court. The second consisteth (as a man may say) of a royall troupe of 6000. Horse, all Gentlemen Pensioners, and of great reputation. These ride vpon braue Horses, with rich Caparisons, their Armes and Furniture shining with Gold, Siluer, Stones, and all things else, which for varietie of colours, or rich deuises, may delight the eie with a gallant shew, or feed the humor of the curious beholder. To these seruitors, besides their allowance of Corne, Prouender, Butter, and Flesh, for themselues, their Wiues, Children, and Seruants, they receiue yearely from seauentie, to one hundred ounces of Siluer. The third sort are a kind of *Tamarots*: for the *Xeriffe* doth allot a certaine portion of Land and Tennants to his Sonnes, Brethren, and Men of qualitie amongst the people of *Afrique* and *Arabia*, for the maintenance of their degrees. Those whom they tearme *Aleids*, looke to the manuring of the fields, gather the rents of Corne, Rice, Oats, Oyle, Butter, Flesh, Poultrie, and Money, and distribute it monthly amongst the Souldiours, to euerie man according to his place. They likewise giue them Linnen, Wollen, and Silke for their Garments: Armor and Horses for seruice. If their horses chance to be slaine, they giue them new: so did the Romans to those which serued on the horses of the State. The Commanders of these troupes are verie carefull to see their souldiours in heart and full of life, excellent well armed, and competently attired. They receiue betweene foure and twentie and thirtie ounces of Siluer yearely. The fourth sort make the *Arabians*, who commonly liue in Tents, deuided by 120. vnder their seuerall Leaders, to be alwaies ready vpon all occasions. They serue on Horse-backe, but more like Theeues & Outlawes, than souldiours. The fifth sort is like the presse of the Christian Common-weales. These companies consist of Citizens, Villa-

Villagois, and Mountaine-people. Of these men the King maketh no reckoning, neither doth he willingly arme them, for feare of sedition & innouation, vnlesse it be to warre vpon the Christians, wherein he cannot forbid them to serue. For vpon remembrance of the slaughter of the Moores by the Christians spoken of in their Mahumeticall Legend, the more Christians they slay, the easier they thinke shall be their passage to Heauen. Hereupon you shall see heards of people running to this warre, desiring there to die vpon hope of meriting saluation by the slaughter of our people. The same furie (be it spoken to our shame) inrageth the Turkes: especially for the propagation of their heresies, you shall see them more liker people running to the celebration of a marriage feast, than to a war-journey; hardly induring to stay the limited time of the *Randeuou*. They account them Saints which die with their weapons in their hands, and those most vnhappy which depart this world amongst the teares of their Chrildren, and the mournings of their wiues.

By this, it may sufficiently appeare what forces the *Xeriffe* is able to bring to the field, but examples will make it more cleare. *Muley Abdala* beleagred *Magazan* with two hundred thousand men. He filled the Ditch with a Mount made of earth, and with his Ordnance beate the wall leuell with the ground. But by the prowesse of the *Portugall*, and furie of their Miners, he was forced to raise his siege and depart. It is certaine, he is not able to hold anie warre about three months, because the souldiour liueth vpon his daily allowance of Diet and Apparrell: and when such like prouisions cannot be conuaied to the place of necessitie, without great labour and hazzard, it commeth oftentimes to passe that for want of prouision, the armie is constrained to breake and retire. *Molucco* King of *Fez*, who defeated *Sebastian*, had vnder his standard fortie thousand Horse-men, and eight thousand hired footmen; and with the *Arabians* and other common souldiours, it is thought that he is able to leaue seauentie thousand horse, and a far greater number of foote.

¶ The

*The Higher Ethiopia : or the Empire of
Presbiter Iohn.*

In *schotten* is of opinion, that *Prester Iohn* is but a supposed name. The *Mores* terme him *Asiclabassi*; his owne Subjects, *Acegun*, prime Emperor, and *Nogus*, chiefest King. He saith, his true denomination is *Bel-gian*, *Bel* (as afore) signifieth highest, and *Gian* Lord: which is also proper to many commanders and gouernours vnder him: but *Bel-gian* to none, saue the Emperor himselfe; whereunto he addeth the Sir-name of *Dauid*, in the same sence, as the Christian Emperours assume the Titles of *Cesar*, or *Augustus*: and worthely. For he is the greatest and powerfulest Prince in all *Afrique*. His Dominions begin at the entrance of the Red-Sea, and stretch to the entrance of the Island of *Siene* (lying vnder the tropique of Cancer) excepting some part of the Coast vpon the same Sea, which the Turke within these 60. yeares hath taken from him. So that, his gouernment towards the North-west and East, lyeth most part by the Red-Sea, and North-east vpon *Egypt*, and the deserts of *Nubia*: and vpon the South-side, vpon *Monemugi*; So that to set downe the greatnesse of all the Countries, which this Christian King hath vnder his command, were to say, that in compasse they containe 4000. Italian miles.

Iosephus affirmeth, that in ancient times they were called *Chusai*, of *Chus*, the Sonne of *Cham*; And at this day some hold that the *Portugals* tearme them *Cussios*. But in these *Egyptian* tongue they are stiled *Abessini*, by reason of their scattering habitation. The Countrie by report of late traouellers, is most fertill. For admit it yeeld Wheat in scarcitie, yet aboundeth it in Barlie, Millet, Pease, Beanes, and such like Pulse, as wee neither know, nor can name. And although the Soueraigntie of this Prince be very magnificent, powerfull, and spacious: yet in truth doth it nothing answer the fame, and report of the vulgar. *Horatius Malaguccius* in his discourse *De ampletudine dominiorum huius temporis*, maintaineth it to be larger than the Empire of any other Potentate, except that of the King of *Spaine*. Truly I must needs say, that in elder age, by the number of his Titles, it may be coniectured, that his Dominions did stretch far: for he did intitle himselfe King of *Goiam*, (which is beyond *Nilus*) *Uangue* and *Damur*; places scituated beyond the Ri-
uer

uer *Zair*, whereas at this day, he hardly commeth neere the bankes of either Riuer: yea *John Baroz* writeth, that the *Abeffines*, by reason of the Mountaines betweene them and *Nilus*, haue little or no knowledge of that Riuer.

It is deuided into vast Plaines, fertill Hillockes, and Mountaines, Fertilitie. though wonderous high, yet fit for tillage, and full of habitation. It is not very well stored with Wheat, but it bringeth forth Barlie, Miller, a certaine other Graine wholesome and indurable, *Indian* Wheat, and all other kind of Pulse (as well knowne as vnkowne to vs) in very plenti- full manner. They haue Vines, but make no Wines, vnlesse it be in the Kings Court, or the Patriaches Pallace, instead whereof they Brew a kind of sharpe Beuerage, made of the fruit of *Tamerind*. The Orange, Leimon, and Cædar-tree grow wild. They make Oyle of a certain fruit which they call *Zana*, it is of a good colour, but vnfaurie. The Bees build their Hiues euen in their Houses, whereupon ariseth a great quan- titie of Waxe & Honie. Their Garments are wouen of a Cotten-wooll. The richer sort are clothed in Sheep-skins; the Gentlemen in cases of Lyons, Tygers, and Linces. Their riches consist in Heardes of Oxen, Goates, Sheep, Mules, Asses and Camels. Of Horses their breed is smal, but they haue great store of goodly Coursers brought them frō *Arabia* and *Egypt*. They haue Hens, Geese, Wild-Swine, Harts, Goats, and Hares, but no Conies; yea, and such Beasts, of which we haue not the like; as Panthers, Lyons, Elephants and Linces. To speake in a word: there is no Countrie vnder Heauen fitter for increase of Plants, and all liuing Creatures, but none lesse helpt by art or industrie, for the Inha- bitants are ydle and vnthristie. They haue Flaxe, but make no Cloath, they haue Sugar-canes, and Iron-Mines, but know not the vse of ey- ther, and as for Smiths, they feare them as fiends. They haue Riuers and streames, yet will not they take paines in drouths to cut the bankes to water their Tillage or harden their grounds. Few giue themselues to Hunting or Fishing, which causeth their fields to swarme with Foule and Venison, and their Riuers with Fish. But it seemeth, that the true ground of their idlenesse ariseth from their euill vsage; For the poore people perceiuing their Land-lords to pole and pill them, neuer sow more than they needes must. They keep no Method in their speeches, and to write a letter, many men (and that many daies) must lay their wits together. At meales they neither vse Cloath, Napkin, nor Tables. They are vtterly ignorant in Phisicke. The Gentlemen, Burgers, and Plebeians dwell apart, yet may any man rise to Honour by vertue and Prowesse. The first borne is Heire to all, euen to the vttermost farthing.

Through

Through the whole Land, there is not a towne containing about 1600. households, and but few of that quantitie: For, for the most part they dwell dispersed in small Villages. They haue no castle or fortification, in imitation of the *Spartans*, maintaining that a countrie ought to be defended by the Sword, and not by strength of earth or stone. They barter one thing for another, and to make reckonings euen, they supply the want with Corne and Salt. For Pepper, Frankincence, Myrrh, and Salt, they giue Gold, and that by waight, as for Siluer it is in little request. The greatest concourse of people is about the Kings Court, which neuer staeth long in one place, but is euer in progresse, sometime in one place, sometime in another, and euer in the open fields, vnder Tents and Pauillions. It is said to containe tenne miles in circuit. His gouernment is tyranicall; for hee intreateth his Vassals, rich and poore, more liker slaues than subiects: which to doe with the greater safetie, hee carrieth himselfe amongst them with a holy and Saint-like adoration: for at his bare name they bow their bodies, and touch the Earth with their hands. They reuerence his Pauillion, yea though he be absent.

State.

In old times they were accustomed to shew themselues to the people but once in three yeares, but since they are growne lesse maiestically, shewing themselues thrice in one yeare; to wit, on Christmas-day, on Easter-day, and on Holy-Rood-day; yea and in these times, the Kings, which now raig, are become more gracious. When anie matter is committed in the Princes name to anie man, he is to attend his Commission starke naked to the middle. Being called to witnesse a matter in controversie, they hardly speake truth, vnlesse they sweare by the life of the King. He giueth and taketh, to whom, and from whom he pleaseth, neither dare he from whom he taketh, for his life, make shew of a discontented countenance. Hee presenteth to holy Orders, and disposeth at his good pleasure of the goods of the Spiritualltie, as well as of the Laity. In traouelling, hee rideth shadowed with red Curtaines, high and deepe, encompassing him round about.

He weareth on his head a Crowne, the one halfe wrought with Gold, and the other of Siluer, in his hand he beareth a Siluer Crucifixe. He couereth his face with a peece of watchet Taffata, which more or lesse he listeth vp and putteth downe according as hee is minded to grace him with whom he talketh. Sometimes he sheweth his whole Legge, lifting it without the hangings, then may no man approach but by degrees, and after manie curtesies, and diuers messages passing too and fro. No man hath vassals but the King, to whom once a yeare they doe homage,

homage, and protest obedience as subiects to their Liege Soueraigne. He deriued his petegree from *Milech* the sonne of *Salomon* and *Saba*. In the reigne of *Candaces*, they receiued the Christian Faith : and about that time, one *Gaspars* became famous in *Ethiopia* : from whom after thirteene generations, descended that *John*, who first tooke vpon him the fir-name of *Sanctus*, and left it an hereditarie Title to his house and successors.

This man hauing no issue of his bodie, about the time of *Constantine*, gaue the Kingdome to the eldest Sonne of his Brother *Caius*, and inuested the younger (*Balthasar* and *Melchior*) the one with the Kingdome of *Fatigar* ; the other with the Kingdome of *Goiam*, and so deuided the bloud royall into three Families, the *Gospars*, *Balthasars*, and *Melchiors*. To auoid sedition and innouation, he made a Law, that the sonnes, Bretheren, and neereft Kinred of the Emperour should be kept and shut vp in the Castle of *Amara*, and that they should neither succeed in the Empire, nor inioy anie honourable estate, for which cause the Emperours euer since haue sildome married. He manureth his Domaines with his owne slaues and cattle : who by reason they are suffered to marrie, and their issues remaine in the same estate of villenage, as doe their Fathers ; they increase to infinite multitudes. Euerie man that hath anie inheritance, doth likewise pay tribute, some Horses, some Oxen, others Gold, Cotton-wooll, or such like. It is thought that hee is Lord of infinit treasures, and to haue store of Houses full of Cloath, Jewels, and Gold. In his Letters to the King of *Portugall*, vpon condition that he would wage warre against the Infidels, hee offered him a Million of Gold, and a Million of men, with prouision according. He is reported to lay vp yearly in the castle of *Amara* three millions of Gold. And true it is, that before the daies of King *Alexander*, hee did hoord vp great store of Gold in rude and vnwrought Masses ; but no such quantitie as is spoken, because they know not how to refine it. His Reuenues are of three sorts, the first ariseth of his Crowne-Land: Reuenue. the second of the Taxes of his people, who pay euerie man by house some-what, besides the tenth of all that is digged out of their Mines : the third, he leuieth of the great Lords, and they giue him the Reuenue of anie one of their Townes (which he will choose) so hee choose not that wherein themselues inhabite. And albeit the Prince be verie rich, yet the people are idle and beggarly : partly because they are in-treated as slaues, which vsage taketh from anie people that courage and alacritie of spirit, which should be in men professing armes, and vnder-going dangers ; and partly, because in respect of that base bond of
seruile

seruile fidelitie, where-with they are ouer-awed to his Maiestie, they perceiue their hands are fast bound, thorough feare whereof, they haue no other Weapon fit for seruice, than a rustie head-peece, a Scull or Curasse, which the *Portugals* haue brought thither. So that, having neither fortresse to flie vnto, nor Weapons to repulse wrongs, their Villages and substance lie alwaies open to the prey and spoile of whosoever will inuade them. Their offensive weapons are certaine Darts, and Arrowes without feathers. They obserue a Lent of fiftie daies, which by reason of their true (or rather superstitious) abstinence, doth bring their bodies so weake and low, that for manie daies after they are not able to gather strength to moue themselves from one place to another. At which time the Moores watching opportunitie, inuading their Dominions, carrie away Men, Women, and Wealth. *Francis Alvarez* writeth, that hee is able to bring into the field 100000. Men: but experience hath manifested, that euen in his extremities, his numbers were farre inferiour to that reckoning. Hee hath Knights of an Order dedicated to the protection of Saint *Anthonie*. Euerie Gentleman Father of three Sonnes (except the eldest) is bound to giue one to the seruice of the King; out of these are chosen 12000. Horsemen for the guard of his person. Their vow and oath is to defend the bounds of the Empire, and to fight against the Enemies of the Christian Faith.

Borderers.

King of Borno.

He is fronted with three puissant neighbours: the King of *Borno*, the great *Turke*, and the King of *Adell*. The King of *Borno* is Lord of that countrie, which from *Guangula* East-ward stretcheth about five hundred miles betweene the desarts of *Seth* and *Barca*. In scituation, it is verie vneuen, sometime mountainous, and sometime plaine; the people indifferent ciuill, the countrie reasonably well inhabited, and in regard of plentie of victuall, somewhat resorted vnto by Merchants. On the Mountaines dwell Neat-heards and Sheep-heards, liuing for the most part vpon Milet, leading a bestiall life, without Religion, and accompanying with one anothers Wiues. They know no other names than such as are giuen them for some note or marke of their bodie, as Blinde, Lame, Tall, Bold, &c. This King is verie puissant in people, of whom hee exacteth no other tribute than the tenthes of the increase of their liueli-hoods. For exercise and instead of occupations, they giue themselves to steale, to slay their Neighbours, and to take them Prisoners, and then to barter them for Horses with the Merchants of *Barbarie*. He hath vnder him manie Kingdomes and Nations, some white, some blacke. He is an heauie Enemy to the *Abessines*, taking away their

their cattle, rifling their Mines, and leading away the people in captiuitie. His Horsemen ride after the Spanish manner, armed with Lances (steeled at both ends) Darts and Arrowes: but their inrodes resemble rather robberies and garboiles, than warres managed by valiant soldiers.

The *Turke* likewise on the East, and the King of *Adel* on the South-east, doe cruelly vex him; for they haue curtailed his large Dominion, and brought his Prouinces into great miserie. In the yeare 1558. the *Turke* harried the whole Territorie of *Bernagasso* and tooke from *Prefter Iohn* whatsoever hee was Lord of vpon the Sea-coast, especially the Hauen and citie of *Suaquen* and *Erococo*; in which place the Mountaines betweene *Abex* and the Red-Sea, make a Gate as it were for the Traffique and carriages of the *Abessines* and *Arabians*. And since that, *Bernagasso* was forced to submit himselfe to the Turkish commands, to buy his peace, and in name of a tribute to pay 1000. Ounces of Gold yearly.

The King of *Adel* is his no lesse infectious enemy: he bordereth vpon the Kingdome of *Fatigar*: and his Seigniorie stretcheth along the Red-Sea as farre as *Assum*, *Salir*, *Mith*, *Barbora*, *Pidar*, and *Zeila*. Manie ships come from *Aden* and *Cambaia*, to *Barbora* with Merchandize, which they trucke for Flesh, Honey, Waxe, and Victuall; these commodities are carried to *Aden*; Gold, Iuorie, and such wares are sent to *Cambaia*: the greatest part of Victuall, Honie, Waxe, Cornē, and Fruits brought from *Zeila*, are carried into *Aden* and *Arabia*, also much cattle, especially sheepe, hauing tailes of twentie five pound waight, with heads and neckes all blacke, the rest of their bodies all white. Of these cattle, there are some altogether white, with turning crooked tailes, as long as a mans Arme, and Lew-paps like Oxen. Some of their Kine haue hornes, with manie branches like our Deere: othersome haue one horne in their fore-head growing backward, a span and a halfe long. The chiefe citie of this Kingdome is *Arar*, thirtie eight leagues distant from *Zeila* towards the South-East. He professeth Mahumitisme, and since his conuersion he hath intitled himselfe with the sur-name of *Holy*; auowing continuall warre against the *Abessine* Christians: and therefore he watcheth the time of the foresaid fast of fiftie daies, when he entereth their Territories, burneth their villages, taketh prisoners, and then committeth a thousand other mischies.

The *Abessine* Slaues doe often leaue their countrie, and take vpon them great iournies, putting themselues in the seruice of great Lords, where manie times by their industrie and good carriage, they become

come high Commaunders in *Arabia, Cambaia, Bengala, and Sumatra*. For the Mahumetan Princes, being all Tyrants and Lords of those countries, which they haue forced from the Gentiles, to secure their estates, doe neuer trust to their home-bred subiects, but wage strangers and slaues, vnto whose fidelitie they commit their persons, and the managing of all the affaires of their Kingdomes. And amongst all sorts of Slaues, the *Abessine* is in greatest esteeme, for his faithfulness and towards disposition. The King of *Adell* ouerlaieth *Egipt* and *Arabia* with their Slaues, which hee changeth with the Turkes and Princes of *Arabie*, for Armor, prouision of warre, and souldiours. In the yeare of our Lord 1500. *Cland* King of *Abex*, perceiuing himselfe inferior vnto *Grand Ameda* King of *Adel* (for hee had vexed his Land foureteene yeares incursions) forsaking the frontiers, retired himselfe into the inward parts of his Kingdome, intreating for aide of *Stephen Ganna*, Vice-roy of *India*, vnder *Iohn* the third King of *Portugall*, who was then in the Red-sea with a warlike Nauie. In compassion of his miseries and Religion, he sent him foure hundred *Portugall* shot, verie well furnished, vnder the conduct of *Christopher* his Bother. By the aide and vse of their Artillerie, hee ouerthrew his Enemies in two battailes: but the King of *Adel* obtaining of the Gouvernour of the citie of *Zebit*, one thousand Harquebushers, and tenne peeces of Ordnance, in the third fight, put the *Portugals* to flight, and slew their Captaine. Afterwards, when *Adel* had sent away these Turkes, King *Clandius* set vpon him at vnawares, by the Riuer *Zeila*, at the Mountaine *Sana*, with 8000. footmen, five hundred *Abessine* horsemen, and the remainder of the liuing *Portugals*, one of whom gaue *Grada-Amada* his death wound. But in March 1560. *Clandius* fighting with the *Moors* of *Malaca*, gaining the victorie, was slaine in the battaile. *Adam* his brother succeeded, against whom, being a *Demi-Mahumetan*, the greatest part of the *Abessine* Nobilitie rebelled, and was ouerthrowne in the yeare 1562. by *Bernagasso*. By this casualtie did the *Ethiopian* affaires ebbe and flow; But in the reigne of *Alexander*, things began in some sort to returne to their ancient State, by the aide of the *Portugals*, who furnished them with weapons, both offensive and defensive, and by their example encouraged them to be stout and couragious against their enemies.

All that were liuing after the defeature of *Christopher Gama*, and all that euer went thither since that day to this, doe remaine there, marrying Wiues, and begetting Children. King *Alexander* gaue them leaue to elect a Iusticer, and to end all matters of controuersie amongst themselves, which maketh them so willing to stay and teach them the vse of Weapons,

Weapons, the manners of warfare, and how to fortifie places of importance. Sithence those times (*Francis Medicis* contracting friendship with the *Abeffine*) diuers *Florentines*, some for pleasure, and some for profit, haue trauelled into those Prouinces; wherein when they are once entred, the King entreateth them so faire, and giueth them so liberally whereon to liue; that they can hardly obtaine licence, to returne againe into their owne countries.

Besides these, hee hath other enemies, as the King of *Dancab*, whose Citie and Hauen is *Vela* vpon the Red-Sea, and the Moores of *Doba*, a Prouince deuided into 14. Lieutenantships. These people, though they are accounted within the limits of the *Abeffine* Empire, yet doe they often rebell, hauing a Law amongst themselues, that no young man may contract Matrimonie, vnlesse he can bring good prooffe that hee hath slaine twelue Christians.

Monomotapa.



Pon this Continent are contained manie other Kingdomes. As *Gualata*, small and poore; *Tombuto*, great and populous; *Melli*, rich in corne, flesh and cotton-wooll. *Guinea* is next, greater and richer than anie other within the Moores cuntry, except *Egipt* and *Abeffine*. *Angola*, *Manicongo*, *Congo*, *Mombassa*, *Quiolasafola*, *Melind*, *Monfambique* *Monemugi* with the rest within land, are all inhabited with Moores, Mahumetans, Hea-then and barbarous people, who liue plentifully vpon those good nutriments which God and Nature hath prouided for those places; traf- fiquing and bartering one with an other; some for Ambergrice, Waxe, Siluer, Copper and Rice; some for Gold, Pearle, Linnen and Silks, and others for Iuorie, Cotten, and such inbred commodities, as each Pro- uince peculiarly can spare, to the necessities of the other. *Monomotapa* seemeth to be ciuiller and better gouerned than anie of the Residue, & is almost an Island, lying betweene the Riuer of *Cuama* & *Spirito Sancto*, frō whence it stretcheth, a long the sea-coast, to the *Cape of good Hope*; & on the North, to the Kingdom of *Monemugi*. It is 150. leagues in com- passe, & al the Vizeroyes (or Lieutenants) throughout that whole territo- rie do acknowledge the king therof, for their soueraign. Of towns & vil- lages they haue few, but cottages manie, & those cōpacted of timber & thatch.

Greatnesse.

Elephants
teeth.

Mimes.

Salomons
Ophir.

Gouernment.

thatch. Cities there are also manie, whereof *Zimbae* & *Benemetaxa* are between 20. & 25. miles distant from *Sofola* towards the West. The soile aboundeth with corne and cattle, great and small, wandring by heards through the fields and woods. By the store of Teeth from thence yearly transported, we can but coniecture, that lesse than fise thousand Elephants cannot but die in this countrie. These beasts are here verie huge. There is no climat like it, for plentie of Gold; for there are said to be three thousand mines, vwhereout gold is vsually digged. Which commoditie is also found as well in the Plaines; as in Rocks, and in Riuers. Whereof, the mine of *Manica*, *Boro*, *Quiticui*, and *Teroe* (vvhich some men call *Butua*) are the chiefest. So that some men are of opinion, that out of this countrie *Salomon* procured his Gold and Iuorie to be brought vnto Ierusalem. Which seemeth not vnlikely, for that in this Kingdome, vvere found manie old and princelike buildings, and those, verie costly in timber, stone, chalke and vwood; vvhich in the countries thereabouts are not to be found.

The gouernment is great, and extendeth ouer manie vvarlike people; all *Pagans*; meane of stature, blacke, well set, and verie swift. Their vveapons are Darts and light Targats, and the men much giuen to rebellion: the cause, vvhwherefore the Prince retaineth the heires of his vassall Princes, to be secured of their parents; as also, that he entertaineth strong Regiments in seuerall Prouinces, diuided into legions, after the Roman manner. Amongst the vvhich, that, he accounteth his battailion of *Amazons*, comparable (for trust of person) to the Turkish pretorian Ianizars, with their manner of vvarfare, copulation, and educating of their males according to the ancient custome of those masculine viragars; you may, by my leaue, confidently belecue, because some late travellers haue as lately reported it. But truth is, that according to their vnciuill ciuilitie they conuerse vvith the King kneeling on their knees, and to sit in his presence, is the vse vvith them, as vvith vs to stand; and that is granted but to great the Lords onely. The assay of meate and drinke is not made before, but after the Prince hath eate and drunke. Here are no prisons, because law passeth vpon the offender in the verie moment vvherein the offence vvas committed. The offences most seuerely punished, are Witch-craft, Theft, and Adultrie. They pay no other tribute but certaine daies worke and presents, vvithout which, no man may appeare in the Princes presence. The King beareth in his Coat-Armour a little spade, with an Iuorie handle, and two small Darts.

One of them not long since was conuerted and baptized by
Gonsalua

Gonsalua Silua a Iesuite, with the greater part of his Courtiers; but afterwards (by the perswasion of certaine Moores in great credit about him) he caused him to be slaine. *Sebastian* King of Portugall offended hereat, proclaimed warre against him, vnder the leading of *Francisco Berotio*. This Armie consisted of sixteene hundred, the greatest part Gentlemen, to whom the *Monomopata* fearing their Armes and valour, offered honourable conditions, but the Captaine (whom no offer or indifferencie could satisfie) was overcome, and his Armie vtterlie consumed, yet not by the enemye, but by sicknesse and in the infectious aire of the Countrey.

Egipt.

IN this description, I will rather follow the opinion of *Pto-
lomie*, and some others, who make it a part of *Africa*, than those who either refer some portion thereof to *Asia*, and the residue to *Afrique*. It is a most Noble and ancient Region, much celebrated, both in Scripture, and other profane Writers, for the excellencie and Antiquitie thereof. In holy writ (as witnesseth *Iosephus*) it is called *Misraim*, and so the Inhabitants. For *Misraim* was the Sonne of *Chus*, the Sonne of *Cham*, the Sonne of *Noe*. The *Arabians* call the countrey *Mesre*, but the Inhabitants *Chibeth*, for such was his Name, that first brought his Colonie into these parts. It is plaine, sandie, and low Land without Mountaines, which is the reason, that it cannot bee seene a farre off: the ayre is hot and infectious; and therefore either to auoide, or mollifie, the intollerable heat of Sommer Sunne; the Inhabitants are accustomed in all their Cities, vpon the tops of their Houses, to build open Terraces, to let the winde driue in through all their roomes. Yet is not this Countrey as the rest of *Afrique*, infested with the Southernewindes ingendred of heat, but is especially refreshed with the Northerne, which heere is moist, and in other places drie. It hath no Earthquakes, nor shewes, but of verie able fertillie; and if it raine (as it sildome doth) it bringeth manie diseases, as Murres, Catars, Agues, and such like.

The inuadation of *Nilus* is mother of all fertilitie, the want thereof, Fertilitie.

an assured prediction of famine and scarcitie. The countrie is full of cuts and inlets from this Riuer, which long agoe *Sesostris* caused to be intrenched; least those Townes which were scituated from the maine banke in the heart of the Kingdome, should want water vpon the ebbing of the Riuer. This inuadation causeth such plentifull haruests, that through the whole earth, beter increase, and speedier ripenelle, is not to be founde.

Riches,

The wealth hereof is rather to be admired, than estimated; in reuewing the splendor and magnificence of their regall Antiquities; their Laborinths, their Piramides, and water-workes, all built and perfected at inestimable charges. Their ruines whereof are to be seene at this day, whereunto the brauest Monuments of the Roman Empire are nothing comparable. The reuenue of this Kingdome in times past, both in regard of the fertilitie of *Nilus*, and the infinit quantitie of Merchandize transported from *Ethiopia*, *Arabia*, and *India*, hath beene verie great. Some report (saith *Ptolomie*) that *Auletes* receiued from hence twelue millions and fiftie talents, which according to the computation of *Budens*, ariseth to seauen millions and a halfe of crownes: the *Romans* receiued a farre greater masse, but now by the *Portugal* Navigations, it yeeldeth the Turke no such reckoning.

Howbeit, it cannot be but at this day verie great; for that in feare of the Florentine fleet, the grand Seignieur dare not commit the treasure thereof to the passage by sea: but is at charges euerie yeare to transport it ouer land by a conuoy of Ianizars.

About the beginning of Aprill they goe to haruest, by the twentieth of May, no one ear of corne is left growing. About the bankes of *Nilus*, it brings forth the fruits of the earth with great ease; but farther off, they are faine with the labour of Oxen and Men, to let in Water from the Riuer by trenches to moysten their grounds.

Besides, wild Beasts and harmefull in abundance, it affoordeth infinite store of tame Cattle; as the Buffall, the Oxe, Camell, the Horse, the Asse, the Ramme, and the Goate. All which (as *Bellonius* affirmeth) by reason of their deepe pastures, and excellent temperature of the countrie, doe exceed common proportion. As the Ram, who groweth verie fat and extraordinarie bigge, hauing a large and grosse taile trailing after him vpon the earth, and a Dulap in manner of an Oxe.

And for that the Winter is verie pleasant, and the soile moorish, it is no lesse stored with Foule, especially with Storks, who for their infinite abundance, (especially towards the *Nile*) a man would imagine the fields to bee couered with white: But as these flockes of Birds are
admirable,

admirable, no lesse noisome are their swarmes of Frogs. So that if God had not ordained these Birds to deuour this Vermine, all places would prooue lothsome, barren, and infectious. The countrie is now diuided into three Prouinces; *Sahid* exceeding in line, all sorts of pulse, poultrie and cattle: *Errisia* in fruits and rice: *Maremma*, in cottons & sugar. The *Pharoos* resided in *Sahid*; the *Ptholomies* in *Errisia*, & the Romans & Greeks alongst the sea-shores. But the Mahumetans haue made the midst of the land, the seat of their Emperie. The people of the middle times were prone to innouations, luxurious, and cowardly cruell: Those, that now inhabit the countrie, are for the most part *Moores*. Of *Turkes* and *Iewes* there are manie; but they reside in cities. Of *Arabians*, and *Negroes*, not a few. Of *Christians*, the natiues are most; and those termed *Copties*; some Greeks there be, and a few *Armenians* of all the poorest & honestest labouring painfully and liuing soberly. These *Copties* be the true *Egyptians*, and hold the Roman church for hereticall, reiecting all generall Councils after that of *Ephesus*. In this countrie; was *Thebes*, destroyed by *Cambises*, *Memphis*, *Babylon*, and *Alexandria*, if not destroyed, yet were defaced by time, and diuine punishment. *Cair* is seated on the East side of Nilus, winding therewith in the forme of a Crescent, stretching South and North with the suburbs adioyning, containing in length five Italian miles; in breadth scarce one & a halfe, at broadest. The wals carrie smal shew of strength; yet is it strong, as appeared by that 3 daies battaile, which *Selimus* was constrained to carrie through it, being opposed by a poore remainder of the suruiuing *Mamalucks*. For the streets are narrow, and the houses high built, all of stone well nigh to the top: At the end almost of All, a Gate: which being shut (as euerie night they are) make euerie street a defensible castle. The inhabitants consist most of Merchants and Artificers, not frequenting forraine Marts.

The countrie was no sooner knowne, but it was inhabited. And although it were, & is, of hard access; by reason of the huge desarts, steepe Mountaines, Moorish places, and violent seas, where-with it is wholly incompassed: yet hath it suffered diuers and lamentable alterations vnder the yoke of strangers. For first it was subiect to their natiue Kings, and they were the *Pharaos*: then to the *Ethiopians*, whō *Cambises* king of *Persia* expulsed, and subiected. After that, they revolted from *Darius* (sur-named *Nothus*) and elected Kings againe of their owne Nation, vntill the daies of *Alexander the Macedonian*. After whose death, the third time they had their owne Kings, called *Ptolomies*, of *Ptolomie*, the son of *Lagus*; In whose race it continued til the times of *Ptolomeus Auletes*, Father of *Cleopatra*, whom *Augustus Caesar* vitterly defeated, and annexed the Prouince to the Roman Empire. Vnder the Romans, the *Egyptians* became Christians, and in the deuision of the Empire it ac-

Anciently cal-
led Getes,
Riches.

Riches.

crued to the share of the *Constantinopolitan* Emperours. But in the declination thereof the people being wearie of their oppressions, called in the Saracens, to assist them in the expulsion of these Greekes. And expelled they were by *Hamro*, Generall to *Homar* the second Mahumetan high-priest; who only imposing a tribute, afforded vnto all, libertie of religion. Long time his successors held the soueraingtie thereof vntill the reigne of *Melec-sala*, who being often foiled by those Christians, which after the daies of *Godfrey*, reigned in *Soria* and *Ierusalem*, (& hereupon distrusting the courages and effeminacie of the inhabitants) procured a multitude of *Circassian* slaues in his assistance from the *Tartars*, who first in thole daies began to amaze the Prouinces with their multitudes. These he armed, and by these he gaue the Franks a direfull ouerthrow. And they againe, insulting in their victories & mutual valours, slew their patron *Melec-sala*; elected a Sultan of their owne, tiranized ouer the naturall inhabitants, & by yearely purchases of *Circassian* children, erected and maintained that strong bodie of war, which vntill the daies of our ancestors, in this kingdom bore the name of *Mamalucks*; And so continued dreadfull in power, and abounding in riches, for the space of 270 yeares, euen vntill the times of *Selimus*, who vterly extinguished both the name and discipline of the said souldiourie, together with their Sultans Emperie and fortunes. In whose posteritie it remaineth to this day, & is now gouerned by a Bassa, who, as absolute soueraign resideth & commandeth in *Caire*. Vnder him are 16 Sanziacks, & 100000 Spachies, by estimation. The reuennues amount to 3 millions of Shariffs: The grand seignior hath one, part wherof is conueied ouerland with a guard of 600 souldiours, for feare of the Florentine fleet, as afore.) Another is spent in paies, and in setting forth the Caruan to *Mecha*; The third the Gouernor hath for support of his charge, and estate, and entertainment of dependants.

Ethiopia Inferior.

THe lower *Ethiope*, siteth most Southerly of anie part of *Afrique*, vnknowne to *Ptolomie*, and but lately discovered by the *Portugals*. It containeth manie Kingdomes whereof some are famous, and vnwritten of; some obscure, and not worth the recording: Amongst them is *Adel*, a large Kingdome, adorned with two famous Mart-Townes, *Zeila* and *Barbora*. *Adea*, *Magadazzum*, a Kingdome and citie *Zanzi-bar*, *Melina*, *Mombassa*, *Quiola*, *Mozambique*, *Cafala*, *Angola*, and *Loangi*, all Kingdomes. Amongst the Islands, *Insula spiritus sancti*, *Madera*, the *Canaries*, *Capo verde*, *Saint Thomas*, *Magadascar*, and *Zocotarie* are the most famous.

The

The fourth Booke.

Of Asia.



Asia, is the greatest, and vastest part of the World, and in ancient times acknowledged for the third part thereof. Now it is accounted the fourth, or if you please, one of the seauen, exceeding the ancient two, viz: Europe and Afrique, in largenesse and circuit: especially in these our daies, being wholly discovered to the East and North, the habitations of the Chinois & Tartars; without accounting the Islands thereunto belonging, which if they were adioyned, would make a Continent farre fairer than Europe.

Vpon three parts it is bounded with the vast Ocean, fir-named the Orient; on the South, with the India, vpon the North with the Scithian; vpon the West, it is somewhere disioyned from Europe & Afrique, with the Red-Sea, somewhere with the Mediterranean, somewhere with the Exine, and somewhere with the Riuer Tanais. The Regions which of old it contained, were, Pontus, Bithinia, Phrigia the Great, Licia, Galatia, Paphlagonia, Pamphilia, Capadocia, Armenia the Lesse, Cilicia, Sarmatia Asiatica, Colchis, Iberia, Albania, Armenia the Great, Ciprus, Siria Caua, Phenecia, Palestina, Arabia Petrea, Mesopotamia, Arabia deserta, Babilonia, Assiria, Sufiana, Media, Persis, Parthia, Carmania deserta, Carmania Altera, Arabia Felix, Hircania, Margiana, Braettriana, Sogdiana, Sacarum Regio, Scithia within Imaus, Scythia without Imaus, Serica, Aria, Paramisus, Drangiana, Arachosia, Gedrosia, India on this side Ganges, India beyond Ganges, Sinarum Regio, and Trapoban.

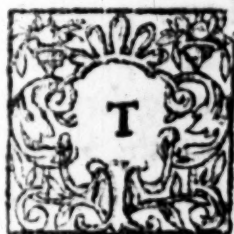
Generally it enioyeth a most excellent temperature of ayre, and is so rich, fertill, and batesfull for varietie of fruits and feeding; and so abounding there-with, that in all these good gifts, it excelleth all Countries whatsoeuer. For here are to be found diuers sorts of liuing Creatures, and Plants, the like whereof the whole World againe affoordeth not. As Balme, Sugar-canes, Frankincense, Mirrh, Cassia, Cinamon, Nutmegs, Pepper, Saffron, sweet Woods, Muske, and diuers other sorts of Drugs and Odors; excellent Gold, all sorts of Minerals, and precious stones.

Of beasts, it affoordeth the Elephant and Camell, with diuers strange sorts, both wild and tame.

The people are of excellent wits, exceeding rich, and happie in all good things: This Region hath beene the Parent of manie rare spirits, and the seat of most mightie and flourishing Empires. As wherein raigned the Monarches of the Assirians, Persians, Babilonians, Parthians, and Medes. No lesse regardfull at this day are the Empires of the Turkes, Tartars, Persians, Mogors, Indians, and Chinois; but indeed most celebrated in Holy writ for our Creation, Fall, and Redemption, as the Region wherein, in a manner, all the Histories and Actes mentioned in the Old Testament, and a great part of those of the New, were wrought and accomplished. The Ancients deuided it into diuers parts, but at this present it is best deuided into fise, according to the chiefe and principall Empires therein: the first whereof confining with Europe, is gouerned by the Great Duke of Moscouie; the second belongeth to the Great Cham; the third is commanded by the Turke, the fourth is the Kingdome of Persia; the fifth comprehendeth that which hath alwaies beene called, India, and gouerned by diuers Princes, for the most part vassals, feudaries, or tributaries to other Potentates. The principall Islands, are Iapan, Luconia, Mindanao, Burneo, Sumatra, Zeiland and Ciprus.

Russia,

*Russia, alias Sarmatia : now
Moscouia.*



He Great Duke of *Moscouia* is Lord of a most large Dominion, and within the limits of his iurisdiction, are contained manie Regions.

It is bounded on the North with *Lappia* and the Bounded, North Ocean. On the South by the *Chrim Tartars*; On the East by the *Nagayans*, possessing all the countrie on the East side of *Volga*, towards the Caspian sea: On the West and Southwest lie *Lithuania*, *Livonia*, and *Polonia*.

The Naturall shires pertayning to *Russia*, and whereof perticularly Shires, the Great Duke will not (without offence) be stiled King, are 16. but far greater and larger than the shires of *England*, though not so well peopled. The other Prouinces (being 9. with a great part of *Siberia*,) being not naturall *Russies*, the Emperours of late yeares haue purchased by their swords, and subiected them to their Lawes, Customes and Taxes. *Casan* and *Astrachan* by them termed Kingdomes haue diuolued vnto them by like prouidence. As for all his interest in *Lithuania* (to the number of thirtie great townes and more) with *Narue* and *Dorp* in *Livonia*, they are quite gon, surprised of late times by the Kings of *Poland* and *Sweden*.

From North to South, mesuring from *Cola* to *Astrachan*, it conteineth in length 4260. Versts (a verst is three quarters of a mile English.) Beyond *Cola* hee hath more Territorie Northward, viz. to *Tromschua*, running 4000. versts welne beyond *Pechinga*, neare *Wardhuis*; but not clearely possessed, by reason that the Kings of *Sweden* and *Denmarke*, haue diuers townes therein, aswell as the *Russe*, Euerie one of them, clayming the lawfull possession of these Northerne Prouinces, as in his owne right. The breadth taken farthest Westward on the *Narue* side, to the bounds of *Siberia* Eastward, where the Emperour hath some garri-fons) is 4400. versts, or there abouts. If these Dominions were all habitable, and peopled, the *Russe* Emperour were eithe verie vnlikely to hold them, or holding them with good gouernment, would proue too mightie for his bordering Neighbours.

And although by the spacioulnes of these territories, it shold sceme that he hath ingrossed manie coutries, & for brouities sake, hath also assumed the

the titles into the credit and maiestie of one Monarchie : yet it may well be compared to the fortune of the five Kings that tooke *Lot* prisoner; whom *Abraham* with his 318 menial-servants released, and set at libertie : witnesse the prooffe, which a few resolute and well ordered english souldiers made of late amongst them, even in the fields of *Novograd*, where they contracted their owne conditions in despite of that whole Armie which both *Poles* and *Mosconites* rallied against them.

Situation.

It is scituated partly in *Europe*, and partly in *Asia*, which separation is caused by the Riuer of *Tanaïs*, bounder of *Asia*, and running through the middle of the Countrey. By which (as the *Russe* reporteth) a man may passe from *Mosco* to *Constantinople*, and so into all those parts of the world by water; onely drawing his Boate (as their custome is) over a little Isthmus of land. This passage was proved not long since by a *Russe* Imballador sent to *Constantinople*; who passing the *Moscona*, entred into *Ocka*, and from thence (as aforesaid) drawing his Boate over-land, fell into *Tanaïs*, then into *Meotis*, and so to his iourneys end. The Pole at *Mosco* is 55. degrees and 10. minutes. At *Saint Nicholas* 63. and 50. minutes.

The people were once subiect to the *Tartars*, whose Prince *Roydo* in the yeare 1140. conquered *Mosconie*; but *Iohn* the first (incouraged by their ciuile dissentions) denied them tribute. In proesse of time, when *Ametes* the last successor of *Roydo* (who died at *Vilna*) had overcome the *Tartars*, *Precopenses* the great Duke adioyned to his Empire *Permia*, *Veatia*, and *Iugria*, Prouinces subiect to *Ametes*. From this time, the forces of the great Duke increasing, *Basilius Casan*, and *Iohn* the second, conquered the Prouinces of *Citraban*, which at this day are called kingdoms. To confesse the truth, the great Dukes haue mightily enlarged their boundes, and haue taken the great Dutchie of *Senerin* and *Smoloncke*, *Bielchese*, *Presconia*, *Novograd*, *Iaroslau*, and *Rosconia* (some of them) from the *Polaques*, and some from other Potentates: they possessed thirty great Townes in *Lituania*, with *Narue* and *Dorts* in *Liuonia*, but they are all quite gone, beeing of late yeares surprized by the Kings of *Poland* and *Sweeland*.

The chiefe City of the kingdom is *Mosco*, where the Patriarch resideth, *Rosconio* and *Novograd* are the seates of Archbishops: *Cortisa*, *Resania*, *Columna*, *Susdelia*, *Casan*, *Vologda*, *Tuera*, *Smoloncke*, *Plesconia*, *Staritia*, *Sloboda*, *Ieroslau*, *Volodomer*, (from whence the Kings Seat was translated to *Mosco*, by *Iohn* the second) *Mosayco*, *Saint Nicholas*, *Sugana*, *Ustind*, and *Gargapolia* are Bishopricks. The Emperour abideth in the City of *Mosco*, which taketh his name from the Riuer, arising four-

four score and ten miles higher into the Countrey. The Citty hath Mosco. beene greater than now it is, and was nine miles compasse: the forme thereof is in a manner round, inuironed with three walls, the one within the other, and streets lying betweene; whereof the inmost wall, and the buildings closed within it, (lying safest as the heart within the body, fenced and watered with the River *Mosco*, that runneth close by it) is all accounted the Emperours Castle. The number of houses through the whole Citty, (being reckoned by the Emperour a little before it was fired by the Enemy) was accounted to be 41500. in all. But since it was sacked 1571. and burnt by the *Tartars*, it containeth not about 5. miles. According to *Possennus*, a Writer of good iudgement and industrie, there are housed in this Citty thirty thousand people, besides Oxen and other Cattle. Doctor *Fletcher* writeth, that it is not much bigger then the Citty of *London*.

Novograde hath the name of Great, and yet the same Author alloweth it not about twenty thousand Inhabitants; as likewise *Smoloncke* and *Plesconia*. As the *Ruffie* sayth, heere was committed that memorable warre (so much spoken of in Histories) of the *Scithian* Seruants, that tooke armes against their Masters: who in memory of their great victory, haue ever since in their Coine stamped the figure of a Horse-man shaking a whip aloft in his hand.

This seemeth most incredible to me (if it be true as some write) that *Plesconia* when King *Stephen* of *Poland* besieged it, had within it fiftie thousand Footmen, and seauen thousand Horse. Truly this is a great number, and though they were not all *Moscouites*, yet this reckoning asketh a great proportion of Inhabitants; For if the King thrust in fiftie seauen thousand fighting men, it must needs be, that the Inhabitants were very manie more. Some will haue it, that in times past the Countrey was better replenished with people, and that afterwards it became desolate for three causes: the first, was the Plague (a new disease in *Mosconie*) which gleaned away many thousand Soules: the second, the tyrannie of their Emperours, who haue put infinite numbers to death, especially of the Nobilitie: the third, the Incurfions and robberies of the *Tartars*, *Precopig*, and the *Negaians*, which neuer cease vexing their bordering neighbours. For the nature of these Rogish *Tartars* is, to make spoyle of all men, and to captivate their bodies, selling them to the Turkes and other Nations. By reason whereof, many farre remooued Prouinces (partly vpon feare, and partly vpon pollicie) are suffered to lye wast and vnmanured. And this is all the good which ambitious Princes gaine by their vndiscreet inuasions of their neighbours, to the
destruction

destruction of their people, and their owne vexation.

No Prince made longer iournies and greater expences than the great Duke *Iohn*: he vanquished the kingdomes of *Casanto Volga*, and *Astrachan* on the *Caspian* Sea; he subdued a great part of *Livonia*. But what honour, what profit, or what continuance of securitie gained he by these victories? What was the end of this war? In these expeditions perished infinite numbers of men, in iourning, in assaults, with the Sword, with sicknesse, with hunger, and other extremities. When he had overcome them, he was inforced to keepe great Garisons; yea, to bring thither whole Colonies. Besides, when men were so farre from home, either busied in getting other mens goods, or in keeping what they had got, their Wiues stayed at home like Widdowes, and the inward part of the Realme remained emptie, as a heart voyd of bloud, wanting his necessarie nutriment, whilst the Inhabitants were wasted on the skirts of the kingdome. And therefore when it was inuaded by King *Stephen* of *Poland*, these remote forces were wanting to make resistance; and through this oversight, he lost againe *Pozonia*, and other peeces of good reckoning; yea, and was inforced to leaue the whole possession of *Livonia* to the *Polander*.

The soyle and
climat.

To proceede, the soyle of the Countrey for the most part is of a slight sandy Mould, yet very much different one place from another; for the yeeld of such things, as grow out of the earth. Northwards toward the partes of Saint *Nicholas* and *Cola*, and North-East toward *Siberia*, it is barren, and full of desert Woods, by reason of the climate, and the extremitie of cold. So likewise along the Riuer *Volga*, betwixt the Countreies of *Casan* and *Astrachan*, notwithstanding the soyle be fruitfull, it is all vnhabited, sauing that vpon the West-side, the Emperour hath some few Castles with Garisons in them. This happened by meanes of the *Chrim-Tartar*, that wil neither plant Towns to dwell in, (liuing a wild and vagrant life) nor suffer the *Russie* being farre off, with Colonies to people those partes. From *Vologda*, which lyeth almost 1700. versts from the Port of Saint *Nicholas*, downe toward *Mosco*, and so toward the South parts that border vpon the *Chrim* (containing the like space of 1700. versts, or there-about) it is a very pleasant and fruitfull Countreie, yeelding Pasture and Corne, with Wood and Water in great store and plentie. The like is betweene *Rezan* (lying South-East from *Mosco*) to *Novogrode* and *Volsco*, that reacheth farthest towards the North-west: So betwixt *Mosco* and *Smolensko* (that lyeth South-west towards *Lituania*) is a very fruitfull and pleasant soyle, and also very fertile and commodious for those Inhabitants that dwell therein.

The

The Countrey differeth very much from it selfe, by reason of the yeare; so that a man would maruell, to see the great alteration and difference betwixt Winter and Summer. In Winter, it lyeth vnder Snow (which falleth continually) sometime a yard or two of thicknesse, but deeper towards the North. The Riuer and other Waters are frozen vp a yard or more thicke, how swift or broad soeuer they bee. And this continueth commonly five monethes, (viz:) from the beginning of Nouember, till towards the end of March, about which time, the Snow beginneth to melt. The sharpnesse whereof, you may iudge by this: for that Water dropped downe (or cast vp into the ayre) congealeth into Ice before it come to the ground. In extremitie of weather, if you hold a pewter dish, or a pot, in your hand, or any other mettall (except in some Chamber where their warme Stoues bee) your fingers will freeze fast to it, and draw off the skinne at parting: when you passe out of a warme roome into a cold, you shall sencibly feele your breath to waxe thicke and stifling with the cold, as you draw it in, and out. Diuers not onely that trauell abroad, but in the very Markets and streetes of their Townes, are monstrously pinched, yea killed withall; so that you shall see many drop downe in the streetes, many trauellers brought into the Townes, sitting dead and stiffe in their sleds: and yet in Sommer-time, you shall see such a new hue and face of a Countrey, the Woods so fresh and so sweete, the Pastures and Meddowes so Greene and well growne, (and that vpon the sudden) with such variety of flowers, & such melodie of Birds (especially of Nightingales) that a man shall not lightly trauell in a more pleasanter Countrey. Which fresh and speedy growth of the Spring, seemeth to proceede from the benefite of the Snow; which all the Winter time being spread ouer the whole Countrey, as a white Robe, keepeth it warme from the rigor of the frost; and in the Spring-time, when the weather waxeth warme, and the Sunne dissolueth it into water, it doth so thoroughly drench and soke the ground (beeing of a sleight and sandy mould) and then shineth so hotly vpon it againe; that it euen forceth the Herbs and Plants to shoot forth in great plenty & variety, and that in a short time. As the winter season in these regions exceedeth in cold; so likewise I may say, that the Sommer inclineth to ouermuch heate, especially in the monethes of Iune, Iuly, and August, being accounted the three chiefe months of burning heat in those places, much warmer then the Sommer in *England*.

To returne to our relation of the soyle and climate; for the most part it is couered with Woods and Lakes: these Woods are the branches of *Hircinia*, spreading it selfe through all the North, and perhaps more in
this

this Prouince than in any other. Heere grow the goodliest and tallest trees of the world, thorough which for their thicknesse, the brightnesse of the Sunne-beames can hardly pierce. An vnspcakable quantity of Rozin and Pitch distilleth out of these trees, and heere is the neuer-wasting Fountaine of Waxe and Honny. For without any industrie of man, the Bees themselues build their Hiues in the Barks and hollownesse of trees. Heere is all plenty of Cattle and vvild Beasts: Beares, Martins, Beasts called *Zibellini*, Volues, and blacke Foxes, vvwhose Skins doe beare high prices. Of the Timber of these trees are squared all necessities, aswell for buildings, as all other vses; the Walles of the Citties are framed of beames cut foure-square, fastned together, filling all the chinks and vacant places vvith earth. And of these beames likewise they build Plat-formes of such height and thicknesse; that they beare the vveight of great Ordnance how massie soeuer. They are subiect to fire, but not easily shaken vvith the fury of battery.

Of Waters.

For Waters, *Moscouie* may well be called the Mother of Riuers and Lakes; vvitness *Dvyna*, *Boristhenes*, *Volga*, *Dvyna*, *Onega*, *Moscuca*, *Volisca*, and the famous *Tanaïs*; the Lakes of *Ina*, vpon vvwhich standeth the great *Novograd*, *Voluppo*, and many others. The abundance of these Waters doe make the ayre colder than is requisit for the increafe of Cattell, or growth of Plants, and although cold is thought more wholesome than heate, yet are their Cattle of small growth thereby, & many times their Fruites come not to ripening; and the Earth being drowned vvith the waters, for the most part becommeth light & sandie, and then either vvith too great drouth, or too much moysture, it destroyeth the fruite. Winter in some sort lasteth nine monthes, little more or lesse, and in seasonable times the Soyle bringeth forth plentie of graine, and feeding for Cattle. It also bringeth forth Apples, Nuts, and Filberds: other kinds of fruits they scarcely know. Of Fish they raise their greatest gaine, as hauing greatest abundance of that commoditie; they dry them in the frost and Wind, as in *Norwey*, and other Northerly Nations, and they lay it vp for store as vvell in their Townes of War, as for their priuate Families. The Kingdome is not full of Merchants, because by Nature the Inhabitants are idle: And that Prouince cannot abound vvith Merchants, vvhere Arts and Artificers are not fauored. And againe, the gouernment is absolute, mixed vvith a kind of tyrannie, inforcing flauish prostitution. So that in the chiefeft and best ordered Townes of *Novograd* and *Mosko*, many strange and fearefull concussions haue bin practised. Concerning vvwhich, you haue whole Commentaries, from vvhence you may take notice, how he once nailed an Imbassadors Hat

to his head, because he abated him of that reuerence appropriat to so great a Maiestie: How Sir *Thomas Smith* vvas entertained vvith a contrarie satisfaction and vvelcome. How *Mosko* is compared to the grand *Caire* for spacioufnesse of ground, multitude of houses, & vncomlineffe of streets, so that as the one is patible of stinke, corruption, and infecti-ous aire, so this other is not free from beastlineffe, smoake, and vnhol-some smels. They haue not the vse of the Sea, because it is not lawfull for a *Moscouite* to trauell out of his Princes Dominions: such, and such store of Wares as they haue, (as Skinnes, Rozin, and Waxe) they bar-ter for Cloth, and diuers other Commodities, vvhich the *Armenians* bring to *Astrachan* by the *Caspian* Sea, and the English to Saint *Nicho-las* by the Bay of *Graduicum*.

This gouernment is more tyrannicall than of any other Prince in the World; for he is absolute Lord, and disposer of the bodies and goods of his subiects. Therefore *Mahumet* the Visier vvvas vvont to say, that the *Moscouite* and the great *Turke*, amongst all the Princes of the earth, vv ere onely Lords of their owne Dominions, and in that regard, thought the iourney of King *Stephen* of *Poland* would proue full of dan-ger and difficultie. The Kingdome is diuided into foure parts (by them tearmed *Chetferds*) and those gouerned by foure Lieutenants, not resi-dent vpon their charges, but attending on the Emperors person where-soeuer he goeth; and there holding their Courts, but especially at *Mosco*, the Prime-seate of the Empire; where from their Vnder-Deputies they receiue the complaints of the Prouinces, and informe the Kings Coun-sell of the businesse, and from them againe receiue instructions for a-mendment, or reformation. For you must note, that the *Great Duke* doth not trust any particuler Nobleman with any eminent place of ho-nor or dignitie; but placeth therein a certaine Duke of meanest ranke, and no great capacitie, adioyning with him in commission a Secretary to assist him, or to speake more properly, to direct him: for in execution, this Secretary doth all. And being thus vnited, they haue authoritie o-uer all persons in criminal and ciuile causes; in leuying of Taxes and Subsidies; in mustering of Souldiers; and commanding them to all ser-uices imposed by the Emperour, or his Counsell. And to preuent all populer Innouations, he will be sure, that they shall neither be borne within the territories of their gouernment, neither, that they possesse one foot of inheritance within their iurisdictions. And being euery yeere subiect to change (of which he will not faile) for their new aua-rice, they stand assured, first, to be extreameely hated of the people, and worse vsed of the Emperour. For few of them haue the fauour to auoid
the

Forme of go-
uernment.

the pudkey (or whip) when their time is expired : and thereof do make full accompt : As they cannot otherwise chuse, being to bribe the Emperour, the Lieutenant of the Chetfird, and to provide for themselves, hauing in allowance, the best, not aboue a hundred markes ; the worst, but thirtie, *per annum*.

Iuan Vasilowic shall be an example of this seueritie : who, hauing before him a Diak (or Secretarie) accused for taking a Goose readie dressed, stuff full of siluer by way of a bribe, caused the offēdor to be brought into the market place of *Mosco* ; and there himselfe making an honest oration vnto the people ; asked his Polachies or Executioner, who could cut vp a goose. And than commanded he one of them, first to cut off the parties legs about the midst of the shinnes, than his armes aboue his elboes ; (still asking the miserable officer, if goose-flesh were good meat) in the end to chop off his head, in similitude of a Goose readie dressed.

But in the foure Townes, whereof three border vpon the *Polonian* and *Sweden*, and the other vpon the *Chrim Tartar*, viz: *Smolensko*, *Vobsko*, *Novogrod* and *Cazan*, he is somewhat more aduised and honourable. For being pieces of great import, in them he appointeth men of more sufficient and better ranke, two in each towne, whereof one is euer of his Councell of Estate. These haue larger commission, and without adiournment or appeale may proceed to execution in all criminal causes. Yet are they changed euerie yeare, and haue for their allowance, some 700. rubbles ; and some 400.

To preferue his Maiestie and reputation, he vseth as incredible pollicie, as hee doth vnusuall seueritie : First it is not lawfull for anie of his subiects to depart the Realme vpon paine of death ; and therefore no man there, dare goe to Sea, no not speake to an Ambassadour, or vse the counsell of a forraine Phisitian, without licence. He weareth apparrell of inestimable value, ioyning the Ornaments of a Bishop to the Maiestie of a King, by wearing a Miter on his head, shining with Diamonds and rich stones. When he weareth it not on his head, he placeth it before his Chaire of Estate, and oftentimes changeth it, in boast of his riches ; In his left hand he beareth a most rich Crosier, apparrelled in a long Garment, not much vnlike to that which the Pope weareth when he goeth to Masse : his fingers are full of Gold Rings, and the Image of Christ, and his blessed Mother the Virgin, are ouer the Chaire wherein he sitteth. The Priuie Chamber and great Chamber are full of men choathed in Cloth of Gold downe to the foot, but neuer vsed vnlesse vpon occasion of Festiuals, or entertainment of Ambassadours.

In

In matter of Ceremonie, for the most part they follow the Greeke Church; the Priests marrie, maintaine adoration of Images, Fast, and compel to confession; which the common people suppose most necessarie, especially for the Nobles and Gentry, retayning a sensualitie of life and libertie of voluptuousnes. The Princes themselves are verie deuout at the Table, as often a dish is changed, or they haue a desire to drinke, they make manie signes of the crosse.

That no man should proue a better Scholler than himselfe, he suffereth no schoole but of writing and reading to be kept: In their Liturgies, they read nothing but the Euangelists, some Historie, the liues of Saints, a Homily of *Iohn Chrysostome*, or some such like; yea, they would hold him for an Heretique, that should goe about to professe himselfe better learned; and assure himselfe, hee shall not escape punishment. Which is the reason that their Notories, nay the Secretaries themselves, commonly can neither write, nor answer Ambassadors of forraine Princes, no farther than they are taught by the Great Duke. When they negotiate, they no sooner name the *Great Duke*, but all of them rise vp with great reuerence: the like is don at his Table, when he drinketh, or carueth to anie man, and so in a thousand like casualties: they are taught euen from their cradles, to belecue and talke of their Great Duke, as of God: vsing these phrases in their ordinarie talking, *God onely and our Great Semapor* knoweth this: *Our Great Lord* knoweth all things. *All we enioy, health and riches, all proceedeth from our Great Duke.* For the subiect seeing such State and magnificence in the Prince, and knowing no more than he is taught at home, reuerence and obey him as slaues, not as subiects, accounting him rather a God than a King. Those Lords which he hath vnder him are onely graced with Titles, not as we haue Dukes, Barons, &c. Bestowing vpon one a Hamlet, vpon another a Farme; and these not hereditarie, vnlesse he confirme it: and when he hath confirmed it, the Farmers notwithstanding pay him a portion of their fruits, and owe him villaine-seruice: which is the cause, that euery man dependeth on the will of the Prince, and looke by how much the richer, by so much the deeper, is he indebted vnto him.

The Natiue commodities, are Furs, Wax, Honie, Tallow, Hides, Traine-Oile, Caueare, Hemp, Flax, Salt, Tar, Slud, Salt-peter, Brimston and Iron. Besides the great quantitie of Furs spent in the countrie (the only defence of the countri-people in the winter season) there are transported some yeares by the Merchants of *Turkie, Persia, Bougharia, Georgia, Armenia*, and the *Christians*, to the value of foure, or five hundred thousand rubbles yearly: Of Wax 50000 poad; euery poad

Riches and
commodities.

X

contay-

contayning fortie pounds. Their Honie is almost all spent within the countrie in their ordinarie drinckes, and other vses. Of Tallow in times past they haue shipped out 100000 poad yearly: Of Hides, 100000. Of Flax and Hemp 100 ships: And so semblably of other Merchandizes. But you must vnderstand, that by reason of the idle carelesnesse of the people, occasioned through the extreame tirannie of their Emperours, (whereof you shall heare hereafter) at this day, three parts of that reckoning in euerie commoditie, are abated.

Of his Entrada or Reuenue.

For the receiuing of which riches and Reuenues, he hath as it were 3 principall Treasurers; The Steward of his House; Euerie Chetfird within his owne Prouince; And the Office called, the great Income.

The Stewards Office receiueth yearly, about the expence of his house 23000 rubbles.

The fourth Chetfirds for Soak and Pol-monie 400000 rubbles. And the office of the Great Income for custome and rents 800000 rubbles.

And all this in readie coine: For besides this reuenue ordinarie, hee receiueth extraordinarily in furs and other commodities, out of *Siberia*, *Pechera*, *Permia* and other remote places, a great masse of wealth. As may be guesse by that, That 1589 out of *Siberia* onely, by way of custome, were collected foure hundred threescore and sixe timber of Sables, fiue timber of Martrons, 180 cases of black Foxes, besides other commodities.

To these may be added Seisures, Confiscations, and Incomes of like nature, whereof I will shew you some cases.

As by coyning his Plate into Monie, in shew of want, thereby to colour some new taxations; so did *Theodor Iuanowich*. And as by suffering euerie man to giue vnto Monasteries, what pleaseth him; That the wealth being stowed in grosse, the Prince may come by it the readier to satisfie his pleasure; So did *Iuan Vasilowich*, wringing frō some Bishops and Monasteries 100 thousand rubbles; from some 40, and from others 50 &c. For the subtile Friars are rather content without noise to part frō somewhat, rather then by clamour to indanger the losse of the whole.

By forestalling homebred commodities, and ingrossing the forraine; as Silkes, Cloth, Lead, Pearle; To giue out monopolies for staying of Sables, till the Emperors be vented.

By rent corne and prouision of victuall, hee hath some yeares raised 200000 rubbles. Of rent wood, hay &c. 30000 rubbles.

But the most vnchristian abuse is, that in euerie great towne he hath a Caback (or Tap-house) to sell Aqua-uite, Mead, Beare &c. wherein besides the vice of drunkennesse, manie foule faults (as it cannot otherwise fall

fall out) are committed. The poore labouring man, and artificer manie times spendeth all from his wife and children. Some will lay 20, 30 or 40 rubbles into the Caback, vowing themselves to the pot, till the stock be spent; and all this (as the drunkard will vaunt,) for the honour of *Hospodare*, viz. the Prince. For, for hindering this base & vngodly profit none may dare to call, or intreat him out of the Caback. Of these some yeeld eight hundred, some nine hundred, some a thousand, some three thousand rubbles by yeare.

Sometime he will cause his *Boiars* (or Nobles) to faigne themselves robbed, and then will he send for the Aldermen of the citie, to find out the fellow, and vpon an *Ignoramus*, he will selle the citie (vpon colour of misgouerment) 8000, 9000 or 10000 rubbles.

Iuan Vasilowich sent into *Permia* for certaine loads of Cedar wood, whereof, he knew none to grow in the countrie. The Inhabitants returned word, that they could find none: Whereupon he seld the countrie at 12060 rubbles. So sent he to the citie of *Mosco*, to provide a Col-pack (or measure full) of liue fleas for a medecine. They returned answer that the thing was impossible. Whereupon he praued (or beat out of their shins) seauen hundred rubbles for a mulct. So at another time, he praued 30000 rubbles from his Nobilitie, because, he missed of his game when he went on hunting: Which they againe praued out of the *Monks*, or common people of the countrie, as the manner is.

Besides, in their Diets (or Parliaments) they are reputed of no degree or order. For therein the Nobilitie and Clergie only haue voices.

In all their supplications and petitions to anie of the Nobles, or chiefe Officers, they subscribe *Kelophey*, slaues; and so doe they of the Nobilitie, to the Emperour; So that if a poore *Monsal* meeteth anie of them vpon the way, hee must turne himselfe about, and not dare to looke this magnifico in the face, but conge to the ground with his head, as Priests doe to their Wafer cakes.

As for the quiet inioyment of their lands, besides the taxes, customes, seafings and other publique exactions, practised by the Emperour himselfe, and permitted vnto his Nobles, Messengers and Officers, you shall see yammes (through faire townes) of halfe a mile, and a mile long stand vninhabited, by reason of these vngodly pressures. So that in the way towards *Mosco*, betweene *Vologda* and *Yeruslane*, which is somewhat more than a hundred English miles, there haue beene in fight fiftie Villages, at least of the foresaid length, quit disinhabited. And this is the reason that the people doe not giue themselves to thrive, nor to trades, as in former times. Whereby honest labour is much

decaied, & the present quantities of Merchandize nothing answerable to the former reckoning. As well you may perceiue in this one Historie, wherein I will shew you two rare accidents, how three Brethern Merchants did rise vp to great wealth, and in what manner they were fleeced.

They traded together in one stocke, and were found to be worth 300000 rubbles, besides lands, stock and other commodities. They that knew them reporte, That they set 10000 men on worke all the yeare long, in making of salt, carriages by cart and water, hewing of wood, and such like labours; besides five thousand bond-slaves at least, to inhabit and till their land. They had all manner of Artificers; Physitions, Surgeons, Apotheraies, (*Dutchmen*) belonging vnto them; And for custom paide vnto the Emperour came (the true cause wherefore they were the longer permitted to enioy their thrift) 23000 rubbles *per annum*; besides the maintayning of certaine garrisons on the borders of *Siberia*, which were nere vnto the. Now if anie man obiekt, how these men could come to such an estate of wealth, vnder such an exactious Prince: First he must vnderstand, that their dwelling was in *Wichida*, a thousand miles from *Mosco*, and the eye of the Court: Secondly that forbearance is no quittance. For the Emperour was well content to vse their purses, vntill such time as they had perfected their designs in *Siberia*; and that, by burning and cutting downe woods, from *Wichida* to *Perm*, (a progres of a thousand versts,) they had made the land habitable. But at last, He, enuying and disdayning that a *Mosfick*, should grow to bee so great a man, against the rules of their pollicie; first began to pull from them sometimes 20000 rubbles, and sometimes more; And then, the greatest part of their Inheritance: So that at this day their Sonnes are well eased of their stocke, and haue but small part of their Fathers substance.

Neither is this State content to tyrannize ouer their bodies, goods and lands, but he doth the like ouer their wits and capacities. For, for anie extraordinarie perfection in anie common Art, much lesse in learning, you shall neuer see them excellent, from which, they are kept of purpose, as they are also (being no Boiardi, Gentlemen) from all militarie practise.

And because they should prooue vitterly vnapt for anie profession, saue seruilitie, they are forbidden to trauell; so that you shall neuer meet with a *Russe* in forraine countries, except it be some Ambassador, or perhaps some stragling companion, who hath narrowly escaped the watch on the borders.

The

The penalty vpon taking, is no lesse than confiscation of all his goods. Neither will they suffer anie stranger willingly to enter their countrie, further than the necessitie of venting their commodities, and taking in of forraine, doth inforce them.

Their capitall punishments are hanging, rodding, knocking on the heads, drowning, putting vnder the ice, impaling on a stake, & such like. Their crueltye in punishing offenders.

By this a man may guesse of his riches: for hee is not only absolute Lord of all, but also he vseth the seruice of their bodies at his pleasure, and what portion of their goods, him listeth. Of the skins of wild beasts he challengeth what portion he liketh; and of euerie sort of Fish, euen what hee will (as here after.) The skins are sold or giuen, as pleaseth him: the Fish (dried in the winde) is kept for victualling the gar-risons. In the market no man may sell his wares before the King hath sold. He hath not manie Mines of Gold or Siluer. The best Mart-Townes from whence he gathereth the greatest part of his Reuenues, are *Astrachan* at the *Caspian* sea, whither the wares of the *Persians* and *Armenians* are brought; and *S. Nicholas*, whether the ships of the *English* & *Hollanders* doe ariue, laden with cloath and other Merchandize, which from thence are transported to *Vologda*. When his Ambassadors returne, he taketh from them the presents giuen them by forraine Princes, and instead thereof, bestoweth vpon them some other reward, and manie times nothing at all. To speake in a word: he gleaneth whatsoever is good or ought worth, thorough his whole Kingdome; it is thought that he hath great store of Treasure in his castles of *Mosco*, *Ieroslawe*, & the Marishes of *Albi*; which may be true. For the great Duke *Iohn*, wasted in a manner all *Livonia*, sparing neither Relique, Challice, Crucifix, nor anie ornament of siluer: & of that which is once brought in, he suffereth no part therof to be transported, vnlesse it be for the ran-some of souldiours taken in the war, or of the poore people carried into captiuitie. This is most true, that when he lost *Livonia*, which King *Stephen* of *Poland* reconquered in the yeare of our Lord 1582 he lost the richest Prouince of all his Dominions for the Traffique of the *Balticke* sea; And the best, for the strength of 34. castles, standing therein.

The strength of the Kingdome consisteth in the manifold numbers of Riuers and Marishes, and in the thicknesse of vwoods. Besides, they vse to lay wast the parts neereft their enemies, that there the Woods may grow thicker, which for the moisture of the soile quickly commeth to passe, and are as available as a wall or trench to the defence of the next townes. This pollicie brought great trauel to the *Polanders*, for they vvere constrained to loose much time in cutting downe

Of His strength.

the woods before they could come to the inhabited places of their Enemies. They haue a few fortresses, some built of stone, some of Bricke after the *Italian* fashion, but without strength of moderne deuises or cunning workmanship. Such are the castles of *Mosco*, *Nouograd*, *Plesconia*, *Porconia*, *Slobadie*: some are wrought with twigs and earth, well trodden downe, as *Smolonck*. But commonly the wals of strong places are built of great beames stuffed with Turffe or Mosse, leauing loop-holes for shot. This fortifying is verie available against great Ordnance, but exceeding subiect to fiering. They serue in the field (as we told you before treating of his gouernment) rather bearing themselves valiantly for feare of punishment, than of their owne natures shewing anie alacritie or willingnesse to the seruice. Hee hath his Captaines at a becke, his Souldiours suffer all extreamicities patiently; they care not for frost or raine: they indure hunger and scarfitie with incredible contentment; they liue with a little: better able to defend a fortresse, than to fight in field; for here courage and agilitie, there constancie and resolution are most seruiceable: whereas the *Polanders* are better to fight in the field, than to keepe a Castle: as well appeared in either Nation at the siege of *Vobsko*, where the *Russe* repulsd the *Polonian* King, *Stephen Battore*, with his whole Armie of 100000. men, and forced him in the end to giue ouer his siege, with the losse of manie of his best Captaines and Souldiours: but in a set field the *Russie* hath beene euer noted to haue had the worse of *Polonian* and *Sweden*. And therefore the Great Duke *Iohn*, finding by experience the vnaptnesse of his Souldiours, and the readinesse of the *Polonians* in skirmishes, was wont to say; that his men had need of a spur to driue them forward, and the *Polonians* wanted a bridle to hold them backe. His chiefeest force is in horse; but what number he can raise, who can shew? For I doe not belecue that hee is able (as some say) to arme three hundred thousand, because, though his Empire be large, yet for the greatest part it lieth vnmanured; as the manie daies iourney betweene *Cazan* and *Astracham*, and scarce meeting one Village in the way, may well witness. In the warre which King *Stephen* waged against him (being not about 60000. Foote and Horse strong) hee was not able to raise so great a force; I will not say, as to meet him in the open field, but not to hinder him from forcing of *Pozonia*, *Vilocoluc*, and other pieces, nor to diuert him from the siege of *Plesconia*.

In the yeare 1571. the Prince of the *Tartars* with 80000. Souldiours, pierced euen into the bowels of his Kingdome, and set fire on his Imperiall seat *Mosco*. Therefore I thinke, that they who report, that
the

the Great Duke can leuie 300000. men, and the King of *Polonia* 200000. doe rather meane heads of Horses than Riders; for there may be so manie thousand Horse, and yet euerie one is not to be counted a horse of seruice, no more than euerie Horseman a Rider, or able to find himselfe Armour. One hath his heart in his hose; an other wants abilitie; a third wants strength of bodie; a fourth, both courage and strength: yea, admit he could raise so manie men (as these Writers speake of) yet would it be a hard matter, perchance impossible, for him to assemble them in one place; or if he could, where would wages or victuals be found sufficient to sustaine them? For two hundred Horsemen in *Moscouie*, require three hundred Packe-horses, and so manie tenders, who must all be fed; as likewise the victualers, the Merchants, the Artificers, and such Seruants as can hardly be spared, in warlike enterprises. To performe this, whole *Moscouie* must of necessitie be gathered into one place, and then it were to be feared, least in so great a journey from one part of the Kingdome, the other part opposite would runne to ruine and decay. Likewise, although such a proportion of Horse, as hath beene spoken of, might be raised, it were not wisdome for the State to strip the Borders of their Garrisons, the Prouinces of their sinewes, the Cities of their Magistrates, and the Countrie of Husbandmen.

In which point *Basilius* in the conquest of *Lituania* and *Livonia*, committed a great ouersight; for that, taking away with him the vpland and Countrie people, who should haue tilled the ground, and might easily haue beene kept in order without anie danger by other good pollicies: by this course was afterwards driuen, manie yeares together to victuall the countrie (especially the great Townes) out of his owne countrie of *Russia*. And againe when he first conquered the countries, hee committed no lesse an error in suffering the Natiues to keepe their possessions, and to inhabit all their Townes, onely paying him a tribute, vnder the gouernment of his *Russe* Captaines, whose conspiracies and attempts were the losse of these places. The like fell out at the Port-Towne of *Narue* in *Liesland*, where his Sonne *Iuan Vasiluich*, built a Towne and a Castle on the other side of the Riuer (called *Iuangorod*) to keepe the Countrie in subiection, which so fortified, was thought to be inuincible: When it was furnished, for reward to the Architect, (being a *Polonian*) he put out both his eyes, to disable him to build the like againe. But hauing left all the Natiues within their owne countrie, without abating their number and strength in due order, the Towne and Castle not long after was betraied to the King of

Sweden. Therefore I conclude, that That Prince whose Kingdome is able to afford him 150 thousand Horse, to be brauely furnished, if he can bring into the field but the third part (I speake of war and not of incursions.)

Some more modest in writing, affirme, that the *Moscouite* could leaue an hundred and fiftie thousand Horse, if necessariie to defend himselfe forced him thereunto; And that *Iohn* the third, in the voyage of *Astracan*, entertained 120 thousand Horse, and twentie thousand foote. The same King inuading *Livonia* in the time of King *Alexander*, leauied a mightie Armie, and notwithstanding, maintained another vpon the borders of the Kingdome. The Great Duke *Iohn* adioyned to his troupes of Horse certaine thousand of shot, most Strangers, which yeelded him notable seruice in the defence of his Cities.

And to make good the aforesaid proportion of Caluarie, the Englishmen, who by reason of their intercourse in those countries, are best acquainted with these Relations, do vwrite, That the ordinarie number of souldiours entertained in continuall pay is this: first, hee hath his *Dowrancie* (viz:) Pentioners, or guard of his person, to the number of 15000 horsemen, vvith their Captaines and other Officers, that are alwaies in a readinesse. These 15000 are deuided into three sorts: the first are chiefe Pentioners, & they receiue, some a thousand, some foure score rubbles a yeare, none vnder seauentie. The second sort, receiue betwixt sixtie and fiftie, none vnder fortie. The third and lowest sort, receiue thirtie a yeare, some 25 some 20, none vnder 12, the vvhole summe ariseth to 55000 rubbles by yeare.

Besides these 15000 Horse-men (being the guard of the Emperours owne person, when himselfe goeth to the wars, resembling the *Roman* pratorian souldiours) there are 110 men of speciall account for their Nobilitie and trust, chosen by the Emperour, vvho are bound to find 65000 Horse-men, vvith all necessaries meet for the war, after the *Russian* manner. For the vvhich seruice, they are yearely allowed for themselves, and their companies, the sum of 40000 rubbles. These 65000, are bound to repaire to the field euerie yeare towards the borders of the *Chrim-Tartars* (except they be otherwaies appointed) vvwhether there be vvars vvith the *Tartar*, or no. And because it should not proue dangerous vvnto the State, to intrust so great a power to Noble-men, first as they are manie, viz. 110, so are they changed by the Emperour at his pleasure. Secondly, they haue their maintenance of the Emperour, being men otherwise borne but to small Reuenue. Thirdly, for the most part,

part, they are about the Emperours person, being of his counsell, either speciall, or at large. Fourthly, they are rather Paimaisters than Captaines to their companies; themselves not going forth ordinarily to the wars, saue when they are directed by speciall command. So the whole number of horsemen alwaies in readinesse and continuall pay, are fourescore thousand, few more or lesse. If he need a greater number (which sildom hapneth) the he entertaineth those Gentlemen vvhich are out of pay: if yet he want, he giueth charge vnto his Noblemen that hold Lands of him, to bring into the field euerie man proportionable number of his Seruants (called *Rolophes* viz. such as till his Lands) with their furniture: the vvhich seruice being done, presently they lay in their Weapons, and returne againe to their seruile labours.

Of Footmen in continuall pay, he hath 12000 all Harquebussiers, whereof 5000 attend about the citie of *Mosco*, or vvhether the Emperour shall abide; and two thousand (called *Stremaney strelsey*) or Gunners at the stirrop, about his owne person at the Court or House where himselfe lodgeth. The residue are placed in Garrisons, till times of seruice, and receiue for their sallarie, euerie man seauen rubbles a yeare, besides twelue measures a peece, of Rice and Oates. Of Mercenarie souldiours being strangers (1588 he had three thousand *Polonians*: Of *Chyrchasses* (who are vnder the *Polonians*) about foure thousand. Of *Dutch* and *Scots* 150. Of *Greekes*, *Turks*, and *Swedens*, all in one band, a hundred or thereabouts. These they imploy only vpon the *Tartarian* side, and against the *Siberians*, as they doe the *Tartar* souldiours (whom they sometime hire, and but only for the present) on the other side, against the *Polonian* and *Sweden*. Concerning their arming, they are but sleightly appointed. The common Horse-man hath nothing but his bow in his Case vnder his right arme, and his Quiver and Sword hanging on the left side, except some few that beare a case of Dags, or a Iavelin, or short Staffe along their Horse-side. The Noble-men ride better and richer appointed Their Swords, Bowes and Arrowes, are of the Turkish fashion, and practise as the *Tartars*, to shoot forwards and backwards, as they flie, or retire.

The footman hath nothing but his piece in his hand, his casting hatchet at his backe, and his sword by his side; prouision of victuall the Emperour alloweth none, either for Captaine or Souldiour, neither prouideth anie, except peraduenture some Corne for their Money. Euerie man is to bring sufficient for himselfe for foure monthes, and if need require, to giue order for more to be brought after him to the Campe from his Tennant that tilleth his Land, or some other place: for diet
and

and lodging, euerie *Russie* is prepared a Souldier before-hand; for though the chiefe Captaines carrie tents with them after the fashion of ours, with some better prouision of victuall than the rest: yet the common sort bring nothing with them, saue a kinde of dried bread, with some store of meale; which they temper with water, and so make it into a ball, or small lump of Dough, and this they eat raw in stead of bread: their meat is Bacon, or some flesh, or fish, dried after the Dutch manner. If this Souldier were as hardy to execute, as he is able to beare out toyle and trauell; or as apt and well trained, as he is indifferent for his lodging and diet; he would farre exceede the seruitors of other Prouinces. For euerie Souldier in *Russia* is a Gentleman, and none Gentlemen but Souldiers; so that the sonne of a Gentleman is euer a Gentleman, and a Souldier withall, bound vnto no other profession, but meere Souldierie.

It is thought, that no Prince in Christendome hath better store of munition; which may partly appeare by the Artillery-house at *Mosco*, where are diuers sorts of great Ordnance, all of Brasse, verie faire, and to an exceeding great number.

Borderers.

Vpon his frontiers lie the *Tartars Precopenses*, the *Taurici*, the *Chersonesi*, the *Circassi*, and the *Negayans*. These people inhabit a Countrey seauen dayes iourney distant, and are gouerned by Dukes, after the maner of the *Heluetians*. He hath receiued great iniurie of the *Precopenses*, without hope of amends; because they are confederate with the great *Turke*, and by him furnisht with Harguebusiers, and Ordnances, and haue in their Kingdome many strong places fortified with *Turkish* Garrisons: and therefore he thinketh it hard and dangerous to inuade them, being backed by the *Turke*, whose power he should likewise stir vp against him. It is the custome of the *Precopi* (often vsed) to make inrodes into the Prouinces of the *Great Duke*, as likewise of the *Polonian*, and to carry away whatsoever commeth to hand. If the *Great Duke* haue vanquished the *Tartars* of *Cassan* and *Astrachan*, let him attribute that Conquest to his great Ordnance, which they wanted. But the *Precopi* haue the vse of Guns, and (worth all the rest) the fauour and protection of the *Turkish* Emperour; who thirsting to open a way into *Moscovy*, or the *Caspian* sea, assayed not many yeares since to dig a trench from *Tanaïs* to *Volga*: but his forces were put to flight by the *Mosconites*, in feare of their vtter destruction, if the *Turke* had brought that designment to effect. This was a deuise of greater courage than wisdom: for the *Mosconites* not onely defeated his Nauie, taking part thereof; but also put all his Land-forces to the Sword, consisting of fourescore thousand *Tartars*, foue and twenty thousand *Turkes*, and three

three thousand *Tamizaries*.

As we haue said before, the *Circassi* liue much after the manner of the *Swissers*; they endeouour not to inlarge their owne bounds, but serue for wages, sometime vnder the *Turke*, sometime vnder the *Persian*, and sometimes vnder the *Moscouite*: from whose Dominions they are so far disioyned, that they stand in no feare of their seuerall greatnesse. The *Negayans* are more to be dreaded, for their suddaine inrodes, and furious incursions, than for ielousie of their forces, or that they are able to raise, or vndertake any royall voyage. Of late times they threatned the *Moscouite*, but their fury was soone appeased by sending them presents. It is the best course to hazzard our Money, rather than our forces, against the Thefts and spoyles of these barbarous Nations: for when they haue neither Citty nor strong place to subdue, thereby to keepe them in subiection, what can you tearme the Warre made against them, but labour with losse, and charge without profite? But to preuent all mischiefes, the Duke is forced to keepe great troupes of Horse in *Citrachan*, *Casan*, and *Viatca*, against these *Nagay*: as also a great Garrison in *Culagan* vppon *Tanaïs*, against the *Precopi*.

But the mightiest of them all is the *Chrim-Tartar*, (whom some call the *Great Cham*) who lyeth South and southeastward from *Russia*, and doth most annoy the Countrey by often inuasions; commonly once euery yeare, sometimes entering very far within the Inland parts. In the yeare 1571. hee pierced as far as the Citty *Mosco*, with an Army of 200000. men, without battell, or resistance; for that the *Russie* Emperour (then *Ivan Vasilivich*) leading forth his Army to encounter him, mistooke the way. The Citty he tooke not, but fiered the suburbs, which by reason of the buildings, consisting for the most part of wood, kindled so quickly, and went on with such fury, as that it consumed the greatest part thereof, almost within the space of foure houres: where, by fire, and prease, 800000. people or more were reported to haue perished at that season. Their principall quarrell ariseth about certaine Territories claimed by the *Tartar*, but possessed by the *Russie*. The *Tartar* alleadgeth, that besides *Astrachan* and *Cazan* (the auncient possession of the East-*Tartar*) the whole bounds, North and West-ward, so far as the Cittie of *Mosco*, and *Mosco* it selfe, pertaineth to his right; which seemeth to be true by the report of the *Russies* themselves, that tell of a certaine homage done by the *Russie* Emperour euery yeare to the great *Chrim*, the *Russie* Emperor standing on foote, and feeding the *Chrims* horse sitting on horse-backe, with Oats out of his owne Cap, in stead of a Boule or Manger, and that, within the Castle of *Mosco*.

And

And this homage they say was done till the time of *Basilius*, who surprizing the *Chrim-Tartar* by a Stratagē vnderooke by one of his Nobility, was content to change this homage into a tribute of Furs: which afterwards also was denyed; whereupon they continue their quarrels, the *Russe* defending his Countrey and Conquests, and the *Chrim* inuading him once or twice a yeare, sometime about Whitsontide, but oftner in Haruest. What time, if the great *Chrim* come in person, he bringeth with him an Army of 100000. or 200000. men; otherwise, they make short and suddaine Rodes, with lesser numbers, running about the list of the Borders like wild-Geese, inuading, and retyring, as they see aduantage. And now being entred thus farre, not without occasion, into the manners of these *Tartars*, I thinke it not amisse some-what to discourse of their fights, their Arming, their Religion, and Customes.

Their common practise (beeing very populous) is to make diuers armies, and so drawing the *Russe* into one or two places of the frontiers, do inuade at some place vnsuspected, and without defence. Their order of fight is much after the *Russe* manner; that is, to thrust on altogether without discipline in a hurry, as they are directed by their Generall; saue that they are all Horse-men, and carrie nothing else but a Bow, a Sheafe of Arrowes, and a Semitar, after the Turkish fashion. They are very expert Horse-men, and vse to shoot as readily backward, as forward. Some will haue a Horse-mans staffe like a Boare-speare, besides their other weapons. The common Souldier hath no other armour than his ordinary apparell, viz: a black Sheepe-skin, with the wooll-side outward in the day time, and inwards in the night time, with a Cap of the same. But their *Morfeis* or Noblemen imitate the Turke both in Apparrell and Armour. When they are to passe ouer a Riuer with their Army, they tye three or foure Horses together, and taking peeces of wood, they binde them to the taitles of their Horses, and so sitting on the poles, they driue their Horses ouer. At handie strokes they are counted farre better men than the *Russes*, fierce by nature, but more hardy and bloody by continuall practise of warre, as men neuer inured to the delights of peace, nor any ciuill practise.

Yet their subtiltie is more than may seeme to agree with their barbarous conditions. By their continuall inuasions and robberies they are very pregnant and wittie, to deuise stratagems on the sudden for their aduantage. As in their Warres against *Beala* the fourth King of *Hungarei*, whom they inuaded with 500000 men, and obtained against him a great victorie. Wherein hauing slaine his Chancellor, they found about him the Kings priuie Seale, and there-with presently counterfeited Letters

Letters in the Kings name to the next Citties, with charge, That in no case they should conuey themselves or their goods out of their dwelling places; encouraging the people to abide therein without feare of danger, and withall recounting how base a resolution it were to abandon their countrey and possessions to so barbarous a Nation as the *Tartar*; dispraising themselves in all despightfull maner, letting them to vnderstand, that though he had lost his carriages with some few straglers, vvho had marched disorderly, yet hee doubted not but to recouer that losse vvith the fortune of a noble victorie, if the sauage *Tartar* durst abide him in the field. To this purpose hauing vvritten their Letters in the *Polish* Charracter (by the helpe of certaine young men taken prisoners in the field) signed vvith the Kings Seale, they dispatched them forth to all the adiacent quarters of the Countrey; vvherenpon the *Hungarians* that vv ere now posting away vvith their goods, vvives, and children, on the rumor of the Kings ouerthrow, by the comfort of these counterfet letters, stopped their journey, and so being surprized, vv ere hemd in, and made a prey to the huge numbers of these barbarous *Tartarians*.

When they besiedge a Towne or Fort, they offer much parle, and pretend many flattering curtesies to perswade a surrender, and being once possessed of the place, they leaue no cruelty vnpractised, affirming that faith and iustice is to be kept toward no people, but their owne. In their encounters (where they alway practise by ambushments) they retire as repulsed for feare, so to draw their enemies within danger: but the *Russie* being well acquainted with this subtiltie, is very warie of them. When they war in small numbers, like Rovers, to make their Army seeme greater, they set counterfet shapes of men on horse-backe.

When they giue the onfet, they make a great and barbarous shout, crying altogether, *Olla Billa, Olla Billa*, God helpe vs, God helpe vs; They contemne death in that desperate maner, that they choose rather to die than yeeld: and when they are wounded to death, and past recouerie, they haue bin scene to bite their weapons in rage; wherein appeareth the great difference of courage betweene the *Tartar*, the *Russie*, and the *Turke*. For if the *Russie* souldier be once put to retire, all his safetie is set on speedie and resolued flight, and being once taken, he neither defendeth him-selfe, nor intreateth for mercie, as reckoning straight to dye: and the *Turke* commonly, when hee is past hope of escaping, fallerh to intreat, and casting away his weapon, offereth both his hands, as it were to be manacled, choosing rather to liue a slaue, than to die constantly.

The

The cheefest bootie they desire, is to get store of captiues, especially yong Boyes or Girles, whom they sell to the Turks, or other their neighbours. And the *Russie* borderers (being vsed to their inuasions, lightly euery Summer) keepe few other Cattle on the borders, saue Swine, which the *Tartars* vwill not touch nor drive away, because they are of the Turkish religion, and vwill eate no Swines flesh. Of Christ, they confesse as much as the Turke doth in his *Alcoran*, viz: That he came of the Angel *Gabriel* and *Mary*; that he vvas a great Prophet, and shall be Iudge of the vvorld at the last day. In other matters likewise, they are much ordered after the manner and direction of the Turke, as hauing felt his force at the vvinnings of *Azon* and *Cassa*, with some other territories about the *Euxine* Sea, which before were Tributaries to this *Chrim Tartar*. So that at this day most vsually the Emperour of the *Chrim* is chosen out of the *Tartar* Nobilitie by the Turks appointment, and to him they giue the tenths of their spoils gotten by vvar from the Christians. Vnder the Emperour they haue certaine Dukes, vvhom they call *Morses* or *Dinoy morses*, that rule ouer a certaine number of 1000. 20000. or 40000. a peece, vvwhich they tearme *Hords*. When the Emperour hath vse of them in his vvars, they are bound to come, and to bring vvith them their proportion of Souldiers, euery man vvith two Horse at least, the one to ride on, the other to kill, vvhen it commeth to his turne to haue him eaten. For their chiefe victuall is Horse-flesh, vvwhich they eate vvithout bread, or any thing els vvith it. And yet (vvith maruell) though they serue all on Horse-backe, and eate all of Horse-flesh, there are brought yearely to the *Mosco* to be sold 30000. or 40000. Horse. So they haue great droues of Kine, and flocks of black Sheepe, vvwhich they keepe rather for their skins than for their flesh, though sometime they eate of it. Towns they plant none, nor other standing buildings; but haue mouing houses built on vvheelles, like a Shepherds cottage: these they draw vvith them vvheresoeuer they goe, driuing their Cattle vvith them, and vvhen they come to their iournies end, they plant these Cart-houses in a ranke, in forme of a Towne with large streets: neither hath the Emperour himselfe other place or maner of dwelling; saying, That the fixed and standing buildings of other Countries are vnwholsome and vnsauourie.

In the Spring, they begin to moue their houses from the South parts towards the North, and to driuing on, till they haue grazed vp all, to the farthest part of the North; they returne backe againe towards the South (where they continue all the Winter) by ten miles a stage. Of Money, they haue no vse at all, preferring Brasse and Steele before other Mettals,

tals, which they vse for swords, kniues, and other necessities; gold and siluer they neglect of purpose, as also Tillage, to be more free for their wandering kind of life, and to keepe their countrey lesse subiect to inuasions. Which course indeed cannot but prooue disaduantagious to the Inuaders, as it hapned in old time to *Cirus* and *Darius Histaspis*. For, their manner is when they are inuaded, by flying, reculing, and faigned feare, to draw their enemies some good vvay into the bowels of their countrey; and then vvhen victuals begin to grow scarce and other extremities, to oppresse their enemies (as needs they must, vvhere nothing is to be had) they stop vp the passages, and enclose them vvith multitudes. By which pollicy (as some write) they had welnigh surprized the army of *Tamerlan*, had he not with all expedition retired towards the Riuer *Tanais*.

For person and complection; they haue broad and flat visages, of a tawny colour, fierce and cruell in looks, thin haired on the vpper lip and a pit of the chin, light and nimble bodied, and short legd, as if they were naturally created for Horse-men. Their speech is very sudden and lowde, speaking as it were out of a deepe hollow throate. Their chiefest exercise is shooting, wherein they traine their children from their infancie: and to conclude, are the very same people whom the Greeks and Latines called *Scitha Nomades*, or the Scythian Shepheards.

There are diuers other *Tartars* (as I haue afore said) bordering vpon *Russia*, as the *Negaij*, the *Cheremissens*, the *Mordmits*, the *Chircasses*, and the *Shalcans*: all differing in name, more than in custome or condition, from the *Chrim Tartar*, (except the *Chircasses* that border South-east toward *Lituania*,) who are far more ciuile than the rest of the *Tartars*, of a comely personage and stately behauiour, as imitating the fashion of the Polonian: whereof some of them haue subiected themselves to this Crowne, and professe Christianitie. The *Negaij* lieth Eastward, and is reckned the best man of war among the *Tartars*, but verie sauage aboue all the rest. The *Cheremessen Tartar* lieth betweene the *Russi* and the *Naigai*, and are of two sorts, the *Luganoy*, that is, of the valley; and the *Nagornay*, viz: of the hillie countrey. These haue so troubled the *Russie* Emperour, that vnder colour of a yearely pension of *Russie* commodities, he is content to buy his peace, yet with condition to serue him in his warres.

The most rude and barbarous is the *Mordwit Tartar*, a people hauing manie selfe-fashions, and strange kinds of behauiour differing from the rest.

Next to the kingdome of *Astrachan*, the farthest part South-east of the

the *Russie* dominion, lyeth the *Shalcan*, and the Countrey of *Media*, whethere the *Russie* Merchants trauell for raw Silks, Sindon, Saffron, Skins, and other commodities.

The next bordering neighbor by *Finland* side, is the King of *Swene-land*. Of late times this King holding a long war against him, tooke from him by force the castles of *Sorenesco*, and *Pernauia* the great and the lesse in *Linonia*, on the one side; while King *Stephen* vexed him with a cruell war on the other. In the vtmost bound of the *Finland Bay*, the *Swenian* to his great charge possesseth the fortresse of *Viburge*, maintaining therein a great Garrison, to resist the attempts of the *Russie*. Likewise in that sea, and on the coast adioyning, he keepeth the ships of war, as well to be readie at all assayes, against the approaches of this great Duke, as also to forbid the Easterlings the bringing in of munition and warlike furniture, into any part of the *Russies* Dominions: neither doth he suffer other Ships to sayle in those Seas, without a speciall placard signed with his owne hand. By the benefit of this Nauy, the King (whereloeuer he finds meanes to vse it) becommeth Maister of the Sea, and by vertue thereof seizeth vpon manie places on the Coast of *Linonia*, and the bordering Territories. But where the Dukes horse, or his great numbers of footmen may stand him in stead, (as in the open field remoued from the Sea) there he maketh his part good enough, and most commonly puts the *Swenian* to the worst. The best is, Nature hath placed betweene them such rough Mountains, such cold, such Ice, and such Snowes, that they cannot greatly endamage one another.

The Pole.

The last Neighbour, is the King of *Poland*, betweene whom and the great Duke, this is the difference. The *Mosconite* hath more territories; the *Polonians* better inhabited, and more ciuill: the *Mosconite* more subiects, and more subiect; the *Polonian* better souldiers, and more courageous; the *Mosconites* are apter to beare the shock, than to giue a charge: the *Polonians* to charge: the *Mosconite* is fitter to keepe a fortresse; the *Polonian* to fight in the field; the *Mosconite* forces are better vnited; the *Polonian* more considerate and better armed: the *Mosconite* lesse careth for want and extremities, the *Polonian* death and the sword: yea, either Nation is of greater worth, when either of their Princes is of greater magnanimitie: As it hapned, when *Basilus* conquered the great Dutchie of *Smolonke* and *Polonck*, and the large circuite of *Linonia*; And againe, when *Stephen* King of *Poland*, in his last warres against *Iohn*, *Basilus* his sonne, reconquered *Polonck*, with diuers other places of good reckoning; besiedged the Citty of *Plesko*, and forced the *Mosconite* to leaue all *Linonia*: whereby I conclude, Such

as is the valour and wisdom of either Prince, such is the force and courage of their people.

Tartaria.



He Empire of *Tartaria*, laide prostrate vnder the Throne of the Great *Cham*, called *Dominus Dominantium*, and *Rex regum*, spreadeth it selfe with so large imbracement, that it extendeth from the Northerne Olba, or if you will, *Tanais*, euen to the Easterne sea, sometime fir-named the *Atlantike*; whose vast Lap is almost filled with a frie of Islands, and begirteth all the countries, called *Scithia*, *Ievomongal*, *Sumongal*, *Mercat*, *Metrit*, the vast Desert of *Lop*, *Tangut*, *Kataia*, and *Mungia*; so that shouldering all the Northerne shore of the *Caspian*, it runneth along without controll, by the high looking walles of *China*, and is overshadowed by those formidable Mountaines *Riphei*, *Hyperborei*, *Imaus*, and *Caucasus*.

The large extent of all Tartaria.

And although the *Chrim Tartar* would faine challenge affinitie with the Turke; expecting that if the *Othoman* line should faile, the greatest share of the Worlds magnificence would diuolue to him: yet dare he not but acknowledge the Emperour *Cham*, for his Lord paramount, and is affrighted, when he heareth of anie complaints to his preiudice.

From *Scithia*, to the Prouince of *Tangut* they liue in troupes, or Hords, and remoue from place to place according to the temperature of the season, and plentie of feeding. Nor before the yeare of redemption 1212 did wee in Europe heare of the name of a *Tartar*, but of *Scithians*, *Sarmatians*, *Albanians*, and such; who were all idolaters.

They are men of square Stature, broad Faces, hollow Eies, thin Beards, and ouglie Countenances, swartish of Complexion (not for that the Sunne kisseth them with extraordinarie kindnesse) but for that the aire, and their sluttish customes, corrupteth their bloud and bodies: To which inconueniences, nature notwithstanding hath preuailed in the distribution of valour, swift footmanship, vigilancie, and patience to indure the manie incumbrances of trauaile, hunger, and want of sleepe.

Their features

Y

They

Their fash-
ions.

They loue horses, and from that loue accustome themselves to a sauage drinking of their bloud, practising a cunning theft therein; which being unpunishable, occasioneth manie pretie changes both in keeping their owne, and purloyning from others: As if some ciuill Artist had instructed them in the *Lacedemonian* Lawes; which tollerated theft, for the better animating one another in the spoyling of their enemies.

In their traualles and remouement they are gouerned by the Stars, and observing the North-pole, they settle according to its motion. They liue free from couetousnesse, and are thus far happie, that the strange corruption of wealth, breedeth no disorders amongst them: yet haue they a kind of traffique, and by way of exchange continue mutuall commerces; louing presents, and can be contented to be flattered euen in their barbarisme, as all the easterne people of the world, (I thinke) are affected, either by nature or tradition.

Their Riches.

If you will heare of their riches, then must you raise your eies Eastward, and take notice of *Tangut*, a wealthie Prouince, affoording manie things besitting Europe, especially *Rhubarb*; a simple of that prerogative, as if the whole world of necessitie should be beholding vnto them for this distribution.

In *Kataia* (amongst manie others) the great Citie of *Cambalu* will excite admiration, if you may bee induced to measure a quadrant of thirti miles compasse, and ouer-looke at euerie corner a square Tower verie nere fortie furlongs in circuit; in which the Emperors Munition, Armor, and prouision for war, are secured.

In *Mangia*, as Queene of the rest, is the Citie of *Quinzay*, hauing a circumference of a hundred miles, by reason that a great Lake diuideth the streetes into channels; ouer which are numbred twelue hundred and threescore bridges, some opening the Arches so high and wide, that a good ship vnder saile hath a passage of ease. For beleife, I will neither force the trauailes of Sir *Iohn Mandeuil*, nor the writings of *Munster*, nor the constant asseueration of moderne Trauailers, but for mine owne part, I would modestly perswade you; That the world is a stage of varietie, and That within our owne Kingdome, we are acquainted with such nouelties of wonder, that if they were but deliuered by report, we would soone prooue as incredulous of the one, as we are of the other. But to proceed.

The ancient
diuision.

As I told you, the ancient Prouinces were deuided into three particulars; and in those daies known by the names of *Sarmatia Asiatica*, both *Scythias*, and the Regions of *Serica*, now *Kataia*. Most fierce
and

and barbarous Nations did alwaies inhabite this cuntry, as first the the *Amazons*, a warlike kinde of women, which in their daies casting away the properties of their sex, vexed the whole world, vsurped *Asia*, and built *Ephesus*. Vpon their finall extirpation, arose the *Scythians*, no lesse dreadfull than the former. Then succeeded the *Gothes* or *Getes*, tearmed by their neighbours *Polouci*, that is; rauinous or thee- uith. These the *Tartars* tamed, and then erected their Monarchie about the yeare of our Lord 1187 or as others say, 1162 electing for their King, one *Cingis*, a man of base birch and calling. This mans fol- lowers at that time liued without Manners, Law, or Religion, in the plaines of *Carasoram*, tended their cattle, and paied their duties to King *Vn-cham*, otherwise *Presbiter Iohn*, who without doubt in those daies kept his Court in *Tenduch*, in the Kingdome of *Argon*. But this King *Cingis* first subdued the Kingdom of *Vn-cham*, and afterwards imposed the yoke of subiection on the bordering Prouinces. And certainly, that famous Comet seene in the moneth of May, 1211 lasting eightene daies, and glimmering on the *Gothes*, *Tanais*, and *Russia*, with its taile extended towards the West, did foreshew the succeeding inuadation of these *Tartars*. For in the yeare following, this Nation, vvwhose name (as I said) vvvas not so much as dreamed of before in Europe, vvholly subdued *Sarmatia Asiatica*, or *Scythia*, inuaded *Russia*, *Hungaria*, and *Polonia*. And lastly, erected other famous Monarchies in *China*, *Mein*, and *Bengala*.

So that at this day it is deuided into fve great Prouinces: *Tartaria* Their mo-
Minor, lying in Europe, betweene *Tanais* and *Boristhenes*. *Tartaria de-* derne diuision.
serta (of old *Sarmatia Asiatica*) contayning most of the *Hords*, but not
all: *Zagatai*, *Kataia*: And lastly, that great promontorie, vvwhich lieth
out-stretched in the furthest part thereof towards the North and East,
and may be called *Tartaria antiqua*, as the mother place of the true *Tar-*
tar Nation, vitterly vnknowne to *Ptolomie*.

Those that liue in the open field, about the *Euxine* Sea, the Lake *Tartaria*
of *Meotis*, and the *Taurique Chersonesse*, vvwhich adioyneth vpon *Borist-* minor.
henes and *Tanais* in Europe are the *Precopenses*. In this straight or Pen- The preco-
insula standeth *Theodosia*, now *Cassa*, once a colonie of the *Genois*, now penfcs.
a *Sangiachie* of the *Turkes*. Their whole Territories are verie fruitfull
for corne and cattle, and the people more ciuill and courteous than
manie of the residue, yet retayning a smatch of their ancient barbaris-
me. For they are sworn enemies to the *Christians*, yearely inuading
Russia, *Lituania*, *Valachia*, *Polonia*, and manie times *Mosconie*, yeelding
to the *Turke* in the name of tribute, yearely three hundred Christian
soules.

Tartaria
deserta.

soules. To one of these Princes *Selimus* gaue his daughter in marriage.

This in old time was called *Sarmatia Asiatice*, and better inhabited before the comming of the *Tartars*. It lieth betweene *Tanaïs*, the *Caspian* sea, and the Lake of *Kitay*. It is a plaine countrie, by nature fertill; if it were manured by these *Tartars*, nothing giuen to husbandrie, but addicted to lead a roguish and wandering life after the maner of the *Arabians*. Their chiefe delight is in hunting and warfare; Mill and Panique, they cast carelesly into the ground, vvhich notwithstanding yeelds sufficient increase. Their store of Horse and Cattle is so plenti- full, that they haue to spare for their Neighbours. For the most part they dwell vpon Cartrages couered with skins and vvollen cloath. Some defensible Townes they haue, vvhereunto they flie in times of necessitie.

Astracan.

Astrachan is scituated vpon the *Caspian* sea: it is rich, affoordeth excellent good salt, and verie well frequented by *Moscouish*, *Turkish*, *Armenian*, and *Persian* Merchants. In the yeare 1494 it was taken by *Iohn Basilides*, Great Duke of *Moscouie*, and by him vvith the Title thereof annexed to the *Moscouian* Empire.

The Zagataie.

The *Zagataian Tartars*, vvere so named of their Prince, the Brother of the Great *Cham*, or *Can*, which once raigned amongst them. They are now called *Ieselbas*, that is to say, Greene-heads, of the colour of their Turbants. They inhabit the ancient countries of *Bactria*, *Sogdiana*, and *Margiana*, in times past the habitation of the *Massagetes*, so famous in Armes. These are the most honourable people of the *Tartars*, indifferent ciuill, giuen to Arts, and Lords of manie faire Cities built vvith stone; As *Shamarcand*, once a Towne of great fame, and renowned for the birth of the Great *Tamerlan*, or *Tamerchan*, but now decaied.

Kataia.



Our Auncestors were ignorant of the Regions scituated vpon the East side of the *Caspian*, vvhich they imagined to be a branch of the Ocean: euen so, as yet little or nothing knoweth this Age, what Regions lie, or what people inhabit beyond that sea, and the mountaines, commonly called *Dalanguer* and *Vssont*. *M. Paul Venetus* was the first that broake the ice, in

in describing of those countries, and of him we received what we know of the *Tartars*. The great distance of countries, the difficultie of the journey, and the inaccessible scituation of places, hath hindred the discoverie of those Prouinces: and the Great Duke of *Mosconie* (by whose Dominions we may easiest trauell thither) will suffer no strangers to passe through his Kingdome. The *Caspian* Sea, a passage no lesse fitting for the journey is not frequented: and by the way of *Persia* infinite Mountaines and vast Desarts, deuiding both Prouinces, oppose themselves against vs. And to the further hindrance of this discoverie, neither the Great *Cham*, neither the King of *China*, nor the Duke of *Mosconie*, will suffer anie of their subiects to trauell out of their Dominions, nor anie stranger to enter in; vnlesse he come as an Ambassadour: neither (in this case) is it lawfull for him to conuerse freely, or to range at pleasure.

They liue vnder diuers Princes, the principall wherof are those, that weare greene on their Turbants. These (as aforesaid) inhabite *Shamercand*, and are at continuall enmitie with the *Persians*. Next are those of *Bochan*, Mahumetans: then those of *Mogor*, of whom you shall heare hereafter; and lastly those of *Kataia*, wherof we now intreat.

Neuer was there anie Nation vpon the face of the earth, that enioyed a larger Emperie than they doe, or haue vndertaken haughtier exploits; and I would that they had had some, who might haue recommended (by writing) their doings to the World.

M. Paul Venetus writeth, that this people once inhabited *Ciurga* and *Barge*, Prouinces scituated vpon the *Scythicke* Ocean, without Citie, Castle, or House, wandering like the *Arabians* from place to place, according to the season of the yeare. They (as before) acknowledged *Un-cham* (whom some interpret *Prestor Iohn*) for their Soueraigne Lord, to whom they gaue the tenth of their cattle. In proesse of time they multiplied to such numbers, that *Un-cham* being iealous of their neighbour-hood, began to lessen their numbers and forces, by sending them, now hither, now thither vpon most long and desperate voyages, as occasion offered. Which when they perceiued, they assembled themselves, resolving to leaue their naturall soile, and to remoue so far from the borders of *Un-cham*, that neuer after he should haue cause to suspect them: this they performed. After certaine yeares, they elected amongst them a King, called *Changis*, to whom for the greatness of his glorie and victories, they added the sir-name of *Great*. This *Changis*, departing from his owne Territories in the yeare of our Lord 1162 with a most fearefull Armie, subdued partly by
Y 3 force,

force, and partly by the terrour of his name, nine Prouinces. At last, being denied the daughter of *Uncham* in marriage, he made war vpon him, and ouercomming him in battaile, cast him out of his Kingdome. After the death of *Changis* his successours afflicted Europe. In the yeare 1212 they droue the *Polesochi* from the banckes of the *Euxine* Sea. In the yeare 1228 they spoiled *Russia*. In the yeare 1241 they rased *Kiouia* the chiefe citie of the *Rutheni*; and *Batu* their captaine wasted *Polonia*, *Silesia*, *Moravia*, and *Hungarie*. *Innocent* the 4 amazed with the tempest of these inuasions, in the yeare 1242 sent certaine Friers of the orders of *Dominicke* and *Francis*, to the Court of this Great *Cham*, to intreat a peace for Christendome.

Bounded.

The circuit of this Empire in the times aboue spoken of, stretched from the vttermost bounds of *Asia* to *Armenia*, and from *Bengala* to *Volga*, yea their incursions pierced to *Nilus* and *Danubius*. The *Macedonian* and *Roman* Empires were neuer so large. But because they were rather Runnagates than men of war, wanting politicke gouernment and militarie discipline, sometime ruling one Prouince, sometime another, they rather wrought spoile and terrour to the conquered Nations, than feare of bondage or subiection, and at last seated themselves beyond the Mountaine *Caucasus*. After, it became deuided into manie principalities, yet so, that the Title and Maiestie of the Empire, remained alwaies to the *Cham*, who (as we said before) tooke the originall of this name from the Great *Changis*.

Fertilitie.

The region for the most part is verie populous, full of townes, rich and ciuill, which you may the rather belecue; first, For that the *Tartars* choosng this for their countrie, beautified it with the spoiles of *Asia*, *China*, and that part of Europe which they harried, and were neuer won or taken from thence againe to this day: next, For that the Prouinces are most commodiously scituated for Traffacke and Negotiation; partly by reason of their admirable plaines, and huge Lakes; (Amongst which are *Cazaia* whose waters are salt, *Guian*, *Dangu*, *Xandu*, and *Catacora*;) & partly by reason of their large Riuer, which with a long course do run by the Prouinces of *Curato*, *Polifango*, *Zaiton*, and *Mecon*. *Paulus Venetus* calleth it *Quion*. A great helpe hereunto likewise is the varietie of fruits, and the abundance of Graine, Rice, Wooll, Silke, Hempe, Reubarbe, Muske, and excellent fine Chamlets. *Paul* writeth, that it affoordeth Ginger, Cinamon, and Cloues, which I can hardly beleue. In manie riuer are found graines of gold. Their coine is not all of one value. In *Kataia* a coine is currant, made of the blacke rinde of a certaine tree, growing betweene the bodie and the barke: this rinde being smoo.

smoothed, rounded, and tempered with a gummie substance, is stamped with the Image of the Great *Cham*. In the Kingdomes of *Caiac* and *Carazan*, certaine sea-fish shels are currant, which some men terme *Porcelline*. This kinde of money is frequent in manie places of *India* and *Ethiope*. By this meanes, the Princes get to themselves all the Gold and Siluer of the Prouinces, which they cause to be molten and laied vp in most safe places, without euer taking anie thing from thence againe. In like sort, *Prester Iohn* is thought to be Lord of inestimable Treasure, while he maketh graines of Salt and Pepper, to passe for currant Coine amongst his subiects. They brew an excellent be-
 reuage of Rice and Spice, which sooner procureth drunkennesse than Wine. As the *Arabians*, so they, delight in sower milke, or *Cosmus*, a kinde of churned sower Mares-milke, verie forcible to turne the braine.

His force consisteth first (as we told you) in scituation, in spacious territorie, in goodly cities, in plentie of prouision, and in rich Reuenues: for amongst other things, he taketh the tenths of Woll, Silke, Hempe, Graine, Cattle, and is absolute Lord of all: but the chiefe sinnewes of his state consisteth in his armed troupes. These liue alway in the field, foure, or five miles remote from the Cities. Ouer and aboue their Sallarie, they are allowed to make profit of their Cattle, Milke, and Wooll. When he goeth to war, according to the custome of the *Romans*, hee mustreth part of that Souldierie, which lieth dispersed thorough the Prouinces. For the most part, all the Nations of the *Tartars*, (except the *Varcheni*) who are not subiect to the Great *Cham*, fight on horsebacke. Their Weapons are the Bow and Arrow, with which they fight verie desperately. They are verie swift, their Tents are made of wouen Wooll, vnder which they keepe in foule weather. Their chiefe-
 fest meat is milke dried in the Sunne, after the Butter is squeezed out; yea, the bloud of their horses, if famine enforce them. They fight not pel-mell with their enemies, but sometime on the front, sometime on the flanke, after the *Parthian* manner, ouer-whelming them, as it were with a shower of arrowes. Whosoeuer carrieth himselfe valiantly, standeth assured of reward, and are graced with honour, immunities & gifts. Twelue thousand horsemen, are appointed for the guard of this Prince, and it is said, that of this kind of force, he is able to leaue a greater power than anie other potentate.

Howsoeuer it be, two things in his Kingdome are worthie consideration: the one is, Numbers, which may be immagined by the spacious-
 nesse of his Dominions: the other, their Discipline, because hee

keepeth them in continuall pay. For as discipline rather than rash valor, is to be wished in a souldiour; so in armies, a few trained and experienced souldiours are more vworth than manie strong and raw bodies. The one may well be compared to Eagles, Lions, and Tygers, vvhich obtaine principalitie amongst other beasts, not because they exceed them in hugeness of bodies (for then should they be a prey to the Elephant, Horse and Bufall) but because they excell them as well in agilitie of bodie, as in courage.

This Potentate the *Moscouite* tearmeth the *Cesar* of *Kataia*, and the Turke *Mu-cha*, that is; the Great Prince. And not without reason, for in magnificence of Court, amplenesse of Dominion, abundance of Treasure, and number of souldiours, he goeth far beyond all the Kings and Potentates of *Asia*, and raigneth in such Maiestie, that his subiects foolishly call him, *The shadow of Spirits, and the Sonne of the immortal God*. His word onely is a Law, wherein consisteth life and death. He maintaineth Iustice with admirable seueritie, except for the first fault; for which, the Offendor is grievously whipped: for euerie other fault, he is cut in pieces by the middle: herein it should seeme, they imitate the opinion of the *Stoiques*, concerning the equalitie of offences. A Thiefe is likewise slaine, if he be not able to repay nine fold, as well for a farthing, as a pound. The first sonne is heire to the crowne, and installed with these Ceremonies. The chiefe of their seauen Tribes; cloathed in white (which is their mourning colour) cause the Prince to sit vpon a blacke Woollen cloath spread vpon the ground, willing him to behold the Sunne, and to feare the immortal God; which if he doe performe, he shall finde a more plentiful reward in heauen, than in earth; if not, that peece of blacke cloath shall scarcely be left him, whereupon to rest his wearied bodie in the field; besides a thousand other miseries that shall continually attend him. Then they set the Crowne vpon his head, and the Great Lords kisse his feete, sweare fealtie, and honour him vvith most rich presents. Then is his name written in golden Letters, and laid vp in the Temples of the *Metropolitan* Citie. Hee hath two Counsels, the one for vvar, vvherein are twelue wisemen: the other, for ciuill affaires, consisting likewise of as manie Councillors. These manage all things belonging to the gouernment, rewarding the good, and punishing the euill, taking speciall care to see those preferd, who haue done best seruice, either in War, or Peace, to his Countrey, or Emperour; and others seuerely punished, who beare themselves carelessly and cowardly in the charges vnto them committed. In these two points (that is in rewarding and punishing) consisteth so high

His Corona-
tion,

high a pollicie of good gouernment, that it may well be said, That the greatest part of these barbarous Princes by these two vertues onely, haue imprinted so maiestically a reuerence in the hearts of their barbarous subiects.

For, what other face of good gouernment see you in the *Turke, Persi- an, Mogor, or Xeriffe*? Whom reward they, but Captaines and Souldiours? Where vse they liberalitie, but in the field amongst Weapons? Surely they built the foundation of their States, vpon no other ground-workes, neither expect they for peace and quietnesse, but by victorie and strong hand: yea they keepe no meane, in disgracing base mindes and Cowards, and in honouring high spirits and valiant souldiours. Neuer was their anie Common-weale or Kingdome, that more deuised to honour and enrich the souldiour, than these *Barbarians*, and the *Turke* more than all the rest. The *Tartars, Arabians, and Persians*, honour Nobilitie in some good measure; but the *Turke* rooteth out all the Families of Noblemen, and esteemes of no man, vnlesse he be a souldiour; committing the fortunes of the whole Empire to the direction of slaues, and men base borne, but with a speciall care of their good parts, and sufficiencie.

Let vs returne to the *Tartar*, and his forme of gouernment. *Astrologians* are in great request in those Prouinces; for *M. Paul* writeth, that in the citie of *Cambula* are fiftie thousand. When *Cublay-Cham* vnderstood by them, that that Citie would rebell against him, he caused another to be built neere vnto it, called *Taindu*, containing foure and twentie miles, besides the Suburbs. There are also great store of Fortune-tellers and Nigromancers in the Kings Pallace of *Xandu*: As also in *China*, they are in high esteeme. *Ismaell* King of *Persia* enterprised few matters without their counsell, and it is no wonder that it is of such repute in those places; For betweene the *Chaldeans* the *Assyrians* it tooke the first Original in those countries. The *Turkes* cannot abide it. The *Roman* Emperours did more than once banish it and the professors thereof, out of their gouernments. I would to God the like might be don amongst vs Christians; for it is nothing else, but a branch of Paganisme.

As part of these *Arabians* inhabit cities, and are called *Moores*; part liue in the fields and mountaines; and are tearmed *Baduin*: so some of these people dwel in cities; as the *Kataians, Bochars, & those of Shamer-cand*: others wander through the plaines, and are deuided into Hords, being five in number, as aforesaid.

Those *Tartars*, who are far situated from the residue, and inhabit
that

that remote *Scithian* promontorie, which *Plinie* calleth *Tabin*, lying vp-
on the fret of *Anian*, are also disperfed into diuers Hords, wandering vp
and downe the cuntry, and are in a manner all fubieft to the Great
Cham of *Cataia*.

Certaine Writers affirme that thefe Hords iffued from thofe ten
Tribes of *Israel*, which were fent into captiuitie of *Salmanaffer* King of
Affyria, beyond the *Caffian* mountaines. In remembrance whereof
vntill this day, they retaine the names of their Tribes, the title of He-
brewes, and circumcifion. In all other rites they follow the fashions of
the *Tartarians*.

Somemen likewise fay, that King *Tabor* came out of thefe parts, to
turne vnto *Iudaisme*, *Francis* King of *France*, *Charles* the fifth, and o-
ther *Christian* Princes; and for his paines in the yeare 1540 by the
commandement of the faid *Charles* was burnt to afhes at *Manthua*.

Turkie.



Vch shares of the Worlds vastneffe hath it pleased the Al-
mightie, to caft into the Lap of this Great Potentate, com-
monly called the *Gran Seignior*; that for wealth Terri-
tories and command of fouldierie, he would haue you to
vnderftand, that all other Princes come fhort of Him; and are terrified,
when his Armies are vnited, to particular deftructions. Compound the
ambiguities by your owne difcretions.

His countries.

For countries, hee poffeffeth *Asia* minor, now *Natolia*, withall the
Regions within the *Propontis* and the *Hellefpont*. Which places
in times paff made the Crownes of Kings to fhine with Gold and
Pearle. As, *Phrigia*, *Galatia*, *Bythynia*, *Pontus*, *Lidia*, *Caria*, *Paphla-*
gonia, *Licia*, *Magnesia*, *Capadocia*, and *Comogena*. Neerer the *Caffian*;
Georgia, *Mengrelia*, *Armenia*; All *Christians* of the *Greeke* Church.
To which, if you adde the Empire of *Trebifond*, you fhall then find him
Great controller of the *Black-sea*. For although *Ruffia*, *Bogdonia*, *Mul-*
davia, and fome *Polanders*, keepe the North and Weft fhores, yet is it, as
a man, who alwaies for feare the theeuers approach, dare not flaken his
guards, for doubt of furprifall.

Next, doth the pride of his Greatneffe fend you into *Affiria*,
Siria,

Siria, Palestine, Mesopotamia, Judea, the three Arabies, the red Sea, Ægypt, and the shores of Africke, as far as the confederation of the Kings of Barbary, Fes, and Marocco. Neither resteth he there, but he can bring you to the towers of Alexandria, and bid you looke North-ward (as far, as is possible) at all the Ilands in the Archipelago, except Candy, and some few other vnder the Venetian.

But is this sufficient? Stay, and answere your selues. The fields of Greece lie wast, and are ashamed to shew forth that disparitie of countenance, which in times past *Thracia, Macedonia, Thessalia, Epirus, and Peloponessus* smiled with in ancient times. Nay more, his Bashawes will bring you to *Buda and Belgrade*, and affright you with *Hungaries* conquest, telling you, that now it knoweth no other Proprietor but the Turke as Conquerour. And concerning the Princes of *Transilvania, Slaunonia, Poland*, and others, with whom he hath contracted a treatie of pacification, they notwithstanding obserue such correspondencie as Wolues and Dogs doe, watching aduantages to prey vpon the harmelless.

His principall Cities are *Trepisond, Amasia, Babilon*, (or rather the Cities. ruines of confusion.) *Tauris*, gotten (if not regotten) from the *Persians*. *Mecha*, famous for the historie and death of *Mahomet*. *Cairo*, once *Memphis*, of late new *Babilon*, now the mirror of heat, dust, sluttishnes, and the mortalitie of 100000. in a yeare, when the Pestilence rageth amongst them. *Aleppo*, the chiefe seate of *Siria*, and *Constantinople*, a Citie exceeding all the Cities in *Europ*, for populous numbers; For it is thought that 700000. soules reside therein, which if it be true, it is well-neere twice as much, as may be said of *Paris*.

Shall I come back againe, and tell you of *Ierusalem, Tirus, and Sidon*? Alas, they are but names; and all the miseries denounced by the Prophets, haue broken their bones asunder, and brused them like a rod of iron. The few cities of *Europe*, the poore harbours, of *Asia*, the port townes of the Ilands, and the two castles of the *Hellespont*, stand vpon no better tearmes. Onely *Aligier* listeth vp the head of a strong castle, protesting a generall entertainment to Pirats, and bragging of the defeature of *Charles* the Emperour.

Now, if you demaund, how from so small a mole-hill such mountaines haue bin raised? know, That in the yeare of grace 1300 did *Othoman* the sonne of *Zichis* step before other families, and (as if he were adopted the darling of successe) in his fathers behalfe, obtained iurisdiction ouer *Bithinia, Capadocia*, and most part of *Pontus*. His successor *Orchanes* conquered the great citie of *Prusia*, and made it the seate of his Kingdome,

done, but in the 22. yeare of his Progresse he was slaine by the *Tartars*, and left his sonne *Amurath* to succeed both in his honor and family; who perceiuing the dissention of the *Greeks*, and diuision of the Empire, spent not his labours without a great satisfaction: for with the water that draue the Mill, he drowued the same, and inuited (as a guest) to this banquet of combats, became Maister of the feast. So he made a conquest of *Galipolis*, *Chersonesus*, *Peloponnesus*, *Hadrinopole*, *Serua*, *Bulgaria*, and *Misia*, but after 23. yeares convulsion of the Grecian glorie, he was stabd with a dagger, and so gaue way to his sonne *Baiazet* to fill the chaire of imperiousnesse. He began well, attaining *Phocis*, *Macedonia*, and had indangered the most part of *Thracia*, had not fortune kept him from insulting, and tript vp his heeles euen in the race of his Triumph. For with the losse of 200000 *Turks* against the valiant *Tamurlane*, he also lost his freedome; and how he died, our Stages haue instructed Mechanicall men: yet in the meane while did *Calephin* his sonne take vp the colours of defiance (and forbearing the reuenges of *Asia*) he wrecked his anger on *Sigismond*, and determined to haue ouer-run the other Kingdomes of *Europe*. But prosperitie was not so attendant, for ere sixe yeares had enlarged the branches of his strange spreading tree, the axe was put to the root, and, as in *Daniels* vision, *Nabuchadnezzor*-like, he fell to the earth. But this stump sprung againe, and *Mahomet* his sonne in imitation of his fathers progresse, let forward his iourney, and wan *Valachia*, *Slauonia*, and infested all the borders of the *Ionian* sea, making *Hadrinopole* the store-house of his proiects; wherein for foureteene yeares he raised vp such ornaments of *Mars* and *Bellona*, that he terrified the Emperour of *Germany*, and all the confederates of *Hungary*. Presently followed *Amurath* the second, who filled vp his Inuentorie with *Epire*, *Ætolia*, *Achaia*, *Boetia*, *Attica*, and *Theſsalonica*, now *Salonica*, subiect to the *Venetians*, with the gulph of *Napoli* adiacent to *Nigropont*. Next him *Mahomet* the second ouerthrew the Schoole of *Athens*, and on a fatal day, the 29. of May 1452. forced *Constantinople*: whereof, when *Corinth*, *Lemnes*, *Mitelen*, *Capha*, (a towne belonging to the *Genois*) and many other Ilands vnderstood, they tooke the course of prostitution, and had some mercie extended. The like part played *Trebisond*, after that, God gaue him leaue to continue thirtie two yeares in pomp and iolitic.

After him, *Baiazet* the second obtained *Naupaet*, *Methon*, and *Dira-chium* from the *Venetians*. Then made he a contract with fortune for the most part of *Dalmatia*, and thought to haue bargained for *Austria*, but the conditions were somewhat too vnreasonable, and an enuious hand poisoned

poisoned his bodie, as ambition had inthrall'd his mind; which was imputed to his sonne *Selimus*, in detestation of his long life, after whose departure, this *Selimus* set forward for the conquest of *Africa*, vniing *Egipt* and *Damascus* to the Empire.

Now behold *Fortunes* wanton, *Soliman* the magnificent, who stepped back againe into *Europ*, and ouer-reached *Belgard*, *Buda*, and *Strigonium*, leauing *Hungarie*, as a sorrowful Mother mourning for the losse of her deereft infants. Yet herewith not satisfied, he besieged *Rhodes*, loading his Camels with the broken *Collossus* therein sometime erected, to which he added the deuastation of the five Churches, and *Inla*. At *Zigoth* he was arrested, with an imperious interdiction from his supreme Commander, and so died. His sonne *Selim* the second liued and reigned, vntill *Cyprus* fell from the *Venetians* 1570. This losse resembled a stone pulled from a ruinous wall, which being loose before, did not much indanger the foundation, which the following battaile of *Lepanto* did somewhat repaire; by the reputation whereof, the enimie euer since hath bin more confident to try Maisterie at Sea. After him, time wrought *Amurath* the third great Lord of Lords, ouer-looking the most part of *Europe*, and the West of *Asia*, more proud of *Sinan Bassa*, and *Cicala*, (the one his Admirall at Sea, the other Visier of his Army) than of the conquest of a Kingdom; because by their industrie the honor of the Empire flourished, and he being a corpulent man, presumed to follow his pleasures, fattning himselfe with all the delights that luxurie and incontinencie could inuent. At last, this lump was extinguished, and *Achmat*, the first of that name; is left at this present to manage the Horses of this Phaëtonicall Chariot.

Let no man therefore wonder at this excesse of Dominion, considering how thirteene of their Princes successiue haue delighted in Armes, and prosecuted Warres in person; a president from the worlds creation not to be matched by any the commanders of the first foure and brauest Monarchies. Thus much for satisfaction of admiration; Now to the forme of gouernment, which is meere tyranical, and different from all other, as guided by the heads, and strengthened by the hands of slaues, who thinke it as great an honor so to be stiled, and so to line, as they doe with vs, who serue in the highest places of Princes Courts. No man is Maister of himselfe, much lesse of his house wherein he dwelleth, or of the field which he tilleth, except certaine families in *Constantinople*, to whom for some good seruice immunitie was granted by *Mahumet* the second. No more suretie hath he of his life (be he neuer so great) longer than *Durante beneplacito* of the grand Seignior, who disposeth

Their gouernment.

disposeth thereof and of his fortunes by no other Rule, than that of his will, For although these great slaues attaine to immensie riches, yet are they but the Collectors thereof for his Treasurie, whether at their deceale it returneth all, except what it pleaseth him to bestow vpon posteritie, who neuer are preferred to eminent place, except (and that of late) yeares and desert plead rising fortunes. In so much that when a Sister or a Daughter of a Sultan is giuen to Wife to a Beglerbeg, the Children begotten on them doe seldome rise aboue the degree of a priuat Captaine, so carelesse are they of Nobilitie, known parentage, kindred, or hereditarie possessions.

These slaues are either the sonnes of Christians, tithed in their Childhoods, Captiues taken in the warres, or Renegadoes, such as haue willingly quitted their Religion and Cuntries, to fight against both, and are to the Christians the most spightfull and terrible aduersaries.

The Iemog-
lans or tribute
children.

These children they call *Iemoglans*, and are brought vp vnder seuerall Tutors in diuers Seraglios, distinguished by Wards, like those in Hospitalls, according to their Seniorities, where all are brought vp liberally, and taught to write, to reade, to handle their weapons, yea, many of them to conuerse in secrets of State.

All of them, thrice euery weeke, within the Courts of their houses learne and exercise some Militarie discipline, rise euery morning before day, wash their bodies in cold water, and then repaire to Church. After they haue performed these duties, they are allowed a small breakfast, and then are they againe to follow their Books, or seuerall dispositions. At mid-day at foure of the clock in the after-noone, and two houres within night, before they goe to bed, they must againe to pray, and hee that is missing at any of these prefixions, is sure to haue many bastinadoes on the soles of his feet. They neuer haue libertie to walke abroad, no not so much as to approach the gates of their Colledge, no nor suffered to speake with any Christian, or Stranger.

Their prefer-
ments.

It should seeme, that they remoue from Chamber to Chamber, according to their Antiquities and Proficiencies. For those of the first Chamber (or Ward) are first preferred, yet not according to Senioritie, but according to the worth of his calling, and the worthinesse of the person. The meanest place that at first these young Gentlemen (for such is their resemblance) attaine vnto, is to attend the grand Seignior in his Seraglio, as a Page, or groome of his Chamber, and those are they that are of extraordinarie capacities and dexteritie of wit, and therefore called to great places of honor and dignitie.

The residue (being alike brought vp in their youths) are either preferred

ferred to be *Chaufes*, *Ianizars*, *Spahcioglans*, and *Silistarspahcis*, or taken into the Port, or Gardens, to seruile drudgeries, and inferior offices, as to fetch Hey, Wood, and such like prouision, for the Stables, the Court, and the Kitchens.

Out of the first ranks come the *Beglerbegs*. The word signifieth A Beglerbeg, Lord of Lords. They were but two, the one of *Greece*, the other of *Natolia*, but now by reason of their many conquests, they are also accounted to be many. Next vnder the *Bassa*, their office is to command all the Horse-men in thoe Cuntries vwherein they are appointed to serue. The *Sanziaks* are Gouvernors of Cities, and Colonels of the foot, and A Sanziak, command all officers of war and peace vwithin their territories.

The *Chaufes* goe on Embassies, and execute commandements: They A Chaufe, are as Pursuants, or vnder-Shiriffes: Attend on the Emperour on Horse-back, and on the courts of Iustice, carrying a vveapon on their shoulders resembling a Mace, and can also sollicite the causes of clients.

These are (as it were the heads) of this imperious gouernment. The hands, are the *Spachi* and *Ianizars*, the maine nerues and supporters of this admired bodie. The *Spachi* are Horse-men, vveaponed for the most part at once vvith Bow, Mace, Lance, Harquebush, and Cemitar, whereof they haue the seuerall vses, agreeing with their fight, flights, or pursuements. Of these there are rekoned to be 32. thousand, the one halfe of them are called *Spachioglans*, and ride on the right hand of the *Sultan* when they are in the field; and the other, are tearmed *Silistarspachies*, and march on the left. Of the *Timarots* in place conuenient. But the *Ianizars* are those that carrie the greatest fame throughout the *Otoman* Empire, both in the Field, the Court, and the Citie, in so much that the *Sultans* themselues haue bin afraid of their insolencies, yet tearme they the Emperour Father, (for no known friend besides haue they to relie on) and he againe in time of vvar committeth his person to their trust, valour, and fidelitie. In the Citie sixteene thousand are said to be continually abiding, vvho are there imployed as Constables for keeping of the peace, and obseruation of good orders: for Clarks of the Market, to looke to the prices and vvholesomnesse of victuals: for arresting of offenders, and vvarding of the Gates. Some are appointed to guard the houses of Imbassidors, or of such particuler Christians, vvho vvill be at the charge, either about the Citie, or in their trauels, towards vvhom they shew themselues both ciuill and faithfull. Notwithstanding amongst themselues (as I said before) they are very insolent and mutinous, in regard of their great multitudes, and many priuiledges, so dangerous is an armed souldier in a rich and peaceable citie. For whereas
their

The *Spachi*,
and their distinctions.

The *Ianizars*,
and their distinguishments.

their first priuiledges were giuen them, for safetie of the Prouinces, as rewards of their abstinence and vertues, as also to reanswere their benefactors confidence. In these dayes their insolencies are become so exorbitant, that they will seldome obey any Authoritie; but by combining themselues together in mutenie, will tirannize the Cuntries committed to their charges in such rude maner, That they seeme not onely to play the Princes ouer the people, but doe also terrifie their greatest Officers.

Their birth-
place.

In them, two properties are to be noted; their birth-place, and training. As concerning their Birth-place, they are not chosen out of *Asia*, but out of *Europe*: for they euer accounted the *Asians* effeminate and cowardly, alwayes more readie to flye, than willing to fight; but the *Europeans*, hardie, couragious, and good men of war. The *Asians* they terme after their owne name, *Turkes*; but the *Europeans*, *Rumi*, that is, *Romans*.

Their training.

As concerning their Training, they are taught when they are young: and therefore no maruell, if, as they grow in age, so they increase in strength, actiuitie and courage: for these three vertues make a perfect souldier. The tithing of springals is made euery third yeare, vnlesse occasion constraine a quicker election; (as it hapned in the *Persian* war) wherein they were forced not onely to make more hast than ordinarie, but also compelled to take vp Turkish *Azamoglani*, which was neuer seene to be put in practise before. When these young lads are brought to *Constantinople*, they are surviewed by the Captaine of the *Ianazars*, who registreth their names, their Parents, and their Countrie, in tables. From thence, some are sent into *Natolia*, and other Prouinces, to learne their law and language; where being nouzeled in the superstitious customs of them with whom they conuers, they turne Mahumetans, before they haue discretion to discerne good from euill. Another sort is distributed into the offices of the *Seraglio*, the third sort (of the fairest complexions, and comliest proportion) are appointed to seruices in the Port of the Grand Seignior. During the time that they are counted *Azamoglani*, they haue no certaine gouernor, nor trained vp in prescript orders, but some are set to keepe gardens, some to manure fields, others to manuell occupations, and to dispatch household busines as aforesaid. At riper and abler yeares, they are called into the schooles of the *Azamoglani*, (for so they are still termed, till they are inrolled in the scroule of *Ianazars*) and then deliuered ouer to prescribed schoole-maisters, who traine them vp in exercises of labour and trauell, allowing them spare diet, and thin clothing. When they are well profited in that profession, whereunto they haue most addicted their minds, then are they inrolled

inrolled either in the roll of the *Ianizars*, or of *Spachie*. For their maintenance the one sort are allowed no lesse than five Aspers, nor more than eight, a day; the other, ten.

Being inrolled for *Ianizars*, immediately they enter into action, to garisons, or to wait in the Port. Their allowance.

In their iournies and expeditions, they count it religious service to spoile the cottages and houses of Christians, who must not find fault with anie outrage: vvhatsoeuer they bargain for, they must carrie it at their owne prices. They are subiect to no Iudge, but their *Aga*, and he neither, can giue iudgement of life and death vpon anie of them, but in cases of sedition and mutinies, and that seldome, and verie secretly. They inioy manie immunities and priuiledges: by reason vvhreeof they are crouched to, and feared of all men. Their licentious libertie.

The election of the Emperour is in their power; for vnlesse they approve and proclaim the election, the instalment and inuestiure is of doubtfull force. Euerie Emperour, comming to the crowne giueth them some donatiue, and augmenteth their pay, so that the more the Emperours, the greater, will be their intertainment. In anie dangerous war, part of them go forth with their *Aga*, or his Lieutenant, but these are the last men that come to blowes. There is not amongst the Turkish honours, an office more subiect to enuie and ieaiousie than this Captainship; for he and the *Begler-beg* of *Greece* may not choose their Lieutenants, but the grand Seignior only: The generall fauour of the *Ianizars* is his assured destruction.

The number commonly is foure and twentiethousand, but in our times they carrie not their wonted reputations, because both *Turkes* and *Asians* are inrolled for *Ianizars*; whereas in former ages none were admitted but the European Christians. Some say 40 thousand.

Besides, contrarie to their custome, they marrie wiues without limitation. By their long residence about *Constantinople* (then the which there is not a more effeminate citie in the world) they are growne vile, base, and men of small service; yea lazie, insolent, and proud aboue measure. It is the receiued opinion, that in their prowesse and discipline consisteth the flourishing estate of this Empire, but the degenerate carriage of these men at this present (as I haue afore related) may affoord vs good hopes, by the fauour of the Almighty, shortly to see an end of their licentious tirannie, as heretofore it hath befallen to the preceding Monarchies.

Besides these *Ianizars*, he hath the *Azapi*, a base Besonio, fitter for the spade than the sword, entertained rather with numbers to tire, The Azapi, properly belonging to the Gallia.

than by prowesse to defeat Armies, opposing them to all dangerous seruices; yea, to fill trenches with their slaine carcasses, and then to make bridges with their slaughtered bodies, for the *Ianizars* to passe ouer to the breaches. And as the *Romans* had their Legions and *Auxiliaries*; the one the flower of their *Chiualrie*, the other as an aide or augmentation; euen so, the Turke accounteth his stipendarie horsemen, or *Timarots* the sinnewes of his armes; the *Alcanzi* (such as hee presseth out of Townes and Villages) *Scar-crowes*, and for ostentation; the *Ianizars* as the *Praterian* Legions, and the *Azapi* as a rabble of Peasants. Being indeed meere hinds, & tied to serue on horseback for certaine priuiledges which they hold, in number about thirtie, or fortie thousand, without allowance of anie pay, saue what they get by spoile and rapine.

The Tartars.

Besides these, he hath at command the *Tartars*, as *Auxiliaries*, whereof there are likely threescore thousand, who liue by spoile, and serue also without pay. In their Marches, they scoure the countrie two daies iourney before: next them follow the *Achangi*, then the *Timarots*, then those few *Azamoglani* that be, and lastly the *Ianizars*. The *Chauses* ride on horsebacke (and carrie Bowes and Arrowes, besides their Maces and Cemeters) after whom followeth the *Sultan*, with the Officers of the Court, and Archers of his Guard; The *Saphies*, as aforesaid incircling the flanks of this braue battaile. The *Pages*, *Eunuches*, and carriages, followed by an other sort of *Auxiliers*, called *Voluntaries*, make the Reare: And these follow onely vpon hope, to be entertained in their roomes of the slaine *Spahies* and *Ianizars*; their Commanders being nothing curious (in these times) to receiue those that be not the sonnes of Christians, into Orders. Thus haue we liuely described his forces at land.

Forces at Sea.

At sea; there is no Prince furnished with better meanes for building of Ships than He, For not only the woods of *Epyre* and *Cicilia*, but also of *Nichomedia* and *Trapezond* are so huge, so thicke, and full of tall Trees, fit for all sorts of buildings, that a man would take the Trunkes falling sometimes by violence of storme, from the bankes of there Woods, into the *Euxine* Sea, to be *Tirremes* already built and framed. They can want no workemen to fit and square this Timber; for vile Couetousnesse hath drawne whole flockes of Christian Shipwrights into their Arsenals. The yeare after his defeature at *Lepanto*, he shewed his Nauie whole and entire, yea, itching to cope with the Christian Armada. Neither can hee want a competent number of Marri-

Marriners : for out of the Gallies which hee maintaineth in *Lesbo*, *Rhodes*, *Ciprus*, and *Alexandria*, and from the hauens of *Tunis*, *Bugia*, and *Algier*, he is able to draw a sufficient proportion of Sea-men and gallie slaues, as often as occasion requireth to furnish his royall armie. The experience hereof we haue scene at *Malta*, at *Lepanto*, and *Goletta*. Of warlike furniture his store is infinite; his ordnance innumerable: out of *Hungarie* he carried five thousand : in *Ciprus* he won five hundred : at *Goletta* few lesse. The siege of *Malta*, wherein they discharged threescore thousand Bullets, may well declare their aboundance of powder and shot: at *Famagusta* they discharged 118 thousand : at *Goletta* in nine and thirtie daies, they rased with their vncessant volies, a Fortification which was fortie yeares in building : in the last Persian war *Osman Bassa* drew after him, five hundred field peeces. Where euer they come, they neuer cease playing with their Ordnance, till they haue laide all leuell with the ground; if that preuaile not, they goe to worke with Spade and Pickaxe; If that faile too, they will neuer giue ouer, till they haue filled the Ditches with the Bodies of their slaughtered souldiours.

They are Lords of three things wherewith they terrifie the whole world: Multitudes of men, vnconquerable: militarie Discipline, (if so at this day) vn corrupted: of Corne and prouisions, store infinite. Multitudes in time past, haue bred confusion, and commonly we haue scene great armies ouerthrowne by small numbers; But the Turkish multitudes are managed with so good order, that although it be far more easie to range a small Armie than a great, yet even in order haue their great armies so excelled our small ones, that I must needs conclude, That they goe far beyond vs both in discipline and numbers; herein giuing place, no not to the ancient Romans, much lesse to anie moderne Nation, how warlike soeuer. And this their due commendation, consisteth not onely in Armes; but in thirst, patience, and hard diet; as for wine, by their Law they are vtterly forbidden it. In the field, euerie ten souldiours haue their corporall, to whom without grudging, they dutifully obey. You shall neuer see Women in their Armies; their silence is admirable, for with the becke of the hand, and signe of the countenance, they vnderstand without words what they are to doe: rather than they will make anie noise in the night, they will suffer their slaues and prisoners to escape. They punish theft and quarrelling extremely. They dare not (for their liues) step out of their rankes to spoile Vineyard or Orchard. They feare not death, beleeuing their

destinies to be written in their foreheads, ineuitable. The valiant are assured of preferment, the cowards of punishment. They are neuer billeted in townes, nor suffered to lodge one night within them. To keepe them in breath & exercise, their Princes are alwaies in action with some neighbour, or other, being verie iealous of the corruption of their Discipline.

The which notwithstanding, either Time, Pride, or the Couetuousnesse of the Great ones hath much impaired. For, in comparison of vvhhat they haue bin, they are now nothing equiualēt to those of other Christian Princes. The Florentine (in despite of him) vvith sixe ships onely hath so kept the bottome of the Straits for these sixe yeares past, that they haue not dared to hazard the Reuenue of *Egipt* by sea; but haue sent it Ouerland vvith a guard of souldiours. And because the Gallies dare not looke vpon such Instruments; And yet the Admirall, supposing it no policie to let them lie vnaffronted, hath done what he may to imploy and incourage the Pirats of *Algier* and *Tunisi*, to vndertake the seruice. And in truth, they haue manie tall ships (the spoile of Christian Merchants) warlikely appointed, yea growne expert in nauigation, and all kind of sea-fights by the wicked instruction of our fugitiue Sea-men, and other Renegadoes. But false men will alwaies deale falsly; hauing no minds to attempt anie enterprise, where the victorie is likelie to prooue bloudie, and the bootie vvorthlesse.

The Royall Nauie is set foorth in the beginning of May, to annoy the enemye, to suppress Pirats, to collect tribute, and to reforme disorders in the Maritime townes. It consists not of about 60 Gallies, which are all that can be spared frō imployēmēt in other places. In October the Admirall returneth from his Circuit: and during Winter the Armada is disperfed, and the Gallies drawne into their drie Stations. Meane time, the Pirats, both Christian and Mahumetan flie out, and rob on the *Egean* and *Mediterran* seas, vncontrolled, more than by the defensive strength of the assailed. Thus is he serued, and thus inabled to maintaine his Seruitors.

Aministration
of Iustice,

For the ciuil and politticke gouernment of these estates, he causeth a Counsell to be holden foure daies in the weeke by the *Bassas*, vvhere-soeuer the Prince sojourneth: if it be in the time of peace, than at *Constantinople*, or in some other towne, according to occasions, within his Dominions: if in War, then it is kept within his Pauillion. In this Counsell called *Dyuan*, where audience is open to euerie suter, first, they consult of Embassaies, and of answeres to be made vnto them; of matters
of

of State, and of Soueraigntie, of the meanes to prouide for decaied or ruinated Prouinces, of Murders and Condemnations. And secondly, adde the Suppliants, Complainers, or Suters, speake without Aduocate or Attorney, and is forced to answer presently to the information of their Aduersarie, if they be present, or otherwise to prooue their accusation by witnesses. Vpon hearing of both parties, iudgement definitiue is giuen, and may not be repealed.

Now as touching his Treasure, It is generally receiued, that he enioy-
 eech little lesse than 15 millions of ordinarie Reuenue. And where some
 men thinke, that out of so large a Dominion a greater Reuenue may be
 raised, therein they deceiue themselves; in not calling to remembrance,
 that the Nation giue their minds to nothing but war, nor take care of a-
 nie thing, but prouision of Armour and Weapons: courses fitter to de-
 stroy and to wast, than to preserue and enrich Prouinces. Whereupon,
 to giue courage to their Armies, and to continue them in the loue of
 warfare, they suffer them to spoile the people, hardly leauing them
 where-with to hold life and soule together. And therefore, the poore
 men, not sure of so much as their household prouisions, much lesse of
 their Wealth, (which by time and industrie they may gather) take no
 more paines about their Husbandrie and Trafficke, than they needs
 must: yea, no more than their owne necessitie, as neere as they can, shall
 enforce them to make cleere at the yeares end. For say they, Why should
 we sow, and another reape? Or why should wee reape, and another de-
 uoure the reward of our labours? This is the cause; that in the *Ottoman*
 Dominions you shall see admirable huge Woods; all things laid wast:
 few Cities well peopled; and especially, the better part of the fields, ly-
 ing vnmanured. An assertion easily and probably to bee proued by
Constantinople it selfe. No object in the world promiseth so much a far
 off to the beholders; and entered, so deceiueth expectation; the best
 of their priuat buildings being inferiour to the more contemptible
 of Ours. And is said, to containe but seauen hundred thousand
 soules, halfe of them Turkes and the other halfe, Iewes and Christri-
 ans; and those for the Generall, Greecians. An estimate neere which
 (as I haue heard) our *London* may affoord. And no wonder. For
 in our Countries by the abundance of people, ariseth the deere-
 nesse of victuals, but in Turkie, through the scarfitie of Inhabitants.
 The greatest number of the Husbandmen perish with carrying pro-
 uision, and other necessities to the remote places, through which, their
 Armies are to trauaile. In their Gallies likewise falleth most common-
 ly so great a mortalitie, that of ten thousand Rowers haled from their
 houses,

Reuenues.
 Ordinarie.
 Besides Tima-
 iors.

houses, scant the fourth part returneth againe. This therather happeneth, because the Turkes in Winter time (as aforesaid) moving their Gallies, do not invre their Sea-men and Gally-flaues to change of aire, and the discommodities of tempestuous seas in all seasons.

The whole trade of Merchandize for the most part is in the hands of Jewes or Christians of Europe, *Epidaurians*, *Venetians*, *Frenchmen* & *Englishmen*. In so large a Territorie as the Turke hath in Europe, there is neuer a famous Mart-towne, but *Constantinople*, *Capha* and *Theffalonica*; In *Asia*, but *Aleppo*, *Damasco*, *Tripoli*, and *Adena*; In *Afrique*; *Cair*, *Alexandria*, and *Algier*.

Extraordina-
rie.

Although the ordinarie reuenues are no greater than aforesaid, yet the extraordinarie arise to a richer reckning, and that by confiscations and presents. For the *Bassaes* and great officers (as *Harpies*) suck the verie bloud of the people, and after they haue heaped vp inestimable riches, for the most part they escheat to the coffers of the grād Seignior. It is reported, that *Imbraim Bassa* carried from *Cair* six milions, & *Mabumet Visior*, a far greater masse. *Ochiali*, besides other riches, had 3000 flaues. The *Sultana*, Sister to *Selim* the 2, receiued daily 2500 *Chechini*, and for the ease of pilgrims and trauellers, (iourning betweene *Cair Meca*,) she began to trench a water-course along the way; An enterprize great, chargeable, and maiesticall.

Yea, to giue you an estimate of his Reuenues, I haue scene a particular of his daily expences, amounting by the yeare sterling, to one million, 968 thousand, 735 thousand, 735 pounds, 19 shillings eight pence, answered quarterly, without default; with the allowance of 492 thousand, 164 pounds, foure shillings, 11 pence; which is for euerie day, 5393 pound, 15 shillings, ten pence; vpon which account, runneth for his owne diet, but one thousand and one Asper a day, according to the frugall custome of his ancestors, amounting in sterling by the yeare, to 2192 pounds, three shillings eight pence. Amongst fife and fortie thousand Ianizars, disperfed through his whole Dominions, euerie one at fixe Aspers a day, is expended 591 thousand, and three hundred pounds. The tribute children far surmount that number, and are allowed one with another, three Aspers a day. The fife Bassaes, besides their ordinarie reuenue, receiue one thousand Aspers a day: and of ordinarie reuenue, the chiefest receiue for his *Timar* or annuities, 60000 ducats, the second 50000 ducats, the third 40000. the fourth, 30000. & the fifth 20000. In Europe he maintaines three *Beglerbeis*, viz: in *Greece* one, another in *Hungarie*, and a third in *Sclanonie*, at a thousand Aspers a day; the fourth in *Natolia*, the fifth in *Carmania* of *Asia*, at like allowance.

wance. The Admirall receiueth 2190 pounds: the captaine of the *Ianizars*. 1950, li. besides his annuities of 20000 ducats by the yeare. The *Imbrabur Bassa* (Master of the horse) receiueth 328, li. his annuities is 15000 ducats. The captaine of *Spahis* or horsemen, receiue 1961 pounds, the *Capigi Bassa* (head Porter) 1414 pounds. The *Sifingar Bassa* controller of the household 263 pound. The *Chaus Bassa* (Captaine of the Pensioners) 262 pounds, 16 shillings, besides his annuities of ten thousand ducats. The residue of the foresaid account is expended vpon inferior officers and attendants vpon the Court, Citie, and Armies, euery man receiuing according to his place and calling (viz:) the maisters of the Armorie, maisters of the Artillerie, Physitians, Porters of the Court and Citie, Archers of his Guard, Seruitors of his Stable, Sadlers, Birmakers, Captaines of Gallies, Maisters, Boat-swaines, Pursers, Shipwrights, and such like.

Where, note by the way; That a Sultanie is equall to the Chechini of *Venice*, and fixe score Aspers amount to a Sultanie.

To raise his Donatiues to a high reckoning, it is a custome, that no Ambassador appeare before him empty-handed; no man may looke for anie office or honourable preferment, if money be wanting: no Generall may returne from his Prouince (or iourney) without presents: and you must thinke, that so magnificent a Prince will swallow no trifles.

The *Vainods* of *Valachia*, *Moldania*, & *Transilvania*, hold their estates by vertue of their briberie, and yet are often changed. For the Estates are giuen to the best Chap-men; who againe to make good their daies of payment, oppresse the people, and bring the commons to extreame povertie. Notwithstanding all this, we haue scene the *Persian* war to haue drawne drie his Coffers, and emptied his Treasures. Not long sithence, both at *Constantinople*, and through the whole Empire, the value of Gold was raised aboue belife; insomuch that a *Chechin* of Gold went for double his value, and the alay of Gold and Siluer was so much abased, that the *Ianizars* finding themselves agreed thereat, brought great feare, not onely vpon the Inhabitants, but also to the Grand-Seignior, in threatning That they would set fire on *Constantinople*. In *Aleppo* fixtie thousand Ducats were taken vp of the Merchants, in the name of the Grand Seignior.

But although his Reuenues are not so great, as the spacious apprehension of so mightie an Empire, may seeme to produce; yet hath he an assistance of greater value than his surest reuenues, and that is, his *Timarots* or stipendaries. For it is the custome of the *Ottomon* Princes,

Report saith,
that this is
again recon-
quered by the
Persian.

to seize on all the land which they take from their enemies; and assigning a small parcell (peradventure none at all) to the ancient Lords, they deuided the residue into Timars, to euerie Seruitor a portion, viz. to euerie one about 24, or 30 Acres of our measure, with seed to sow it; Vpon condition to pay halfe the fruits, the seauenth yeare, and halfe of the twelfth. Herein consisteth the chiefeft preservation of the *Ottoman* Empire; for vnlesse, vpon this consideration, the care of manuring the Land were committed to these Maisters; and they againe, set it ouer vnto others for their profit and lucre, all would lie wast through the whole Empire: themselues affirming; That wheresoeuer the Grand Seignior once tradeth with his horse hoofe, (were it not for this course) there neuer after would grow grasse againe. With these Timars, he also maintaineth a hundred and fiftie thousand horsemen, excellent well armed, and alwaies readie at their owne charges to march whether their Leaders will command them. So great caualrie can no other Prince maintaine, with the yearely expence of foureteene Millions of Gold. Which maketh me to wonder, that some writers comparing the Turkish receipts with the entrado of the Christians, neuer spake word of so huge a member of the Turkish Puissance. It is reported, that in the war of *Persia*, the *Turke* conquered so much land, that thereof he erected 40000 Timars, and a new Exchequer at *Tauris*, from whence he receiueth yearely a million of gold.

By these troupes, the Grand Seignior so aweth his subiects, that they no sooner can stirre, but (as so manie Falcons) these Timarots are presently on their neckes; And this is the drift of this dispersing them thorough the Prouinces. So that one part of them is alwaies readie at the sound of the trumpet, vpon all occasions to march, while the other stay at home to keepe the inhabitants in their due obedience.

With his Treasure his *Bassas* intermeddle not. But two generall Treasurers (or ouer-seers) are chiefe dealers therein; the one, residing in *Romania*, the other in *Natolia*. The *Cadalifquers* haue the administration of Iustice, who assist the *Bassas* in the *Diuau*; Neither doe anie sit there but the twelue *Beglarbies*, the Princes children (being presidents in their fathers absence) And some certaine of the *Cadies*, to assist in matters of Law and difficultie, as is vsed with vs in the Court of Star-chamber.

Administraction
of Iustice.

This Court is holden foure daies in the weeke by the *Bassas*, wheresoeuer the Prince sojourneth: if it be in the time of peace, then at *Constantinople*, or in some other towne, according to occasions within his Dominions: if in War, then it is kept within his Pauillion. In this Counsell

Counsell called *Dinan*, (where audience is open to euerie suter) they consult of Embassaies, and of answeres to be made vnto them; of matters of State and of Soueraigntie, of the means to prouide for decaied or ruined Prouinces, of murders and condemnation. The Suppliant, Complainant, or Suter, speaketh without Aduocate or Attorney, and is forced to answer presently to the information of his Aduersarie, if he be present, or to prooue, or disproue, his accusation by witnessses. Vpon hearing of both parties, iudgement definitiue is giuen, and may not be repealed. When the Counsell hath sitten seauen or eight houres, the *Bassa visier* maketh true relation to the Prince, of all that hath beene handled; if he lie, it is present death. For the Prince often listneth at a window, tearmed *Dangerous*, right against the *Dinan*, being made in such sort, that he may heare, and see, and not be perceiued. Though he be sildome there, yet are they alwaies suspitious. After he hath heard the discourse and aduise of his Counsell, he sildome gaine-faith, but confirmeth or moderateth the same. These things thus ordered, they are written and registred by Officers appointed.

To the management also of the ciuill gouernment, They as the Christians, haue manie seuerall degrees of *Cinillians*, or rather, Churchmen; which is a kinde of Ecclesiastall Law, the professors whereof are all of the Clergie, if I may so terme them. And to the trayning vp of these professors, there are certaine Houses (or Colledges) called *Medresse* in *Constantinople*, *Andrinople*, *Burssia*, and other places, in which they liue, and studie their sciences: wherein they haue nine seuerall degrees.

The first, are called *Saffi*, and are the puisne Students, or Nouices.

The second, are *Calsi*; Readers (or Tutors) vnto the first.

The third, are *Hogi*; Writers of Bookes; for they haue no Printing.

The fourth, are *Naipi*, or yong Doctors, who are not yet so well studied in their Lawes, as to be profound, or absolute Iudges, but yet are of sufficiencie to supplie a Iudges places, in case of absence.

The fifth, are *Caddi*, who are both Iudges, and Iustices, to punish offences. Of this sort, there is one at least in euerie citie, throughout all the Grand Seigniors Dominions, they are distinguished from other men by their high Turbants, being at least two yards in compasse.

The sixth, are called *Mudressi*, who are as Suffragans vnto their Flamins, or Bishops. Their authoritie stretcheth to ouerlooke *Caddies*, and to see that they doe their duties in their seuerall charges.

The

The seventh are *Mulli* (Bishops) and are the principall Church-gouernors next vnto the *Mustee*. Their office is to place and displace Church-men at discretion.

The eight are *Cadelescari*: they are two great and principall Iudges (or Cardinals) the one of *Gretia*, the other of *Natolia*. *Selimus* the third added another ouer the prouinces of *Egipt*, *Syria*, *Arabie*, and part of *Armenia*, equall in authoritie to the former. These sit euery Session in the foresaid *Diuano* amongst the *Bassaes* to determine temporall suits, being (as it were) chiefe Iustices in dignitie and authoritie.

The ninth and principallest is the *Mustee*: Hee commandeth and gouerneth all Church-men (or Iudges) whatsoeuer; and his sentence in matters of law and religion is vncontroulable: yea, the greatest *Bassaws* in matters of law or difficultie refer all to his decision, without appeale. Such is his greatnesse, that he may not abase himselfe to sit in the *Diuano*; neither when he cometh into the presence of the great Seignior will he vouchsafe to kisse his hand, or to vse greater reuerence towards his highnesse, than his highnesse will afford vnto him. And therefore when he entereth the grand Seigniors chamber he will presently rise, and than both sit downe face to face, and so confer. And these be the degrees, and no other, by which the poorest scholler may ascend vnto the highest place of Honor in this Turkish gouernment.

Borderers.

Toward the East, from *Tauris* to *Balsara* lye the *Persians*; Toward the South, and the *Persian* Gulfe, the *Portugals*. Toward the red Sea, *Prester Iohn*. Vpon the West, the *Xeriffe*, and the kingdome of *Naples*; On the North, border the *Polonians* and the *Germans*.

The Persian.

Without all question, the *Turke* far excelleth the *Persian* in militarie discipline: for *Mahumet* the second tooke *Ussuncassun*. *Selim* the first, (and after him his son *Soliman*) defeated *Ismael* and *Tamas*. *Amurath* the third by his Lieutenants took from them all *Media*, the greater *Armenia*, and their chiefe citie *Tauris*. Their batallions of footmen, and the vse of great ordnance which the *Persians* wanted (and knew not how to manage) were the chiefe occasions of these their good fortunes. And although the *Persians* haue sometime preuailed in horse-fights, yet hath it bin alwayes with losse of ground, not to themselues onely, but to their confederates also. For *Selim* the first, tooke from the *Mameluks*, *Syria*, and *Egypt*: and *Amurath* the third, almost extinguished the Nation of the *Georgians*, their surest allies.

The Portugals.

To the *Portugals* he is far inferiour; for in Sea-fights and Sea-forces there is as great inequalitye betweene them, as betweene the Ocean, and the *Persian* Gulfe. The *Portugals* haue in *India* Hauens and Castles, Territories

Territories and Dominions, plentiful in Timber, provision, and all sorts of warlike furniture for the Sea, not without manie great Princes, their allies and confederats: whereas the Turke hath no one place of strength in the *Persian* Gulfe, except *Balsara*. That tract of the sea-coast of *Arabia*, which standeth him instead, hath but foure Townes, & those weake and of smal esteeme, which is sufficient to indure, So that in this Gulfe, as likewise in the Red-sea, he hath small meanes to rigge out anie strong *Armada*. Besides the soile is vterly barren of Timber fit for building of Gallies: for which scarcitie whensoever he had occasion to set forth a Naue, hee was constrained to send downe his stufte from the Hauens of *Bithinia* and *Cilicia*, by *Nilus* to *Cair*, and from thence to conuey it ouer-land vpon Camels backes, to his Arsenall at *Suez*. What successe his fleetes haue had in those parts, may be read in the discourse of *Portugall*: for the *Portugals* take great care to preuent him of setting foote in those Seas, yea, when they but heare that hee prouideth Sea-forces, they presently make out, and spoile whatsoeuer they light vpon.

For Captaines, Souldiours, Armes and Munition, he is better prouided than *Prester Iohn*: for this Prince hath a large Territorie without munition, and infinite souldiours without Weapons: *Barnangasso* his Lieutenant lost all the aforesaid Sea-coast of the Red-Sea, and brought the *Abessine* into such extremitie, that to obtaine peace, he promised payment of a yearly Tribute.

Prester Iohn.

In *Afrique* hee hath a greater iurisdiction than the *Xeriffe*; For he is Lord of all those Prouinces which lie betweene the Red-sea and *Velez de Gomera*: but the *Xeriffe* hath the richer, the stronger, and the better vnited. Neither of them for the neighbourhood of the King of Spaine dare molest one another.

The Xeriffe.

The residue of his Neighbours are the Christians, and first, the King of *Poland*: what either of these Princes can effect the one against the other, hath beene manifest by their forepassed actions. In some sort, it seemeth that the Turke feareth the *Polaques*: For, vpon sundrie occasions being prouoked (as in the reigne of *Henric* the 3, in that war which *Inomia Vassanod* of *Walachia* made with the said Turkes, wherin great numbers of *Polaques* serued) & (in the reigne of *Sigismund* the 3,) notwithstanding the incursions of the *Kosacks*, and the inrodes of *Iohn Zamoschus*, Generall of *Polonia*; he stirred not, neither with wont-like disdain, once offered to reuenge so great an indignitie. Againe, They since the vnfortunate iourney of *Ladislaus*, neuer enterpized iourney against the *Turkes*, no nor at anie time aided the *Walachians* their neighbors, their friends & confederates,

The Polander.

but

but suffered whatsoeuer they held vpon the *Euxine* sea to be taken from them. But the smothering of this wrong I rather attribute to the base mind of their king, than to want of good will, or courage, either in the Gent. or Nobilitie. *Sigismund* the first being by *Leo* the tenth moued to war vpon the *Turke*, answered, Few words shall serue; first make firme peace betweene the Christian Princes, then will I be nothing behind the forwardest. *Sigismund* the second bore a mind so far abhorring from war, that he also neuer made attempt against this enemy, but being injured by the *Moscouite*, he let him likewise doe that what he would, vnreruenged. King *Stephen* a great politician, thought the war of *Turkey* full of danger, notwithstanding discouraging with his familiars, he would often say, that if he had but 30000. good footmen, ioined to his *Polonian* horse-men, he could willingly haue found in his heart to haue tried his fortune with this enemy.

The Austrian.

The Princes of *Austrich* are borderers by a far larger circuit of land than any other Potentate, and being constrained to spend the greatest part of their reuenues in the continuall maintenance of twenty thousand foot-men and horse-men in garisons; they seeme rather to stand content to defend their owne, than any vvay minded to recouer their losses, or to enlarge their bounds. *Ferdinands* iourney to *Buda* and *Possouia* vvvas rather to be counted couragious, than prosperous: the reason vvvas, not because his souldiers vvanted strength and courage, but skill and discipline. For numbers he vvvas equall to the enemy, and reasonably vvell furnished vvith necessaries, but his troups consisted of *Germans* and *Bohemians*, Nations by influence heauie, slow, and nothing fit to match the *Turkes*, skilfull and readie in all vvvarlike exercises.

The Venetians.

The *Venetians* likewise are borderers for many hundred miles space by Sea and land: but they maintaine their estate by treaties of peace, by trafficke and presents, rather than by open hostilitie; prouiding verie strongly for their places exposed to danger, and auoiding all charges and hazard of vvvar, yea, refusing no conditions (if not dishonorable) rather than vvilling to trie their fortune in battell. And the reason is not, because they vvant money and sufficiencie of warlike furniture, but souldiers and proportionable prouisions for one sole State to prouide against so extraordinarie an enemy.

For, if Time hath prooued, that neither the Emperours of *Trapizond* and *Constantinople*, nor the *Sultans* of *Egypt*, nor the puissant Kings of *Persia* and *Hungarie*, haue beene able to maintaine themselves against this enemy; who can but commend this honourable State for their warinesse, and moderne carriage?

For,

For, howsoever of custome, for affectation, or admiration, wee carrie to Antiquitie, wee vse to extenuate things present, and (like old men) wee fashion our selues to extoll the Ages past, and complaine of times: yet if wee will speake without partialitie, wee must needs confesse, that neuer since the worlds first creation in any age, was there found a body of war so politickly deuised, so strongly semented, and so seuerely disciplined, as is this, for greatnesse and powerfullnesse.

Which the effects thereof may well witnesse, with the fortunate successe of continuall victorie. I may not stand heere to recount the extreame diligence and circumspection of *Ottoman*, the first raiser and founder of this Empire; nor the wilie wit and cunning of his sonne and successor *Orchanes*, who first passed his Turkish forces into *Europe*, after hee had taken *Prusia* from the *Greekes*, and subdued *Carmania*: nor yet the wisdome and dexteritie of *Amurath*, in espying of aduantages, and prosecuting of them: Nor will I make any long discourse, to intreat of *Baiazet*, who conquered *Bulgaria*, and destroyed *Bossina*: neither of *Amurath* the second, who in person fought 36. battels, and in all departed Conquerour. And yet his sonue *Mahumet* the second exceeded him, and all before him. Equall to him was *Selim* the first, who in eight yeares razed and extirpated the whole Empire of the *Mamelukes*, defeated two *Sultans*, and adioined to the purchases of his predecessors *Egypt*, *Cerenaica*, and *Siria*, a good part of *Arabia*, and all that which lieth between the *Sirtes* of *Egypt* and *Euphrates*. And more than this, did in a pitched field ouerthrow the *Sophy* of *Persia*. The memorie of *Soliman* is yet fresh, who for Armes, was no whit inferior to his Auncestors, but for grauitie, constancie, ciuill cariage and fidelitie of his word, went beyond them all. He wan the Island of the *Rhodes* from the Knights of *S. Iohn of Ierusalem*, tooke *Belgrade* from the *Hungarians*, with a great part of that Kingdome; and from the *Persians*, *Babylon* and *Dyerbecha*, the two maine fortresses of the Turkish Empire in those quarters. All which, notwithstanding, this honourable State, hauing both before them, and on both their skirts this so powerfull an enemy, couering both Sea and Land with his forces, haue to this day by their prouident wisdome, so gouerned their affaires, that in despite of him, they haue hitherto maintained themselues, not onely in libertie, but also in prosperitie and reputation of greatnesse.

His last neighbour is the King of *Spaine*, between whom there is no great difference, you shall heare the Spaniard say, that the Kings reuenues (they meane those of *Europe* only) exceed the Turkish: for he receiueh more then 4. Millions out of his Prouinces of *Italy* & *Cicill*, two and vpward

vpward out of *Portugall*, and three from the *Indies*, one yeare with another. In these onely, he equalizeth the *Turke*, yea, and in the ordinarie reuennues of *Castile*, *Arragon*, and *Belgia*, he far exceeds him. But what can you finde (say some men) to compare to his *Timars*? First I answer, that as the Kings reuennues are far greater than the *Turks*; so also, his Subsidies, which he leuieth extraordinarily (of late times for the most part, turned into ordinarie, (as his *Croisados*) doe amount to as much as the entire profits of some whole kingdom. His tenths of the spirituall liuings, are able to maintaine one hundred strong Gallies: his escheats in *Spaine* and *Naples*, bring more into his Coffers than a man would thinke. His beneuolences and presents sent him from *Naples*, *Sicil*, *Sardinia*, *Millan*, and the *New-world*, are infinite and magnificent. Not long since, *Castile* graunted a contribution of eight millions of Gold to be paid in foure yeares, which sum amounteth to the *Turks* whole reuenue of one yeare. What should I speake of his Commendums of the orders of *Montegia*, *Calatrana*, *Alcantara*, and *S. James*, which were enough, if he had naught else to suffice him: he is great maister of the said orders, and thereby hath meanes to aduance and enrich his seruants, whomsoever he pleaseth, as freely as if he were King of *France* or *Poland*. Also in *Spaine* he keepeth threethousand good horse-men, and as many in *Flaunders*; in *Millaine* foure hundred men at armes, and 1000. light horse: in *Naples* 1500. men at Armes, and a great companie of light armed *Italians*. The number of his souldierie in *Sicil*, is one thousand five hundreded. Neither are his Feodaries lightly to be esteemed, who vpon necessitie are bound by their Tenures at their own charges, to serue personally in the field, especially if you consider their numbers, wherein are reckoned 23. Dukes, 32. Marquisses, 49. Vicounts, 7. Arch-Bishops, (for they likewise in this case are bound to contribute, as the great Lay-Lords) 33. Bishops. And in *Naples* 14. Princes, 25. Dukes, 37. Marquisses, 54. Earles, 448. Barons, to speake nothing of *Portugall*, *Sicill*, *Sardinia*, and *Millan*. Lastly, you must note, that these troupes to whom the *Turke* graunteth these *Timars*, are not so renowned for their valour, as for their number: For the *Timars* and profits of their villages & possessions, together with the greedie desire of enriching themselves with the demaines of their Farmes, hath bred such loue of ease and peace in their minds, that they are growne cowardly, and base minded; by their good wils hating the trauels of war and iourneyes, and marching with a greater desire of returning home to enioy the pleasures of their Gardens, and the plentie of their Granges, than with stomacks to cope with their aduersaries, or to enrich themselves by hazard. For if by a little
pillage,

pillage, fierce, and valiant souldiers haue become cowards, and men of small seruice, what will faire possessions, a pleasant seate, a rich dairy, and wife and children left behinde, bring to passe? I may well say, and say truely, that these *Timarots* are fitter to bridle and keepe vnder the subdued Prouinces, than to fight in field against armed Nations: and to this vse it is good policie to maintaine them. For who knoweth not that the Turkish subiects doe hate his Gouvernement, his Religion and Tyrannie? For Religion onely, the *Moores* and *Arabians*, who differ in Opinion: and for Religion and Tyrannie, the Christians, who make more than two third parts of his Subiects. For iealousie hereof, he is forced to keepe the greater part of these troops at home, vnlesse he should lay naked his estates to infinite casualties. To speake in a word, his Casualtie is so far and wide dispersed throughout the Prouinces, that they cannot easily be drawne to any famous iourney in great numbers, without losse of long time; Neither are they able to stay long from their houses, but they will fall into diseases and extreamities: so that if the Grand Seignior had no other aides neerer hand but these *Timarots*, he might happen to make very many vnfortunate iournies.

The experience of forepassed exploits, doth well shew the difference of their seuerall forces. The losse of the Spanish Fleete at *Zerby*, may be put in the ballance against the Turkish flight from *Malta*. The losse of *Golotta*, against the taking of the *Rocke of Velez*. *Tunis* is alwayes to be taken at his pleasure, who hath a liking thereto. The Spanish King neuer enterprized any sole iourney against the Turke; but he hath valiantly defended his owne at *Malta* and *Oran*. I will speake nothing of the defeature at *Lepanto*, for other Princes had their shares therein.

A treatie of Truce was mentioned betweene both Princes, not many yeares since, and equally accepted of both parties. For the one was invested in the War of *Persia*; the other, in the commotions of the Low-Countreyes. These Warres, by reason of their remore distances, were extreame chargeable to both Princes, but worser to the King, than to the Turke: for although *Persia* be far from *Constantinople* (from whence the principall sinewes of the War were to be drawne) yet it bordereth vpon *Mesopotamia*, and other subdued Prouinces, from whence his Armies were supplied with prouisions and treasures, but *Belgia* is far distant from any part of the Spanish Dominions. The Turke hath to doe with the Persian (a State without any mightie confederate worth speaking of) but the King was ingaged in a War (of greatest difficultie) fauoured by the English, the French, and the Germanes, Nations seuerally equall in all points to the Persian.

*Of those Countries which the Turks
tearme Romania.*

ANd now that wee haue run ouer the spacious Prouinces of this mightie, rich, and dreadfull Potentate; vve vwill also in some sort to the pleasure of the Reader, relate many the particulars of those good and ancient Regions, vvhich at this day this Saracenicall nation rearmeth by the names of *Romania*, and *Natolia*. *Romania* at this day is taken for that part of Christendome, which was anciently called *Grecia*, and containeth the Prouinces of *Thrace*, with his *Chersonesis*, vulgarly, the straight of *Gallipoli*, *Macedon*, *Epire*, now *Albania*, *Achaia*, now *Linadia*, *Peloponesus*, now *Morea*, and the Ilands of the *Archipelago*.

Vntill the comming of *Cirus*, King of Persia, these Prouinces remained in freedome, but of all others, hee first gaue them the yoake of subiection. After him *Xerxes* the son of *Darius*, with the succeeding Princes of Persia, did no lesse afflict them. When their turne was past, *Phillip* King of *Macedon* acted his part, and vnited them vnder his owne Dominion, vntill the dayes of *Persens*, whom the Rōmans subdued and subiected. But the Roman Empire beeing diuided into the East and West, the Grecians began their Empire vnder *Constantine* the great, and ruled honourably many ages, vntill the descent, first of the *Goths*, secondly of the *Bulgars*, thirdly of the *Sarazens*, and lastly, of the *Turkes*, who slew their Emperour, and seized on the Empire. Who at this day (except some Reliques, remaining vnder the *Venetian* Dominion) possesse the greatest part thereof, as well vpon the continent, as in the Ilands. Those that are vnder the *Venetian* iurisdiction (saith *Bellonius*) little differ, especially in religion, from those that are tributarie to the Turke: for both sorts being mingled, those that are subiect to the Turks, liue like the Turks; and those that liue vnder the *Venetians*, doe, as doe the *Venetians*. So vnspeakable is the rudenes of either, that through all their Cities, you shall not find a schoole to instruct their youth. Promicuously all speake the *Greeke* toong, corrupted from the ancient, but some better than others. The Burghers subiect to the *Italians*, speake *Italian*, as well as *Greeke*, but the *Villagois*, altogether *Greeke*. And so the *Græcians* which are subiect to the Turke, in Cities speake *Turkish* and *Greeke*, the *Villagois* onely *Greeke*, and in places of Trafficke they borrow one from another, according as their businesse is with those, with whom they negociat. And as they differ in language, so doe they in attire.

attire. Those that serue the *Venetians*, goe apparrelled like *Venetians*, those that liue vnder the *Turke*, like *Turkes*. Both the Islanders and those that liue on the continent, aswell in Europe as in *Asia*, although subiect to *Turkie*, keepe their ancient Christian faith. Long ago they reiected the primacie of the Latine Church, and elected to themselves Patriarchs, whom they acknowledge for their chiefe pastors, and haue appointed them their seuerall Seas. Whom not onely the *Grecians* thus obey, but likewise all those Prouinces, which follow the Greeke Church, as *Circassia*, *Walachia*, *Bulgaria*, *Mosconia*, *Russia*, the better part of *Polonia*, *Mongrelia*, *Bosnia*, *Albania*, *Sclauonia*, some part of *Tartarie*, *Siria*, *Croatia*, and generally all the Prouinces about the *Euxin* sea. In number they are foure, viz: the Patriarkes of *Constantinople*, *Alexandria*, *Ierusalem*, and *Antioch*.

Of these, the Patriarke of *Constantinople* is Primate; sitteth in *Constantinople*, and chiefly moderateth ouer the *Caloieri* (so are the Greeke Priests termed) which reside in Mount *Athos*, and generally ouer all Christians, professing the rites of the Greeke Church throughout Europe; and for the Monasteries of Mount *Athos*, and all other, dispersed ouer Europe, he payeth the *Turke* yearly 12000 ducats.

Patriarkes of Constantinople.

The Patriarch of *Alexandria*, moderateth in *Egipt* and *Arabia*, and his dwelling place in *Memphis* and *Cair*, are not much inferior to his of *Constantinople*.

Of Alexandria

The Patriarch of *Ierusalem*, absolutely moderateth in *Iudea*, and ouer all professors of the Greeke religion throughout *Siria*. And must of necessitie euerie yeare, on the fifteenth day of August, say Masse in the Monasterie situated vpon Mount *Libanus*.

Of Ierusalem.

The Patriarch of *Antioch* precedeth in those Monasteries and Greeke Churches, which are in *Beritus*, *Tripolis*, *Alepo*, and other places of *Asia*. And in these places, as in all other, the *Turke* permitte the *Grecians* to vse their consciences freely, so they performe their due and accustomed tributes.

Of Antioch.

A Nation no lesse scattered than the *Iew*, but infinitely more populous; three parts of the Inhabitants of all *Greece* and *Romania* being *Grecians*; besides those who dwell in the Islands of the Mid-land sea, *Propontis* and *Egeum*. Infinite numbers there are of them also in the lesse and greater *Asia*, and in *Africa* not a few. A people once so excellent, that their precepts and examples do still remaine as approved Canons to direct the mind that affecteth vertue. Admirable in Arts, and glorious in Armes, famous for Government, and passionat affectors of freedome: but now drowned in ignorance & contented flauerie, hauing

(as it should seeme) vtterly lost their minds with their Empire. So base, as to be imagined; that they had rather remaine as they be, than indure a temporarie trouble to redeeme their pristinate estates; delighting in nothing but in ease, in shades, in dancing and drinking.

Thrace.

Thrace hath on the East, the *Euxine Sea*, the *Thracian Bosphorus*, *Propontis*, and *Hellepont*: on the North, the Mount *Hemus*, vpon the West, the higher *Misia*, and part of *Macedon*, on the South, the *Archipelago*. It is a most Noble Prouince, cold, plaine, and admirable populous, stored with graine, pulse, and excellent Wine, towards the Sea-side: but towards the vpland (lying more subiect to cold) it is not so fertile nor wooddie.

In it stands manie goodly cities: *Philipopolis*, *Nicopolis*, *Hadrianopolis*, and amongst manie other, *Constantinopolis*, by Heauen erected to be the head of an Empire; as the onely seate which the Romans, Greekes, and now the Turkes, haue chosen and reputed to be most commodiously seated, not for the gouernment only of the Empire but as they conceipt of the whole world.

Gallipolis.

Gallipolis, is another famous portion thereof: I will not stand to describe these trivials, yet is it a place of great moment, and therein resideth a Gouvernor, or Lord Admirall, without whose license no ship of what cuntry soeuer may passe the straight, but he must there cast Anchor at least for three daies, vntill the Turkes haue made full search, whether they transport anie slaues or prohibited wares by stealth, or no.

Macedon.

Next followeth *Macedon*, a fertil region inclosed with hils, and neere the *Ionian sea*, plaine and wooddie. That it was once the Empresse of the East, it is well knowne, but at this day, it is Turkish, and without anie famous cities, saue in a peece of *Albania*. In it, is nothing memorable but the Mount *Athos*, or the holy Mount. It is 75 miles in compasse, three daies iourney long, and halfe a daies iourney broad, resembling the shape of a man lying with his face vpward, whose highest Cone, alwaies couered with snow, is seene thirtie miles off at Sea. It is exceeding fertile in Grasse, Fruit, Oyle, and Wine. Long ago it was dedicated in honour of Saint *Basill* to the Greeke *Caloier*, and endowed with priuiledges, which at this day, it enioyeth by the Turkes good fauour, that is to say, that no man neither *Graecians* nor *Turke* may inhabit in this place, except he be a Priest. So that their number in these daies are about six thousand, dispersed into 24 Monasteries, ancient and warlike, so built for feare of Theeues and Pyrats, although there be no such great cause. In these Monasteries are manie relickes, which cause great concourse of people, and they are stately built, and richly adorned.

This

This hill is in as great request with the Gracians for their Sanctimonious strictnesse of life, as is *Rome* with the *Latines*; yea, the *Turkes* themselves do send hither manie bountifull almes. None of them liue idely, but must doe somewhat, and so doe daily for the oeconomique of the house; as to dresse Vines, fell Timber; yea, to build ships, and such like mechanicall labours. They are poorely clad, like Hermits, neither weare they shirts of Linnen, but Wollen; and them they spin, and sow themselves, neuer giuing themselves to studie: and that more is, manie of them can neither write nor read. And yet notwithstanding, if anie man haue occasion to iourney by their houses, hee shall, if he please, finde vyands scotfree, according to his calling.

Epire, now *Albania*, was once a verie famous Prouince, as witnesseth *Epirus*. *P. Amilius*. It had in it seauentic cities, now destroyed, and turned into ruines, or Villages, meanly inhabited. For the most part, it is wooddie and barren, but nere the sea, fertile and adorned with verie beautifull hauens.

Achaia is a verie goodly Region, as may be gathered by the goodly *Achaia* cities, which therein once flourished (viz:) *Delphos*, *Thebes*, *Athens*, *Megara*, and manie mo, now destroyed.

So is *Peloponesus*, reamed by *Plinie* the bulwarke of *Greece*. It yeeldeth all things that man can desire either for life or pleasure. And although the ancient cities be now defaced, yet is it, for quantitie, the best peopled part of *Greece*. It is now vnder the *Turke*, and counted the best *Sangiak*-ship in *Turkie*, as bound to bring at the commandement of the *Beglerbeg* of *Greece*, 1000 horsemen vnder his owne pay. It is worth yearly foureteene thousand Ducats. The Islands adioyning vnto these large continents, I will not discours of: for as they are diuers in worth and estimation, so are they manie in number, and (for the most part) not worthie relation.

Dalmatia, is at this day diuided into *Sclauonia*, *Dalmatia*, and *Albania*. *Sclauonia* lieth vpon the West, *Albania* vpon the East, and in the middle, *Dalmatia*. In all fertilitie it is as good as *Italie*. Of a Countrie first wasted by *Cesar Augustus*; second by the *Gothes*; thirdly by the *Turkes*, and at this day shared amongst three such Lords, as are the *Venetians*, the *Turke*, and the Emperour; it may be said to be reasonable well inhabited. And so it is hauing manie fine Cities in it, as *Iadera*, *Ragusa*, &c. Howbeit, that part which is subiect to the *Turke*, lieth almost desart, by reason of their continuall inrodes.

Bossina, or *Mesia superior*, is also a parcell of *Illiria*, and erected into

Seruia.

Bulgaria.

Valachia.

The reason of
the defolation
of these Coun-
tries.

into a Turkish *Beglerbeg-ship*, hauing vnder it nine *Saniaks*. *Seruia* now *Rascia*, lieth betweene *Bosnia* and *Bulgaria*; it was taken by the Turke 1438. and reduced into a *Saniak-ship* vnder the *Beglerbeg* of *Buda*. *Bulgaria*, which some take for the lower *Mesia*, is so famous a Prouince, that the Turkish Emperour hath erected it for the chiefe Seat of the *Beglerbeg* of *Europe*; vnder whose commaund are twentie and one *Saniaks*.

Valachia, containeth the two Prouinces of *Moldania* and *Transalpi-na*. *Valachia* is a plaine and fertile Countrey smally inhabited, and destitute of fire-wood; but stored with excellent Horse, Cattle, and Mines of Gold and Siluer, if the people durst dig them for feare of the Turks. It is 500. miles long, and 120. brode. It hath one Archbishop, and two Bishops, and is more populous than *Moldania*. They speake both one language, being almost halfe Italian. This Countrey and *Moldania* are plagued with three bad neighbours, viz. the *Turkes*, the *Tartars*, and the *Cassoks*. They follow the Greeke Church, and in matters of Religion obey the Patriarch of *Constantinople*. They are the same which in auncient times were called *Daci*. The Turks haue often attempted with their mightiest powers to haue made a finall conquest of these Prouinces, but they haue hitherto bin valiantly resisted, and repulsed, partly by the *Natiues*, and partly by the *Polonians*, *Transiluanians*, and the *Cassoks*, in dislike of each others bad neighborhood. Yet is it tributarie to the Grand Seignior, and payeth him yearly twentie foure thousand *Chechini*.

Moldania, being in a manner round, is almost 300. english miles ouer euery way. It hath two Archbishopsricks, and two Bishopsricks, and is exceeding fertil in Corne, Wine, Grasse, and Wood. It offordeth great plentie of Beefe and Mutton, and therewith feedeth *Polonia*, a great part of *Germanie*, & the populous citie of *Constantinople*. A great and fat Oxe in this Countrey is valued but at thirtie shillings, a Sheep, at three shillings. The tenth whereof (which of dutie is yerely paid to the Prince) amounteth to 150000. The Clergie and Gentie (for they alwaies can make best shift for themselves) contribute no parcell hereof. It hath a small River passing through the Countrey, and falleth into *Danubius*, neere vnto *Gallatz*, called *Pruta*, the water whereof (as also of *Danubius*) is vnwholsome to drinke, for it causeth the body to swell. In 1609. certaine English Gentlemen traouelling 240. miles in this Countrey, could meet but vvith nine Townes and Villages in all the vvay, and yet for aboue a hundred miles space together, the Grasse groweth at least one yard high, and rotteth euery yeare vpon the ground for want of Cattle
and

and manurance. On the East, it hath the Black-sea, on the West *Podalia*: On the North, the *Tartars* & on the South, the *Danubie*, and the countrie of *Bulgaria*: It paieyth yearly vnto the Great Turke by way of Tribute 5200 Chechini, besides one thousand horses, sent yearly vnto *Constantinople* for a present, from both these Princes, of *Moldania*, and *Valachia*. It also paieyth tribute to the *Polander*, but how much, I cannot shew you.

Therein dwell many *Armenians*, *Iewes*, *Hungarians*, *Saxons*, and *Ragufians*, vvhofor stall the vvhole Traffick in those parts, bartering their Corne and Wine into *Russia* and *Polonia*, and their Skins, Wax, Honie, powdred Beefe, Butter and Pulle, into *Constantinople*. The Malmtey likewise which is transported out of *Creet* into *Poland* and *Germany*, is carried through this Countrey, vvhwhereof the *Vainod* receiueth a masse impost.

*Of those Countries which at this daie the Turkes
tearme Natolia.*

THat which the Turkes at this day tearme *Natolia*, or *Turcia maior*, once *Asia minor*, comprehendeth the Prouinces of *Pontus*, *Bithinia*, *Asia* it selfe, *Licia*, *Galacia*, *Pamphilia*, *Cappadocia*, *Cilicia*, and *Armenia* the lesse; and in these Prouinces of ancient times flourished the States and Kingdomes of the *Troians*, of *Methridates*, of *Cressus*, of *Antigonus*, of the *Paphlagonians*, of the *Galathians*, of the *Cappadocians* and *Phrygians*: All which at this day are not sufficient to satisfie the onely ambition of the Turkish tirannie. The Inhabitants for the most part are *Mahumetans*, and naturall Turkes, of simpler natures than the Turkes of Europe, and nothing so cruell as the Renegado Christians. Yet are there manie Christians among them in manie of these Regions, following the Rites of the Greeke Church. Among these Turkes, there is no acknowledgement of superioritie, Bloud or Nobilitie, but all are equall slaues to the Grand Seignior, ouer whom he appointeth *Beglerbegs* and *Saniaks*. They are either a kinde of idle or loftie people, for they are smally industrious, and were it not for their slaues, their grounds would generally lie vnmanured.

Pontus and *Bithinia* are now vnited vnder one name, and called *Bursia*. Here once raigned the great King *Methridates*; and here stood the famous Cities of *Chalcedon*, *Nichomedia*, *Apamia*, *Prusia*, *Nice*, and *Heraclea Ponti*.

Pontus, Bithinia, Bursia.

358 *Turkie. Asia minor. Caramania. Amasia. Cilicia. Lib. 4.*

Asia minor.

Asia propria, now *Sabrun*, is the peculiar Prouince of *Asia minor*, and containeth in it manie famous Prouinces, as *Phrigia maior*, & *minor*, *Caria*, *Misia*, &c. In *Phrigia minor* stood that Noble citie of *Troie*, famous at this day (saith *Bellonius*, an eie witnesse) for its verie ruines of wals, gates, circuit, and marble sepulchers, found vpon the waies without the wals.

Caramania.

Panophilia now *Caramania*, is one of the old seuen *Sengiak-ships* of *Turkie*, and yeeldeth 8000 duckets of yearely reuenue. In this countrie, as also in *Cilicia*, are wouen those fine clothes which we cal *Chamblets*, watered and vnwatered. They are made of the haire of Goates so fine and white, as no Silke can surpasse them in those two properties.

Capadocia, on Amasia.

Cappadocia, now *Amasia*, is a goodly countrie, and the seat of the Turkes eldest Son. In it are manie goodlie cities, as *Trapezond* once the seat of the *Commeni*, Emperors of *Trapezond*, whose Name & Progenie, *Mahumet* the second vtterly extinguished.

Cilicia.

Cilicia now part of *Caramania*, is a good countrie: the inhabitants are giuen to pasturing of Goates for lucre of their fleeces, of which they make their *Chamblets*; but otherwise, neither giuen to Fishing, Navigation, nor Husbandrie. At the foot of Mount *Taurus* (saith *Bellonius*) are diuers small Villages, and excellent pastures about them, which for the fertilitie thereof should seeme to be one of the Turkish Races: from thence, he culleth out euerie yeare 600 horse of seruice, which they highly esteeme, and name *Caramanni*.

Armenia minor.

Armenia minor, is a better soile, and more populous than *Cappadocia* and round about incircled with tall, huge, broken, and woodie mountaines.

Arabia Triplex.

THe three *Arabiaes*, are likewise a parcell of this Empire, which is a maruellous great countrie, included betweene two huge bosomes of the sea, in manner of a *Peninsula*, viz: vpon the West and East, with the *Arabian* and *Persian* gulfes, vpon the South with the Ocean, and vpon the North, with *Syria*, and *Euphrates*.

The Inhabitants are indifferently called *Arabians*, *Saracens*, or *Moores*: Those are the true *Arabians* which liue out of Cities in Tents, dispersed ouer *Syria*, *Agipt*, and *Affricke*: these giue themselves to feed cattle, and droues of Camels. Those which inhabite Cities, are called *Moores*, and were once of such puillance, that they not onely subdued

dued *Syria*, *Persia*, and *Trogloditica*, but likewise *Egipt*, a great part of *Afrique*, and almost all *Spaine*, with the Island of *Sicill*, and the Kingdome of *Naples*.

Two hundred yeares they kept possession of these peeces, but of some part of *Spaine*, 700 euen vntill the daies of our Fathers. And further, this accursed generation at this day, is not onely spread ouer all the Southerne coast of *Asia*, (viz:) *Persia*, *East India*, and the Islands of the *Indian Sea*, but are likewise aduanced with great prosperitie vnto diuers wealthie Kingdoms, famous Cities, and worthie Mart-townes, yea, ouer all the South-coast of *Afrique*; Vnder this people, the *Turkes* were first called into *Asia* to beare armes.

Of their manners, we haue spoken elsewhere. In their Religion they are *Mahumetans*, for in this Countrie that false Prophet first opened his superstitious Wardrob.

This is a vast Countrie, full of Desarts, yet well inhabited with populous and warlike multitudes, especially toward *Euphrates*, and the Mountaines of *Arabia Felix*, whether Merchants resort. The residue towards the West, is sandie, by which, if a man be to trauell, he must haue the Starres to his guide, companie for his safegarde, and prouision for his diet: Otherwise he shall surely loose his way, surrender his goods to the theeuish *Arabes*, or starue in the Desart for want of food.

To secure the which passages, aswell against those, who liue on the side of *Euphrates* towards *Egipt*, as through, all *Arabia* (*Petrea* & *Deserta*) the Grand Seignior intertaineth the king of those *Arabians* which inhabit *Mesopotamia*. And, for this his seruice, as a Turkish Saniak hee holdeth *Ana* and *Dir*, two townes scituated vpon the said riuer. He is a poore King, but accompanied with 10 or 12 thousand beggerlie subjects, liuing and lying in tents of course blacke Hair-cloth: which forces notwithstanding, these wilder ones are so infinit in multiudes, and so vnpossible to be brought vnto a more ciuiller manner of liuing; That for their danger toward strangers, and the continuall spoiles vvhich they commit vpon those parts of the *Turkes* Dominions, vvhich euerie way border vpon them, Necessitie inforceth him also to maintaine two other garrisons; the first of 12000 in *Cairo*, the other of 1500 in *Damasco*.

Wherein it is to be noted; That sithence those of *Damasco*, doe not only defend that peece, but are also distributed, through other cities of *Soria* (as *Aleppo*, *Anriochia*, and *Ierusalem*) 1500 men were not able to sustaine and answere to such a charge, vnlesse by being both *Ianizars* and *Timarots* also, they haue manie followers and attendants. Who (as elsewhere I haue shewed you) are not onely mightie in reputation, and

powerfull in number, but also euerie yeare accustomed to spare and cull out strong troupes, vvarlikely and pompeously prouided to send into *Hungarie*.

For, surely without this order, all the passages of the *Carauans*, which yearely come from *Balsara*, and the Red-sea, vvould become so infecti-ous, that neither *Bagdet*, nor *Damasco*, could receiue the commodities of those parts, to the annuall losse of two millions of Entrado to the grand Seignieur.

Amongst these it vvvas that Sir A. S. trauelled, and found them so well gouerned, that vvithout anie vvrong offered, he passed through them all in such peace, as he could not haue done, being a stranger, amongst ciuiller bred people. The King gaue him good words, vvithout anie kind of barbarous wondring, or other distastfull fashion. But at his re- turne to the riuer, hee found the Maister of his House, Maister of his Boat, accompanied with a great sort of *Arabs*; who in conclusion, *volens nolens* forced him to send his Maister three versts of cloth of gold, as a present for beholding his person.

Arabia Petrea.

Towards *Syria*, this is somewhat fertile, yet smally commended for that propertie by the Ancients; for indeed, it is exceeding barren, and wanteth necessarie sustenance, wood, and fresh vvater. The memorable things herein are, the Mountaines of *Sinai* and *Oreb*, vpon the former vvhereof, is at this day builded a Monasterie of Christians, following the Greeke Church, and the onely receptacle (or Inne) for wayfaring Christians: other place of reliefe is there none.

Arabia Fœlix.

Arabia Fœlix is a verie large Prouince, better manured and watered than the other. It is adorned with Noble Cities, and full of villages; especially towards the sea side, where are manie excellent places of trade. The residue except the sand, is made manurable, either for feeding of Cattle or Camels, in which places liue infinite swarmes of diuers Nations, by grazing and husbandrie. It bringeth forth whatsoeuer will grow in India, and that twice a yeare, in abundant manner, besides *Casia*, *Cinnamon*, *Mirrhe*, &c. and soly, as much *Frankinsence*, as will serue all the world. It yeeldeth also mettall, & excellent pearle al along the coast by fishing. It sendeth abundance of horse and theepe into *India*, whose tailes waigh fortie pounds. In it are manie famous cities, as *Medina Talnabi*, *Mecca*, *Zidem*, *Zibit*, and *Aden*.

This citie of *Aden*, together vvith the vvhole Countrie, was in the yeare of our Lord, 1538 fraudulently surprized by the Turke, and their King hanged. It is now strongly fortified, and erected into a Stately Turkish *Beglerbeg-ship*.

Tur-

Turcomania, in times past, a part of the greater
Armenia.



Turcomania comprehendeth no small portion of *Armenia* Scituation.
maior: what remaineth is accounted in *Georgia*. Vpon
the North lieth *Colchis*, (now *Mangrellia*.) Vpon the
West *Euphrates*, and the lesse *Armenia*, vpon the East
that remainder of the greater *Armenia*, which is counted in *Georgia*;
Vpon the South *Mesopotamia* (now *Dierbechia*) vvith the people
Curdi. It is inuironed vvith Mountaines, and beautified vvith
plaines, amongst the vvich *Periander* (now *Chalderan*) *Antitau-*
rus (now *Mons-niger*) are most renowned. It is generally exceeding
fertile, and stored vvith Cattle, but maruellously subiect to deepe
snowes.

The people by Nature are much giuen to theft and spoile, as discen- Nature of the
ding from the *Tartars*, and so at this day lead their liues, liuing in Tents people.
and Houels attending and pasturing their cattle: Yet some of them in-
vre themselues to tillage, and Mechanique Trades, in weauing of
Chamblers, and Hangings, vvatered and vnwatered: of the like quali-
ties are the *Curdi*, and some suppose that these *Curdi* inhabit the ancient
Seats of the *Chaldeans*, wherupon it is called at this day *Curdistan*, by the The Curdines
Turks & *Persians*, but by the *Arabians*, *Kelaan*, that is to say; *Chaldea*.

Georgia, by the Barbarians, rearmd *Gurgistan*, comprehendeth the Gurgistan, or
ancient *Iberia*, vvith part of the greater *Armenia*, and peraduenture Georgia, in
Atropatia. Vpon the West lieth *Mengrelia*, vpon the North, *Zuiria* times past,
(once *Albania*) vpon the East, the middie *Atropatia* (now *Siruan*) vpon Iberia.
the South, that part of the greater *Armenia*, which now is called *Tur-*
comania.

For the greater part it is couered with Mountaines, Woods, and
thickets, and in that regard inconquerable, for the difficulties of the
mountainous passages. It is notwithstanding fertile, and adorned with
manie large plaines and vallies, from vvhence arise manie famous Ri-
uers, as *Cirus* and *Araxis*, springing from the Mountaine *Taurus*, and
running thorough the whole Prouince, vntill at last, it disgorge it selfe
into the *Caspian*.

The Inhabitants are rearmd *Georgiani*, of S. *George*, whom they
aduow their Patron and Aduocate. For they are Christians, accor-
ding

ding to the Greeke Church, with some small difference. They are very populous and warlike, strong of body, and valorous in fight, euen vntill our times, maintaining their libertie in the midst of the Mahumetans, sometimes following the fortunes of the *Turkes*, sometimes of the *Persians*. But at this day, they haue not onely lost their wonted libertie, but also many Forrests and Cities, as *Testis*, *Lori*, *Clisca*, *Gori*, and *Tomanis*, and withall, some of them haue imbraced the Turkish infidelitie.

Palestine, or the Holy Land.

P*alestine*, is one of the most excellent Prouinces of *Siria*, as well in regard of habitation, as of many famous actes done therein, and celebrated in holie Scripture. Vnder the generall name whereof are comprehended *Idumea*, *Iudea*, *Samaria*, and *Galile*. Anciently it was called *Canaan*, of *Chanaan* the son of *Cham*, whose posteritie deuided the Land amongst them, and vnder that name it continued vntill the inuasion of the *Israelites*, who called it after their owne denomination, *Israell*.

It was also called *Philistim* of the *Philistians*, once a powerfull and mightie people: after that, the *Land of Promise*, and now lastly, *The holy Land*.

Situation.

It is scituated betweene the *Arabies* and the mid-land Sea Northerly vpon part of *Phenicia*; East-ward, vpon *Libanus*; South-ward and South-East vpon *Arabia*; and Westward, vpon that part of the *Mediterran*, which is tearmed the *Syrian*, and *Phinician* Seas.

From the very beginning (as witnesseth the holie Scripture) it hath beene a most famous Prouince, and afterward more renowned for the Birth, Myracles, and Passion of our Sauour Christ. Distant from the line 31. degrees, and extending vnto 33. and some-what vpward. So that in length frō **Dan*, vnto **Beersheba*, it containeth no more than one hundred and fortie miles; where brodest, not fiftie. A Land that flow-
ed with Mlike and Honie; Adorned with beautifull mountaines, and
luxurious vallies, the rocks producing excellent waters, and no part
emptie of delight and profit. The aire verie temperate, and the bodies
of men healthfull, and patient of labour.

* Now Caefaria
Philippi.

* Now Gibelin.

The ancients will haue it to be scituated in the midst of the world, where it is neither pinched with extremitie of cold, nor vexed with ouer-much heate. And therefore the *Israelites* say, *This to be the land which God promised vnto Abraham*.

For

For scite, it is very pleasant, for plaines and hills no lesse delightfome, rich in diuers sorts of Manufactures, and well watered. Where, although it raine but seldome, yet was the soile barefull, and that by testimonie of Scripture, auerring it to be a Land excelling all other in goodnesse and fertilitie.

So that their graine was most delicate, their encrease abundant, and their Roses most sweet. Rue, fennell, and sage, and such like Pot-herbs it brought forth of it's owne accord. Oliues, Figges, Pomegranets, and Palmetrees are very frequent, with some store of Vines. For, although the *Saracens* are forbidden the drinking of Wine, yet make they abundance thereof, and very good, for the vse of strangers, dwelling in the Countrie. They make three haruests, yet haue they neither Peares, Apples, Cherries, Nuts, nor any other fruits common with vs: these are brought them from *Damascus*. Some fruits, as Oranges, and the Apple of Paradise, they haue and preferue vpon the trees all the yeare long. It did once yeeld Balme, not now; but is stored with Honey, and Sugar Canes; so is it with Goats, Swine, Hares, Partridges and Quailes, as also Lyons, Beares, and Camels. And in many places so pestred with Rats and Mice, that if it were not for certaine Birds deuouring those Creatures, it were impossible to haue any Haruest.

Iordan runneth through the middest of the Countrie, whose water is *Iordan*. most delicious, and therein strangers are accustomed to wash themselves. In it's course, it maketh two lakes, the one in *Cana of Galilie*, the other, at *Tyberias*, which is called *Genezareth*, and at last, disgorgeth it selfe into the *Mediterran Sea*. Vpon the bankes thereof grow *Withies*, *Tamarisk*, and many other sorts of shrubs and weeds, of which the *Arabians* make their darts, weapons, launces, and writing pens.

The former of these two lakes, is especially filled, vwhen the Snowes dissolue and runne from *Libanus*. In the Summer it is drie, and bringeth forth abundance of shrubs and flags, wherein Lyons, and diuers vvild beasts do shroud their carkasses. The Lake of *Genezareth* runneth most cleerely, and yeeldeth diuers sorts of fish, as Carps, Pikes, &c.

It is not so broad, but that a man may see from one side vnto the other, as consisting of sixteene miles in length, and six in breadth. The plains round about are barren for the abundance of bushes, which hinder the husbandman from manuring the ground. Yet the *Iewes* industrie doe much amend it, and dwell about the bankes thereof for the fishing sake.

Mare-mortuum, otherwise the Lake *Asphaltites*, so called of his bituminous saour, vvas a place once vvooddy and full of salt pits, vvwhich
for

for the pleasantnesse thereof was resembled to *Paradise*; and therein stood *Sodome*, *Gomorrhah*, and the three other Cities, which for their sinne against Nature, were therein drowned and burnt by the doome of God. At this day it sendeth forth smokes and fogs as from an infernal furnace, wherewith the whole valley adiacent for halfe a daies iourney is made barren. It neither yeeldeth Fish nor Foule, and vvhatsoeuer creature is cast therein, though bound hand and foot, it swimmeth on the face of the water.

Forces.

The land vvas once most populous, as appeareth by the muster of *Dauid*, vvhich numbred thirteene hundred thousand men, able to beare armes, besides the Tribe of *Beniamin*. As long as they continued their vpright and religious obedience to the seruice of God, the Land prospered, but as soone as they forgot God, they suffered many miseries, and those perpetuall, vntill they vvere cleane destroyed; and forced to flye euery vway. For to speake nothing of ancient time, the 73. yeare after Christ, *Ierusalem* was taken and destroyed by *Titus*, vvvith the slaughter and captiuitie of infinite thousands. In the yeare 136. it vvas restored by *Ælius Adrianus*, new-named *Ælia*, and giuen in possession to the Iewes. In the time of *Constantine*, and *Helena* (his mother) it fell into the hands of the Christians, and so continued vntill the yeare 609. at vvhich time it vvas sacked by the *Persians*, but left vnto the Christians, and so continued vntill the dayes of *Henry* the fourth, at vvhich time it vvas againe taken by the *Sultan* of the *Sarazens*, and the Christians cleane banished.

In the yeare 1097. in a generall Councell for the deliuerie of the holy Land, the *Crossed Knights* vvere instituted throughout Christendome, and *Godfrey* of *Bulloigne* chosen Generall of three hundred thousand footmen, and one hundred thousand horse. These Knights did many famous actes; recovered the land, instituted a Monarchie, and sometime vvvith good fortune, and sometime vvvith losse, continued the defence thereof, vntill the yeare 1290. in vvhich yeare it vvas vtterly subdued by the *Soldan* of *Egypt*. In vvhole possession it continued, vntill the yeare of our Lord, 1517. and then vvas it overcome by the Turkish Armies, vvhich at this day retaine it in miserable seruitude. And so it resteth, peopled vvvith men of diuers Nations and Sects; as *Saracens*, *Arabians*, *Turks*, *Hebrewes*, and *Christians*: vvhence some follow the Latine Church, some the Greeke: as the *Grecians*, *Syrians*, *Armenians*, *Georgians*, *Nestorians*, *Iacobites*, *Nubians*, *Maronits*, *Abessines*, *Indians*, and *Egyptians*, euery one hauing their peculiar Bishops, vvhom they obey.

Galile.

Galile vpon the North is enuironed vvvith the steepe hilles of *Libanus* and

and *Antilibanus*, vpon the West with *Phenicia*, vpon the East with *Celestiria*, and vpon the South with *Samaria* and *Arabia* the desert. The soile is most fruitfull, yeelding all sorts of trees, and diuided by *Jordan*: vpon whose bankes stand verie manie townes and villages, and so well watered either with mountain-torrents, or springs, that no part thereof lyeth vnmanured.

The Countrey is more famous, for that in it standeth (amongst the rude mountaines) the small village of *Nazareth*, the place of our Lords conception: and at this day, there is a small Chappell archit and built vnder ground, whereinto a man must descend by staires: Heere (some say) the Angell appeared vnto *Marie*, and foretold her, that she should conceiue and bring forth our Lord. Nazareth.

The Inhabitants are *Arabians*, short and thick men, rudely apparelled, and weaponed with bows, swords, and daggers. In this Region likewise, standeth the Mount *Tabor*, whose North part is inaccessible, and whereon our Lord was transfigured.

Samaria lyeth in a most delicate plot of *Palestine*, but in bignesse not comparble to *Iudea*, or *Galile*. The soile is partly mountainous, partly champian, pleasant, fruitfull, and verie well watered with fresh and sweet water. The citie is now ruinated: But *Naplos* for pleasure and delight, is inferiour to none other. It is situated vpon the side of a hill, the eight part of a mile from whence, a man may behold the ruines of a great Temple, whereupon (as men say) Christ sate, when he asked water of the Samaritan woman. Samaria.

Iudea, farre excelleth anie part of the residue of *Palestine*, and at this day enioyeth it's auncient fertilitie. The tribe of *Juda* so named it, and in it, as in the rest of *Palestine*, were verie manie worthie cities, whereof *Ierusalem* was the chiefe seate of their Princes, the receptackle of the Patriarkes, Prophets, and Apostles: the originall place of our faith, and the glorie of the Christian world. By the *Barbarians*, at this day, it is called *Godz* or *Chutz*. It standeth on an eminent place, as whereunto a man must euerie way ascend. Iudea:
Ierusalem

Saint *Ieroms* opinion was, that it stood not onely in the heart of *Iudea*, but in the verie center of the World, as hauing *Asia* on the East, *Europe* on the West, vpon the South, *Libia* and *Affrica*, and vpon the North, *Scithia*, *Amemia*, *Persia*, with the residue of the Pontique Nations.

What the glorie hereof hath beene, may bee coniectured out of *Tacitus*, who reporteth, that in the beginning of the siege, it contained two hundred thousand soules. At this day it numbeth not aboue five thousand land

366 *Turkie. Mount Caluelrie. Bethlem. Gaza. Lib.4.*

and inhabitants, although manie pilgrims daily resort thither for deuotions sake.

It was once strongly and fairely walled, but now weakely, and therein it sheweth nothing now so famous, as the Sepulchre of our Lord Christ, whose Temple encircleth the whole Mount of *Caluelrie*, situated vpon a plaine plot of ground, high, round, and open at the top, from whence it receiveth light: but the Sepulchre it selfe is covered with an Arch-Chappell, cut out of the maine Marble, and left vnto the custodie of the Latine Christians.

Whosoever is desirous to see this Sepulchre, must pay nine crownes to the Turke; so that this tribute is yearly worth vnto him, eight millions of Ducats.

Mount Caluelrie.

One hundred and eight foot distant from this Tombe, is the Mount (called *Caluelrie*) whereon our Sauour Christ was crucified by the treacherous Iewes. In this place are manie other religious Reliques. And the pilgrimes which come thither, are alwaies lodged according to their owne professions; that is to say: the Latine with the Franciscans, without the Citie, by Mount *Syon*: the Grecians are lodged with the *Caloieran Greekes*, dwelling within the citie by the Sepulchre: And so, euerie other Nation, *Abessines*, *Georgians*, *Armenians*, *Nestorians* and *Maronits*; who all, haue their proper and peculiar Chappels. Those *Franciscans*, which follow the Latine Church, and are for the most part *Italians*, were wont to create the Knights of the Sepulchre, and to giue testimoniall vnto pilgrims of their arriual there.

Valley of Iohosaphet.

Without this citie is the Valley of *Iohosaphet*, and therein the tombs of the blessed Ladie, and *S. Anne*. The territorie adioyning is exceeding fruitfull in Vines, Apples, Almonds, Figs, and Oyle: the Mountaines are no lesse flored with all sorts of Trees, wilde Beasts, and Spices.

Bethlem.

Besides *Ierusalem* standeth *Bethlem*, now destroied, and shewing nothing woorth looking on, saue a great and stately Monasterie of the *Franciscans*; within which, is the place where Christ, was borne. *Rama* is now likewise ruinated; the Arches and Cesternes now remaining, by the witnesse of *Bellonius* his owne eye, are greater than those of *Alexandria*, but not so thicke.

Gaza.

Gaza, is now a Turkish *Saniak-ship*: the soile about fertill, and the inhabitants, *Grecians*, *Turkes*, and *Arabians*.

Idumea.

In holy Writ, this Region is called *Edom*, and by other Authors, *Nabathea*. Toward the sea and *Iudea* the soile is fertile, but towards *Arabia*, desert and barren. Some say it is inexpugnable for its Desarts and

and want of water : yet is it stored therewith, but hidden, and knowne to none but the natives. Of old they were a turbulent, vnquiet, and seditious people ; and so at this day, they are like to the villainous and roguish Neighbours, the *Arabians*.

Next bordereth *Phœnicia*, as part of *Syria*, exposed to the sea, and bordering vpon *Galile*. Of old it had manie famous cities, as *Tripolis*, *Beritus*, *Sydon*, *Tyrus*, *Ptholomanijs*, *Capharnaum*, *Emissa*, and others : Amongst the which, *Tire* and *Sidon*, were most famous. *Tire* was a goodly citie, a colonie of the *Sidonians*, and round about encircled with the sea, vntill *Alexander* in his siege ioyned it to the continent.

At this day, it hath two harbours, that on the North side the fairest and best throughout the *Leuant*, which the *Cursours* enter at their pleasure ; the other choked with the ruines of the citie. So is it, and *Sidon*, now the strong receptracles of the stiffe necked *Druisians* ; A generation (they say) descended from the reliques of those Noble Christians, who vnder the conduct *Godfrey of Bullen*, descended into those parts ; and being by time driuen vnto harder fortunes, betooke themselues to the Mountaines ; from whence, they could neuer bee expelled, neither by the *Saracens*, nor yet by the *Turkes*. Allowed they are libertie of religion, and no other tribute imposed vpon them, than is vpon the naturall Subiect, neither there good Christians, and worse Mahumetans.

Sidon, was once no lesse famous ; now contracted into a narrow compasse, shewing onely in her ruines the foundations of her greatness. The Inhabitants are of sundrie Nations and Religions (as the *Turians*) yet gouerned by a succession of Princes, whom they call *Emirs* ; And whose Seigniorie (augmented by armes & tirannie) stretcheth from the Riuer of *Canis* to the foot of *Mount-Carmel*, containing a large extent of ground, and therein manie cities, whereof *Saffet* is the principall. The grand Seignior doth much enuie him for suffering the *Florentines* to harbour and water within his port of *Tyrus* ; which he is glad to excuse by the wast of the place, and inability of resistance. But the truth is, that hee is a strong, rich, and potent Lord in these parts, partly presuming vpon the strength of his inuincible Forts, and partly vpon the aduantage of the Mountaines ; yet hauing besides in continuall pay fortie thousand souldiours, some *Moors*, some *Christians* ; And if the worst should fall, he hath the sea at hand, and the *Florentine* to freind ; with whom, hee knoweth that a massie Treasure will worke no small effects, towards the purchas of some rich Seigniorie.

To

To conclude, he is too strong for his neighbours, and able to make a long defensive War against the Turke, if his tyrannie could assure him of fidelitie in this people.

Acon.

Acon or *Ptholomays*, is strongly fortified, triangular-wise, two parts vvhwhereof lie vpon the sea, the third, toward the land. The soile about is verie fruitfull and delicious. The citie adorned vwith a beautifull holpi-eall, strong and vvell bulwarked, once belonging to the *Teutonique* Knights. It hath also a verie faire haven, capacious of anie ships comming from the South.

Now vnder the *Sanziack* of *Saffet*, and vsurped with the rest of that Prouince, by the foresaid *Emir* of *Sidon*. In this wofull towne dwell not aboute two or three hundred Inhabitants, and those in patcht vp ruinous houses.

Beritus.

Beritus, is an ancient Citie, once an Episcopall Sea, now famous for Traffique and Merchandize, as the Mart-towne vvhwhereunto all the ships comming from Europe doe arriue. It is scituated most safely, and almost inexpugnable.

NOW (following mine Authour) and hauing finished this tedious discourse of this great Empire, by the patience of my Reader, I will once turne backe againe and relate the Original, the maners, the discent, and the Religion of this vvarlike and infidelious people, composed partly of Natiues, lineally discented from the *Scythians* and *Tartars*, and partly of Apostata and *Renegado* Christians.

Generally the Natiues haue broad visages, correspondent to the proportion of their members, faire and tall, and somewhat enclined to grossenesse. Their haire they regard not, saue only that of their beards. They are of a grosse and dull capacitie, wayward, slow, and lazie, hating husbandrie, and yet aboute all people in the vworld couetous and desirous of riches, yea, selling all places of Iustice and gouernment to their best Chapmen. Amongst one another exceeding courteous; and, as seruile toward their superiours; in whose presence they keepe admirable silence, and yeeld due reuerence: but toward strangers they are all fashioned of pride, insolencie, and boasting, thinking no Nation in the world to equalize them; in their speech, entertainment, and gesture, bewraying their inherent insolence; faithfull to none, but where fidelitie may produce aduantage. By nature, they are as idle, and giuen to excessiue eating and drinking, sitting close by it three daies together, and secretly not abstaining from Wine, although by their Law they are forbidden the drinking thereof. No lesse are they addicted to lecherie, and

and lothsome vnnaturall venerie, exceeding credulous, superstitious, relying vpon dreames, fortunes, diuinations, and destinie, beleeuing euerie mans fortune to be written in his forehead, impossible to be auoided: the fundamentall reason why they aduenture like brute beasts, into so manie desperate dangers.

As concerning their Religion, a man might write much, but we studying breuitie, doe relate, that generally, as a people too too credulous, they embrace manie absurde and triuiall opinions touching the creation and end of the world, of Paradice, Heauen, Hell, the Earth, the creation of Man, and Mahumets iourney to heauen, euen such and so grosse, as vvould make our children to laugh, if they heard them fabled. They doe all acknowledge one God, they reuerence Christ, not as the Son of God, but as a Prophet borne of the Virgin *Maris*, and not crucified on the crosse, but some other man foisted in by the subtiltie of the Iewes. Idols and Images they will not endure, and obserue the Friday, as we do the Saboth. They keepe a Lent of thirtie daies, which they call *Ramadan*, and fast all day; but in the night they make amends for all, abstaining from nothing that commeth to hand, saue Swines flesh, wine, and women. Next this feast, followeth their Easter, by them tearmed *Baydan*, it continueth 3 daies, and during that time, they take no delight in anie pastime. This feast falleth not at all times alike, but sometimes in the Winter, sometimes in the Spring, and sometimes in Autumne, by reason, that they account not their yeare, according to the course of the Sun, but of the Moone: the rising whereof at first quarter they adore, bearing the figure therof, as we the Crosse, in their Ensignes.

They are circumcised Iew-like, but not as they (on the eight day) but at the eight yeare. They haue no bells after the maner of Christendome, neither will they suffer the Christians to haue anie, but fise times in one day and night, their Priests ascend the steeples, with their lowd roarings and out-cries to call and assemble the people to praiers. By their good will they will not be called *Turkes*; for in the Hæbrew tongue, that denomination signifieth a *vagabond or banished man*, and is accounted a word of disgrace; and therefore forsooth they must be stiled *Musolmani*, that is; *Right-beleeuers*.

They haue likewise amongst them (as amongst the Papists) foure Orders of professed persons, (viz:) the *Torlaci*, the *Dornisi*, the *Calenderi*, and the *Hughie mali*; the most wickedest sect of all the residue, giuing themselves to all imposture and vncleanness.

They are not verie daintie to conuerse with Christians, but with small intreatie will eate, drinke, and traffique with them; yea, and

Sometimes marrie the daughters, permitting them to live peaceably after their consciences : but to the Iewes, they are most insotiable, detesting their companie, and hating their tables, accounting them the basest peolpe in the world, neither will they marrie with anie of that progenie, no, nor receiue them into the Mahumetan Religion, vnlesse they be first baptized. By their Lawes they may haue but foure wiues, yet by prescription euerie man taketh as manie as he can well maintaine : one of these is accounted the wife ; to her the residue are vnderlings, and may at anie time be diuorced. Their Women go seldome abroad, but if they doe, they maske their faces, are gallantly attired, and shine in Gold, Stone, and Iewels : Twice a weeke (as doe men) they frequent the banes. They neuer blaspheme the name of God, nor of Mahumet, nor of Christ, nor of our Ladie, nor of anie other Saints, but if anie be heard so to offend, he is grievously punished, let him be of what calling or religion soeuer. At Dice and Cards they neuer play, but onely at *Alueolo*. They are verie charitable, disbusing their Almes, not onely to Turkes, but also to Christians, and men of all professions, yea to brute beasts, sometimes buying quicke Birds, which for charities sake, they will againe let flie at libertie. Their garments are long, and open before to the foot, except their shirts, which they weare without their Broges, so that as they go, they are openly seene. Their raiment is verie faire and costly, viz. of cloath, sicke, imbroderie, and set with pearle. They couer their head with a Turbant, except those of the discent of Mahumet ; these weare altogether greene, but the Christians inhabiting among them, weare no one colour, but as they please (greene except.) They are all cloathed in long garments like the Turkes, and are not distinguished by anie apparrell they weare (of what profession soeuer they be) but onely by the attire of their heads. In salutations they neuer vncouer their heads, neither doth the meaner salute his better ; the left hand with them is the place of honour, and the better sort ride about their affaires on horsebacke.

In diet they are verie rude ; they faire basely, and grossely, and yet they eate thrice a day, at morning, noone, and euening, alwaies without Table-cloath or Napkin ; not sitting orderly at Table, but on the ground, or some low stoole, with their legges acrosse, Taylor-like. They feed vpon all sorts of flesh, except Porke, which is forbidden them by their law. Their chiefeest food is Rice, and the *Asian* Turkes care not much for Fish, but the *Europian* Turkes for nothing more. By Law they forbear Wine, and therefore drinke water, whereunto the better sort mixe either Honie or Suger, and in cold weather, instead of a toast they

they throw in a burning cole, to take away the offensive operation of this raw Element. They make great vse of *Opium*, and there is not one of them but eateth it, beleeuing that thereby his courage encreaseth, and thereby lesse dreadeth the hazard of Warre. They make water cowering downe like women, and their priuate buildings for the most part consist of Timber, and Morter, verie narrow, and ill contriued; wherein, to say truth, they are not intensue, esteeming it an heinous sinne to bestow more cost vpon the frame, than is likely or conuenient to last longer than during the life of one man: but in building of Temples to the honour of God, in prouiding for publike receptacles of Trauellers, in erecting Hospitals, publike Baths, watering places for men and cattle, and fountaines to wash away their imaginarie pollutions, before they enter into their *Meschites*, they are most sumptuous, most prodigal. No lesse a pride take they in building of Conduites, in erecting of Bridges, and in paning of high-waies; all which in Turkie you shall see verie carefully repaired, and as a man may say, sumptuously & magnificently prouided for.

Except vpon the frontiers, in Turkie you shall see no fortified cities, but rather the walles that haue beene fortified, ruinated, and the fields wasted, according to their prouerbe, *quā Ottomanicus aliquis transiit, ibi nec folia, nec gramina proveniunt*. And not vntruely, for as soone as they haue conquered anie Prouince, they extinguish the great ones, especially those of royall bloud, and as for the wealthiest Burgers, they transport them into remote Prouinces, alreadie inured, and subiected to their lawes and gouernment; not forcing their consciences, but onely despoyling them of their armes, restrayning them of libertie to trauaile out of their limits, and forbidding them to serue anie other potentate, in preuention of rebellion. In inuention of engines against their neighbours, they are admirable industrious, not caring to obtaine that by craft and faithlesse cowardize, which they cannot gaine by force, or the effusion of much bloud: but those base proiects not preuailing, without respect of honour or militarie glorie, they are not ashamed to betake themselves to their heeles. Yet to speake truth, they are good souldiours, and to their especiall aduantage; excellently disciplin'd, being obedient to their commanders, most laborious in the fabrikes, content with a small refreshment of victuall, and that most grosse, contrarie to gluttonous behauiour of all Christian warfare. Their armes are a Lance, a Bow, and a quiver of Arrowes, an iron Mace, a Battle-axe, and a Semitar, and those inchaſed with Gold and Siluer; besides their great Ordnance, whereof at this day there are Lords of infinite pieces.

This Empire began to take root in the yeare 1300 vnder the fortunes of one *Osman* or *Othoman*, from whom the succeeding Princes of that house haue deriued and vsurped the surnames of *Othoman*, euen as the Emperours of Christendome haue continued the title of *Cesars*, since the first Roman, *Iulius*. From that time vntill the yeare 1608, and from that *Othoman* vntill this *Acmach*, wonder it is to relate, how in the space of 300 yeares, from so meane a Captaine, so base a people, and in so short a time, (considering the groath of the Roman Empire) this so-ueraigntie is now growne to be the terror of the world, and almost to equalize that of the *Romans*. How long euerie particular Prince raigned, and what exploits they performed, I rewe to record, and meane not to relate: onely let mee remember you of that diuelish pollicie of theirs, how one brother at his first comming to the Crowne murdereth all the residue of his fathers children, and male-competitors, thereby presuming to liue secure and fearelesse of innouation: *indictet Deus*.

They first seated the model and maiestie of their Empire in *Prusia* a Citie of *Bithinia*; then they transported it to *Hadrianople*, and lastly to *Constantinople*. In which imperiall Citie is now his Court or Pallace, three or foure miles in compasse, wholly enclosed with a strong wall, and scituated the pleasantest of anie pallace on the face of the earth, termed by them, the Port, or *Seraglio*. Within the inclosure of this wall are manie pleasant parkes, sweet fountaines, sumptuous arbours, and innumerable lodgings, richly built, especially those wherein the Great Turke himselte resideth. Within this inclosure likewise, are two other inclosed receptracles or lodgings for women; in the one are continually kept at least 1500 dames, out of which are culled one hundred & fiftie for the daily seruice of the Emperour, and those sequestred into the other of the lesser lodgings.

For his guard he maintaineth daly by turnes foure thousand footmen, by them stiled *Ianizars*, viz: slaues, by way of tribute haled in their infancies from the bosomes of their Christian parents. He hath alwaies in Court likewise attendant on his person 1500 horsemen (besides those that serue vnder the *Beglerbegs*) and those are deuided into foure classes or orders, viz: *Spazi*, *Ulusagi*, *Stelistari* and *Caripici*, all paid out of his *Casna*, or Exchequer. Besides these Pretorian bands, he likewise maintaineth out of his Exchequer, not so few as 10000 *Ianizers* garisoned, through all parts of his Empire, vnder seuerall leaders, acknowledging no other Lord, soueraigne, or maintainer, but the grand Seignior.

More-

Moreouer, he hath another order of souldiourie, tearmed *Timarots*, what they are, and how maintained, you haue heard before. So manie as at this day are raised in Europe, are thought sufficient to entertaine 80000 horsemen: those in *Asia* or *Natolia* 50000; and those wrested from the crowne of *Persia* 40000; What are raised in *Syria*, and the adiacent regions of *Egipt*, and *Africa*, haue not beene estimated, but all these serue vnder their Saniaks, and they, at the commands of their *Beglerbeks*, or *Colonels*.

The Court is commonly stiled by them *Capie*, that is; the port, wherein are manie great Officers, by vs spoken of before; But those whose seruices are onely destinated to vses within the *Seraglio*, are for the most part Eunuches, with their rable of vnder Eunuches. Without the *Seraglio*, are also diuers honourable Offices for the gouernment of the Empire, the chiefe vwhereof is their *Musti* or Pope. In the second Ranke, are their *Caldeleschers*, viz: chiefe Iustices. After the *Caldeleschers*, follow the Viceroy *Bassas* (Counselours of estate) whose number is vncertaine; In old time three, or foure, but of late, nine. The president of these the Turkes tearme viceroy. And in truth, it is a place of great dignitie and authoritie in managing the affaires of the State, as the man with whom the Grand Seignior doth onely communicate his waightiest intentions, and secretest deliberations.

And were it certaine, either for yeares, or life; For profit and honour, this place would not be much inferiour to the estate of manie great Princes in Christendome. But such is the tirannie of this Monarch, that vpon euerie suggestion and ieaousie, hee is sometime depriued, and sometime strangled. Within these sixteene or seauenteene yeares last past, it hath beene obserued, that foureteene of these officers haue thus beene vsed. Fiue haue died naturall deaths after depriue-ment, and nine depriued, and afterwards murdered.

In the next place appeare the *Beglerbeks* (maisters *del Campo*) the chiefe whereof, is he that is tearmed of *Romania* or *Gracia*: The second of *Anotalia*, or *Asia*. The third, is the *Denizi Beglerbeg*, that is to say; the Lord high Admirall. And these three *Beglerbeks*, haue equall place and authoritie with the former *Bassas* in the *Diuano*, or place of publique Audience.

Before the last Warre of *Persia*, this Empire was vndergouerned by fortie *Beglerbeks*, vvhose likewise had vnder them, two hundred and seauentie Saniaks; But since those times this number, hath beene much augmented, viz: in *Europe* reside seauen. In *Afrique* foure. In *Asia* twentie nine.

The Turkish Arsenals for shipping are foure; the first is at *Pera*, and containeth 33 docks or stansions for so manie Gallies: The second is *Gallipolis*, and containeth twentie, both vnder the charge of the high Admirall and his seruitors. The third, is at *Suez* vpon the Red-sea, containing 25 stansions: and the fourth last, at *Balsara* in the Persian gulfe, consisting of fifteene gallies, and these two last, vnder the charges of the *Beglerbegs* of *Balsara* and *Cairo*.

In the time of *Selimus*, were reckoned one million and 333 thousand Christian soules to liue within his Dominions, not accounting those that enioyed freedome of conscience by priuiledge, nor those that then were subiect to the *Egyptian* Sultan whom the said *Selimus* vanquished.

The Iewes likewise liue dispersed ouer his vvhole Dominions, in such infinite numbers, that scarce no towne nor village, but is verie populously replenished with their families, speaking diuers languages, and vsing the trade of Merchandize in royall and rich fashion.

A people scattered ouer the face of the earth, hated by all men amongst vvhom they liue, yet of incredible patience; as subiecting themselves to times, & to whatsoever may aduance their profit: worldly wise, and thriving vvhersoeuer they set footing. Men of indifferent statures, and best complexions. Those that liue in Christendome, are the reliques only of the Tribes of *Iuda* and *Beniamin*; the other ten (some say) are lost; Others, that they be in India; or driuen by *Sal-manassar* into the extreame parts of the North.

Their owne Countrie, after the expulsion of the *Egyptian* Sultans by *Selimus*, at this day is adioyned vnto the crowne of the *Othoman* Empire: being gouerned by diuers Saniacks, all vnder the Bassa of *Damasco*. It is now inhabited by *Moores*, and *Arabians*: Those possessing the vallies; these the Mountaines. Of Turkes, there be some few: of Greekes, manie; with other Christians of all Sects and Nations; especially of such, as impute an adherent holinesse to the place. Those Iewes that liue here, are not proprietors of anie land therein, but liue as strangers and alians, and pay their duties to their Lords.

The *Arabians* are said to be descended from *Ismael*, dwelling in Tents, and remouing their aboads, according to oportunitie of pray, or benefit of pasturage; not worth the conquering, nor can they be conquered, retiring to places inaccessible for armies. A nation from the beginning vnmixed with others, boasting of their Nobilitie, and this day hating all mechanickall sciences. They hang about the skirts of the inhabited countries, and hauing robbed, retire with wonderfull celeritie.

They

They are of meane stature, raw-boned, tawnie, hauing feminine voices, of a swift and noyslesse pace, being behind you, and vpon you, before you be aware. Their religion (if anie, Mohumetisme) their language extending as far as their religion. Yet if anie one of them vndertake that conduct, he will performe it faithfully, not anie of the Nation offering to molest you. Then, will they lead you by vnknown waies, farther in foure daies, then a man can trauaile by *Carnan* in foureteene.

Persia.

Persia, and the Persian glorie, hath beene often obscured. First by the *Arabians* (who to burie in obliuion the memorie of former reputation) enacted by law, according to the custome of Conquerours, that the people should no more be called *Persians*, but *Saracens*. Secondly by the *Tartarians*, led by *Chingis*. And lastly, by *Tamerlan* and his followers.

But not long before the daies of our Ancestors, by the vertue of *Ismael Sophy* (of whose originall and fortunes, for the better vnderstanding of this Historie, it will not be amisse to discours) the Kingdome might truely haue beene said, to haue recouered its ancient spendor, if the Turkish depredations vpon the Natiues, had not through bloud and deuastation, inforced this *Ismael* to repopule the countrie, with *Tartars*, *Turcomans*, *Courdines*, and the scum of all Nations who though they liue in a better countrie, yet doe they nothing resemble the ancient and noble discended *Persians*, but at this day retaine the inherence of their bad, treacherous and vild dispositions.

When Mahumer, after the decease of his first wife (who adopted him her heire) by her riches and his new superstition, had gotten him a name amongst the vulgar, hee married for his second wife, *Aissa* the daughter of one *Abubacer*, a great rich man, and of high authoritie in those quarters. By this mans continuance, and the friendship of *Oman* and *Ottomar* his kinsmen, he gathered together a great rabble of *Arabians*, and partly by faire meanes, and partly by colour of Religion hee became Maister of manie bordering Territories; and also about the same time gaue *Fatime* his Daughter (by his first Wife) to *Halie* his Cozine: and to him after his death, all his earthly

substance, making him the head of his superstition, with the Title of *Caliph*.

Abubacer by whose countenance *Mahumet* became gracious, taking in ill part the preferment of the young man; by the aide of *Omar* and *Ottomar* (whose desires wholly built vpon hope of succession, by reason of the old mans yeares, and for kindred sake, were inclined rather to see *Abubacer* than *Halie Caliph*) began openly to resist *Halie*, and to spoile him, and his Wife *Fatime*, of all the substance which was left them by the Vncle. *Abubacer* died: *Omar* and *Ottomar* succeeded. *Omar* was slaine by a slaue; *Ottomar* in a priuate quarrell: after whose death, *Halie* succeeded. Against him rose *Manie*, vvho accusing him as accessarie to the death of *Ottomar* his Lord, caused him to be slaine nere *Cassa*, a citie vvithin two daies iourney of *Babilon*, where likewise he lieth buried. The place is called to this day *Massadell*, that is; the house of *Halie*. After his decease the inhabitants of *Cassa* proclaimed *Ossan*, the sonne of *Fatime*, *Caliph*; but him likewise *Manie* opposed, and slew by poison. Then was he absolute *Caliph*, and after him his sonne *Iazit*. *Ossan* left behind him twelue sonnes, one whereof was called *Mahumet Mahadin*. The *Moores* say, he neuer died, but that he shall returne againe to conuert the world; and therefore they keepe alwaies readie in the *Mosque* of *Massadella*, a horse gallantly furnished, where, in their foppery they affirme, that this vvorlds conuersion shall first begin. Vpon these differents of *Halie*, *Abubacer*, *Omar*, *Ottomar*, and *Manie*, haue mightie factions of armes and opinions arisen amongst the sectaries of this new superstition. The *Persians* labour to proue *Halie* true *Caliph*, by the last Will of *Mahumet*; the *Arabians* stand as stiffely to the three first. When from the yeare of our Lord God 1258 to the yeare 1363 the *Moores* had no *Caliph* (*Mustapha Mumbala* the last *Caliph*, being slaine by *Alcu* King of the *Tartarians*) a certaine Nobleman in *Persia*, named *Sophi*, Lord of *Ardenell*, deriuing his pedigree from *Halie*, by *Musa Ceresin* his Nephew, and one of the twelue sons of *Ossan* (in memorie of whom, he altered the forme of the Turbant) by his vertue and valour, won great credit and estimation to his new faction.

To him succeeded *Adar* the sonne of *Guine*, to whom *Assembeg* a powerfull Prince in *Siria* and *Persia*, gaue his daughter in marriage. But his son *Iacob-beg*, fearing the power and estimation of *Adar*, caused him to be slaine, and deliuered his two sons *Ismael* and *Soliman*, to his Captaine *Amanzar*, willing him to cast them in prison in *Zaliga*, a castle in the mountaines: but *Amanzar* detesting the tirannie of his Lord, conueied the children to his owne house, and brought them vp like Gentlemen

clemen amongst his owne sonnes; and falling sicke of a deadly disease, forecasting what might happen after his decease, gaue them horses and money, willing them to flie, and to betake themselves to their mothers house and tuition. *Ismael* the eldest was no sooner returned to his mothers place, but he vowed reuenge for his fathers death, and after some fortunate expeditions, tooke vpon him the cause and protection of the followers of *Halie*, from whom he deriued his Pedigree. He made the Turbant higher, and sent Ambassadors to all the Orientall Mahumetans, to exhort them to vnitie in Religion and cognisances. By these meanes and fortune of his armes, hee became a terror to the East, and slew *Ossan* than vsurper of the *Persian* State, with his ten brethre, except *Marabeg*, who saued himselfe, and fled to *Soliman*, first Emperour of the Turkes, imploring his aide. This *Ismaell* at the Lake *Vay*, overthrew with a great slaughter the Prince of the *Tartars Zagatai*, and in heate of his victorie had passed the Riuer *Abbian*, if his Astrologian, in whom he greatly trusted, had not foretold him, that his passage should be prosperous, but his returne vnfortunate. He left to his sonnes a most spacious Empire, bounded with the *Caspian* sea, the *Persian* Gulfe, the Lake *Sioc*, the Riuer *Tygris* and *Oxus*, and the Kingdome of *Cambaisa* which Prouinces containe more than twentie degrees from East to West, and eightene from North to South. And although these Kingdomes lying within these bounds held not immediatly of the crowne of Persia, yet all acknowledged the *Persian* for their soueraigne Prince, that is to say, the Kings of *Matam*, *Patan*, *Guadel* and *Ormuz*.

Georgia and *Mengrellia*, being Christian countries, according to the superstition of the Greeke Church, submitted to certain conditions, As, tolleration of Religion, payment of Tribute, and disclaiming to assist the Turke against them; and so obtained a kind of peace and protection vntill againe the Persians declined, by the Fortunes of the *Othomans*. The like course ran *Media*, now called *Siruan*, *Dierbechia* once *Mesopotamia*; *Cusistan* the inhabitation of the *Susiani*; *Farsistan* the countrie of the *Persians*; *Straua* once *Hircania*; *Parthia* at this day called *Arac*; *Caramanie* now *Sigestan*, *Carassa*, *Sablestan*, and *Istigin*, whose ancient names vvere *Drangia*, *Bactria*, *Parapamisus*, *Margiana*. Of these Regions, those which lie nearest to the *Persian* sea, are most plentifull, by reason of the Riuer euerie where dispersed thorough the whole Land. Amongst these riuer, the most famous is *Bindimir*, to whose waters the inhabitants are much beholding, conueying it by trenches, and other inuentions, into their grounds, to their great ease and commoditie. The Prouinces lying vpon the *Caspian* sea, for their riuer
and

Cities.

and temperature, doe likewise participate of the said fertilitie, especially all those quarters which are watered with the river *Puly-Mulon*, falling into the lake *Burgian*: the residue of the prouince is drie; by reason whereof, townes and villages are seldome seene in those places; vnlesse it be by some springs or waters side.

The most ample and magnificent cities of *Persia* are *Istigia* the chief seat of *Bactria*, thought to be one of the pleasantest cities of the East. *Indion*, the chiefe citie of *Margiana*, situated in so fat and fertile a territory, that therefore *Antiochus Soter* caused it to be walled about. *Candahar*, the chiefe seat of *Pamaparisus*, famous for the trafficque of *India* and *Cathay*, whither the merchants of those countries do resort. *Eri*, the chiefe citie of *Aria*, so abounding with roses, that thereof it should seeme to take the name. *Barbarus* saith, it is of thirteene miles compasse. *Ispaa* the chiefe seat of *Parthia*, so spacious for the circuite thereof, that the *Persyans* hyperbollically terme it, the Halfe World. *Chirmaine* is the chiefe seat of *Caramania*, renowned for the excellent cloth of gold and siluer wouen therein. *Eor* is a noble citie, and so is *Custra* of *Susyana*. But all these for beautie and magnificence may bow and bend to *Siras*, seated vpon the river *Bindimire*.

It was once the chiefe seat of *Persia*, and as some thinke, called *Persepolis*. *Alexander* the great, burnt it to the ground, at the intreatie of his concubine; but afterward, being ashamed of so vile an action, caused it to bee re-edified. It is not at this time so great as is times past, yet it is thought to be one of the greatest cities in all the Orient, with its suburbs, which are in compasse twentie miles. It is a prouerbe among the *Persians*; *Quando Suars erat Siras, tunc Cairus erat eius Pagus*: yet they account it not verie auncient, neither are they of their opinions, who will haue it the head of *Persia*. *Tauris* and *Casbin* are famous cities, and besides their magnificence, they may glorie, that in them the Kings of *Persia* for the most part keepe their residences.

Gouernement

The forme of *Gouernement* of this Nation, is not like the *Gouernement* of anie other Mahumetane people; neither is there to be seene the like policie in any place in the whole East, as amongst the *Persians*, being a Nation nobly minded, liberall, sociable, and far from affectation. All the rest hate Nobilitie, and depending vpon the faith and seruice of slaves, do either murder their brethren, or put out their eies. But amongst this people, Nobilitie is honoured: The Kings entreate their brethren kindly and magnificently, and they allow in their dominions, manie noble, rich, and mightie Barons; of which sort there is not one besides to bee found through the whole *Ottoman* dominions. They likewise
grace

grace gentilitie, and highly esteeme their seruice on horsebacke: they delight in Musicke and Learning, they studie Poesie, and therein become excellent. They giue their minds to Astrologie: all which good parts, the Turke (being dogged, proud, sparing and contemptuous, as respecting neither consanguinitie, neighbourhood, nor any things else, saue the name of a slaue) doth vterly reject and dispise.

They boast of their bloud and affinitie, vvearing good clothes, and desiring pleasure, which they giue life vnto by solemnizing of feasts, especially in matters of incontinencie, to which they come by degrees, beginning with a modest shamesfastnesse, but growing more bold, at last they set open all the doores of petulant and wanton varietie: Nor are they ashamed to produce instances of of *Abasuerus*, banquetting in *Susa* with all his princes one hundred and eightie daies: Of *Balsasers* solemnities with his concubines, and of many other, whose inuentions and customes set on flame the already burning fire of voluptuousnesse. The Turke contemneth such formalitie, yet runneth the race of strange luxurie, with a more impudent violence, but seeming more solid.

The securitie of this state consisteth rather in prowesse than numbers. They maintaine three sorts of Souldiers: one sort, the King keepeth in continuall pay, and alwaies about his owne person: The second, is the *Timarots* (for his Kingdome likewise as doth the Turke, in lieu of wages, allotteth certaine quantities of Land to great numbers of horsemen:) The third are *Auxiliaries*, which serue for pray, and those are only *Georgians* and *Tartarians*. To speake of the two first (the essentiall sinnewes of this King and Kingdome) they are all horsemen: For where princes relie only on the valour of their Gentry, there is little regard had of the footmans seruice: the like reason may be given for their want of shipping. For although on the one side lyeth the *Caspian*, and on another, the *Persian* gulfes, yet to this day, were they neuer owners of any vvarlike shipping. If they chance to saile vpon the *Caspian* (a sea eight hundred miles long, and six hundred broad) they dare not venter into the maine, but houering by the shore, simerously saile from one place to another. Of the *Persian* Sea, the Portugalles are Lords.

It aboundeth in mettall of excellent finesse, especially, in the Province of *Cazan*. They had not the vse of Artillerie, neither the art of defending, besieging, assaulting, mining or intrenching of fortresses, and all because they made no account of the vse of footmen, to whom these seruices doe properly belong, as it doth to horsemen, to fight in plaine and open field. But at this day, being continually beaten by the scourge of the Turkish armies, they haue by little and little drawne in some Christi-

Force,

Their Marshal discipline.

Christians amongst them, and amended their errors, to the great griefe and dishonour of the Turkish forces. Besides these wants, they were infested with other more grievous mischieses, and those were ciuill dissensions arising of the greatnesse and disloyaltie of their Sultans, with length of iourneyes, and the scarfitie of Nauigable Riuers. And those Riuers which they haue, are not in vse with forraine Nations; or else so little, that small ease ariseth thereby, for that they fall into the *Caspian* or *Persian* seas. The Inland regions are sandie, & vtterly destitute of water; How can then the forces of that Land make anie commodious or speedie Randiuou, when halfe the land is drie and barren, in so wast a tract, not one riuer, seruing for Nauigable transportation, as doth the *Loir* in *France*; *Po* in *Italie*; *Vistula* in *Poland*; *Schild* in *Flanders*, and such like in other Kingdomes?

Deserts.

There are also manie Deserts, and manie Mountaines disioyning the Prouinces far asunder. Herein it resembleth *Spaine*, where for want of Nauigable riuers (except towards the sea-coast) trafficke is little vsed, and Mountaines and Prouinces lie vnmanured for scarfitie of moisture. But Nature vnwilling that humaine life should want anie easement, hath so provided for mutuall commerce in these sandie and barren places, that thorough the labour of Camels, the want of Nauigation is richly recompenced throughout *Persia*, and the bodering countries. These Beasts carrie wonderous burdens, and will longer continue than either Horse or Mule. They will trauell laden with a thousand pound weight, and will so continue fortie daies and vppward. In sterile and deepe sandie countries (such as are *Libia*, *Arabia* and *Persia*) they drinke but once euerie fifth day, and if extremitie enforce, they will endure the want of water ten or twelue. When their burdens are off, a little grasse, thornes, or leaues of trees will suffice them. There is no liuing thing lesse chargeable, and more laborious, certainly, ordained of nature a fit creature for those sandie and deepe places of *Asia* and *Afrique*, wherein euen man himselfe, feeleth the want of food and water. Of these, there are three sorts, vpon the lesser, men trauell; the middle sort, haue bunches on their backes, fit for carrying of Merchandize; the greater and stronger are those, which carrie burdens of one thousand pound waight, these are their ships, the sands, their seas.

Forces.

What numbers of Horsemen this King is able to leaue, was manifested in the wars betweene *Selim* the first, and *Ismael*: betweene *Ismael* and *Soliman*; and betweene *Codabanda* and *Amurath*. Not one of them brought aboue thirtie thousand horse into the field, but so thoroughly furnished that they had little cause to feare greater numbers. The richer

richer and abler sort arme themselves after the maner of our men at armes; the residue, being better than the third part of their Cavalrie, content themselves with a scull, a Iacke, and a Semitar. They vse the Lance and the Bow indifferently.

Touching their riches, the common opinion is, that in the daies of King *Tamas*, the yearly Reuenues amounted to foure or fivemillions of Gold, who by a sodaine doubling of the value of his coine, raised it to eight, and accordingly made payment to his Soldans and souldiours. But in these daies by the conquest of the Great Turke, they are much diminished, and it is thought, that they amount to little more than two; But indeed the feodarie Lands, Townes and Villages, Tents, Shops &c. (which are verie manie) supply a great part of the pay due to the companies of those his horsemen aboue mentioned.

Towards the East, bordereth the *Mogor*, vpon the North the *Zagatai*. Towards the West, the Turke possesseth a large frontire; vpon the South lieth *Ormuz*, and therein the *Portugalles*. With the *Mogors* he is little troubled: for as *Spaine* and *France* by reason of the narrow straight, and difficult passages ouer the mountaines, cannot easily conuey necessities (the life of an armie) to infest one another. So, towards the frontiers of *India* and *Cambaia* (Prouinces belonging to the *Mogors*) high Mountaines and vast Desarts, keepe good peace betweene these two Princes: yet infest they one another on the borders of *Cabull* and *Sab-
lestan*, of which certaine Lords of the *Mogors* haue gotten the Domini-
on. He commeth not neere the borders of the Great *Cham*, betweene whom certaine pettie Princes, and impassable Desarts doe oppose themselves. It seemeth, that toward the *Zagatai* he standeth content with those bounds which the Riuer *Oxus* hath laide out: for hee neuer durst passe it; and when *Zaba* King of the *Zagatai* had passed it, he was ouerthrowne with much slaughter by *Ismael*. So was *Cyrus* by *Tomiris*, who slew him and all his hoast. The Turke is a borderer all alongst the Western coast of this whole Empire, euen from the *Caspian Sea*, to the gulfe *Saura*, a tract almost of 15 degrees. He hath no enemy so dangerous, nor more to be feared, nor at whose hands in all conflicts (for the most part) he hath receiued greater losse. *Mahumet* the second ouerthrew *Ussanchan*, and tooke from *David* his vassall and confederate the Empire of *Trapezond*. *Selim* the first did ouerthrow *Ismael* in *Campania*, and tooke from him *Caramit*, *Orsa*, *Merdis*, and all the territorie which they call *Alach*. *Soliman* put *Tamas* to flight, & tooke from him *Babylon* and all *Mesopotamia*. In our daies *Amurath* woon whatsoever lieth betweene *Derbent* and *Tauris*, wherein is comprehended

Riches.

Borderers.

The Mogor.

The Portu-
gues.

The Zagatai.

The Turke.

Georgia

Gerogia and *Siruan*, and by building of fortresses in *Teflis*, *Samachia*, and *Eres*, assured the passages of *Chars*, *Tomanis* and *Lori*. He is Lord of all that lieth betwene *Erzurum* and *Orontes*, a riuer three daies iourney beyond *Tauris*. In this citie he caused a Citadell to be built, not minding to leaue it, as did *Selim* and *Soliman*, but thereby as with a curb to bridle and keepe it. In this war which lasted from the yeare, 1591 to 1597. the Turkes altered their forme of warfare: for whereas they were wont to lay their whole hopes vpon their numbers, the valour of their horsemen and footmen, their store of artillerie, and warlike furniture, scorning to be cooped vp in Castles and Fortresses, for the most part spoyling and burning whatsoeuer they ouercame, or became Lords of, and taking as little care to keepe what they had conquered (supposing it no good policie to fortifie Castles, or strengthen townes, by weakening of their companies) in these wars, to auoide the inconueniences whereinto *Selim* and *Soliman* were plunged, they were glad to build strong places, vpon commodious passages and Citadels in the chiefeest townes, furnishing them with good Garrisons, and great store of Artillerie. This war cost them verie deare: for by surprises, by famine and extremities of weather, infinite thousands perished, yet alwaies to the losse of the *Persian*, or his confederates. In the field, the *Persian* is far inferiour to the *Turke* in numbers and goodnesse of footmen, in Ordnance, in all sorts of warlike furniture, and (the chiefe stay of a State) in obedience of Subiects. Notwithstanding if *Selim*, *Soliman*, or *Amurath*, had not beene allured thither either by rebellion, or intestine discords, they durst not haue medled with this war. *Selim* was called in to the aide of *Mara-beg* the sonne of *Offan*, a mightie Prince in *Persia*. *Soliman* came in aide of *Elcaso*, the brother of *Tamas*, hatefull to his Soueraigne for his ambition and aspiring humour, and in the end abused the credit and good will of the people toward *Elcaso*, to the furtherance of his own designments. *Amurath* neuer tooke weapon in hand against this people, before he vnderstood by the letters of *Mustapha Bassa* of *Van*, that all *Persia* was in vprore about the election of a new Prince, thereby certifying him that some had chosen *Ismael*, some *Ainer* (both sonnes of *Tamas*) and that *Periacoona* slaying her owne brother *Ismael*, and betraying *Ainer*, had procured the Kingdome to *Mahumet Codobanda*. After this mischiefe, fell those fatall iarres, betwixt *Codobanda*, and his sonne, and betwixt the *Turcoman* Nation (a mightie family in *Persia*) and the King. A faction no lesse disastrous to the State of *Persia*, than the war of *Turkie*.

Against the Portugals of *Ormuz*, for want of sea-forces he stirreth not,

not, and againe for want of land forces the Portugals are not able to molest his vpland Countries. *Tamas* being counselled to make a voyage against *Ormuz*, asked what commodities the Island brought forth, whether corne, cattle, fruit, or what other good thing? When it was answered, that the soile was viterly barren and destitute of prouision, but excellent all well seated for traffique and navigation: scoffing at the motion, he replied: That of this kinde of Reuennue he had released vnto his people aboute ninetie thousand *Tomana*.

One *Tomana*
maketh 20
Frēch crowns.

Truth is, that he wanteth shipping to put the Portugals from so faire a purchase: where these stand not, he is content to raigne from *India* to *Arabia*, East and West; And from the *Caspian*, to the South-side of the *Persian* Gulph. And as for these ninetie thousand *Tomana* (being in our account 80000 French crownes of annuall Reuennue) said to be decreed in the daies of this *Tamas*, vpon the generall customes of importation and exportation, throughout the whole Realme; I can giue my Reader no other satisfaction, why to thinke the stomaches of great Princes can at anie time be cloyed with such surfits; vnlesse he be pleased to imagine; that after this Prince (or his Predecessor) had receiued one or two dismall ouerthrowes by the Turkish forces, and that not so much by their valours, as by his owne defeciencie in shot, ordnance, and discipline: he set on foot this Proclamation. First to induce his owne people to manuall thrift, and mutuall commerce: And secondly, to allure Gentlemen and forraine Merchants to frequent his Dominions. Without the which inticements, peraduenture they might be vnwilling to hazard their estates from far nations amongst such barbarous and vn sure customers. For sure he was, that his Neighbours could not, and the Portugals would not supplie those necessities, which concerned the life and essence of intire Estate.

The

The fifth Booke.

Of India, commonly called, *Asiatica*, or *East-India*.

India, is a spacious portion of Asia, the most Noble part of the World, and farre exceeding anie other apporcionment, comprehended vnder one name, Tartarie onely excepted: As that, which without other addition listeth vpon her Title alone, to challenge all the Territories betweene China and Persia; A continue almost twelue hundred leagues; yet deuided into manie Kingdomes. Amongst whom hee is principall, that most obtaineth by force and popularitie. The Region is most wholesome to inhabit by the fauour of the Westerne windes; but in regard of its spaciousnesse, subiect to diuers Temperatures: As in some places to heat, viz: towards the Equator: In some, to temperatures, or rather to cold; as towards the North. But generally for goodnesse of Scituation, health and fertilitie, it is far better than anie other Countrie. And therefore seldome, or neuer feeleth famine, or scarcitie: the miserie whereof is preuented by the benefit of Riuers, as in Egipt. For the two great Riuers of Indus and Ganges, water it thoroughly which being diuided into a thousand brookes, insulth of two Summers, temperature of Aire, with duplicitie of increase. And that, wee are but Aduenturers for those delicacies, which shee vilipendeth; and yet not admitted to the vnderstanding of one halfe of her worth: yet hath it its Desarts, scorching Sands, places infested with wild Beasts, and vnpeopled by reason of impenetrable woods. And although the
Region

Region wanteth Wheate, yet aboundeth it with diuers sorts of fruits, of Pulses, of Barley, and Rice. Vines they haue none, but rare, and therefore brew their beuerage of Barley and Rice. Fruit trees, and trees fit to make linnen cloath of, they haue in abundance, and out of the Palme they produce wine, Vineger, and fruit to eat. The particular of their Silkes, Bombasies, Elephants, Serpents, Spices, Stones, and diuers famous Riuers being well knowne, I will not stand to recite. The natures and fashions of the inhabitants briefly, I will, who being diuersly dispersed into diuers regions and principalities, doe diuersly differ in language, visage, habit, manners, and religion.

Both men and women imitate a noble pompe, as not incountred abroad visi magna comitante caterua, vsing manie odors in their bathes and washings; nor are they without oiles, and perfumes, jewels, pearls, and other ornaments befitting the businesse they intend.

Of whom, the 4 principall nations that inhabit this tract, are the Indians, viz: the Natives, and they for the most part are Gentiles. The second, are the Iewes, and they are dispersed here, as elsewhere, ouer the whole face of the earth. The third, are the Mahumerans, whereof some are Persians, and some Scythians, now called Mogors, liuing in the upland Countries. The fourth, are the Moores or Arabians, who within these 200 yeares, vsurping vpon the Maritim coasts of the Countrey, haue built them places and Cities verie fit for Trafique, and expelled the Natives into the more Inland Countries. And now of late, besides those ancient Christiāns, which Saint Thomas conuerted, there reside manie Portugals natives and mesticos, who are daily conuerted by the industrie of the Iesuits, to the Christian belief: who haue taught them to baptize children, and to fast. Wherein they are now tedious obseruants, as all barbarous people are, the best maintainers of customes and ceremonies, especially where the Roman Church instructeth. The Portugals intruded, by armes, praiers and policie; Their purchases I account to be so far from the name of a Conquest, as was the possession of the English from the crowne of France, when they held nothing, but Calais in Picardie. Howbeit for state and ostentation, euerie third yeare a Viceroy is sent to Goa, from whom, and from whence, all inferior deputations haue their directions

and governments. Here hee hath his Counsel, his Nobles, his Chancerie and Iustices, as is used in Portugal. From whence in ciuil cases the parties may appeale to Portugal, but in Criminall, no one person, except he be a Gentleman. He is verie magnificent in state, and neuer goeth abroad, unlesse to Church; and then attended with musike, and accompanied with all the principall Gentlemen and Burgers of Goa, on horsebacke with a guard of souldiours, before, behind, and on each side. It is a place of great honour and profit. For besides the presents which the bordering Princes round about Goa, send them at their first entrances, for contraction of peace and friendship by their Embassies, they haue also the management of the Kings reuennues and treasure, with absolute allowance from his Maiestie to giue, spend and reward, as best pleaseth him.

When a new Viceroy arriuet h (the time of the former being expired) hee presently dispatcheth his Lieutenants with sufficient authoritie in their Masters name, to receiue the possession of the Gouvernement of India, and to prepare the Pallace. Whereupon the old Viceroy maketh quicke and cleane riddance of all Vtensels; neither leauing one stool in the pallace, nor one pennie in the treasure. So that these great officers by reason of their short time of imployment, haue enough to doe, The first yeare to furnish their house with necessaries; The second, to gather treasure, and to respect the causes that mooued them to come into India; The third, and last yeare, to prepare themselves, and to settle their businesses in order, least they be ouertaken and surpris'd by the approach of a new successour. The like is to bee understood of all the Captaines in the Forts, and of all other officers throughout these Indies.

The Great Mogor.

IT hath alwaies beene beleueed, that the Territorie lying betweene *Ganges*, and the Riuer *Indus*, hath euermore bin subiect to great and mightie Monarchs. For (to be silent in matter of more ancient memorie) about the yeare of our Lord, 1300 there raigned in the Kingdom of *Delos* an *Arabian* Prince, of the sect of Mahumer, named *Sanosaradin* (as *Iohn Barros* reporteth) of so great power and strength, that he enterprised the conquest of *Asia*. Vpon which resolution forsaking these regions, in which *Indus* and *Ganges* take their beginnings, with a mightie armie, by little and little hee subdued those Princes and people which did oppose against him, vntill he pierced to the bounds of *Canora*, where it beginneth at the riuer *Bate* about *Chaul*, and stretcheth betweene *Bate*, and the Gulfe of *Bengala* to *Cape Comerine*. When he had won so large and famous a territorie, resolving to returne to *Delos*, he left *Abdessa* his Lieutenant in *Canora*. This man encouraged by the victories of his Maister, and presuming vpon his owne good fortune, bereaued the *Gentiles* of the greater part of *Canora*; and hauing gathered a most mightie and populous armie compacted of *Gentiles*, *Mahumetans*, and *Christians*, after hee had raigned 20 yeares, he died in the hight of his prosperitie, leauing his son *Mamudza* behind him: whom the King graced with his fathers regencie, vpon condition to pay him a yearely tribute: which paiment the yong man neither regarded, nor shewed himselfe loyall to his soueraine in manie things. It happened that *Sanosaradin* dying in the war which hee made against *Persia*, left behind him a sonne of so abiect and base a spirit, that *Mamudza* hereupon tooke courage to intitle himselfe King of *Canora*, calling the countrie *Decan*, and the people *Decainai*, that is, illegitimate. After this, he erected eighteene Captainships, and deuided his Dominion among them, assigning to euerie one his limits, only with this penaltie, to find alwaies in a readinesse, a certaine number of footmen and horsemen. To prevent future rebellion he chose these Captaines, not out of the orders of his Nobilitie, but from the number of his slaues. Nay more than this (to be assured of their loyalty) hee commanded that euerie one of them should build him a house in his royall Citie *Bider*, in which their children should remaine: and that

once euerie yeare at the least, they should make their apparance in his Court.

But because all authoritie, which is not aswell vnderproped with its proper vertues, as grounded vpon the affections of the people, is of small continuance; so happened it to this prince, for his slaues and vassals hauing soueraigne authoritie put into their hands, made no more account of him than of a Cipher, stripping him poore prince without respect of reuerence, of all his dominions, sauing his chiefe citie *Bidor*, with the territorie adioining. For euerie one, of a Lieutenant, became an vsurper of those states which were committed to his trust, the mightier alwaies oppressing the weaker; so that all in the end became a prey to a few. Two of them are famous at this day: the one, stretching his dominion to the borders of *Cambaia*: the other to the skirts of *Narsynga*; the first called by the *Portugals*, *Nissamalucco*, the other *Idalcan*, either of them being so puissant, that in the yere 1571, *Idalcan* belegerd *Goa* with an armie of 35000 horse, three score thousand elephants, and two hundred and fiftie pieces of ordnance. *Nissamalucco* besieged *Chaul* with lesse forces, but better fortune: For though he did not force it, yet hee brought it to a hard pinch, with the slaughter of 12000 Moores. In those countries in which *Sanadorasin* began his Empire, not aboue 60 and ten yeres agoe, a great prince (whom the East people call the great *Mogor*, in the same sence as we call the *Great Turke*) laid the foundation of a mightie Empire: for as the King of *Bierma* in our times greatly hazarded the States of *Pegu* and *Siam*, and the bordering nations; euen so the *Mogor* turned toplic turuie the Kingdoms lying on the riuer *Ganges*. The receiued opinion is, that they tooke their originall from *Tartaria*, and that they came from the coast, where the auncient *Messageta* (a people accounted inuincible at armes) did once inhabit, and liuing as it were lawlesse, and vnder no manner of gouernement, by inuading of their neighbours, procured vnto themselues the soueraigntie of spacious kingdomes. By the riuer *Oxus* they border vpon the *Perfyans*, and are at continuall enmitie with them, sometime for religion, and sometimes for enlargement of the bounds of their empire. The chiefe citie is *Shamarchand*, from whence came *Tamerlan*, and of whose bloud these *Mogor* princes do boast that they are descended. The predecessor of him (who is now prince of the *Mogors*) was verie famous in the East; for in the yere 1436, being solicited by King *Man-dao* of the North (from whom *Badurius* king of *Cambaia* had taken his kingdome) to ayde him against the *Cambaian*, hee is reported to haue brought with him an infinit number of souldiers, which we may coniecture

coniecture out of that which *Maffeus* writeth of the armie of the said King *Badurini* : to wit, that this King had vnder his standard one hundred and fiftie thousand horse, whereof 35000 were barbed. The number of footemen was five hundred thousand. Amongst these were fiftene thousand forraine souldiours, and fourescore Christians *French*, and *Portugalles*. At which, by what meanes, or by what way, they should come thither, I doe not a little wonder. Their Galleon (which they called *Dobriga*) suffred ship-wracke in the channell of *Cambaya*.

I know, that if these preparations and prouisions for war, be compared with our forces of Christendome, they will hardly be taken for true: but we haue already declared the causes, why the Princes of the East and South, may gather greater Armies than we can, and consequently that those things vvhich are spoken of their incredible store, and wonderfull prouision of furniture, may be answerable to their leauies and proportions. And as they are able to leaue millions of men (for arming and for feeding them, they take no great care;) so likewise doe the Prouinces affoord great plentie of prouision, and an inestimable multitude of their vsuall warlike engines: for they carrie nothing with them saue that which is necessarie and needfull for seruice: Wines, Cates, and such like, which cannot but vvith great expence, labour and trouble, be carried along with armies, are by these men vvholly omitted and vtterly reiected. All their thoughts tend to warlike prouision, as to get Brasse, Iron, Steele, and Tinne, to forge Pieces, and cast great Ordnance; iron and lead to make bullets, iron and Steele to temper cymtars; Oxen and Elephants to draw their Artillerie; graine to nourish their bodies; mettals to arme them, and treasure to conserue them.

They are all tirants, and to preserue their estate, and induce submissiue awednelle, they hold hard hands ouer the commonaltie, committing all gouernment into the hands of slaues and souldiours. And to make these men faithfull and loyal, they ordaine them Lords of all things, committing vnto their trust, Townes, Castles, and expeditions of great waight: but the expectation of the Prince is often deceiued by the rebellion of these vassals, for sometimes they vsurpe whole Prouinces, and impose vpon the people all kind of iniuries. But let good Princes thinke it as necessarie to build their safetie on the loue of their subiects, as vpon the force of their souldiours. Feare admitteth no securitie, much lesse perpetuities: and therefore these tirants expecting no suertie at the hands of their subiects, trust wholly vpon their men of war, flattering them with promise of libertie, and bestowing vpon them the goods of their Subiects, as rewards of their seruice. So vvith vs, the

Turke strengtheneth his state with Ianizars, & as he coueteth to be beloued and fauoured of them (to that end bestowing vpon them the riches and honours of the Empire) so they acknowledge no other Lord and maister, I may verie well say, father and protector. And so manie of the *Malaber* Princes vsing and accounting the Commons but as beasts, lay all their hopes and fortunes on the *Nairs*: the Kings of *Ormus*, *Cambaia*, *Decan*, and *Achan*, lay all vpon the shoulders of these slaues. In a word as a lawfull and iust Prince hath a great regard and singular care to haue the liking and loue of his people, by which being guarded and enuironed (as with a strong rampire) hee is able to withstand all attempts; so contrariwise, tirants knowing themselues hatefull to their subiects, employ their whole studie how to winne the fauour of their souldiours and slaues, thereby to repress innovations at home, and inuasions from abroad. Seeing therefore the safetie and foundation of their greatnesse is built on the entertainment of their souldiours, as their *Nairs*, their *Ianizars*, free or bound, strangers, or subiects, yea, whatsoeuer they be, it must needs follow, that onely actions of vvar may be the end and scope of their cogitations, as likewise that they be verie prodigall to keepe their estates verie well furnished and appointed with souldiours and prouisions. And these reasons I take to be sufficient inducement to beleue the reports of this King of *Cambaia*, and these other barbarous *Indian* Princes. For (besides that I spake of before) it is reported that with this armie did march a thousand peeces of Ordnance, among which were foure Basiliskes, euerie one drawne with an hundred yoke of Oxen: 500 Wagons laden with Gun-powder and Bullets, 200 armed Elephants, 500 Chests full of Gold and Silver, to pay souldiours wages; besides manie Princes and Petty-Lords, with their Followers, Merchants, Viſuallers, Artificers, and their Seruants, numberlesse. Notwithstanding this his incredible preparation, he was twice ouerthrowne by *Marhumedio*: once, in the Territorie of the citie of *Doce*, and another time at *Mandao*, from whence disguising his apparel to saue his life, he fled to *Diu*. Being out of danger and feare, he sent Ambassadors to *Soliman*, with a present esteemed worth, 60000 crownes, desiring his aide in these wars. But afterward, waighing in his mind, that these affaires required speedier succors, hee contracted a league with those *Portingals* which were nearest adioyning, to make them his friends and partners of the War: the composition was, that he should permit them to build a Castle in the Island of *Diu*.

Now to speake of *Marhumedio*, his fortunes were not much vnlike to those of *Tamerlan*; for as this Prince brought terror and feare vpon the

the inhabitants of *Persia* and *Asia*; so did that no lesse innovation and trouble vpon *India* and the *Orient*: This defeated in battaile *Baiazer* Emperour of *Turkes*, that ouerthrew *Badurius* King of *Cambaia*, and his armie far greater than his owne: Both of them had the surname of great. When the *Mogors* vnderstood of the riches of *India*, and the fertilitie therof, they neuer ceased by a continuall course of victorie their armes and inuasions, till they had made themselues lords of the Prouinces, lying betweene *Caucasus* and the sea, *Ganges*, and the riuer *Indus*. In this tract are contained 47 Kingdomes. For *Adabar* the successor of *Marhumedius* won *Madabar*, with the better part of *Cambaia*. Of what goodly consequence this Prouince is, may be imagined by the famous citie of *Madabar Campana* (so called for scituation vpon the top a high hill rising in the midst of a spacious plaine) and *Cambaia* (a citie consisting of 100 and 30000 houses) as likewise by the populous hoast of King *Badurius*, his warlike provision for such an armie, and plentie of graine to sustain such multitudes. I assure you, the world affords not a soile for all necessaries for the life of man (as Rice, Corne, Pulse, Sugar, Oxen, Sheepe, Pullen of all sorts, and filke) more richer or plentiful than this Prouince, wherein also there are reported to be sixty thousand Burroughs; which number certainly is verie great and admirable. *Guicciardine* writeth, that in *Netherland*, within the Territorie of the 17 Prouinces, are contained 208 walled Townes, and 150 Boroughs, enioying the rights and Priuiledges of Cities, and 6300 villages, hauing Parish Churches. In *Naples* are 1800 of these, some are townes, some but Castles. In *Bohemia* are 780 townes, and 32000 villages. In *France* (as *Iohn Bodine* writeth) are 2700 Boroughs, hauing Parish Churches, besides those in *Burgundia*, which in these times were not numbred amongst the Townes of *France*. I write this, to induce a true and absolute iudgement of the power of anie Prouince, by the number of Parishes (for I know that that ought to be made according to their greatnesse) but yet their number maketh much to the purpose, as in both which, *Cambaia* may carie the credit and esteeme of a most spacious, populous, and puissant Kingdome.

Acabar also conquered the rich Kingdome of *Bengala*; so that a man may truely say, that in this part of the *Orient* there are three Emperors; one in *Cambaia*, the other in *Narsinga*, and the third in *Bengala*: vwhereof *Cambaia* and *Bengala* far exceed all the other Prouinces in fertilitie of soile, and concourse of Merchants, both riotously abounding in Sugar, Cotten-wooll, Cattle, Elephants, and Horses: In *Bengala* also groweth long Pepper and Ginger. The first, is vvatered

and cut as it were into two halfe, by the River *Indus*, the other by *Ganges*, hauing two famous Mart-townes, *Satagan* and *Catagan*.

The Great *Mogor* doth likewise possesse the Kingdomes of *Citor*, *Mandao*, and *Delly*, wherein he keepeth his Court. Hee hath infinite store of Horses, Elephants, and Camels, as also all sorts of artillerie and vvarlike furniture, by meanes whereof he is growne fearefull to the whole Inhabitants of the East. It is written of him, that hee is able to bring into the field, 300000 horse, and that there are within his Dominions, fiftie thousand Elephants.

Some man perhaps vvill aske, how it commeth to passe that this Prince (being so mightie, and his neighbours so naked, vnarmed and poore) doth not get into his possession the Dominion of the rest of *India* and the *Orient*? In this as in the former vnlikelihoods, the vvifest man is soonest answered. There are manie obstacles: one is, that as the spirit and bodie of man cannot endure in continuall trauaile and motion (for that is onely proper to God and Nature:) so a continued and open passage is not euermore given to the ambitious apprehensions of Kings and Princes. Great Empires seldome feare forraine invasions, yet oftentimes faint they vnder their owne waight. It is not destinied vnto great things to stand alwaies at the highest, much lesse to increase: they haue their flood, but vpon a remedilesse condition, that there follow an ebbe. They are lifted on high, but by the irreuocable decree of Nature, that a fall succeed: yea, and that themselues by themselues decline. The greater they are, the more subiect to mutabilitie: the larger, the harder to hold and mannage. they moue but slowly, and of vvhat effect celeritie is in war, vvho knoweth not? The greatest conquest carrieth the greatest enuie vvith it, and greatest care to conserue what is got, and yet not care, but long continuance perfecteth these actions: and while time passeth, the neighboring Nations provide (if not infest) for their owne safetie, yea, most commonly by losse of time proceedeth the losse of victories opportunitie. He that hath ouercome his enemy, standeth oftentimes in feare of his friend, yea, of such as haue bene fellowes and partners with him in all his fortunes: so that to secure himselfe of these and such like casualties, he is constrained euen in the course of victorie to sound the retrait, and surcease his proiects. Againe, continuall victorie maketh leaders insolent, fouldiours mutinous, refusing to passe forward, at the command of their generall, as it hapned to *Alexander* and *Lucullus*. Great enterprises euen brought to their wished end, enrich the purses of certaine priuate men, but leaue the Princes Coffers emptie, who neuerthelesse must be at the charge to maintaine

continuall

continual companies, and keepe them in continuall pay : without which course, the cashed souldier is euer readie to follow any faction whensoever it shall be offered.

Moreouer this numberlesse armie, which *Marhumedius* led against the K. of *Cambia*, did not onely wast the regions where through it passed and encamped, but likewise by deuouring all things that the face of the earth yeelded, bereaued it selfe of the meanes, which nature in measure had afforded to euerie creature to maintaine life by : and so it often hapneth, that those armies which in apprehension seeme inuincible for their hugeness, are most commonly overthrowne by famine, the forerunner of pestilence. For prooofe hereof, wee haue seene the inuasions of *Attila*, *Tamerlan*, and those barbarous Nations stand on foot but a little space, whereas the *Grecians*, *Macedonians*, *Carthaginians*, *Romans*, *Spaniards*, and *English*, haue done great matters with meane armies. For things that are moderate, last and dure (as small riuers) which what they cannot do in one yeare, in two or more they finally accomplish; whereas immoderate and violent, are like to Torrents, making more noise and furie, than hurt or hinderance; violently coming, and violently againe carrying themselues away. Therefore against such mightie impressions, the surest safetie is, to draw the war out at length, and onely to stand vpon the defensue : for, let such Armies rest assured, That they cannot so long hold out, but they will wauer, either for want of prouision, scarcitie of coine, infection of the aire, or infirmities of their owne bodies. The other thing is, that prosperitie blindeth the winner, making him carelesse; aduersitie ripeneth the looser, and maketh him warie and industrious : so fortune chaunging her copie, the affaires of the winner decline, and the good successe of the looser groweth euerie day better than other. Besides, conquests are not perfected but by processe of time old age creepeth vpon the person of Princes, and how fit a crasie bodie, and a vigorous spirit nummed with old age, is for the consumation of a conquered estate, the liues of *Iulius Caesar*, and *Charles* the fift may stand for examples.

Lastly, to answer those, who vnlesse they be eie witnesses, will neuer be answered, let them know, that nothing so much hindereth the inuasive ambition of this Prince, as the nature of places. For *Causacus* stretcheth it selfe into a thousand branches in those parts, incompasseth whole kingdomes, with some parcels thereof : by some it runneth by the sides : to others, it is more defensue than any artificial rampire ; sometime it wholly shutteth vp passages, sometime it maketh them inaccessible. These difficulties are more iniurious to the *Mogor*, than to any other

other Prince, because the strength and sinnewes of his forces, consist in horse; vvhich as they are of great consequence in *Campania*, so amongst hills and rockes they are of small seruice. Of this qualitie are the frontiers of *Persia*, and the Kingdome of *Sablestan*, on euerie side hemd in vvith that part of *Caucasus*, vvwhich the *Graceans* call *Paropamisæ*. *Segestan* is likewise so enuironed, that the Riuer *Il-mento* (vvhere it not for searching out infinite windings and turnings through naturall vallies) could hardly find passage to pay his tribute to the famous *Ganges*. In *Cambaia* it selfe, vvhen the *Mogors* are of such fearefull puissance, liue the *Resbuti*, not dreading them one vvhit by reason of the strength of the Mountaines. These *Resbuti* are the remainder of the Gentiles, that betooke themselves to the mountaines betweene *Cambaia* and *Diu*, vvhen the Mahumetans first entered these Countries, and since that day, by strong hand they haue preserued their libertie, infesting often the plaine countrie vvith their incursions. Other Prouinces there are vtterly barren, not onely vvanting vvater, but all necessaries else: of this kind is *Dolcinda*, vpon the skirtes of *Cambaia*, through vvwhich it is impossible to lead an armie. To these discommodities you may adde the losse of time, vvwhich Princes (being Lords of ample and spacious Dominions) are constrained to make in their voyages. For the better part of Sommer is spent before they can arriue at their *Rendenous*, vvith their Horses halfe dead thorough trauaile, and the Armie halfe in halfe in number and courage, diminished; yea, Winter ouer-taketh them, commodious for their enemies, and disaduantageous for them: for they must lie in the field and open aire among mire and frosts, their enemies vnder a warme roofe, and vvholesome harbour.

Whereupon, vvise Princes, vvwhich haue beene to make long Land journeyes, through diuers Prouinces of diuers natures, for feare of such like discommodities, haue thought it best to provide shipping, and to vse the opportunitie of Riuers or Sea, as did *Cesar Germanicus* in the war of *Germanie*, after he perceiued, that in the protracting of time (vvwhich vvvas requisite for the marching of his armie) the greater part of his men and hortes were idle, consumed by infirmities, labour, and the length of iournies. But the *Mogor* is vtterly destitute to this aduantage: vpon one side hee hath no hauen, on another the Portugals are his iealous neighbours, who vvith two castles of great strength, at *Diu* and *Damain*, haue shut vp the vvhole gulse of the *Cambaiian* sea.

Finally, the puissance of their neighbours hath beene as great a controuler to their furious inuasions, as anie other naturall cause, viz: the King of *Barma*, who is nothing inferiour in power and riches: for he is
Lord

Lord of so manie Kingdomes, and of so fierce and warlike a people, and can bring such swarmes into the field, that he is fearelesse of anie of his *Tartarian* neighbours. And as the *Mogor* ruleth far and vvide betweene *Ganges* and *Indus*, so doth this King betweene *Ganges* and *Siam*. As the one deuise to offend, so by little and little the other waxeth vvise to defend. For by nature man is more proper to provide for his owne safetie, than readie by wrong to oppresse others, being alwaies more carefull to conserue, than forward to destroy. It cannot be expressed how full of subtiltie, shifts, deuises, and industrie man is to defend him and his: for he vseth for his owne safe-guard, not that onely vvich is properly defensiu; but euen that also which humane vvise-dome hath inuented, or nature created anie way offensiu. Neither euer was there anie instrument inuented for offence, but that the same hath beene turned to defence: Of which kind are Castles built of later times, and the deuises of moderne fortification; whereby, few souldiours haue resisted great armies, and a small place (made tenable) hath wasted the forces and treasure of a mightie Emperour; as well witnessed the fortunes of 800 Portugals at *Demain* vpon the coast of *Cambaia*; who by this Art, scorned and deluded the whole forces and attempts of this mightie *Mogor*.

China.

IN times past, the Kingdome of *China* hath beene far larger than now it is. For it appeareth by their Histories (contayning the Annals of 2000 yeares and vpward) and by other of their manuscript Chronicles written in their owne language (whose fragments are yet to be seene) that their Kings vv ere Lords almost of all the sea-coast of *Asia*, from the straight of *Anian*, to the Kingdome of *Pegu*, the Prouinces of *Meletai*, *Becam*, *Calan*, *Boraga*, and other territories situated vpon the North-side of *Pegu*, where their Monuments, with their Epitaphs and deuises, are to bee seene at this day. For in all the foresaid regions, the reliques of their ancient ceremonies, (whereby the knowledge of the Mathematiques, as the diuision of the yeare into Monechs, the Zodiake into twelue signes, true testimonies of their Empirie) are taught by tradition. Neither is the time long, sithence all those Kingdomes accounted the King of *China* for their

their soueraigne, sending their Ambassadors with presents to his Courueerie third yeare.

These Ambassadors ought to be foure at least ; for before they could ariue at their iourneyes end, some of them either by remotenesse of place, difficult accesse of audience, or delay in dispatch, could not but surely die; those whose chance it was to scape, the *Chinois* in some set banquet would poison, and erect vnto them stately tumbes, with the inscription of their names, the place from whence they came, and, with the stile of Ambassadors: thereby (say they) to commit to eternitie the remembrance of the bounds of their Empire. They enlarged their Dominions no lesse vpon the Ocean, than vpon the continent. For they first of all, inuaded the Isles of the *Orient*; next vnto them, the *Giani*: than the *Molluccans* and *Moores*, and lastly, the *Portugalles* and *Castilians*; who hold them at this day. But none of these Nations were equall of power and magnificence to the *Chinois*: for besides the conquest of the bordering Isles (which in regard of their numbers, their spaciousnesse and fertilitie, were of great reckoning) they became Lords of the greatest part of all the inhabitable places in that vast *Archipelago*, euen to *Zeilan*, where they left their speech and caracters, as also they did the like vpon the opposite continent. We read also in the papers of certaine Iesuites, that in one quarter of the Island of *Saint Laurence*, they found white people, which said, that they descended of the *Chinois*. They first discovered the *Moluccas*, gaue names vnto the spices, and planted Colonies in manie of them: which to this present keepe their old name, as *batta china à Maur*, *batta china*, *Mauri*: *batta* signifieth a towne, *batta china*, a towne of the *Chinois*. It is likewise thought that the inhabitants of *Iaua* descended from them; and to speake the truth, there is no great difference betweene their manner of liuing, cloathing, building, industrie, traffique, and manuell occupations. But after the shipwracke of fourescore vessels, and the losse of their people in the sea of *Zeilan*, (comparing their profit with their losse) they resolved to trie no more such hazards, but to containe themselves within their owne bounds. And to cause this Edict to be inuiolably obserued, they enacted, that none there-after vpon paine of the losse of his head, should offer to saile into those parts: the Kings themselves did euer abstaine from furture inuasions. For sithence they enioy a verie earthly Paradise, where Nature and Art are at strife to content the inhabitants, where no good thing is wanting, but much superfluous, and to spare, what madde men would consume their bodies and treasures, in getting those things, which are more chargeable to get, than profitable to keepe?

keepe: *Polibius* writeth, that vpon the same reason the old *Carthaginians* forsooke part of those things, which before they had conquered. The Romanes, after they had suffered a grieuous losse of their best vessels in the second Punicke war, in meere dispaire bid nauigation adue; but afterwards, perceiuing that they who were Commaunders of the Sea, were likely to prooue Lords of the Land, they built a new nauie, and at length, saw the successe to answere their latest opinions. Therefore can we not but ascribe this resolution of the *Chinois*, rather to good conscience and aduisednesse, than to wisdom, or good pollicie.

When this surrender was resolved in full counsell, they set the people whom they had vanquished, free: yet some, of their good wills remained feudaries, shadding their estates vnder the wings of their puissance, as the kings of *Corea*, *Lequi*, *Cauchinchina* and *Siam*. But notwithstanding their retraite within their owne bounds, yet possesse they a dominion little lesse than Europe: for fro the North towards to the South, it reacheth from seuentene to two and fiftie degrees, from East to the West, are two and twentie degrees.

It is diuided into eight seuerall kingdomes, ouer whom one principal Monarch controlleth; by whose high and illustrious titles of *Mundi Dominus*, and *Cœli filius*, he would seeme to challenge all natures immunities, and withall, that their prescriptions before the daies of *Adam*, were true and canonicall.

The principall citie is now called *Panquin*, neighbouring *Tartarie*, out of which the Emperor neuer issueth, but in time of war, which is as it were an exercise amongst them, at that time challenging the attendance of euerie Nation. For, as you haue read in the Historie of England, That from the Twed (betweene Northumberland and Scotland) euen to the Irish Seas, there was a wall, called *Picts wall*, one hundred miles long, and at certaine spaces fortified with watch towers, which thorow hollow trunks placed within the curtaines receiued aduertisements of Alarmes, excursions, and such like; so that in a moment the whole countrie was vp in armes, and the ordinarie proceedings of militarie discipline executed: So here, from the Sea to Mount *Caucasus*, or rather *Imans*, eight thousand furlongs together, is raised a fortification, and at euerie miles end a strong rampart, or bulwarke, wherein is continuall garrison.

Thomas Perez the King of *Portugals* Ambassadour, made foure moneths iourney from *Cantan* to *Nanquij*, bearing alwaies Northerly.

Nor doth he enter the field vnder an armie of three hundred thousand foot, and two hundred thousand horse. Of which I am not incredulous,

dulous, considering the leuies of the East, five hundred thousand men were consumed in the ciuile warres of *Iuda* and *Ierusalem*, and against *Iuda*, her enemies, (the *Moores* and *Aethiopians*) brought 1000000 paire of hands to pull downe the vualles of *Ierusalem*.

Their manner of life is most obscene and shamelesse, their idolatrie vild and vicious, their incantations ridiculous, the prostitution of Virgins to be deflored of Idols, abominable, their exorcismes damnable, & the varietie of sencelesse profanations, most contemptible.

It is not so spacious, but it is as fertile: for it yeeldeth not onely what is fitting for human life, but whatsoeuer the delicate and effeminate appetite of man may lust after. Many plants yeeld fruite twice or thrice a yeare, and that not only by the temperature of the ayre, but by the number of the riuers and plentie of vvaters, which doe both cause trafique through euerie corner of the Region, and so vvater it on all sides, that it resembleth a most pleasant and delectable garden plot. Of this plentie there are three causes: one, the prodigall expences of the King in digging of trenches throughout the whole Land: sometime cutting thorough rockie Mountaines, sometime damming vp deepe valies to make them leuell with high mountaines, and to draine the waters of Lakes and Marishes: The other, for that the whole region is scituated vnder the temperate Zone, and in no place, either by nature or mans industrie, wanteth moisture; so that all creatures, taking nourishment of heat and moisture, must needs here wonderously prosper. In no place plants may take larger scope to spread their branches, nor Cattle larger walkes to wander in, than in this Countie. The last reason is, for that the idle are neither seuerely punished, nor altogether tollerated, but euerie one is forced to doe somewhat, no foote of land is left vnhusbanded, nor dram of stufte cast away vnwrought. Among other things note worthie, this one is of great consideration, that in *Cantan* they maintaine foure thousand blind people to grinde corne and Rice; euerie child is set about somewhat according to his yeares and strength; those onely vvho are truly impotent in their limbes, and haue no friends liuing to succour them, are provided for in Hospitals. That none may excuse themselves, in saying hee can doe nothing, euerie one is bound to learne his fathers occupation, vvhich is the reason that the children (borne as it vvere tradesmen) learne their fathers occupations before they perceiue it, by continuall practise, becomming in time most artificiall mechaniques. He that cannot liue at Land, seeketh his maintenance at Sea, (for that is no lesse inhabited than the Land) yea infinite housholds liue on the Riuer in boates, without comming to Land
for

for a long season. Some whereof liue by ferrying ouer people, some by transporting passengers and their Merchandize : others keepe shops, others vessells of lodging for their Merchants and Trauellers. Whatsoever is needfull for cloathing, for food or nourishment, delight or ease of a ciuill life, is to be found in the midst of great rivers. Many likewise nourish all sorts of Poultrye, especially, ducks in their vessells. To hatch the Eggs and to nourish the young ones, they vse not the dams as we doe, but an artificiall heate, in a manner as they doe in *Ægypt*, especially at *Cair*. All night he keepeth them in his boate, and at morning sendeth them to feed in the fields sowed with Rice, where all day long hauing fed on the Weeds, to the great good of the husband-man, they returne toward euening to their Cages, at the sound of a little Bell or Cimbali. Many liue, by carrying Fish, both salt and fresh, into the high Countries : for in the Spring, when the riuers rise through thawes, and land-floods, so incomparable quantities of sea-fish doe abound, in the hauens and creekes that the fishermen depart rather wearied than wanting. This fish the Skippers buy for a small matter of the fishermen, and keeping them aliue in certaine vessells made for the purpose, they transport them into Prouinces far remote from the sea. There they are sold and preserued in pooles and stewes neare Cities and great Townes, to serue the Markets and Tables of the richer *Chinois* all the yeare long. Because it is forbidden anie inhabitant to passe out of the Land without leaue, and therewith neither, but for a certaine time limited, it must needs be that by the daily increase of people, the countrie is euen pestered with inhabitation. It hath beene obserued among themselves, that for euerie five that haue died, seauen haue beene borne. The climate is so temperate, and the aire so vvholsome, that in mans memorie anie vniuersall pestilence hath not beene knowne to infest the Countrie. Notwithstanding least anie man should thinke this people to enioy all sweetes without some mixture of sower, you must note, that their earthquakes are more dreadfull vnto them than anie pestilence to vs : for whole cities haue beene swallowed, and Prouinces made desart by this punishment. These casualties choake vp the course of ancient Channels, and make new where were neuer anie before ; they lay Mountaines leuell with the ground, and make hauocke of the people. In the yeare 1555, a deluge breaking out of the bowels of the earth, deuoured 180 miles of firme land, with the townes and villages, standing thereupon : those which escaped the floud, lightning and fire from heauen destroyed.

There are said to be in *China*, one hundred & fiftie Cities, 235 great Townes,

Townes, 1154 Castles, and 4200 Borroughes without wals, wherein souldiers are quartered: of villages and hamlets (some of them containing a thousand households) the number is infinit; for the countrie is so couered with habitation, that all *China* seemeth but as one towne. They haue two Metropolitan cities, *Nanquin* and *Panquing*. In *Nanquin* toward the North, the king keepeth his court: vnder the iurisdiction of the one are seuen prouinces, vnder the other eight. Both of them are so spacious, that it is a daies iourney for a horse-man to ride from one end to the other. Of the number of the inhabitants, no certaintie can bee produced, but according to Manuscript relations, and the report of trauellers, it is said, that the Kingdome containeth 60 and ten millions of liuing soules. This is an admirable report, and not to be beleeued, if it be compared with the prouinces of Christendome; but surely something about concept is to be credited to those spacious, populous, and barbarous nations. Let vs set the largenesse of their prouinces, the circuit of their cities, their plentie and abundance of all things, and in all places, either in prospering by nature, or mans industrie, with their number and inhabitation, and we shall find a countrie like enough to afford such a reckoning, with places, cities, and dwellings, able to containe them, and nourishment sufficient to maintaine them. *Italie* exceedeth not nine millions: *Germanie* (excluding the *Swizzers* and *Netherlands*) not ten, and with the foresaid prouinces not aboute fifteene, which number peradventure *France* may reach vnto. *Spaine* is far inferiour to *Italie*: *Sicilie* hath but one million and three hundred thousand: *England* three millions, and *Belgia* as manie, if by the continuance of the war in those countries that number be not much decayed.

The *Italians* conceipting meruelous highly of themselues, thinking no prouince vpon the face of the earth for wealth and people comparable to *Italie*; but they forget, that as it is long, so, it is narrow, and nothing wide or spacious, neither that two third parts haue not one nauigable riuer, (a want of great consequence) neither that the *Apenine*, a mountaine rockie & barren, doth spread it selfe ouer a fourth part thereof. Let them not deceiue themselues, nor condemne anothers plentie, by their owne wants, nor measure others excesse, by their handfuls. For fertilitie, doth *France* in plentie of graine or cattle giue place to *Italie*? Or *England* for cattle, for wooll, fish, or mettall? Or *Belgia*, for number or goodlinesse of cities, excellencie of artificers, wealth or merchandise? Or *Greece*, for delectable scituation, commodious hauens of the sea, or pleasant prouinces? Or *Hungarie* for cattle, wine, corne, fish, mines, and all things else? But I will not stand vpon these discourses; onely

onely let me tell you, that *Lumbardie* containeth the third part of *Italie*, a Prouince delightfome for battle-plaines, and pleasant Riuer, without barren mountaines or sandie fields, and to be as full of people as the whole halfe of *Italie* besides. Yea, what may be said of *Italie* for profit or pleasure, that may not be spoken particularly of *France*, *England*, *Netherland* and both the *Panones*? Wherefore since the countrey is not onely large and spacious, but vnited, populous, plentiful and rich, at least let it be beleued and accounted for one of the greatest Empires that euer vvas.

The gouernment is tirannicall: for throughout the Kingdome there is no other Lord but the King, They know not what an Earle, a Mar-Gouernment.quesse, or a Duke meaneth. No fealtie, no tribute, or tolle is paid to any man but the king. He giueth all magistracies and honours. He alloweth them stipends wherewith to maintaine their estates, and they dispatch no matter of weight without his priuitie. His vassals obey him, not as a King, but rather as a God. In euerie Prouince standeth his portraiture in gold, which is neuer to be seene but in the new Moones; then is it shewed and visited of the Magistrates, and reuerenced as the Kings owne person. In like manner the Gouernors and Iudges are honoured; no man may speake to them but vpon their knees. Strangers are not admitted to enter into the Kingdome, least their customes and conuersation should breed alteration in manners, or innouation in the state. They are onely permitted to traffique vpon the sea-coasts, to buy and sell victuall, and to vent their wares. They that do traffique vpon the Land, assemble manie together, and elect a Gouernour amongst them, whom they terme Consull. In this good manner strangers enter the Kingdome, but alwaies vvaied on by the Customers and Kings Officers.

The inhabitants cannot trauell but with a licence, and vvith that neither, but for a prefixed season: and to be sure of their returne, they grant no leaue, but for traffiques sake, and that in Ships of 150 tunne and not aboue; for they are iealous, that if they should goe to sea in bigger vessels, they vvould make longer iournies. To conclude, it is a religious Law of the Kingdome, that euerie mans endeauours tend wholly to the good and quiet of the Common-wealth. By which proceedings, Iustice (the Mother of quietnesse, Pollicie the Mistresse of good Lawes, and Industrie the daughter of peace) doe flourish in this Kingdome. There is no countrey moderne or ancient, gouerned by a better forme of policie than this Empire: by vertue whereof they haue ruled their Empire 2000 yeares: And so hath the State of *Venice* flourished

1100. yeares, the Kingdome of *Fraunce* 1200. It is 1200. yeares since they cast off the yoke of the *Tartars*, after their ninety yeares government.

Arts.

For their Arts, learning and policie, they conceiue so well of themselves, that they are accustomed to say, that they haue two eyes; the people of *Europe*, but one; and the residue of the Nations, none. They giue this report of the *Europeans*, because of their acquaintance with the *Portugals*, with whome they trafficke in *Macao*, and other places, and the renowme of the *Castilians*, who are their neighbours in the *Philippine*.

Printing, Painting, and Gun-powder, with the materialles thereunto belonging, haue bin vsed in *China* many yeares past, and very common, so that it is with them out of memorie, when they first began. Their Chronicles say, that their first King being a great Nigromancer, who raigned many thousand yeares past, did first inuent great Ordinance: and for the Antiquitie of Printing, there haue beene Bookes seene in *China*, which were printed at least fise or six hundred yeares, before printing was in vse with vs in *Europe*, and to say when it first began, it is beyond remembrance.

Forces at
land.

By the multitudes of people (before spoken of) you may imagine the State of his forces, for heerein all other prouisions take their perfection. But to speak somewhat in particular. The power of this Prince, (remembring his countenance and nature, detesting all inuasions) is more readie and fit to defend, than offend, to preserue rather than to increase. His Cities for the most part are builded vpon the banks of nauigable riuers, enuironed with deep and broad ditches, the walls built of stone & brick, strong aboue beliefe, and fortified with Cavaliers, and artificall bulwarks. Vpon the borders toward *Tartarie* (to make sure work against such an enemy) they haue built a wall beginning at *Chioi* (a Citie scituated betweene two most high mountaines) and stretching it selfe toward the East 600. miles between mountaine and mountaine, vntill it touch the cliffes of the Ocean. Vpon the other frontiers you may behold manie but small holds, so built to stay the course of the enemy, vntill the countrie forces be able to make head, and the royall Armie haue time to come leisurely forward; for in 400 great towns he keepeth in continuall pay forces sufficient vpon the least warning, to march to that quarter whether occasion calleth. Euery Citie hath a garrison and Guard at the Gates, which at nights is not onely fast locked, but sealed, and may not be opened before the seale at morning be thoroughly viewed. To speake truth, their souldiers, horsemen, and footmen, by land, or
sea,

sea, are more famous for their numbers, their gallant furniture, and plentie of prouision, than for strength and courage. For the inhabitants partly by their effeminate and wanton kind of life, partly by their forme of gouernment, whereby they are made vile and base, haue little valor or manhood left them. They vse no forren souldiers, except those whom they take in war: these they send into the inland countries, where being marked (to distinguish them from other) they serue more like slaues then souldiers; yet haue they pay, with rewards for their good seruice, and punishment for their cowardice: true motiues to make men valorous. The rest, which are not inrold, are not suffered to keepe weapons in their houses.

Their Sea-forces are nothing inferior to their Land-forces: for besides their ordinarie Fleets, lying vpon the Coastes for the safetie of the Sea-townes, by reason of the abundance of nauigable riuers, and so huge a sea tract full of Hauens, Creeks, and Islands, it is thought that with ease they are able to assemble from 500. to 1000. such great ships, which they call *Giunchi*. Forces at sea.

To thinke that treasure cannot be wanting to leaue so great a number of Ships, Souldiers, and Mariners, many men affirme, that the Kings reuennues amount to 120. millions of gold, which value, although it may seeme impossible to him that shall make an estimate of the States of *Europe*, with the Kingdome of *China*; yet may it find place of beleeue, if he doe but call to mind, First, the nature and circuite of the Empire, being little lesse than all *Europe*; Next, the populousnesse of the inhabitants, accompanied with inestimable riches: Then, the diuersitie of Mines, of Gold, Siluer, Iron, and other sorts of Mettall, the vn-speakeable quantitie of Merchandize, passing from hand to hand, by so many Nauigable Riuers: so many armes and in-lets of the Sea, their vp-land Cities, and Maritime Townes, their Tolles, Customes, Subsidies, and lastly, their rich wares brought into *Europe*. He taketh the Tenth of all things which the earth yeeldeth; as Barley, Rice, Oliues, Wine, Cotton, Wooll, Flaxe, Silke, all kinds of Mettall, Fruits, Cattle, Sugar, Hony, Reubarbe, Camphire, Ginger, Wood, Muske, and all sorts of Perfumes. The custome onely of Salt in the Cittie *Canto* (which is not of the greatest, nor of the best Trafficke) yeeldeth 180000. Crownes yearely: the tenth of Rice, of one small Towne, and the adiacent Territorie, yeeldeth more then 100000. Crownes. By these you may coniecture of the rest. He leaueth his subiects nothing saue food and cloathing. He hath vnder him no Earles, Lords, or Nobles of any degree, no nor priuat persons indowed with great wealth. Treasure.

Wherefore since this Empire is so huge, and all the profits thereof are in his hands, how can the former assertion of so great and yearly a revenue, to men of reason seeme any thing admirable at all? There are two things moreouer, which adde great credit to this reckoning; one is, that all his impositions are not paid in coine, but some in Hay, some in Rice, Corne, Prouender, Silke, Cotton, Wooll, and such like necessaries; the other is, that, the King of 120 millions, which he receiue, disburseth againe three parts thereof. And so since it goeth round from the King to the people, it ought to seeme no wonder, if the people be able to spare it. gaine for the Princes vse at the yeares end. For as waters doe ebbe as deepe as they flow, so impositions easily leauied, suffice for the expences of the State, and the people receiue againe by those expences, as much as they laied out in the beginning of the yeare.

Borderers.

This King seareth no neighbour, but the great *Cham* of *Tartaria*; all the rest acknowledge vassalage. Against this enemy the ancient Kings built that admirable wal, so much renowned amongst the wonders of the *Orient*. Towards the sea, he bordereth vpon the *Iaponians* and *Castilians*. The distance betweene *Iapan* and *China* is diuers. From *Goto* one of the Islands of *Iapan*, to the citie of *Liampo*, is three score leagues: from *Cantan* 297. The Islanders of *Iapan* doe often spoile the sea-coasts of *China* by their incursions, descending on land & harrying the countrie, more like Pirates than men of War. For in regard that *Iapan* is deuided into manie Islands, and into diuers Seigniories (ill agreeing amongst themselues) though they excell the *Chinois* in armes and courage, yet are they not of sufficient power to performe any action of moment against them. Vpon another frontire lie the *Spaniards*, of whom the *Chinois* not without good cause are verie iealous, because of the situation of the *Philippine* (commodiously seated for the inuasion of *China*) and the fame of the riches well knowne to the Spanish. But the king of Spaine wisheth rather to plant Christianitie peaceably amongst them, whereof there was once good hope, that God had opened a passage. For though the *Chinois* will suffer no stranger to enter within their Dominions, yet certaine Iesuits (zealous in the increasing of Christian religion) in a Territorie, so spacious as that is, entred with great secrecie and daunger, and procuring the fauour of certaine gouernors, obtained a priuiledge of naturalization, specially Frier *Michael Rogerius*, who in the yeare 1590 returned into Europe to aduise what course were best to take in this businesse. After whose departure, intelligence was brought from two Friars which remained behind, that after diuers

diuers persecutions they were then constrained to forsake the citie wherein they sojourned, and to make hast to sea-ward. The Portugals are likewise eye-sores vnto them, but by the report of their iustice and the moderation which *Ferdinand Andrada*, shewed in the gouernment of the Island of *Tamo*, and by the traffique which they exercise in those seas, they can better digest their neighbour-hood, than that of the Spanish. This was the first Portugall that ariued in the citie of *Cantan*, and set on land *Thomas Perez*, legier for *Emanuel* king of *Portugal*. But other Captaines being there afterwards disimbarked, behaued themselves so lewdly, that they occasioned the said Ambassadour to be taken for a spie, and cast into prison, where he died most miserably, the residue were entreated as enemies. At last it was permitted the Portugals for traffique sake to set a factorie in *Macao*, where againe before they had strongly fortified their colonie, they were constrained to submit to the limitations of the *Chinois*; to whom in short time for their strength, wisdom, friendship, and allians with the *Castilians*, they became suspicious: and therefore they doe daily more and more bridle their libertie of traffique, carrying so heauie a hand toward them, that they would faine giue them occasion to leaue *Macao* of their owne willes, and retire backe into *India* from whence they came.

The Kingdome of Siam.



Pon the borders of *China* to speake nothing of *Chanchinchina* because we know nothing worth relation of that territorie) ioyneth the countrie of *Siam* accounted one of the greatest amongst these great Kingdomes of *Asia*. It tooke its name of the citie *Siam*, scituated vpon the entrance of the riuer *Me-non*: it is also called *Gorneo*. It reacheth by East and West from the citie *Campaa*, to the citie of *Tauai*, in which tract, by the sea-coast are contained fife hundred leagues, whereof the *Arabians* once vsurped two hundred, with the cities of *Patan*, *Paam*, *Ior*, *Perca*, and *Malaco*, now in the possession of the *Portugals*. From the South toward the North, it reacheth from *Sincapura*, scituate in degrees, to the people called *Gueoni* in 29 degrees.

The Lake *Chimai* is distant from the sea fixe hundred miles: the vp-land circuit stretcheth from the borders of *Chanchinchina* beyond

the riuer *Auan*, wherelieth the Kingdome of *Chencra*. Besides the Lake of *Chimai*, the riuers *Menon*, *Menam*, *Caipumo* and *Ana* (which cause greater fertilitie of Graine thorough the whole Region, than a man would beleue) are all his. The better part of his Kingdome is environed with the Mountaines *Ana*, *Brema*, and *Iangoma*, the residue is plaine like *Ægypt*, abounding with Elephants, Horfe, Pepper, Gold and Tinne. In the West part are huge woods, and therein are manie Tygers, Lyons, Ownces, and Serpents. It containeth these Prouinces, *Cambaia*, *Siam*, *Muantai*, *Bremo*, *Caipumo*, and *Chencra*. The inhabitants of *Lai* which border vpon the North of the Prouinces of *Muantai* and *Caipumo* (and are deuided into three principalities) are vnder his obeysance. The first is, that of *Iangoma*, The second of *Currai*, The third *Lanea*, neere *Chachinchina*. They inhabit a plaine and wealthie Countrey, into which the *Gueoni* (*Marke Paul* calleth their Countrey *Gangigu*) discending from the mountaines to hunt for men, make oftentimes cruell Butcheries amongst them. The people of *Lai* for feare of those *Anthropophagi* acknowledge the soueraigntie of *Siam*, but they often rebell, and obey as they list.

Riches.

The wealth of the countrey may be coniectured by the fertilitie: for being scituated in a plaine, and warred with most famous riuers (like another *Ægypt*) it cannot but abound with plentie of all good things. It bringeth forth Rice, graine of all sorts, Horses, Elephants, infinite store of Cattle, Gold, and Tin: Siluer is brought thither by the people of *Lai*. By reason of this plentie, the people are drowned in pleasure and wantonnesse. They follow Husbandrie, but take no great delight in manuell occupations, which causeth the Kingdome to be poore in Merchandize. Amongst manie other cities three are famous, *Cambaia*, seated vpon the riuer *Menon*: which rising in *China*, is so hugely augmented by the falling in of manie riuers, that his owne Channell not sufficing for receipt thereof, it renteth the earth to disgorge it selfe into a thousand Islands, making a second *Meotis* more than sixtie miles long: *Mescan* signifieth the Captaine, *Menon* the mother of waters. The second is the citie of *Siam*, whose statelinesse giueth the name to the whole countrey. It is a most goodly citie, and of admirable Traffique, which may the better be imagined, by the writing of a certaine Iesuite, who reporteth, that besides the naturall inhabitants, there are more than 30000 *Arabian* households. The third citie is called *Udia*, greater than *Siam*, consisting of foure hundred thousand families. It is said, that two hundred thousand boats belong to this citie, and the Riuer *Caipumo*, whereon it is seated.

This

This King to shew his Maiestie and magnificence, keepeth a guard ^{Forces.} of sixe thousand souldiours, and two hundred Elephants: of these beasts he hath thirtie thousand, wherof he traineth three thousand for the war. This is a verie great matter, if you weigh their woorth, and their charges in keeping.

His gouernment is rather tyranicall than King-like: for he is abso- ^{Gouernment.} lute Lord ouer all the demeanes of the Kingdome, and either setteth them out to husbandmen, or giueth them to his Nobles for maintenance, during life and pleasure, but neuer passeth the right of inheritance. Hee bestoweth on them likewise Townes and Villages, with their territories, but on condition to maintaine a certaine number of horsemen, footmen, and Elephants. By this pollicie, without anie penie pay or burthen to the countrie, he is able to leaue 20000 horsemen, and 25000 footmen. Vpon occasion, he can wage a greater number, by reason of the largenesse of his Kingdomes, and the populousnesse of his Townes. For *Udia* onely (the chiefe seat of his Kingdome) mustered 50000 men. And although he be Lord of nine Kingdomes, yet vseth he no other Nation in the war, but the *Siamits* and the inhabitants of the two Kingdomes of *Vdia* and *Muantai*. All honours and preferments are bestowed vpon men of seruice in this Kingdome.

In times of peace they haue their warlike exercises, and in certaine pastimes which the King once a yeare exhibiteth at *Udia*, are shewed all militarie teates of armes vpon the Riuer *Menon*, where more than threethousand vessels (which they terme *Paraos*) deuided into two squadrons, skirmish one against another. Vpon the land run the horses and Elephants, and the footemen trie it out at sword and buckler, with point and edge rebated: the remainder of their daies they spend in riot and wantonnesse.

Their borders toward the East, reach to *Chanchinchina*, betweene ^{Borderers,} whom are such huge woods, Lyons, Tygers, Leopards, Serpents and Elephants, that they cannot infest one another by armes. Toward the Lake *China* they border vpon the *Chinois*. Toward the sea they affront the *Arabians* and *Portugals*. The one tooke from them *Patam*, *Paam*, *Ior*, and *Peam*; the other *Malaca*, and the territorie adioyning; so betweene them they bereaued him of two hundred miles of land; and contenting themselues with the command of the sea-coasts, and with the customes arising vpon the carrying out and bringing in of merchandize, they abstaine from further inuasion of the Inland Prouinces, and hold it good pollicie to keepe firme peace with this King and his countries. Towards the West lieth the Kingdome of *Pegu*, like a halfe

Moone, betweene the Mountaines of *Brama* and *Iangoma*. Towards the North, lie the *Gudoni*, inhabiting the barren and sharpe mountaines, betweene whom and *Siam* dwell the people of *Lay*. This people is subiect to the crowne of *Siam*, for feare of these *Canibals*, of whom (if it had not beene for his protection) they had long agoe beene vtterly deuoured. Not fortie yeares since the King made a iourney against them with 20000 horse (their horse are small, but excellent good in trauell) 25000 footmen, and ten thousand Elephants; part employed for seruice, and part for cariage. No Kingdome hath greater store of these beasts, or doth more vse them. An innumerable number of Oxen, Buffals, and beasts of carriage, followed this armie, whom they slew when they wanted other prouision.

Hitherto haue we deuised of *Siam* and *Pegu* (as they stood) before the comming of the *Portugals* into *India*, but how in processe of time the State was altered, you shall now heare. In times past, diuers Kingdomes of *Brama* scituated along the riuer towards the Lake *Chiamai* obeyed the Kings of *Pegu* vnder the gouernment of Lieutenants. Sixty yeares since, one of these Captaines, ruler of the Kingdome of *Tengu*, by the aide of his faction, and reputation of his Vertues, entered into Rebellion, and slaying the Nobles of the Land, vsurped the Kingdome. Afterward, he forced the Cities, and conquered the Kingdome of *Prom*, *Melintati*, *Calam*, *Mirandu*, and *Ana*, all inhabited by the *Bramians*, for the space of one hundred and fittie leagues towards the North. Hee assaied likewise the conquest of *Siam*; but comming before *Vdia*, the chiefe Citie of the Kingdome, he vvas forced to raise his siege and depart. He vnderooke this iourney vvith 300000 footmen, consuming more than three moneths, in making vvay for his armie through stonie mountaines, huge vvoods, and inaccessible places; in prosecution vvhereof, hee lost 20000 of his souldiours, and re-enforced his losses vvith captiue *Siamits*. At his returne home, he inuaded the Kingdome of *Pegu*, and won it. Afterward in the yeare 1507. he renewed his iourney against *Siam*, and overcame the King thereof, vvho slew himselfe vvith poyson; but he tooke his sonnes, and with them the better part of the Kingdome. He beleagred *Vdia* vvith a million of men, and vppward. Our late Writers call this man and his successours (because their fames arose by the conquest of the Kingdomes of *Brama*) Kings of *Brama* or *Bramia*, but the *Portugals* of a more sound iudgement grounded vpon nerer Neighbour-hood, call them Kings of *Pegu*.

And for that it may not seeme that vvhat vvee vvrite as concerning these infinit numbers, is either fabulous, or reported altogether vpon
heare-

heare-say; because that now, here-before, and hereafter we shall haue occasion to discourse of this point, we thinke it not amisse to spend some time in shewing how and by vvhath likely-hoods, both in this, and otherlike barbarous Dominions, such huge and numberlesse companies are leauied and nourished. First therefore, it is a ground infallible, that all Monarchies consist of people, gouernment, and reuennues, and that howsoeuer in times of peace Princes may liue at pleasure, yet populous armies, neere home, or far off, cannot long indure without great supplies, and a continuall sea of readie money: For as the members of our bodie cannot mooue vvithout sinnewes, nor motion auaille vs, if ioynts vvere wanting; so vvithout money an armie can neuer be gathered, nor being gathered, kept together, if coine be vvanting; which preuenteth infinite mischances, and draweth after it Armour, Prouision, Victuals, and vvhatsoeuer else is necessarie for life, or armes. And sithence the vvealth of Princes, euen as of priuate persons (from whose purses they supplie their occasions) hath limits and measure; Let them not thinke to begin anie long war, much lesse to continue it, vnlesse they thoroughly provide aforehand: for when this torrent breaketh forth, no man can make an estimate, what will be the expence of reparation therein: vvwhich mooued a certaine *Portugal* Captaine to tell King *Sebastian*, providing for his iourney into *Barbarie*, that vvars should be accompanied with three streames: The first, of Men; The second of Victuall: The third of Siluer. For whosoever will rightly iudge of a Princes estate, must examine vvwhether his ordinarie receipts be sufficient to answer his ordinarie issues, (leauing alwaies a portion to answer extraordinary accidents) vvwhich are so certaine in prooffe, as all men must provide for, though they know them not before hand, especially in the condition of a great Prince.

The Great Turke in his Persian iournies, felt the smart thereof, who though he be so potent a Prince, by default of this prouidence, was constrained to raise the value of his coine, and abase the allay, so far forth, that the Ianizars finding themselves agreeued thereat, raised commotions, set fire on the citie of *Constantinople*, and rifled a great part thereof. Neither could the King of *Spaine* haue sustained the burthen of so manie wars, and in so remote Prouinces, if he had trusted to no other supplies than those of *Spaine*. But fortune hath giuen him a countrie prodigall in Mines of Gold and Siluer, assuredly paying the expence of one year, vvith the income of another. A prouidence so farre from neglect, in the late raigne of *Q. E.* that before shee had anie warres with *Spaine*, or had sent her forces of preuention
into

into the *Low Countries*, shee had readie in deposito, two millions of Crownes. And being engaged; by her politike gouernment, she raised such an annuall assistance from the loue of her subiects against the malicious and iniurious attempts of her enemies, that during her raigne shee leauied three millions, five hundred and nineteene thousand, five hundred and sixtie foure pounds. What fruite the issue thereof hath produced, no better experiment can be obiected, than the *Generall peace*, which at this day the whole estate of Christendome enioyeth and acknowledgeth. *Iohn Iaques Triunlce*, being demanded how manie things were necessarie hereunto, answered three; *Money, Money, Money.*

But these grounds especially hold, when the burthen of the war lieth vpon the purse of the Prince & his people: for sometime it hapneth, that the souldiour liueth vpon the Enemies Countrey, as did the *Hunnes, Vandals, Gotthes, Arabians*, and in our daies *Tamerlane*. They entered the Prouinces without controule, being vnprovided of forces, and made prey and spoile of whatsoeuer came in their reaches. They ransacked the Cities, and fed vpon the villages. The like good lucke had the *Portugals* in the *East Indies*, and the *Castillians* in the West, but the one far better than the other; for neuer anie Nation conquered with lesse cost, so much as the *Spaniards* haue done, in new *Spaine* and *Peru*. But let not anie people thinke to doe so in these daies, no not in *Asia* or *Afrique*, much lesse in *Europe*, where the vse of great Ordnance is in perfection, and the art of fortification so ingenuous, that one Castle shall be able to sustaine, yea, well provided, to wearie the forces of the greatest Potentate. The *Turkes* at *Zigeth* (a small fortresse in *Hungarie*) approued this; which in the yeare 1566. *Soliman* beleagerd with 300000 men of war, and at last forced; but with so great a slaughter of his people, that scant the third part of this huge armie returned to their houses. In like maner, the *Portugals* in the beginning of their *Indian* acquisitions, with a few souldiours, and in little time, won admirable victories; but when the *Barbarians* began to grow acquainted with *Artillerie*, to allure *Carpenters* and *Masons* to build them Castles, and to arme vessels to sea, their courages became calme, and there set an end to their *plus ultra*. The like did the *Spanish* in the New world, to their *Non sufficit orbis*. For after their first good fortunes, they found in *Nova Hispania* the *Chichimechi*, and in *Peru* the *Pilcosony*, the *Chiriguani*, and the *Lúchy*, people so desperate to stop the furious course of their former victories, that since, in almost one hundred yeares space, they haue not beene able to adde one footes bredth to their new Empiry.

In

In the vale of *Aranco*, *Tecapell*, and the Kingdome of *Chile*, when the Inhabitants saw them to be wounded and slaine with the shot of their arrowes, and the strokes of their swords, they neuer afterward vouchsafed them their former reuerence; nor carried the wonted conceipt of their immortalitie: and now being beaten by experience, they feare not the carriere of the horse, nor the terror of the Harquebush.

If the war be at or within our owne doores, then is it easie to leaue strong and populous forces, as wee read of the *Crotons*, *Sibarites*, and *Gauntois*; who made head against the power of *France*, with fourescore thousand fighting men. When the war was made in these populous Countries, and neare at hand; euerie man made one in the medle, gallantly armed, and well provided with furniture and Victuall to hold out certaine daies: but when the War continued longer than expectation, for want of monie and food, euerie man retired; one to the Plough, another to his Shop, the rest to those employments whereby they sustained themselves and their families. The Scots for want of wealth, neuer made famous iourney out of the Island, but at home they haue led mightie armies for a short time, either for reuenge of wrongs, or to defend their frontiers: euen as did the Romans for certaine Ages, warring with their Neighbours at their priuate charges. They tooke the field, euerie man provided with victuall for two or three daies, and in one battaile and few houres, finished those wars. But in the iourney against the *Veij*, the war continuing beyond opinion, the State was enforced to procure prouision for the Armie.

That Armies may far easier be gathered in the East and *Afrique*, than in *Europe*, the reasons are manie. Those regions for the most part are more plentifull of all necessaries for humane life: the people of the South are better contented with little, than we: their diet is bare and simple, onely to mainetaine life, and not excesse: but the *Europians* must eate and drinke, not to sustaine nature, but to comfort the stomack, and to expell colds. Wine, which with vs is dearer than bread, is not to be found amongst them: their waters are better than our drinkes. Cookerie is not in such request with them, as with vs, nor their tables accustomed to such Cates: their bankets are onely furnished with Rice and Mutton. Neither doe the people of the East spend a quarter of that cloathing which we doe: they goe to the war halfe naked, hiding nothing but their priuities: they stand not in need of that number of workemen which we doe, among whom, the greatest part of our life is spent, in weauing and deuising stufes and fashions to cloath the carkas, and adorne the bodie, with cloath, silke, colours, and embroderies. All their

their expences are onely vpon cloathing of Cotton-wooll, and that but from the Nauell to the Knee.

These are the reasons which I meant to lay, why they may gather fortie thousand men with more ease, than we ten; and to these may be added this as the last; that, vpon Ordnance and their furnitures; vpon provisions and their cariages; vpon horses, pioners, and a thousand like necessaries, infinite sums are spent; of which the people of the East are vterly ignorant, especially, those which haue not to deale with the *Portugals* or *Arabians*.

They goe to War without Armor, without Curaces, Helmets, Launces or Targets, which with vs, cannot be conueyed from place to place vvithout great expence. *Virgill*, calleth this Luggage, *In iustam fascem*, because it seemeth to be needelesse, therein degenerating much from the ancient *Roman* Discipline; vvherein for ten daies iourney and more, euerie souldiour carried his proper weapons both offensive and defensive, yea and sometimes his victuals. What should we speake of the armies of the *Assyrians* and *Aethiopians*, of *Belus*, *Ninus*, *Simiramis*, *Cambises*, *Cyrus*, *Darius*, *Sesostris*, and *Sesacus*, were they not as huge and populous, by the report of all histories, as these whereof we entreat? Or in times lesse ancient, haue not we, and our ancestors, scene the *Arabians*, *Tartarians* and *Turkes*, inuading Prouinces with Armies of 300000 people and vpward. By moderne examples, and memorie of later accidents, to giue credite to the ancient, I will set downe vvhat hapned in *Angola*, a noble and rich Prouince of the West *Aethiope*, adioyning to *Congo*) reported by the letters of certaine Iesuities and *Portugall* Captaines. In the yeare 1584 *Paulus Diasius* by the fauour of God, and valour of his people, vpon the second day of Februarie, put to flight the King of *Angola*, and defeated his armie, consisting of one million and two hundred thousand Moores: which may well proue, that these populous armies are of little seruice, and small continuance, rather like violent stormes, than dripping showers; and though with ease they are gathered, yet without greater prouision, than anie Prouince is able to afford them, they are not easily held together. When their prouision is spent, they begin to breake, and bid adue to the action; and that most commonly, not in the midst of their course, but euen in their first remoues, for Merchants, Victuallers, Taylors, Shoemakers, and such like, follow not their wars: & if they should, then this inconuenience would follow; that for one million of souldiours, it were verie necessarie to prouide a million of Wagons, Pack-horses, Carters, Carpenters, Victuallers, Merchants, &c. and than, neither riuers would serue them for drinke,

drinke, nor the fields with bread; nor the earth for lodgings: so must they needs sinke vnder their owne waight; which the Easterne Princes (leading these vnaccustomed numbers vpon long iourneyes) in some fashion forecasting, did alwaies prouide incredible masses of money, victuall, and such like warlike prouisions, long before they entered into action; as was well scene in *Xerxes*, who to maintaine the great armie, as well at sea as at land, which he led for the conquest of *Greece*, spent seauen yeares in preparation for the iourney.

To retorne to the King of *Barma*: of late yeares he tooke the hauens of *Martela* and *Pernafor*; and turning his armes sometime towards the North, sometime toward the West, he vexed the Princes of *Caor* and *Tipura*, tooke the kingdomes of *Aracan* and *Macin*, leading vpon this iourney 300000 men, and 40000 Elephants.

Aracan is a Kingdome inuironed round with mountaines & woods, as with a wall or trench: the chiefe citie which giueth the name to the countrie, is situated on a riuer fifteene leagues from the sea, and 35 from *Catagan*. Aracan.

Macin is a Kingdome abounding in *Aloes*: this wood, which the *Arabians* call *Calambuco*, and others *Lignum vite*, for the sweet sauour is valued by the people of the East at the waight in siluer. In *India* and *Cambai* they vse it at the buriall of great Lords, in baths, and other wantonnesse. It groweth most frequent in the rough mountaines of *Campa*, *Cambai* and *Macin*. That which is brought to vs is in no esteeme with them; The right is found (say they) in *Congo* and *Angola*, and the bordering countrie, and vsed by them in all their grievous and dangerous maladies; which if it be true, I maruell that the Portugals will let slip so precious a commoditie. Macin.

Narfinga.

IN the row of these potent Princes inhabiting betweene *Indus* and *Ganges* dwelleth the King of *Narfinga*. Whatsoeuer lieth between the mountain *Guate* & the gulfe of *Bengala*, between the promontories *Guadauerne* & *Comorin*, by the space of 200 leagues, abounding as prodigally as anie other prouince in the *Indies* with all good things, is vnder his Dominion. The waters sometime falling frō the mountaines, sometime frō the riuers, & receiued into

into trenches, meeres, and Lakes, doe vvonderfully coole, moisten, and enrich this land, causing the Graine and Cattle to prosper aboue imagination. It is no lesse plentiful of brides, beasts, wild and tame, Buffals, Elephants and Mines of precious stones and mettals. It breedeth no races of horse for the vvar, but they buy them of the *Arabian* and *Persian* Merchants in great numbers: the like doe all the Princes of *Decan*. Within the bounds of *Narsinga* dwell fiue Nations different in language; he hath manie strong places on the Indian Ocean. *Canera* is at his command, vvherein are the hauen townes of *Mangolar*, *Melind*, *Berticala*, and *Onor*: but the Portugals receiue the custome of *Berticala*, and also in times past of *Onor*. In *Narsinga* are two imperiall cities: *Narsinga* and *Bisnagar*, by reason vvhereof he is termed sometime King of *Narsinga*, sometime King of *Bisnagar*.

It is vndoubtedly beleueed, that this King receiueth yearely twelue millions of duckats, of vvhich he layeth vp but two or three, the residue he expendeth vpon the troupes of his souldiours, that is to say, fortie thousand *Nairs*, and twentie thousand horsemen kept in continual pay. Vpon necessitie he is able to leaue a far greater number: for besides these allowances, he setteth out certaine lands to 200 captaines, on condition to keepe in readinesse a proportion of horsemen, tootemen, and Elephants. The wages of these captaines (to some of vvhom he giueth a million of ducats yerely) may be an argument of his great reuennues; for to these proiects, this Prince and all the potentates of the East, keepe in their possession all the profits of the lands, woods, mines, yea and the waters of pooles and riuers through their whole Dominions. No man may wash himselfe in *Ganges*, (vvhich runneth by *Bengala*) nor in *Ganga* (vvhich watreth the Land of *Orissa*) before hee hath paid toll to the King. The King himselfe is now inforced to buy this vvater, causing it to be brought vnto him by long iourneyes, vpon a superstitious custom, either to bath or to purge himselfe therein. He is absolute Lord of the bodies and goods of his subiects, which he shareth to himselfe and his captaines, leauing the people nothing but their hands and labour: of Lands the King hath three parts, and his captaines the residue. Whereupon sithence, all these barbarous Princes maintaine not peace and iustice, as arches whereupon to lay the ground-worke of their Estates; but armes, conquest, and the Nurserie of a continuall souldiourie: it must needs follow that they are able to leaue greater troupes of horse and foote, than otherwise, we were bound to beleue. But to induce some measure of credite, let vs compare the abilities of some Christian Princes, with theirs. If the King of *France* vv ere absolute Lord of all the lands

lands and domaines of his whole dominion (as these men are) it is thought that his yearely reuennues would amount to fifteene millions, & yet therin are neither mines of gold nor siluer. The Clergie receiueth fix millions, the Kings demesnes amount to one and an halfe, the residue is theirs who haue the inheritance, and yet here the peazants liue well in comparison of the *Villagois* of *India*, *Polonia*, and *Lithuania*. Besides this, the King hath eight millions of ordinarie reuennue, arising of customes and elcheats. How mightie a Prince would he be, if hee were Landlord of the demesnes and rents of the whole Kingdome, and should employ them vpon the maintenance of souldiours, as doth the King of *Narsinga*? Surely whereas now the Kings reuennues doe hardly suffice for the maintenance of foure thousand men at armes, and sixe thousand crosse-bowes; if this allowance were added to the former, he might as easily maintaine 150 thousand.

To returne to *Narsinga*; the King to see that his captaines perfourme their duties, once a yeare proclaimeth a muster, vwhereat they dare not but be present: at the muster day those who haue presented their companies defectiue, either in number, or furniture, are sure to be cashiered: but those who bring their companies complete and well armed, he honoureth and aduanceth. What forces may be gathered out of so ample a Dominion (armed after their manner, as aforesaid) you shall gather by that which *Iohn Barros* vvriteth, of the armie which King *Chrismarao* led against *Idalcan* in the iourney of *Raciel*. These are his words *Verbatim*. Vnder sundrie Captaines the armie was deuided into manie battalians: In the Vantgard marched *Camraque* with one thousand horse, 17 Elephants, and thirtie thousand footemen. *Tirabicar*, with two thousand horse, twentie Elephants, and fiftie thousand footemen. *Ti-mapanique*, with three thousand horse-men, and fiftie fixe thousand footmen. After them followed *Hadanaique*, with five thousand horsemen, fiftie Elephants, and one hundred thousand footmen. *Condomara*, with sixe thousand horse, sixtie Elephants, one hundred and twentiethousand footmen. *Comora*, with two hundred and fiftie horse, fortie Elephants, and foure score thousand footmen. *Gendua* with 1000 horse, ten Elephants, and 30000 footmen. In the rereward were two Eunuches with one thousand horse, fifteene Elephants, and fortie thousand footmen. *Betell* one of the Kings Pages led 200 horse, twentie Elephants, and 8000 foote. After all these followed the King with his Guard of sixe thousand horsemen, three hundred Elephants, and fortie thousand footmen. Vpon the flanks of this battaile went the gouernour of the citie of *Bengapor* with diuers captaines, vnder whose colours were 4200 horse,

into trenches, meeres, and Lakes, doe vvonderfully coole, moisten, and enrich this land, causing the Graine and Cattle to prosper aboue imagination. It is no lesse plentiful of brides, beasts, wild and tame, Buffals, Elephants and Mines of precious stones and mettals. It breedeth no races of horse for the vvar, but they buy them of the *Arabian* and *Persian* Merchants in great numbers: the like doe all the Princes of *Decan*. Within the bounds of *Narsinga* dwell fiue Nations different in language; he hath manie strong places on the Indian Ocean. *Canera* is at his command, vvherein are the hauen townes of *Mangolar*, *Melind*, *Berticala*, and *Onor*: but the Portugals receiue the custome of *Berticala*, and also in times past of *Onor*. In *Narsinga* are two imperiall cities: *Narsinga* and *Bisnagar*, by reason vvhereof he is termed sometime King of *Narsinga*, sometime King of *Bisnagar*.

It is vndoubtedly beleueed, that this King receiueh yearly twelue millions of duckats, of vvhich he layeth vp but two or three, the residue he expendeth vpon the troupes of his souldiours, that is to say, fortie thousand *Nairs*, and twentie thousand horsemen kept in continual pay. Vpon necessitie he is able to leaue a far greater number: for besides these allowances, he setteth out certaine lands to 200 captaines, on condition to keepe in readinesse a proportion of horsemen, footemen, and Elephants. The wages of these captaines (to some of vvhom he giueth a million of ducats yerely) may be an argument of his great reuennues; for to these proiects, this Prince and all the potentates of the East, keepe in their possession all the profits of the lands, woods, mines, yea and the waters of pooles and riuers through their whole Dominions. No man may wash himselfe in *Ganges*, (vvhich runneth by *Bengala*) nor in *Ganga* (vvhich watreth the Land of *Orissa*) before hee hath paid toll to the King. The King himselfe is now inforced to buy this vvater, causing it to be brought vnto him by long iourneyes, vpon a superstitious custome, either to bath or to purge himselfe therein. He is absolute Lord of the bodies and goods of his subiects, which he shareth to himselfe and his captaines, leauing the people nothing but their hands and labour: of Lands the King hath three parts, and his captaines the residue. Whereupon sithence, all these barbarous Princes maintaine not peace and iustice, as arches whereupon to lay the ground-worke of their Estates; but armes, conquest, and the Nurserie of a continuall souldiourie: it must needs follow that they are able to leaue greater troupes of horse and foote, than otherwise, we were bound to beleue. But to induce some measure of credite, let vs compare the abilities of some Christian Princes, with theirs. If the King of *France* vv ere absolute Lord of all the lands

lands and domaines of his whole dominion (as these men are) it is thought that his yearly reuennues would amount to fifteene millions, & yet therin are neither mines of gold nor siluer. The Clergie receiueth six millions, the Kings demesnes amount to one and an halfe, the residue is theirs who haue the inheritance, and yet here the peazants liue well in comparison of the *Villagois* of *India*, *Polonia*, and *Lithuania*. Besides this, the King hath eight millions of ordinarie reuennue, arising of customes and elcheats. How mightie a Prince would he be, if hee were Landlord of the demesnes and rents of the whole Kingdome, and should employ them vpon the maintenance of souldiours, as doth the King of *Narsinga*? Surely whereas now the Kings reuennues doe hardly suffice for the maintenance of foure thousand men at armes, and fixe thousand crosse-bowes; if this allowance were added to the former, he might as easily maintaine 150 thousand.

To returne to *Narsinga*; the King to see that his captaines perfourme their duties, once a yeare proclaimeth a muster, vwhereat they dare not but be present: at the muster day those who haue presented their companies defectiue, either in number, or furniture, are sure to be cashiered: but those who bring their companies complete and well armed, he honoureth and aduanceth. What forces may be gathered out of so ample a Dominion (armed after their manner, as aforesaid) you shall gather by that which *Iohn Barros* vriteth, of the armie which King *Chrismarao* led against *Idalcan* in the iourney of *Raciel*. These are his words *Verbatim*. Vnder sundrie Captaines the armie was deuided into manie battalians: In the Vantgard marched *Camraque* with one thousand horse, 17 Elephants, and thirtie thousand footmen. *Tirabicar*, with two thousand horse, twentie Elephants, and fiftie thousand footmen. *Timapanique*, with three thousand horse-men, and fiftie fixe thousand footmen. After them followed *Hadanaique*, with fiue thousand horsemen, fiftie Elephants, and one hundred thousand footmen. *Condomara*, with fixe thousand horse, sixtie Elephants, one hundred and twentiethousand footmen. *Comora*, with two hundred and fiftie horse, fortie Elephants, and foure score thousand footmen. *Gendua* with 1000 horse, ten Elephants, and 30000 footmen. In the rereward were two Eunuches with one thousand horse, fifteene Elephants, and fortie thousand footmen. *Betell* one of the Kings Pages led 200 horse, twentie Elephants, and 8000 foote. After all these followed the King with his Guard of fixe thousand horsemen, three hundred Elephants, and fortie thousand footmen. Vpon the flanks of this battaile went the gouernour of the citie of *Bengapor* with diuers captaines, vnder whose colours were 4200 horse,

Horse, 25 Elephants, and sixtie thousand mercenarie footmen. Vpon the head of the battaile ranged 200000 horsemen in small troupes, like our vancurrers, in such sort and order scowring the countrie, before, behinde, and on all sides, that no Noueltie could so sodainely happen but notice thereof was giuen at the imperiall Tent in a moment. Twelue thousand carriers of water, and twentie thousand light huswiues followed this Armie. The number of Lackies, Merchants, Artificers, and Water-bearers, Oxen, Buffals, and carriage beasts, was infinite. When the armie was to passe anie riuer knee deepe, before the formost were passed, there was scant sufficient for the latter whereof to drinke. Before this iourney the King sacrificed in nine daies 20376 head of liuing creatures, as well of Birds as Beasts, the flesh vwhereof in honour of his Idols, was giuen to the poore. The souldiours vvere cloathed in garments of Cotten-wooll so close and hard quilted, that they would beare out the thrust of a Lance or a Sword. Euerie Elephant was trimmed in a couering of Cotton-wooll, with a frame on his backe bearing foure men.

To their tuskes were fastned long and broad swords, to cut in sunder whatsoeuer stood in their way. The footmen were armed with bowes, iauelins, swords and bucklers. In the fight when the King perceiued *Idalcan* by the furie of his great Ordnance to make hauocke of his men, & dismay the residue, leaping into the head of the battaile, he is reported to vse this Prince-beseeming incouragement: Beleeue me my companions *Idalcan* shall rather boast that hee hath slaine, than ouercome a King of *Narsinga*. With which words and ensample, his souldiours all inflamed, and alhamed of their cowardize, with a furious charge, broke the enemies aray, and put *Idalcan* to flight. Amongst other spoiles, they tooke foure thousand Arabian horses, one hundred Elephants, foure hundred great pieces besides small. The number of Oxen, Buffals, Tents, and Prisoners, was inestimable. With *Idalcan* were fortie *Portugals*, with the then King of *Narsinga* twentie. In his raigne two of his Captaines rebeld; *Virapanai* vsurped *Negapatan*, and *Veneapatir* the Territorie adioyning to *Matipura*.

Calecutte.

Calecute.

THe most Noble part of *India*, is that which lieth betweene the Mountaine Gate and the *Indian Ocean*. It stretcheth from *Cape Comerin* to the riuer *Cangiericor*, 300 leagues long. In this Prouince reigneth the King of *Calecute*, though he may not be compared with the Prince aboue spoken of, for number and power, yet for pleasant and plentifull scituation, he may be said far to surpasse him. For the region is so cut (as it were) into manie parcels, sometimes by creekes of the sea, sometime by riuers, and sometime by Lakes, that Nature (as it should seeme) would haue it deuided into seuerall Prouinces, as *Trauancar*, *Colan*, *Cochin*, *Craugonar*, *Calecute*, *Tauo*, and *Canonor*. Seauen yeares agoe, *Pereimal* King of all *Malabar* ruled these Prouinces, who after he became a Mahumetane, and resolved to trauell to *Meca*, there to spend the remnant of his daies, deuided the land into manie principalities, but with this prouiso, That also-ueraigne authoritie should rest in the King of *Calecute*, with the title of *Samori*, which signifieth Emperour, or as some write, God on earth. Although the reputation of this King be much eclipsed by the *Portugals*, partly by diuersion of trafficke from his countries, and partly by assisting his rebels and vassals (the Kings of *Tauor* and *Cochin*) & though his title of *Samori* be little regarded, yet retaineth he his woonted Maiestie in verie good sort amongst the *Barbarians*. *Calecute* is 25 leagues long: *Malabar* in the broadest place exceedeth not ten.

The Citie of *Calecute* (from whence the Prouince taketh his name) is three miles long, scituated vpon the sea side. It containeth but few houses, and those of little worth, not aboue ten, fifteene, or twentie Nobles rent by the yeare, which is the common rent of all the housing of the East Indies, if the *Arabians* or *Portugals* be not dealers therein. The Inhabitants liue vpon Rice, Palmito, Cattle and Fish. Their riches consist in Ginger, and Pepper, which draweth yearely a great masse of Treasure into the hauens of this Kingdome. The *Arabians* were Lords of this trafficke for manie Ages, till the *Portugals* setting light by the incredible dangers of a long Nauigation, arriued there not aboue a hundred yeares since, and bartered their wares for Pepper, and other commodities. And as the *Portugals* enriched the Townes of *Cochin*, so did

the *Arabians Calecute*, and that Kingdome. For this commoditie is of such consequence, that it not onely enricheth the Prince with presents and customes, but in such sort augmenteth the state of the merchants, that some of them are comparable to manie Dukes in Europe and Kings in *Afrique*.

In their wars in *Malabar*, they vse not the seruice of horse, not onely for that the climat breedeth none, (for those that they haue, are brought out of *Persia* and *Arabia*) but for that the nature of the countrie is not fit for horsemanship. For as in *Swenia* the Footmen vse no Pikes, and the Horsmen no Lances, for the thickenesse of the woods, which maketh them vnseruiceable, so in *Malabar* because of the straights, riuers of the Sea, and Marishes, they seldome vse horses, so that all their forces consist in shipping and footmen. It is strange to see how readie the souldiour of this countrie is at his Weapons; they are all Gentlemen, and tearmed *Naires*. At seauen yeares of age they are put to Schoole to learne the vse of their weapons, whereto make them nimble and actiue, their sinnewes and ioynts are stretched by skilfull fellowes, and annointed with the oyle *Sesamius*; by this annointing they become so light and nimble, that they will winde and turne their bodies, as if they had no bones, casting them forward, backward, high, and low, euen to the astonishment of the beholders. Their continuall delight is in their weapon, perswading themselues that no Nation goeth beyond them in skill and dexteritie. Euerie one invreth himselfe to that weapon, whereto he findeth his bodie most agreeable. Their ancient weapons were the Iauelin, the Bow, and the Sword; but after the comming of the Portugals, they Learned so exactly the mixture of mettals, the casting of great Ordnance, and the practise thereof, that (some say) their artillerie and powder surpasseth ours. They goe to war all naked saue their priuities, neither vse they head peeces, which is the reason that in fights and skirmishes they shew exceeding agilitie, charging and retyring more like Falcons than Souldiours. When a man would take them to be far off, hee shall see them howering round about him in a trice, so that it is as dangerous to follow the flying, as to deale with them fighting. They are swift as Leopards, and their flight as much to be feard, as their charge. If they come to handstrokes (which they will not doe but vpon necessitie or aduantage) they vse altogether to strike with the point. They bind copper or siluer shingels to the hilts of their swords, the sound whereof instead of Drummes and Trumpets, encourageth them to the encounter. They will lie so close vnder their bucklers, that you shall not see anie part of their bodies, lie open to the danger.

There

There are one kinde of *Nairs* (called *Amochi*) which curse themselves, their kindred and posteritie with most bitter execrations, if they leaue iniuries done to their societie vnreuedged. If their King happen to be slaine, so much the more furious run they through fire, water, and assured destruction to reuenge his death. And therefore the Kings of *India* suppose their estates weake or strong, as they perceiue the numbers of those *Amochi* to be few or manie. By the law of the countrie they may not marrie, but they are all allowed women in common. They maintaine those women according to their birth and degrees. They must be all Gentlewomen, for the *Nairs* may not take anie countriwoman, yea so great is their disdain and pride, that without ill vsage they will not endure anie of the common people to come neere them. In their iournies they send their seruants before to the Innes and Villages, to declare their Maisters approach; then must all trauailers depart and giue roome. If it be thought in *Turkie*, that by licentious libertie in time of peace the *Ianizars* become more hardie and couragious in war: what may we deeme of these *Nairs*, who will not endure a man of mean calling to looke them in the face? They inhabite no Townes, but dwell in houses made of earth enuironed with hedges and woods, and their waies as intricate as into a laborinth. Of what force this Kingdome is, may be gathered by the armie of 60000 souldiours, and two hundred vessels of war, which he leuied 1503 against *Edward Pachecho* the King of *Portugals* Captaine, taking part that time with the King of *Cochin*: this war lasted almost fise moneths. In the yeare 1529 with an armie of 100000 he beleagred the fortresse which the *Portugals* built in *Calecute*, vnder the keeping of *Iohn Lima*. In this siege hee spent a whole Winter, wherein although the *Portugals* behaued themselves valiantly; yet weighing the Kings forces, and their owne possibilities, they thought it best to destroy it with their owne hands. In the yeare 1601, he besieged *Caile* with 90000 men, and tooke it by composition. Hee hath more than once giuen an instance of his power at sea. He is Lord of manie hauens, whereunto great numbers of shipping doe resort, and in that regard, cannot choose but bee well furnished with a great nauie. But in goodnesse of shipping, and martiall discipline, wee must needs confesse the sea-forces of all the *Indian* Princes, to be far inferior to those of the *Portugals*, whose Dominion (both at sea & land) nothing hath so much augmented, as their defensue warfare. To speake truth, it seldome falleth out, but the naked man feareth the sword, and the armed man is more encouraged thereby, bearing himselfe bolder vpon his skill, than his strength, and preuaileth more by temporizing, than

by rash fighting; whereas the Barbarians putting more confidence in their numbers, than their goodnesse, haue alwaies wanted that vertue, which should make armies dreadfull and fortunate, which is good order, and Discipline.

Iapan.

I*Apan* may well be called a polittike bodie, compacted of manie and sundrie Islands of diuers different formes and circuites, which as they are deuided from the rest of the continent, so are they inhabited by a people much differing in maners and customes from the residue of the *Orient*. They stand round and close together like the *Maldina* in the Indian sea, and the *Hebrides* and *Orchades* in the North Ocean. They are in number 66. deuided into three partialities. The first containeth nine. The second foure. The third fiftie three. Amongst these, fise are renoumed, but especially one for the famous citie of *Macao*. And it is most commonly scene, that they who haue the soueraigntie of those fise, are Lords of all the rest. It is distant from *New Spaine* 150 leagues; from *China* 60. The soile is to be accounted rather barren than fertill. The inhabitants are of a verie readie wit, and maruellous patient in aduersitie. Their new borne children they immediatly wash in the riuers, and as soone as they are weaned, they take them from their mothers, and bring them vp in labours of hunting, and such like exercises. They go bare-headed men and women, as well in foule weather, as in faire. They are verie ambitious and desirous of honor. Pouertie is no disgrace to the Gentry of their bloud. They wil not suffer the least wrong to passe vnreuenged: they salute one another with manie curtesies: they are verie staied, & of a setled resolution. They are verie iealous to shew themselves feareful or baseminded in word or deed: they will make no man priuie of their losses or misfortunes; they haue the like beasts both tame and wild as we haue, but they will scarcely eate anie thing saue Hearbes, Fish, Barley, or Rice; and if they doe, it is the flesh of wild beasts taken by hunting. Of these graines they make their Wines, and water mixt with a certaine precious powlder, which they vse, they account a daintie beuerage: they call it *Chia*. Their buildings for the most part are of timber, partly because the vpland places are destitute of quarries, but abounding with Cedar.

of admirable heighth and thickeſſe fit for building, and partly becauſe the countrie is ſubiect to Earth-quakes. In times paſt all *Iapan* obeyed one Prince, ſhewing him great obedience and ſubiectiō, and this government endured with no leſſe ſtate and maieltie, at the leaſt ſixteene hundred yeares, vntill about fiftie yeares ſince, by the rebellion of two of his chiefeſt Lieutenants, the whole Kingdome was diſtracted, each of them holding by armes whatſoeuer he archieued by vſurpation. By their example others becomming as ambitious, ſeized on the reſt of the Kingdome, ſome on one part, ſome on another, leauing nothing but the bare name of *Dairi*, which ſignifyeth the Lord of all *Iapan*, with the title of *Iucata*, (viz.) King, to their rightfull ſoueraigne. Yea thoſe Princes which were Lords of the Territories about *Meaco*, would hardly allow him vwhereof to finde him victuall and apparrell, ſo that now he reſembleth the ſhadow, rather than the King of the ancient and magnificent Monarchie of *Iapan*. Since thoſe times vwhoſoeuer layeth faſt hold on the Dominion of the *Coquinai* (thoſe are the five Kingdomes bordering *Meaco*) inſteed of *Dairi*, calleth himſelfe Emperour and king of *Iapan*, and Lord of *Tenza*. *Nabunanga* was one of them in our daies, and after him *Faſſiba* in power and maieltie excellling all his predeceſſors. *Nabunanga* was Lord of fixe and thirtie Prouinces, *Faſſiba* at the leaſt of fiftie.

The forme of government is nothing like the policie of Europe. The ſtrength of the Prince conſiſteth not in ordinarie reuennues and loue of the people, but in rigour and the Princes pleaſure. As ſoone as the Prince hath conquered one or more Kingdomes, he ſhareth them wholly amongſt his friends and followers, who bind themſelues by oath faithfully to ſerue him with a limited companie of men as well in peace as war. They againe to make their followers truſtie and readie for all ſeruices, reſeruing ſome ſmall matter for the ſuſtentation of themſelues, and families, deuide to euerie man a portion of the former diuiſion; ſo that all the vvealth of *Iapan* priuate and publike is in the hand of a few men, and thoſe few depending on the pleaſure of one, that is, the Lord of *Tenza*. He as him liſteth, giueth, taketh, diſgraceth, honoureth, and impouerisheth. When he caſhereth anie gouernor of his Prouince, all the Leaders and Souldiours of the ſaid Prouince are changed, and none left there but Artificers and Husbandmen. This government draweth with it continuall diſlike and innouations. For *Dairi* (though he hath neither power nor government) yet being in fauour and eſtimation of the people, ceaſeth not to inſinuate into their heads, that this Lord of *Tenza* and the other Tyrants, are vſurpers of

other mens right, destroyers of the Monarchie, and enemies to the state and liberties of *Japan*. Which perswasions take so deepe roote in the hearts of the people, and so extenuate the reputation of these Vsurpers, that vnder colour of suppression of other, they often take Armes vpon hope to raise their owne greatnesse: so that by this daily change of Gouvernours, the people not knowing who are their right and naturall Lords, know not whom to loue and obey: And againe, their Lords being as vncertaine of their continuance, care not for the people, nor for the welfare of their owne vassals, no more than if they were meere strangers: but alwaie aspiring by the same facilitie whereby they gained one, to conquer a better, after the manner of Gamsters, continually hazzard one, vpon hope of winning another: in this sort sometime one alone, sometime manie together, vexing the Islands with perpetuall warfare. *Fassiba* to assure his estate, and disable the greatest ones from enterprising against him, doth often transport them from one Prouince to another, causing them to forgoe their ancient inheritances, and to lead their liues amongst vnkowne neighbours: neither in those places will he suffer them to enioy liuings vnited, but far deuided in pieces and parcels. For all this, they are neuer at peace among themselves, by reason that the frontiers of their pettie iurisdctions, neighbour so neare one vpon another. In these alterations *Fassiba* constrained as well the losers as the vwinners to doe him homage and obedience, and once a yeare to pay him a rich tribute, drawing to his owne Coffers the greatest part of the wealth of *Japan* by these Tyrannies. He keepeth his owne people busied in building of admirable pallaces, sumptuous Temples, Townes and Fortresses, the like whereof are no where to be seene. In these workes he hath more than 100000 workemen, labouring in their seuerall occupations at their owne charges. Amongst the rest hee is now in building a Temple, for whose iron workes, all the stufte in *Japan* will hardly suffice, and therefore he hath giuen commandement to all his people and Merchants to bring all iron and Armor into one place.

Besides the oath of fealtie wherby the residue of the Kings and Princes are bound to aide and assist him in peace and war, he receiueth yearly two millions arising of the profits of Rice, reserued vpon his owne possessions. He was determined after the finishing of the fabrikes, to attempt a journey into *China*, and for that enterprize caused timber sufficient for the building of two thousand vessels for transportation to be felled. By these magnificent fabrikes, this haughtie resolution, this large Dominion and conquest for forraine Kingdomes, he hopeth to attaine

attaine the reputation of immortalitie among his subiects, as diuers of his predecessors haue done before him. For *Anida, Xaca, Canis*, and *Fotoque*, were no other than Lords of *Iapan*, which either for their glorie in War, or inuention of some good Arts in peace, were accounted as Gods amongst the *Iaponians*, as in the old world *Hercules* and *Bacchus* were amongst the *Grecians*, and *Saturn* and *Ianus* amongst the *Italians*. Of these Demi-gods they report as manie strange and fabulous inuentions, as the *Grecians* and *Italians* did of theirs. But *Fassiba* vnderstanding by the preaching of the Iesuits, that there can be no God but one, who created the heaven and earth of nothing, and all other deities to be foolish and detestable, determined to banish them all, and to weed vp that good Vine, which began to take deepe roote in those Prouinces. Surely this may stand for a memorable example of the pride and blindness of mans heart.

The Roman Emperours opposed their forces against the Christian Religion, onely to maintaine and vphold the worship of their Idols, condemned for vaine and diuellish, by the Law of Christianitie: but this man raiseth persecution against Religion, to arrogate to himselfe the name of God, an imagination (as I said before) full of extreame ambition and madnesse. But in the midst of these proud and vnreasonable cogitations, God raised vp against him a new enemy from the Easterne parts of *Iapan*, who as wee vnderstand by Aduisoers of the last yeare, is likely to giue him his hand and head full of businesse.

The sixth Booke.
Of *America*, commonly called,
West-India.



His spacious part of the world, utterly unknowne to the Ancients, and extended upon the vast and raging Atlantique Ocean, lay undiscovered untill the yeare of our Lord God, 1492. In which yeare it was found out by Christopher Columbus, a man of an excellent iudgement, and haughtie spirit, under the protection and good fortunes of Ferdinand King of Spaine. Him seconded Americus Vesputius, and other famous Gentlemen, who to their euerlasting memories, with infinite labour and danger, surueied that huge tract, with the Islands adioyning, euen vnto the furthest parts of the West and South. That portion they called the New-world, As well for the incredible spaciousnesse thereof, being larger than the two old diuisions of Afrique and Europe; As for the infinit number of Islands, diuersitie of manners, fashions of inhabitants, varietie of Languages, Nations, and Customes, with the disproportion of liuing Creatures, Trees, and Plants, (not to bee found or scene in these parts,) which they there found.

It is bounded upon the East with the Atlantique or North sea: upon the South, with the Magellan Streights: upon the West with Mare pacificum, or Mare de Zur: and on the North, with Terra incognita. And as some Writers affirme, the whole Circum-Navigation, amounteth to 30000 miles.

This

This Continent, according to its diuersitie of scituation is diuersly provided: In some places it is admirable fruitfull, in other places verie barren and needie. Some part thereof lieth upon huge plaines, some places are verie hilly and mountainous. It is watered with manie famous Riuers, whose sands in manie places yeeld Gold, with manie famous Lakes and Springs. It bringeth forth graine and pulse sufficient, especially Maiz, the chiefeest bread and prouision through the whole Indies. Wine they haue none, and where they want this Maiz, they make their bread of a kinde of roote, good and wholesome, if the iuyce be thoroughly squeezed out, otherwise not. It yeeldeth Sugar, Cotton-wooll, and Flax, as with vs; with a thousand sorts of Trees, Birds, Beasts and Fishes, some whereof wee know, and other some, not.

Horses they haue none, neither conceiue their vse, and at the first sight of horsemen, the inhabitants stood amazed. In it are found the Spices, Gems and precious Stones, with those huge masses of Gold, Siluer, and other Mineralles, which we see daily transported into Europe. The inhabitants are of a swartie complexion, fairer or fouler, according to their different scituations. Not verie well fauoured, but of sauage and brutish behaviours, excellent footmen and swimmers, cleanly in their bodies, naked, libidinous, and men eaters. Some worship the diuell, some Idols, some the Sunne, and some the Stars. Their armes are the Bow and Arrow, which instead of iron, they bead with the teeth of Fishes, and the bones of beasts. Gold, Siluer, and Stone they little regard, their chiefeest delight is in Feathers and Plumes. Inso-much, that if these Countries had beene trauelled into with unarmed search and peregrination; for what occasion of war could iustly be applied vnto those who neither held wealth in estimation, neither coveted Honour with ambitious emulation? No doubt but all Authours in discoursing of these Nations, could haue informed you of nothing but Gold yeelding-Riuers, miraculous temperature of Aire, strange shapes in beasts and birds; The sea abounding with Pearle, and land with Gems; And aboue all Man here liuing and conuersing in his rude and
antique

antique simplicitie, under the shield of genuine innocencie, with irkesome hatred of Our vile custome and wrangling conditions. But alas! Avarice, under the maske of Religion, and Vainglorie had no sooner set foote in these terresticall places (as I may say) of Paradize, but deprauation turned all things topsituruie. Since when, happinesse hath taken its flight into some other Climate; and as now, nothing is thereof recorded, save undermining of Mountaines, disembowelling the Earth, exiling the Natives, unpeopling of Villages, and that by tirannie and slauerie. For in one, or two pettie battailes, whole Empires haue beene subdued, by an handfull of Men, and a Kingdome Conquered, in a manner, before it hath beene entred. And no wonder, for this simple and naked people had neuer seene Horse, nor euer heard the report of the Harquebusse. Without the which, peradventure the Spanish Nation had not galloped in so short a time to such miraculous Victories: no though euerie pettie Commander, imployed in that action, in these daies stand comparatively paraleld with the worthie Scipio, and the Great Alexander.

To whom in truth the ancient exprobaton of the Brittons against the Romans, mentioned in Tacitus, cannot more feelingly bee applied, than vnto these Indian Spaniards. They are the Robbers and Rauishers of the World. After the spoile of all Nations, through defect of strange Lands and new Conquests, they scowre the wide Ocean. The riches of the enemy breeds couetousnesse in them; the pouertie, Ambition. Which neither the East nor West can terminate, or containe. They only alone couet the wealth and penurie of all Nations with equall greedinesse and affectation. On Robberie, Murther, and Villanie, they colourably impose the glorious Title of Emperie. Solitude and desolation, they tearme Peace and Tranquillitie.

So that, had not Charles the Emperour cast strict reines vpon these licentious and iniurious proceedings, Spaine had swarmed with
slaves,

slaves, and India had quit beene bereaued of almost all her Natiues. Of 400000 Inhabitants lying in New Spaine at the arrivall of these Spaniards, the Countrey at this day can scant shew you eight thousand. About the like number, you shall finde in the Fonduras, remayning of 410000. When the Spaniards therein set first footing. If you read their owne Histories you shall meet with no better accounts concerning the present Inhabitation of Hispaniola, Guatimala, Nicuragna, and the Islands adiacent. The greatest number whereof were either slaine, led captives, or consumed in the mines. Doubtlesse in divulging of the aforesaid Proclamation, the good Emperour could not choose but remember, that God (whose iudgements are profound) did once by the cruelties of the Gothes, the Huns, and Saracens, wast Italie, persecute France, and consume Spaine; and the Consumers were againe consumed in fulnesse of time. So may it fall out with those, who following the steps of their Predecessors, take a glorie to amaze the sea with ships, and the Land with Armies. Time may come, that Pride shall burne, and be consumed with war; and he that buildeth his house wrongfully upon the ruine of another, shall himselfe become a bootie to Aliens and Strangers. The linage of the Moores is not quit extinguished. The race of the Indians is not utterly extirpated. That progenie as yet suruineth in Italie, which in times past and in one day, at one watchword, slue all the loose French Vsurpers of other mens fortunes. And albeit that the fatall cowardize of these Nations dare not presume to arme themselves against their Oppressors, yet there raigneth a iust God in Heauen, who can raise footemen, and horsemen from the vtmost bounds of the North to asswage and correct the intemperate insolencie of bloud-thirstie Tirants.

New

New Spaine.



New Spaine is a verie large Prouince, better manured, pleasanter, and more populous than anie part of this New world. It was possessed by the Spaniard, in the yeare 1518 vnder the leading of *Ferdinando Cortez*, to the great slaughter of the inhabitants and of his owne people. In reward of whose seruice, *Charles* the fift bestowed on him the countrie of *Tecoantepec*. Although it lie vnder the *Torridzone*, yet it is temperat, mountainous and full of woods. It aboundeth with all good things, necessarie for life, and profitable either for thirst or pleasure, as fish, flesh, gold, and stones. Of all part of the *Indies* none is like vnto it for habitation. For therein the Spaniards haue erected manie Colonies, as *Compostella*, *Colima*, *Purificatio*, *Guadailara*, *Mechoochan*, &c.

Whereof the best and fairest is *Mexico* throtgh the whole *Indies*. It should seeme the shire tooke its name from the citie. In ancient time it was built in the midst of the Lake, like *Venice*, but *Cortez* remooued it to the banke thereof. It is at this day a citie excellent well built, containing fixe miles in compasse, one part whereof the Spaniards inhabite, the residue is left to the natiues. In this citie the Viceroy and Archbishop keepe their seats, hauing the priuiledges of supreme Iustice, Printing, and Coyning. The Lake whereon the citie is built, is salt, and ebbeth and floweth, as the Ocean. At ebbe it sendeth its waters into another Lake adioyning, but fresh; it yeeldeth no fish, but wormes, which in Summer putrefie and corrupt the aire. And yet of the waters thereof they boile great store of salt. The circuit of both these Lakes is about fittie leagues, and about the bankes, and in the Islands, doe lie about fittie Townes, euerie one consisting of 10000 households. Vpon these waters doe ferrie 50000 boates, which they terme *Caneas*, to serue the vse of the citie.

Guatimala.

Guatimala.

IT is both the name of a Towne, as also of the Prouince. The Old-towne, so called, was destroyed by the fall of an hill, thereunto adioyning, and 120 *Spaniards* miraculously ouerwhelmed with the ruine thereof. About three miles from thence is the New-towne situated, containing 80 or 90 faire stone houses therein, all couered with tile. It is much subiect to Earthquakes, but otherwise of a good temperate aire, fruitfull of corne, and plentifull of trees brought out of *Spaine*, which do not well prosper therein.

Fonduras.

IT is a great countrie, and was exceeding well inhabited before the arriuall of the *Spaniards*. And howbeit they boast of the erection of five townes therein, yet all of them consist not aboue 120 or 130 houses; and those for the most part built of Reeds and Straw; yea and but poorly inhabited, because the gold, which is their sole desire, beginneth to faile.

Nicaragua.

N*icaragua* stretcheth towards the South-sea, and is not verie great, but rich, fruitfull and pleasant: and withall so extreame hot, that it is not to be trauailed by day, but by night. It should seeme, that their Winter beginneth in May for from thence, it raineth sixe whole moneths; the other six are verie faire and drie, and day & night being of equall length. Honie, Wax, Cottonwooll, and Balsam grow there in great abundance, with manie other kinds of fruits, which are neither found in other Prouinces, nor yet in *Hispaniola*. There are some few Kine, but manie Hogs, and those brought from *Spaine*. The Countrie is well replenished with *Indian Villages*, their small houses consisting of Reeds and Straw. The Gold that they haue is brought from other places, and so is all other mettall. In manners they resemble the *Mexicans*, and so in apparrell, and language, saue that the *Mexican*

is the better; with the vse whereof a man may trauaile fifteene hundred miles, and is easilie to be learned.

Cuba.

CVba is a great Island, and by reason it hath on the East side Saint Domingo the West Iucatan, on the North Florida, and on the South Iamica, it is verie much frequented by Merchants. It is more long than broad, and containeth in length from East to West three hundred miles, and from North to South three score and ten. In breadth it is not aboue nineteene miles, in some places but fifteene. The ground is high, rough, and full of hills, the riuers small, yet rich of gold and copper. The aire is temperate, but of the coldest. The soile, affoordeth great store of Mather, it is full of woods, and fresh-fish by reason of the faire riuers therein. It boasteth of fixe townes inhabited by Spaniards; whereof that of Saint Iames is a Bishops See; and Havana the chiefe Staple, where yearly all the ships make their rendenou. The people resemble those of Hispaniola, but differ in speech, and goe all naked; being now almost rooted out, and supplanted by the Spaniards.

Iamica.

Iamica lieth seauenteene degrees on this side the Equinoctiall, and hath on the East S. Domingo, on the West, the Cape of Iucatan, on the North Cuba, and on the South, Lacerena. The breadth surpasseth the length, being from East to West about fiftie miles, and from North to South, twentie. In it the greater part of the inhabitants by far are Spaniards, the Natiues being by them destroied, like their neighbours of Lucaya. It is verie fruitfull both toward the sea, as also to the Inland: and was in times past verie populous, and such as were more wittie and subtile both in war and other professions, than were their neighbours. It yeeldeth also Gold, and verie fine Cotton-wooll: And at this present it is full of such beastiall, all the Spaniards haue brought thither out of Spaine.

Hispaniola.

Hispaniola.

H*ispaniola* for greatnesse is the second Island in those parts. On the East side lieth Saint *Iohns*, on the West *Cuba* and *Jamica*, on the North the Islands of the *Canibals*, and on the South the Firme-land. The compasse thereof is foure hundred French miles, being broader than it is longer. For in length it is from East to West 150 miles, & from North to South fortie miles. It is stored with Azure, Basill-wood, Cotton-wooll, Amber, Gold, Siluer, and abundance of Sugar. It is so fruitfull, that within 16 daies radishes, lettuce, and cole-wort will ripen, and be readie to be eaten; and within 36, melons, cowcumbers and gourds, will be as forward. It hath manie townes; whereof that of *S. Domingo* is the principall, as containing aboue five hundred houses, and those inhabited by *Spaniards*, and built after the Spanish fashion. Next their gold, their greatest trading is Sugar and Hides. For all sorts of cattle brought thither out of *Spaine*, haue so prospered therein, that some are owners of fixe or eight thousand beasts.

Boriquen.

B*oriquen*, on the East hath the Island of *S. Cruis*, on the West other small Islands, Northward *S. Domingo*, and on the South the Cape of *Paria*. From East to West it is fiftie miles long, and eightene broad. In forme it is almost square, and is populous, well housed, hauing manie good hauens and replenished with woods. The inhabitants are valiant, and haue war continually against the *Canibals*. Vpon the North-side it is rich in gold but towards the South fruitfull of bread, grasse, fruit and fish.

Should I run ouer all the coast of *Paria*, and there tending *Brasilia*, neuer giue ouer vntill I had shewed you the streight of *Magellan*, with the discription and relation of the people, and *Pentagones* inhabiting all those tracts, I could shew you nothing but heathenisme, barbarisme, and men of strange and vncoth behaviours.

No better can be related of *Quivira*, *Florida*, *Norumbega*, *Terra Labratoris*, *Estotilant*, &c. Prouinces in themselves good, fertill, and all situated towards the North.

The

The seauenth Booke.
America Magellanica,
 Or
 Peruana.

MAgellanica, is the sixth part of the world, which as it is least knowne, so without doubt it containeth manie large Prouinces, & those five in number, viz. Castila del Oro, Popaiana, Brasilia, Chile, and Peru. whereof Peru is so famous, that sometime under that name, all that huge tract is contained, and named Peruana. The Islands thereof are Iava maior, and Iava minor, Timore, the Moluccæ, Los Romoros, and the Islands of Salomon. It is seperated from New Spaine, by a narrow piece of ground, not aboue seauenteene miles in breadth, calleth the streight of Darien. It containeth 64 degrees, and extendeth on the South side the line to fiftie two, and on the North side, to twelue; That, which by the Spaniards at this day is bounded betweene Villa de la Plata, and the Prouince Quito: (in length from North to South, seauen hundred miles, and in breadth from East to West about one hundred) is properly Peru; A fruitfull, sound, populous and well inhabited Countrie; wherein, as well for those beatitudes, as for the riches thereof (being infinit) the Viceroy of that Diuision keepeth his residence.

It deuideth it selfe into three parts, The Plaines, the Sierras (mountaines) and the Andes.

The

The plaines lie vpon the sea-coast, and are out-stretched in length by the space of one thousand and five hundred miles. In breadth they are not aboue three score, and where they are narrowest thirtie. These plaines are grauelly, full of desarts, and for the most part barren, especially where freshets and lakes are wanting, being neuer releiued with raine nor showers. Those grounds that lie nigh the bankes of the riuers, are verie fruitfull, by reason of the discent of water all the winter, distilling from the mountaines and rockes which are not past seuen or ten miles a sunder: the residue further off, the husbandmen doe enforce with great industrie by letting in Sluces, and digging of channels to their plentiful harvest of Cotton-wooll and Corne. The inhabitants of this tract are a base people, cowardly, and poore, sleeping, and liuing vnder trees and reeds, and feeding vpon fish, and raw flesh. The mountaine countrie is extended from North to South about one thousand miles, being distant not aboue twentie leagues from the sea, and in some places lesse. They are verie cold, and subiect to continuall snow, wanting wood, and incumbred with Lyons, Woolues, blacke Beares, Goats, and a certaine beast like a Cammell, of whose wooll, they worke their garments of cotton-wooll, and other utensils. These mountaines are full of inhabitants, fertile and batesfull, especially where the aire is indurable, and the inhabitants more wittie, conragious, and ciuiler than the residue.

The Andes are likewise mountaines: but lying in one continuall ridge without vallies, extending from North to South. Betweene which and the former, lyeth Callao, a prouince full of mountaines also, subiect to cold; yet verie populous. Thus much of the nature (in generall) of these halfe knowne places, of the soile and people: of their forces little can bee spoken, by reason of their subiection to the Spaniard, and enforced ignorance in matters of armes and policie.

It is rich in gold and siluer, more than anie Countrie in all the world, as may well appeare by the yearly quantities thereof
 Ff brought

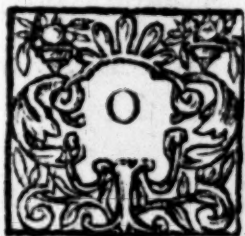
brought from thence. Yet say the Inhabitants, that in respect of the remainder, it is no more, than if a man should take a few granes out of a sack full of corne. Which surely may carrie some presumption of truth, considering what Authors write of Atabalipa his ransom, offered and performed in those daies, when Auarice was not in halfe so much request, as now it is.

It wanteth no good thing that God hath created for the use of man either for pleasure, or necessitie. Onely in this it is dispraisable, that (for the greater part) it bringeth forth Inhabitants of sauage, irre-ligious, and inhumane behauiour, delighting in deuouring of mans flesh, with other uncleane and undressed viands.

Sommer and Winter beginneth with them as with vs, upon the Hills; but in the plaine land it is cleane contrarie. For when it is Sommer in the Hills, it is Winter in the plaines: So that there the Sommer beginneth in October, and continueth till Aprill. Which for the exceeding strangenesse, I haue the rather noted, to see a man upon one day in the morning (in one and the same cuntry) trauieling from the Hills to be well wet with raine, and before night to arrive in a pleasant and sunshining Cuntry, where from the beginning of October (that is all their Sommer long) it seldome or neuer rayn-eth so much as to lay the dust in the highwaies. But then it is sul-trie hot in the Plaines, and when anie small dew falleth, then is it faire weather on the Hills.

Yea, when the South-west windes blow in the Plaine Cuntry, which in other places are commonly moist, and causes of raine, there they are of cleane contrarie effects.

Castella

Castella Aurea.

R Golden *Castilla*, is that part of the firme land (so called by the Spaniards) which stretcheth from the citie *Theonima* and *Panama*, euen to the bay of *Vrana* and *S. Michael*, and occupieth all that streight wherewith these two spacious parts of the New world, are linked as it were with a defensible chaine. It is badly inhabited, and lesse manured for the contagiousnesse of the aire and standing waters. Yet are there therein two famous cities. *Theonima* or *Nombre de dies*, situated on the North sea, and *Panama* on the *Peruvian* or *Pacificque* sea. And whatsoeuer Merchandize is brought by the *Peruvian* sea towards *Spaine*, is vnladen in the citie of *Panama*, and thence transported by land to *Nombre de dies*, where it is finally againe shipped for *Spaine*. The like course is obserued from *Spaine* to those places.

Of their forces, little can be spoken by reason of their subiection to the Spaniard, and ignorance in matter of armes and policie. But as for their priuate commodities, as Gold, Siluer, and Stones, who knoweth not but that they are the chiefeft traffique of all these Prouinces.

Chile.

VPon the South of *Peru* toward the *Pacificque* sea, lieth *Chile*, whose name hath beene deriued (some say) from incredible cold raging therein. Yet feeleth it raine, lightnings, and the alteration of seasons, as wee doe in Europe. It partly lieth vpon the sea-coast, and is partly mountainous, but somewhat warme toward the sea-side. It beareth all sorts of fruit brought out of *Spaine*. and transporteth manie cattle, and store of Ostriges. The riuers run their course in the day time, but in the night by reason of their congealation, if they mooue, it is verie slowly and weake.

The inhabitants are tall, well set, and warlike: and their armes are the bow and arrow: their garments, the skins of wild beasts, and sea-wolues.

Brasile.

Brasillie betweene the two mightie Riuer of *Maragnon* vpon the North, and *Rio de la plata* vpon the South. It was discovered by *Americus Vesputus* in the daies of King *Emanuel*. The countrie in a manner is all pleasant, faire weathered, and exceeding healthfull by reason that the gentle windes from sea, doe cleare and euaporate all the morning dewes and clouds, making the aire fresh and cleare. It is well watered, and deuided into plaines, and easie Mountaines, fertill, alwaies flourishing, full of Sugar-canes, and all other blessings of nature. For hither the Portugals haue brought all sorts of *Europe* Plants, with good successe, and haue therein erected manie Ingenors, to trie their Sugars.

Terra Australis.

His Land was lately found out, and by our latest Cosmographers, for the great and spacious circuit therof, as comprehending manie large Regions (viz:) *Psitacorum regio*, *Terra del fengo*, *Beac*, *Lucach*, and *Maletur*, described for the sixth part of the world. But what people inhabite them, what fashions they vse, or what profitable commoditie fit for the life of man, they affoord, it hath not yet bene by anie man discovered.

Borealis Orbis pars.

His diuision is scituated neere vnto the North Pole, the least of the residue, almost all vnknowne, consisting of Islands, and those scituated about the Pole. For Authors affirme, that vnder the verie pole, lieth a blacke and high rocke and three and thirtie leagues in compasse, and there, these Islands. Among which the Ocean disgorging it selfe, by nineteene Channels, maketh foure whirle-pooles or currants, by which the waters are finally carried towards the North, and there swallowed into the bowels of the earth. That *Euripus* or whirle-poule,

poole, which the *Scithique* Ocean maketh, hath five inlets; and by reason of his strait passage and violent course, is neuer frozen. The other *Euripus* on the backside of *Groneland*, hath three inlets, and remains frozen three moneths yearly: Its length is 37 leagues. Betweene these two raging *Euripi* lieth an Island (about *Lappia* and *Biarmia*) the habitation (they say) of the *Pigmies*. A certaine Scholler of Oxford reporteth, that these foure *Euripi* are ingulphed with such furious violence into some inward receptacle, that no ship is able, with neuer so strong, or opposite a gale, to stem the currant. And that at no time, there bloweth so much wind, as will mooue a wind-mill. This is likewise the report of *Giraldus Cambrensis*, in his meruailes of *Ireland*. But *Blundenile* our countri-man is of a contrarie opinion, neither beleeuing that either *Plinie*, or anie other *Roman*, came euer thither, to describe this promontorie: or that the Frier of *Oxford*, without the assistance of some cold Deuill out of the middle Region of the Ayre, could approach so neare, as to measure those cold parts with his *Astrolabe*.

F I N I S.

Errata.

FOr about precedencie &c. adde about protection of the Dutch Merchants, fol. 62 for in facetiæ, read in their facetiæ, fol. 117 dele forcible, fol. 183 for successors, read succours, *ibid.* for loue, lone fol. 208 for 2000 read 200000 fol. 211 In the margent, ad, Calabria fol. 216 ad, Puglia and Abruzzo fol. 218 for Viragars, read Viragoes fol. 290 read, but be stiled fol. 279 for confident, read considerate fol. 333 dele 735 thousand fol. 342 for forrests, read fortresses, for Testis, Tellis, fol. 362 for decreed, read decried, fol. 383 dele, Administration of Iustice, fol. 430.

THE



THE TABLE.

A				Brittanie, containing England, Scotland and Wales.	39
Bruzo.	fol. 218			Brunswike.	179
Achaia.	355			Duke of Brunswicke.	195
Acon.	368			Bulgaria.	356
Afrigue. 265 what people inhabit it.	268			Burfia.	357
Amasia.	358			C	
America, or West-India.	424			Aire.	293
America Megellanica.	432			Calabria.	216, 239
Ancona.	210			Caldey.	75
Anhalt.	186			Calecute.	417
Ansbach.	196			Mount Calueric.	366
Arabia. 358, Deserta. 359, Petrea.	360			Candie.	227
Fælix.	ibidem			Capadofia.	358
Arezzo.	215			Campania.	215
Armenia minor.	358			Capitanato.	218
Nature of the Armenian.	31			Caramania.	358
Ascloi.	210			Cartagnana.	213
Asia.	295			Castella Aurea.	435
Asia minor.	358			Causes of the risings of Empires. 250. Of their declinations.	251
Asphaltites.	363			Cephalonia.	227
Astrachan.	314			Cerigo.	227
Ancients ignorant of the world.	1			Casaria.	217
Austrich.	183			Cesaria Philippi.	362
Azapi what.	337			Chamberic.	237
B				Chianse what.	335
Aden.	196			Chile.	435
Bactria.	32			China.	395
Barbaric.	269			Cicladcs.	248
Basilica. 219	196	Bauaria.		Cilicia.	358
Beglerbeg what.	335			Colledge of Cardinals.	212
Beneuent.	219			Corfu.	226
Bethlem.	366			Cornwall.	74
Beritus. 268	357	Buthinia.		Best Countries under the Equator.	2
Bologna.	236			Cuba.	430
Bohemia.	184			Curdi.	361
Bononia.	211			D	
Borealis Orbis pars.	436			Almatia.	355
Boriquen.	431			Degrees from the Equator to the Poles divided.	3
Borneo.	272			Denmarke, part of Scandia. 135. Riches.	137, 179
Marques of Brandenburg.	195			136. forces at land. ibid. at sea.	137, 179
Brasile.	436			G	
Brescia.	236			Drof.	

The Table.

Dresden,	187	Ierusalem,	365
E		East-India, or, Asiatica,	384
Egypt.	291	Ireland, its situation and temperature,	35
England.	39	Italie, situation, length and breadth,	207
English, Germans and French in		Nature of the Italian.	28
Italie faint-stomached,	5	India.	365 west. 424
Epire.	355	K	
Erdford.	187	KAtaya.	324
Ethiopia.	282	L	
Europe.	33	Lbia.	270
Of Exercises.	26	Liepseige.	189
F		Londie.	75
Faria.	135	London compared with Paris.	84
Fez.	274	Lorraine.	242
Finland. 139	Florence. 214	Lucca.	213
Fonduras.	429	Lumbardie.	235
France. 76. Frenchmē, & their Natures	29	Lusatia.	185
East Frizland.	132	Lyguria.	219
G		M	
Gago.	272	Macedon.	354
Gaoga.	273	Malfi.	219
Galile.	364	Malta.	241
Gallipolis.	217, 354	Man.	75
Garnsey. 76	Gaza. 366	Mansfielt.	186
Geneua.	197	Manfredonia.	218
Genoa.	219	Mantua.	237
Georgia.	361	Manners of Nations.	28
Germanie, or the Roman Empire.	173	Marchia.	210, 211
Germans and Brittons grey-eyed.	5	Maydenburg.	179
Nature of the German.	29	Mauritania.	271
Gothland.	135, 139	Mæfia superior.	355
Goths, Germans, Scythians, populous.	5	Michelburg.	196
Of the Græcian.	31	Millan.	236
Gualata.	272	Modena.	237
Guatimala.	429	The Mogor.	387
H		Moldavia. 356	Mona. 75
Hamborough.	180	Monomotapa.	289
Hebrides. 75	Hesse. 196	Nature of the Moore.	31
Hispaniola.	431	Moravia. 184	Morocho. 273
Histories uncertaine.	1	Nature of the Moscouite.	30
Hungarie, division thereof.	243	Murano.	221
I		N	
Amica.	430	Naples, compassed and conteyned.	216
Ianizars what. 435. their birth place, & trayning. 326. their allowance, their libertie, and number.	337	Narlinga. 413. What Nations dwell under the South. 3. What Nations under the North. 4. What inhabit the middest.	ibid.
Japan. 420	Iarsey. 76	Natolia.	357
Iberia. 361	Idumea. 366	Nature immutable.	1
Iemoglans, and their preferments.	334	Nazareth.	
Iene.	189		

The Table.

Nazareth.	365	eyed.	4	
Netherland.	131	Scotland. 71	Saxonic.	179
Nature of the Netherlander. 30 and Dane		Serua. 356	Shetland.	135
Nicaragua.	429	Siam. 405	Sicil.	240
North, the storehouse of mankind.	6	Sienna.	215	
Northern-men strong. 2 have euer van-		Silefia.	185	
quish the Southern. 6, faint in the South.		Sogdiana.	32	
7. Bitten by gnats and Cemices. 8, Chole-		Sothern men, weak and subtil, 2, cruel.	8	
rike. 9, mechanicall. 10 Valiant, not wise.		implacable, melancholike.	9	
	ibid.	The Sorlings.	74	
Norwegians.	135	Nature of Soiles.	28	
Norway, bounded. 137, described.	138	Nature of the Spaniard. 28, in the North		
Numidia.	269	good Trenchermen.	5	
	O	New Spaine.	428	
S Alomons Ophir.	290	Spahi, what.	335	
S Celestial Orb diuided.	2	Stiria. 185	Stoad.	180
	P	Sweeland. 185, length thereof.	138	
P Adoa. 212, Count Palatine.	195	Nature of the Switzer.	32	
P Palestine.	362	Switzerland.	201	
P Paris described. 8, Bastile built by the			T	
English.	81	T Agoast. 273	Taradant.	273
Patriarchs. 353, Peloponesus.	355	Tarent.	217	
Pentagones in like eleuation as the Ger-		Tartaria. 321, minor. 323, deserta.	324	
mans.	6		319	
Petromoli.	213	The Tartars, and their kinds.	319	
Peters patrimonie.	211	Tedfi.	273	
Persia. 375, Nature of the Persian.	31	Terra Australis scene, not discovered.	13	
Peruana.	432		436	
Phœnicia.	367	Thrace. 354	Timarots, what.	343
Philip of Austria.	5	Tine. 248, 227	Tirol.	185
Piedmont. 237	Pisa. 213	Tirones intertainmet at millan & Rome.		70
Poleland. 255 Nature of the Polaque. 30				21
Pontus.	357	Tombut. 272	O/ Trauel.	2
The Popedome.	210	Tropiques hottest.		361
Portugal.	169	Turcomania.		213
The Precopenfes.	323	Turkie. 330	Tuscanie.	
Puglia.	218		V	
	R	V Alachia.	356	
R Auenna.	211	V Venice, The increase, & description		220
R Romandiola.	210	thereof.		210
R Romania.	211	Verona. 222, 236	Vmbria.	
Russia, bounded, shires thereof.	267		W	
	S	W Ales.	72	
S Aca.	32	Wighr.	76	
S Samaria.	365	Wirtemberg.	196	
S Samia.	135	Wittenberg.	189	
Sanziah. what.	335		X	
Nature of the Sayoyen.	32	The Xeriffe.		273
Scania.	135		Z	
Scythians, Cimbrians, and Danes red		The Zagathay.		324

F I N I S.

120201AR PAG
P 413, 415

GINATION.

